

**The gentleman's recreation : in four parts, viz. hunting, hawking, fowling, fishing ; wherein those ... exercises are largely treated of, and the terms of art for hunting and hawking more amply enlarged ... Also the method of breeding and managing a hunting-horse: unto which is now annex'd an appendix of choice [with] receipts for the cure of several maladies. Whereto is added [an abridgment of Manwood's Forest laws, and of all the acts ... made since; which relate to hunting, etc.] A perfect abstract of all the forest-laws, and of every particular act of Parliament since Magna charta ... to which is prefix'd a large sculpture, giving easy directions for blowing the horn and other sculptures proper to each recreation, / [Nicholas Cox].**

### **Contributors**

Cox, Nicholas, active 1673-1721.

Manwood, John, -1610. Treatise and discourse on the laws of the forest.

### **Publication/Creation**

London : Printed for N.C. and sold by J. Wilcox, 1721.

### **Persistent URL**

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/mcadkxer>

### **License and attribution**

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



Wellcome Collection  
183 Euston Road  
London NW1 2BE UK  
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722  
E [library@wellcomecollection.org](mailto:library@wellcomecollection.org)  
<https://wellcomecollection.org>





116a **MANWOOD'S FOREST LAWS.**—MANWOOD (Iohn) A TREATISE AND DISCOURSE OF THE LAWES OF THE FORREST: Wherein is declared not onely those Lawes, as they are now in force, but also the originall and beginning of Forrestes . . . Collected and gathered together, as well out of the Common Lawes and Statutes of this Land, as also out of sundry auncient Aucthors, and out of the Assises and Iters of Pickring and Lancaster. Mostly **Black Letter**, sm. 4to, *contemporary calf*, £8 8s 1598

Good, large and clean copy of this rare book, which contains much interesting matter relating to hunting, hawking, etc., etc.

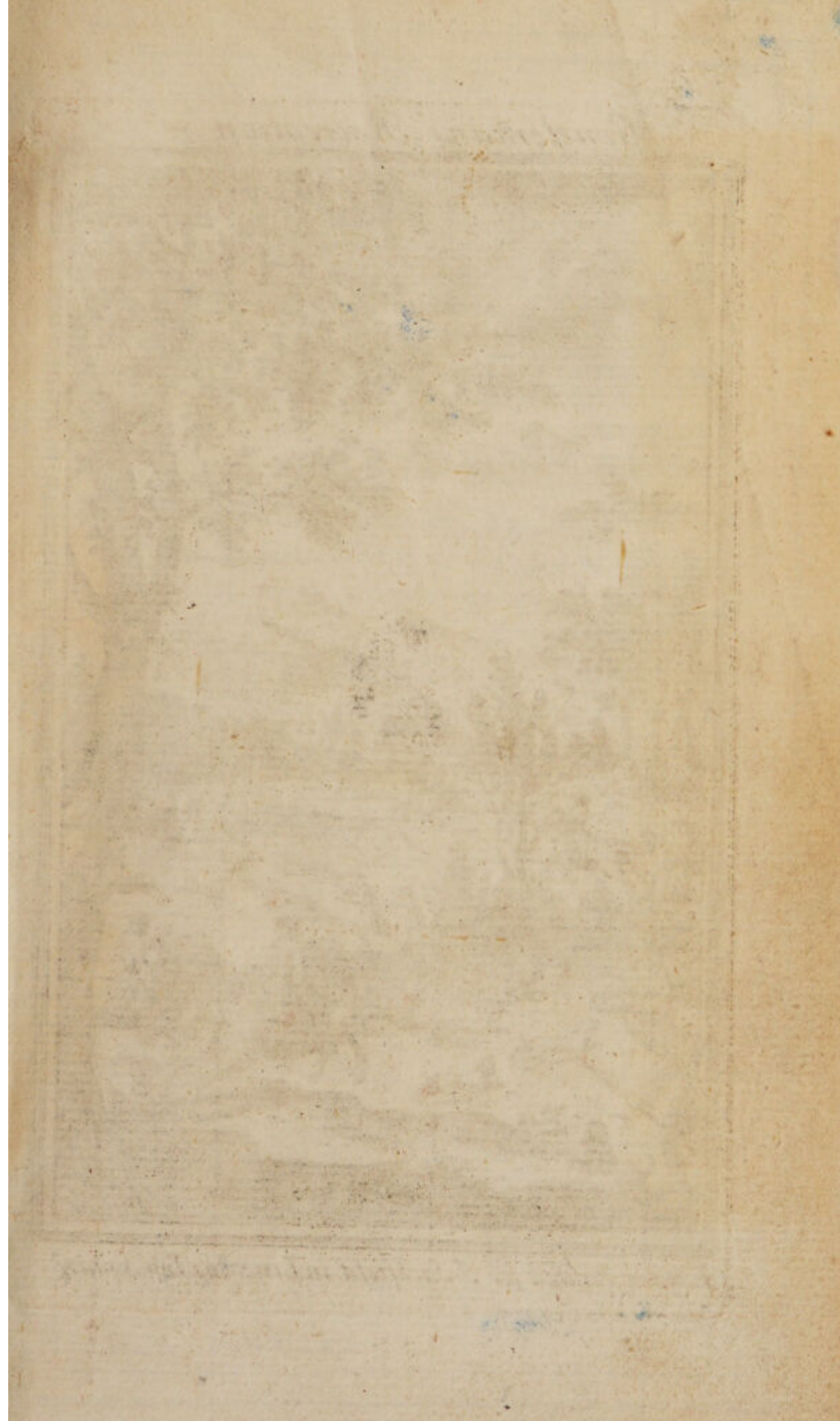


19,019/B

O xvii

18/c







*Gentlemen's Recreation. —*



*London Printed for J. Sackfield in Lincolns Inn Square.*



T H E  
Gentleman's *Recreation*,

In Four P A R T S.

V I Z.

*Hunting,* } *Fowling.*

*Hawking,* } *Fishing.*

W H E R E I N

Those Generous Exercises are largely treated of ; and the Terms of Art for Hunting and Hawking, more amply enlarged than heretofore. Also the Method of Breeding and Managing a *Hunting-Horse* : Unto which is now annex'd an Appendix of choice Receipts for the Cure of several Maladies.

Whereto is added, a perfect Abstract of all the *Forest-Laws*, and of every particular Act of Parliament since *Magna Charta* to this Time, as do any Way relate to the several kinds of *Game* above-mention'd ; with several Forms of Warrants relating thereto, never before printed.

To which is prefix'd A large Sculpture, giving easy Directions for *Blowing the Horn*. And other Sculptures proper to each Recreation.

The Sixth Edition with large Additions.

L O N D O N: Printed for N. C. and sold by J. Wilcox, at the *Green-Dragon* in *Little-Britain*, J. Sackfield, in *Lincoln's-Inn-Square*, J. Batley, at the *Dove* in *Pater-Noster-Row*, and W. Chetwood, at the *Cato's Head* in *Russel-Street Covent-Garden*. MDCCXXI.









To the Right Honourable *Montague*, Earl of *Abingdon*, and Baron *Norreys* of *Rycot*.

My LORD,



*S* this Book, ever since its first Appearance, has had the honour to go abroad under the Patronage of your most Noble Family; so I Hope your Lordship will still continue to look upon it with the same favourable Eye.

The Subject of it has been thought to deserve the Encouragement of Persons of the highest Characters and Stations in the World: Hunting particularly is look'd upon to be an Exercise, not unbecoming Princes themselves; and, as such, has been always practised by the greatest Heroes recorded in Story.

On this Account it is, that young Noblemen have ever been trained up in this most manly Recreation; because of all others it contributes most to the Health and Strength of the Body, as well as to the clearness and vigour of the Mind, and by this means qualifies them for the highest Employments not only in the Camp, but in the Cabinet. And on this Account also I presume it is, that your Lordship has always had



# The Dedication.

*a due Regard to this noble Exercise, as well as to some other of the innocent Diversions, which the following Treatises profess to teach.*

*If therefore your Lordship would be pleased to take these Papers into your Protection, which I humbly beg of your Lordship to do, your Approbation of them would effectually recommend them to the good Opinion of all other Readers. No other Recommendation can be thought necessary; for your Lordship's Abilities and Character, if I was able to do right to them, are too well known, to need any Mention in this Place. Your Integrity, Liberality, Hospitality and Love of your Country have made you dear to all the People of this Nation. The continuance therefore of your Life, and of these noble Virtues in your Lordship's Posterity, is what all good Men ought to wish, and in a particular Manner shall be always heartily prayed for by,*

My LORD,

Your Lordship's

Most Obedient and

Most humble

Servant,

NICHOLAS COX.





THE  
Gentleman's Recreation :  
OR, A  
TREATISE

Giving the best  
*Directions for HUNTING and  
KILLING all manner of  
Chase used in England ; with  
the Terms of Art belonging  
thereunto.*

Allo a short Account of some pecu-  
liar Beasts, not usually hunted in  
*ENGLAND.*

---

PART I.

---

*The* INTRODUCTION.

**H**UNTING is a Game and Recreation, com-  
mendable not only for *Kings, Princes, and*  
the *Nobility*, but likewise for private Gentle-  
men : And as it is a Noble and Healthy Pastime ; so  
it is a Thing, which hath been highly prized in all Ages.  
Be-



Besides, *Hunting* trains up Youth to the use of manly Exercises in their riper Age, being encouraged there-to by the pleasure they take in hunting the *Stately Stag*, the *Generous Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the *Cunning Otter*, the *Crafty Fox*, and the *Fearful Hare*; also the catching of Vermin by Engins, as the *Fitchet*, the *Fulmar*, the *Ferret*, the *Polecat*, the *Moldwarp*, and the like; Exercise herein preserveth Health, and increaseth the Strength and Activity. Others inflame the hot Spirits of young Men with roving Ambition, love of War, and seeds of Anger: But the Exercise of Hunting neither remits the Mind to Sloth nor Softness, nor (if it be used with moderation) hardens it to inhumanity; but rather inclines Men to good Acquaintance, and generous Society. It is no small advantage to be enured to bear Hunger, Thirst, and Weariness from ones Childhood; to take up a timely Habit of quitting ones Bed early, and loving to sit well and safe upon an Horse. What innocent and natural delights are they, when he seeth the Day breaking forth those Blushes and Roses, which Poets and Writers of Romances only paint, but the Huntsman truly courts? When he heareth the chirping of small Birds pearching upon their dewy Boughs? When he draws in the fragrancy and coolness of the Air? How Jolly is his Spirit, when he suffers it to be transported with the noise of Bugle-Horns, and the Baying of Hounds, which leap up and play round about him?

Nothing doth more recreate the Mind, strengthen the Limbs, whet the Stomach, and chear up the Spirit, when it is heavy, dull, and over-cast with gloomy Cares: From whence it comes, that these delights have merited to be in esteem in all Ages, and even amongst barbarous Nations, by the Lords, Princes, and highest Potentates.

Then it is admirable, to observe the natural instinct of Enmity and Cunning, whereby one Beast being

as



as it were confederate with Man, by whom he is maintained, serves him in his designs upon others. How perfect is the Scent or Smell of an Hound, who never leaves it, but follows it through innumerable changes and variety of other Scents, even over and in the Water, and into the Earth? Again, how soon will a *Hound* fix his Eye on the best and fattest *Buck* of the Herd, single him out, and follow him, and him only, without changing, through a whole Herd of Rascal Game, and leave him, not till he kills him? Moreover, is it not delightful and pleasant, to observe the Docibleness of Dogs, which is as admirable as their Understanding? For as a right Huntsman knows the Language of his Hounds, so they know his, and the meaning of their own kind, as perfectly as we can distinguish the Voices of our Friends and Acquaintance from such as are Strangers.

Again, How satisfied is a curious Mind, nay exceedingly delighted, to see the Game fly before him! and after that it hath withdrawn itself from his Sight, to see the whole Line, where it hath passed over, with all the doublings and cross-works, which the amazed and affrighted Beast hath made, recovered again; and all that Maze wrought out by the Intelligence, which he holds with Dogs! this is most pleasant, and as it were a Master-piece of natural Magick. Afterwards, what Triumph there is to return with Victory and Spoils, having a good Title both to his Appetite and Repose! Neither must it be omitted, that herein there is an especial need to hold a strict Rein over our affections, that this Pleasure, which is allowable in its Season, may not intrench upon our Domestical Affairs. There is great danger, lest we be transported with this Pastime, and so ourselves grow wild, haunting the Woods, till we resemble the Beasts which are Citizens of them; and by continual conversation with Dogs, become altogether addicted to Slaughter and Carnage, which is wholly dishonourable; being a servile



vile Employment. For, as it is the privilege of Man, who is endued with Reason, and authorized in the Law of his Creation, to subdue the Beasts of the Field; so to tyrannize over them too much is brutish in plain *Englifo*.

Mistake me not, I intend this Reflection, not for the Nobility and Gentry of this Nation, whose Expence of Time in this noble and delightful Exercise can no ways prejudice their large Possessions, since it is so far from being very chargeable, that it is exceeding profitable to the bodily Health of such, who can dispence with their staying at Home, without any injury to their Families.

I might much enlarge my self in the Commendation of Hunting, but that I am loath to detain you too long, from the Knowledge of what will make a right and perfect Huntsman. I shall therefore thus conclude: No Musick can be more ravishingly delightful than a Pack of Hounds in full Cry, to such a Man, whose Heart and Ears are so happy, as to be set to the Tune of such charming Instruments.



H U N-





# HUNTERS TERMS.



**B**EFORE we shall treat of the Method that is to be used in the obtaining Pleasure in the Prosecution of this Royal Game, it will be very requisite, as an Introduction to this Work, first to understand those *Terms of Art* Huntsmen, Foresters and Woodmen use, when they are discoursing of their commendable and highly recreative Profession. And first, let us consider,

*Which are Beasts of Forest, Venery, or Venary, Chase, and Warren.*

Old Foresters and Woodmen, with others well acquainted with Hunting, do reckon that there are five Beasts of Venery, (that are also called Beasts of Forest) which are these, the *Hart*, the *Hind*, the *Hare*, the *Boar*, and *Wolf*: This is the Opinion of *Budæus* likewise, in his Treatise of *Philologie*, speaking of the former Beasts, *Semper Forestæ & Veneris habentur Bestiæ*: These (saith he) are always accounted Beasts of Venery and Forest.

Some may here object and say, Why should the *Hare* and *Hind*, being both of one Kind, be accounted two several Beasts. To this I answer, That though they are Beasts of one Kind, yet they are of several Seasons: For the *Hart* hath his Season in the Summer, and the Season of the *Hind* begins when the *Hart's* is over.



Here note, that with the *Hart* is included the *Stag*, and all other *Red-Deer* of Antler.

There are also five wild Beasts that are called Beasts of Chase; the *Buck*, the *Doe*, the *Fox*, the *Marten*, and the *Roe*.

The Beasts and Fowls of Warren, are the *Hare*, the *Coney*, the *Pheasant*, and the *Partridge*: And none other, saith Mr. *Manwood*, are accounted Beasts nor Fowls of Warren.

My Lord *Coke* is of another Opinion, in his *Commentary on Littleton* 233. There be both Beasts and Fowls of the Warren, saith he: Beasts, as Hares, Coneys, and Roes: Fowls of two Sorts, Terrestres, (and they are of two Sorts) Silvestres, and Campestrres. The first, Pheasant, Woodcock, &c. The second, Partridge, Quail, Rail, &c. Then Aquatiles, as Mallard, Heron, &c.

There is great difference between Beasts of Forest, and Chase; the first are *Sylvestres tantum*, the latter *Campestrres tantum*. The Beasts of the Forest make their abode all the Day-Time in the great Coverts and secret Places in the Woods; and in the Night-Season they repair into their Lawns, and Meadows, Pastures, and pleasant feeding Places: And therefore they are called *Sylvestres*, Beasts of the Wood. The Beasts of Chase do reside all the Day-Time in the Fields, and upon the Hills or high Mountains, where they may see round them afar off, to prevent Danger; but upon Nights approach, they feed as the rest in the Meadows, &c. and therefore these are called *Campestrres*, Beasts of the Field.

Let us in the next Place discover their Names, Seasons, Degrees, and Ages of Forest or Venery, Chase, and Warren: And because the *Hart* is the most noble, worthy, and stately Beast, I shall Place him first; and must call a

#### HART.

The first Year, a *Hind-Calf*, or *Calf*.

The second Year, a *Knobber*.

The third Year, a *Brocke*.

The fourth Year, a *Staggard*.

The



The fifth Year, a *Stag*.

The sixth Year, a *Hart*.

If hunted by the King or Queen, a *Hart Royal*. If he escape, and Proclamation be made for his safe Return without Let or Detriment, he is then called a *Hart Royal Proclaimed*.

It is a vulgar Error, according to the Opinion of Mr. Guillim, to think that a *Stag*, of what Age soever he be, shall not be called a *Hart* till he be hunted by the King or Queen, and thence he shall derive his Title. Mr. George Turbervile saith positively, he shall not obtain that Name, till he be hunted or killed by a Prince. But the late Huntsmen do agree, he may be called a *Hart* at and after the Age of six Years old.

Now if the King or Queen shall happen to hunt or chase him, and he escape with Life, he shall ever after be called a *Hart Royal*: But if he fly so far from the Forest or Chase, that it is unlikely he will ever return of his own accord to the Place aforesaid, and that Proclamation be made in all Towns and Villages thereabout, that none shall kill or offend him, but that he may safely return if he list; he is then called a *Hart Royal Proclaimed*.

The second Beast of Venery is called a

### HIND.

And she is called the first Year, a *Calf*.

The second Year, a *Hearse*; and sometimes we say *Brockets Sister*, &c.

The third Year, a *Hind*.

The next and third, which by old Foresters is called the King of all Beasts of Venery, is the

### HARE.

And is called the first Year, a *Leveret*.

The second Year, a *Hare*.

The third Year, a *Great Hare*.



## Hunters Terms.

The fourth Beast of Venery is called the

### WILD BOAR.

The first Year, he is a *Pig of the Sounder*.

The second Year, he is a *Hog*.

The third Year, he is a *Hogs Steer*.

The fourth Year, he is a *Boar*; at which Age, if not before he leaveth the *Sounder*: And then he is called a *Singler* or *Sangler*.

The fifth and last Beast of Venery is the

### WOLF.

The Names of the Beasts of Chase according to their Ages.

The first is the

### BUCK.

He is called the first Year, a *Fawn*.

The second Year, a *Pricket*.

The third Year, a *Sorel*.

The fourth Year, a *Sore*.

The fifth Year, a *Buck of the first Head*.

The sixth Year, a *Great Buck*.

The second Beast of Chase is the

### DOE or DOO.

She is called the first Year, a *Fawn*.

The second Year, a *Tegg*.

The third Year, a *Doe*.

The third Beast of Chase is the

### FOX.

And is called the first Year, a *Cub*.

The second Year, a *Fox*; and afterwards an old *Fox*.

The



The fourth Beast of the Chase is the

MARTEN.

The first Year, it is called a *Cub*.

The second Year, a *Marten*.

The fifth and last Beast of Chase is called the

ROE.

The first Year, it is called a *Kid*.

The second Year, a *Gyrle*

The third Year, a *Hemuse*

The fourth Year, a *Roe Buck* of the first Head.

The fifth Year, a *Fair Roe Buck*.

As for the Beasts of the Warren, the *Hare* hath been spoken of already. The *Coney* is called the first Year a *Rabbit*; and afterwards an old *Coney*.

The Seasons of Beasts.

A *Hart* or *Buck* beginneth at the end of Fencer Month, which is 15 Days after *Midsummer-Day*; and lasteth till *Holy-Rood Day*. The *Fox* at *Christmas*; and lasteth till the *Annunciation* of the *Blessed Virgin*. The *Hind* or *Doe* beginneth at *Holy-Rood-Day*; and lasteth till *Candlemas*. The *Roe-Buck* beginneth at *Easter*, and lasteth till *Michaelmas*. The *Roe* beginneth at *Michaelmas*, and lasteth till *Candlemas*. The *Hare* beginneth at *Michaelmas*; and lasteth till the End of *February*. The Season of the *Wolf* is said to be from *Christ-mas*; till the *Annunciation* of the *Virgin Mary*. Lastly, The *Boar* begins at *Christmas*; and continues to the *Purification* of our *Lady*.

*Terms to be used for Beasts of Venery and Chase, as they are in Company one with the other.*

A Herd of *Harts*.

A Herd of all manner of *Deer*.

A Bevy of *Roes*.

B 3

A Sounder



- A Sounder of *Swine*.
- A Rout of *Wolves*.
- A Riches of *Martens*.
- A Brace or Lease of *Bucks*.
- A Brace or Lease of *Foxes*.
- A Brace or Lease of *Hares*.
- A Couple of *Rabbets*.
- A Couple of *Coneys*.

*Terms for their Lodging.*

- A *Hart* Harboureth
- A *Buck* Lodgeth.
- A *Roe* Beddeth.
- A *Hare* Seateth, or Formeth.
- A *Coney* Sitteth.
- A *Fox* Kennelleth.
- A *Marten* Treeth.
- An *Otter* Watcheth.
- A *Badger* Eartheth.
- A *Boar* Coucheth.

*Terms for their Dislodging.*

- Unharbour the *Hart*.
- Rouse the *Buck*.
- Start the *Hare*.
- Bolt the *Coney*.
- Uukennel the *Fox*.
- Tree the *Marten*.
- Vent the *Otter*.
- Dig the *Badger*.
- Rear the *Boar*.

*Terms for their Noise at Rutting-Time.*

- A *Hart* Belleth.
- A *Buck* Growneth or Troateth.
- A *Roe* Belloweth.
- A *Hare* Beateth or Tappeth.
- An *Otter* Whineth.
- A *Boar* Freameth.



A Fox Barketh.  
A Badger Shrieketh.  
A Wolf Howleth.  
A Goat Ratleth.

*Terms for Copulation.*

A Hart or Buck goeth to Rut.  
A Roe goeth to Tourn  
A Boar goeth to Brim.  
A Hare and Coney goeth to Buck.  
A Fox goeth to Clickitting.  
A Wolf goeth to Match or to Make.  
An Otter hunteth for his Kind.

*Terms for the Footing and Treading of all Beasts of Venery  
and Chase.*

Of a Hart, the Slot.  
Of a Buck and all Fallow Deer, the View.  
Of all Deer, if on the Grass, and scarce visible, then it  
is called Foiling.  
Of a Fox, the Print; and other such Vermin, the  
Footing.  
Of an Otter, the Marks.  
Of a Boar, the Tract.  
Of a Hare, diversly; for when she is in open Field,  
she Soreth: When she winds about to deceive the  
Hounds, then she Doubleth: When she beateth on  
the hard High-way, and her Footing can be per-  
ceived, then she Pricketh; and in the Snow, it is  
called the Trace of the Hare.

*Terms of the Tail.*

Of a Hart, Buck, or other Deer, the Single.  
Of a Boar, the Wreath.  
Of a Fox, the Brush or Drag; and the Tip at the End  
is called the Chape.  
Of a Wolf, the Stern.  
Of a Hare and Coney the Scut.



## Hunters Terms.

### Terms for their Ordure.

Of a *Hart*, and all *Deer*, their Excrement is called Fewments or Fewishing.

Of a *Hare*, Crotiles or Crotifing.

Of a *Boar*, Leffes.

Of a *Fox*, the Billiting; and all other such Vermin, the Fuants.

Of an *Otter*, the Spraints.

### Terms of the Attire of Deer.

Of a *Stag*, if perfect, the Bur, the Pearls (the little Knobs on it) the Beam, the Gutters, the Antler, the Sur-Antler, Royal, Sur-Royal, and all at top the Croches.

Of a *Buck*, the Bur, the Beam, the Brow-Antler, the Black-Antler, the Advancer, Palm, and Spellers.

If the Croches grow in form of a Man's Hand, it is then called a Palmed Head. Heads bearing not above three or four, the Croches being plac'd aloft all of one Height, are called Crown'd Heads, Heads having doubling Croches, are called Forked Heads, because the Croches are planted on the Top of the Beam like Forks.

If you are asked what a *Stag* bears, you are only to reckon Croches he bears, and never to express an odd Number: As, if he hath four Croches on his near Horn, and five on his far, you must say, he beareth ten, a false Right on his near Horn; (for all that the Beam bears are called *Rights*;) If but four on the near Horn, and six on the far Horn, you must say he bears twelve, a double false Right on the near Horn: For you must not only make the Number even, but also the Horns even with that distinction.

When a *Hart* breaketh Herd, and draweth to the Thickets or Covers, we usually say, he takes his Hold, or he goeth to Harbour.

All Kind of *Deers* Fat is called Sewit; and yet you may say, This Deer was a high Deer of Grease. The Fat



Fat of a Boar is called Grease. The Fat of a Roe only is called Beavy Grease.

We say the Deer is broken up. The Fox and Hare is cased.

It is { A Litter of Cubs.  
A Nest of Rabbits.  
A Squirrels Dray.

Venison, or Venaïson, is so called, from the means whereby the Beasts are taken, *quoniam ex Venatione capiuntur*; and being hunted, are most wholesome,

Beasts of Venary (not Venery, as some call it) are so termed, because they are gotten by Hunting,

No Beast of the Forest that is *solivagum & nocivum*, is Venison, as the Fox, the Wolf, the Marten, because they are no Meat. The Bear is no Venison, because not only that he is *Animal nocivum & solivagum*; but because he is no Beast of the Forest, and whatsoever is Venison must be a Beast of the Forest; *sed non è converso*. On the other Side, *Animalia gregalia non sunt nociva*, as the wild Boar; for naturally the first three Years he is *Animal gregale*; and after trusteth to his own Strength, and for the pleasure of Man, becometh *Solivagum*. He is then called *Sanglier*, because he is *Singularis*; but he is Venison, and to be eaten. The Hare is Venison too, which *Martial* preferreth before all others:

*Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus,*

So are the Red-Deer and Fallow-Deer Venison: *Vide Coke Inst. 4. pag. 316.* Give me leave to insert here out of the same Author, two Conclusions of the Law of the Forest, which follow from hence. First, Whatsoever Beast of the Forest is for the Food of Man, that is Venison: And therewith agreeth *Virgil*, describing of a Feast,

*Implentur Veteris, Bacchi pinguisque Ferinae.*

They had their Belly full of Old Wine and Fat Venison.  
So



So Venison was the principle Dish of the Feast. Secondly, Whatsoever Beast is not for the Food of Man, is not Venison. Therefore *Capriolus*, or the Roe, being no Beast of the Forest, is by the Law of the Forest no Venison, unless hunted. Nature hath endowed the Beasts of the Forest with two Qualities, Swiftnes and Fear; and their Fear increaseth their Swiftnes.

— *Pedibus timor addidit alas.*

*Vert* is any Thing that beareth green Leaf, but especially of great and thick Coverts, and is derived à *Viridiate*. *Vert* is of divers Kinds; some that beareth Fruit that may serve for Food both for Man and Beasts, as *Service-Trees*, *Nut-Trees*, *Crab-Trees*, &c. and for the Shelter and Defence of the Game. Some called *Hant-boys*, serving for Food and Browse of and for the Game, and for the Defence of them, as *Oak*, *Beeches*, &c. Some *Hant-boys* for Browse, Shelter and Defence only; as *Asbes*, *Poplars*, &c. Of *Sub-boys*, some for Browse and Food of the Game, and for Shelter and Defence; as *Maples*, &c. Some for Browse and Defence; as *Birch*, *Sallow*, *Willow*, &c. Some for Shelter and Defence only; as *Elder*, *Alder*, &c. Of Bushes and other Vegetables, some for Food and Shelter, as the *Haw-Thorn*, *Black-Thorn*, &c. Some for Hiding and Shelter, as *Brakes*, *Gorse*, *Heath*, &c. *Vert*, as I said, comes a *Viridi*; thence *Viridarii*, because their Office is to look after the preservation of the *Vert*, which in truth is the preservation of Venison.

*Terms for Flaying, Stripping and Casing of all Manner of*  
CHASES.

The *Hart* and all Manner of *Deer* are slain: Huntmen commonly say, Take off that *Deer's* Skin. The *Hare* is strip'd or cas'd; and so is the *Boar* too, according to the Opinion of the Antients. The *Fox*, the *Badger*, and all manner of Vermin are cas'd, beginning at the Snout or Nose of the Beast, and so turn his Skin  
over



over his Ears down to the Body, till you come to the Tail.

*Proper Terms for the Noises of Hounds.*

When Hounds are cast off, and find some Game or Chase, we say, *They Challenge*, If they are too busie before they find the Scent good, we say, *They Bawl*. If they be to busie after they find good Scent, we say, *They Babble*. If they run it End-ways orderly, making it good, and then hold in together merrily, we say, *They are in full Cry*. When Spaniels open in the String (or a Grey-Hound in his Course) we say, *They Lapse*. When Hounds hang behind, and beat too much upon the Scent or Place, we say, *They Plod*. And when they have either earthed a Vermine, or brought a *Deer, Bear,* or such-like to turn Head against them, then we say, *They Bay*.

*Different Terms for Hounds and Grey-Hounds.*

Of *Grey-Hounds*, two make a *Brace*; of Hounds, a *Couple*; of *Grey-Hounds*, three make a *Lease*; and of Hounds, a *Couple and Half*.

We let slip a *Grey-Hound*, and cast of a Hound. The String wherewith we lead a *Grey-Hound*, is called a *Lease*; and for a Hound, a *Lyome*. The *Grey-Hound* hath his *Collar*, and the Hound hath his *Couples*. We say, a *Kennel* of Hounds, and a *Pack* of *Beagle's*. Some other differences there are; but these are the most usual.

Where we find *Deer* have lately passed into *Thickets*, &c. by which we guess their greatness, and then put the Hound or *Beagles* thereto for the View, we account such Places *Entries*.

The Impression where any *Deer* hath reposed or harboured, we call a *Layr*.

When the Hounds or *Beagles* hit the Scent of their Chase contrary, as to hit it up the Wind when they should hit down, we then say, they *Draw amiss*.

When the Hounds or *Beagles* take fresh Scent, hunting



ing another Chase, until they stick and hit it again, we say, they *Hunt Change*.

When the Hounds or Beagles hunt it by the Heel, we say, they *Hunt Counter*.

When the Chase goes off, and comes on again traversing the same Ground, to deceive the Hounds or Beagles, we say, they *Hunt the Foil*.

When we set Hounds in readiness where we expect the *Deer* will come by, and then cast them off, when the other Hounds are pass'd by, we Account that a *Relay*.

When Hounds or Beagles have finish'd their Chase by the Death of what pursued, and then in Requital are fed by the Hands of the Huntsman or others, we call that their *Reward*.

Huntsmen when they go drawing in their Springs at *Hart* Hunting, usually make Dew-rounds which we call *Ringwalks*.

When any *Deer* is hard hunted, and then betakes himself to swimming in any River, &c. then we say, he takes *Soyl*.

When *Deer* cast their Horns, we say, they *Mew*.

The first Head of a *Fallow-Deer* is called a *Prick*.

When Huntsmen endeavour to find a *Hart* by the Slot, &c. and then mind his Step to know whether he is great and long, they then say, they know him by his *Gate*.

When *Deer* rub and push their Heads against Trees, to cause the Pills of their new Horns to come off, we say, they *Fray*.

When *Deer*, after being hard run, turn Head against the Hounds, we say, they *Bay*,

When Hounds or Beagles run long, without opening or making any Cry, we say, they run *Mute*.

When Hounds or Beagles at first finding the Scent of their Game presently open and cry, we then say, they *Challenge*.

When Hounds, run at a whole Herd of *Deer*, we say, they *Run Riot*.

When the Hounds touch the Scent, and draw on till they rouse or put up the Chase, we say, they *Draw on the Slot*.



When a *Roe* crosses and doubles, it is called *Trajoin-  
ing*.

When a *Hare*, (is sometimes tho' seldom) takes the Ground like a *Coney*, we then say, she *Goes to the Vault*.

When we beat the Bushes, &c. after the *Fox*, we call it *Drawing*.

When a *Hare* runs on rotten Ground, or in a Frost sometimes, and then it sticks to her Feet, we say, she *Carryeth*.

When the *Fox* hath young Ones in her, we say, she *is with Cub*.

When Beagles bark and cry at their Prey, we say, they *Yearn*.

A Red Male *Hart* of a Year old, is called a *Spitter*.

A *Rayn-Deer* is a Beast like an *Hart* but; hath his Head fuller of Antlers.

A *Pricker*, is a Huntsman on Horse back.

Engines that we take *Deer* withal, are called *Wiles*.

When we set Hounds or Beagles in readiness, expecting the Chase to come by, and then cast them off before the rest come in, we call it a *Vauntlay*.

When Hounds or Beagles find where the Chase hath been, and made a Proffer to enter, but return'd, we say, there is a *Blemish*.

We say *How* to a *Deer*.

When we start a *Hare*, we say, *That, that, or There, there*.

The *Call*, a Lesson blowed on the Horn to Comfort the Hounds.

A *Recheat*, a Lesson likewise blown on the Horn. The *Mort* or *Death*, is blown at the Death of any *Deer*. There are several other Lessons, which you may find in the Sculpture of Notes for blowing on the Horn.

There are several Hounds and Beagles which we have different Titles for; as *Gaze-Hound*, *Blood-Hound*, *Staunch-Hound*, *Harrier*, and *Terrier*, &c. But we generally in all our Kennels and Packs Rank them under these Heads: *Enterers*, *Drivers*, *Flyers*, *Tyers*, &c.

And now to conclude our Discourse of general Terms at this Place, give us leave to insert, for such young Gentlemen as in Time may keep a Kennel, some usual Names of Hounds and Beagles.



# A Catalogue of some general Names of HOUNDS and BEAGLES.

|                       |          |            |
|-----------------------|----------|------------|
| <b>B</b> <i>Anger</i> | Jenny    | Spanker    |
| <i>Beauty</i>         | Joler    | Singwel    |
| Bluemane              | Jollyboy | Sweetlips  |
| Boman                 | Jupiter  | Soundwel   |
| Bluecap               | Juno     | Statelý    |
| Bonny                 | Keeper   | Troler     |
| Bouncer               | Kilbuck  | Thunder    |
| Captain               | Lively   | Thisbe     |
| Capper                | Lovely   | Truman     |
| Chanter               | Lady     | Truelove   |
| Countess              | Lilly    | Tickler    |
| Cryer                 | Lillups  | Tattler    |
| Cesar                 | Madam    | Tulip      |
| Dido                  | Maulkin  | Truelips   |
| Driver                | Merryboy | Touchstone |
| Drunkard              | Mopsie   | Traveller  |
| Drummer               | Motler   | Tracer     |
| Damosel               | Musick   | Touler     |
| Darling               | Nancy    | Tunewel    |
| Dutchess              | Naeter   | Tidings    |
| Dancer                | Plunder  | Trouncer   |
| Daphne                | Pleasant | Trusty     |
| Fancy                 | Pluto    | Truescent  |
| Fidler                | Rockwood | Tryer      |
| Flippant              | Ringwood | Venus      |
| Flurry                | Rover    | Vulcan     |
| Fuddle                | Ranter   | Violet     |
| Gallant               | Ratler   | Wanton     |
| Gawdy                 | Ruler    | Wonder     |
| Heitor                | Ranger   | Winder     |
| Juggler               | Royal    | Whipster   |
| Jewel                 | Rapper   | Yerker     |
| Jockey                | Ruffler  | Younker.   |



\*\*\*\*\*

*Some other Terms and Descriptions relating more particular to Forest and Forest Laws.*

**A** *Forest* is a Place privileged by Royal Authority, and differs from Park, Warren, and Chase, and is on purpose allotted for the peaceable abiding and Nourishment of the Beasts and Fowls thereto belonging. For which there are certain peculiar Laws, Officers, and Orders; Part of which appear in the Great Charter of the Forest.

A *Forester* is an Officer of the Forest, sworn to preserve the Vert and Venison therein, and to attend the wild Beasts within his Bailiwick, and to Watch, and endeavour to keep them safe by Day and Night. He is likewise to apprehend all Offenders in Vert and Venison, and to present them to the Courts of the Forest, to the End they may be punished according to their Offences.

A *Purlieu*, is all that Ground adjoining to Forests, which being made Forest by *Henry* the Second, *Richard* the First, or King *John*, were by Perambulations granted by *Henry* the Third, and severed again from the same.

A *Purlieu-Man*, is he that hath Ground within the *Purlieu*, and hath 40 s. a Year Free-hold; and such a one, with some Caution, may hunt within his own *Purlieu*.

A *Regarder*, is an Officer of the King's Forest, that is sworn to take Care of the Vert and Venison, and to view and enquire of all Offences committed within the Forest, and of all the Concealments of them; and whether all other Officers do execute their Office or not.

*Woodgeld*, is the gathering or cutting of Wood in the Forest, or the Money paid for it to the use of the Foresters; or an Immunity for this by the King's Grant,

A *Ranger*. In some Forests there are twelve *Rangers*, whose Offices are to look after the *Purlieu*, and drive back the wild Beasts into the Forest again; and  
to



to see, hear, and enquire of Offenders there, and to present their Offences.

A *Verderor*, is an Officer of the King's Forest, and chosen by the Free-holders of the Country where the Forest is, by the King's Writ directed to the Sheriff for that purpose. Their Office is chiefly to look after the Wood and Grass in the Forest.

An *Agistor*, is an Officer of the Forest that takes in to feed the Cattle of Strangers, and receives for the King's use all such Tack-Money as becomes due from those Strangers.

A *Chafe*, is a Place used for the receipt of *Deer* and Beasts of the Forest: It differs from a Forest and Park. It may be in the Hands of a Subject, which a Forest in its proper Nature cannot be. Neither is it inclosed as a Park always is; and it hath a larger compass, more Store of Game, and more Keepers and Overseers.

*Expeditate*, is (saith Mr. Crompton) the cutting out the Ball of the Foot of great Dogs in the Forest; but (saith Mr. Manwood) it is the cutting off the three Fore-Claws by the Skin; and that the Owner of every such Dog, unexpeditated in the Forest, shall forfeit 3 s. 4 d.

*Fence Month*, hath 31 Days, begins 15 Days before Midsummer, and Ends 15 Days after; in which Time it is unlawful for and to hunt in the Forest, or to go among the *Deer* to disquiet them; because it is the Time of Fawning.

*Frank Chafe*, is a liberty of Free Chafe in a Circuit annexed to a Forest, whereby all Men that have Ground within the Circuit, are forbidden to cut down Wood, or discover, &c. within the view of the Forester, tho' it be his own Demesne.

*Green hue*, or *Vert*, they both signify one Thing, it being every Thing that doth grow and bear green Leaf within the Forest, that may cover and hide the *Deer*.

*Over Vert*, is all Manner of high Wood.

*Nether Vert*, is all Sorts of Under-Wood; Brush-Wood is called *Cablish*.

*Horngeld*, is a Tax within the Forest for all Manner of horned Beasts.



*Footgeld*, is an Amercement on such as live within the Forest, for not expeditating their Dogs. And to be quit of *Footgeld*, is a Privilege to keep Dogs there Unlawed, without Punishment or Controulment.

*Pawnage*, is Money taken by the Agistors for the feed of Hogs with the Mast of the King's Forest; but (Mr. *Crompton* saith) it is most properly the Mast, Woods, Lands, or hedg'd Rows, or Money due to the Owners of the same for it.

A *Scotale*, is where any Officer of the Forest doth keep an Alehouse in the Forest by Colour of his Office, causing Men to come to his House, and to spend their Money for fear of having Displeasure; but this is forbidden by *Charta Forestæ*.

*Perambulation*, is the Admeasurement and setting down of Bounds and Limits to the Forest.

*Drift of the Forest*, is an exact View and Examination taken at certain Times, as Occasion shall serve, to know what Beasts are there; that none Common there but such as have Right; and that the Forest be not overcharged with the Beasts of Foreigners.

An *Affart*, is a great Offence committed in the Forest, by grubbing up the Wood, Coverts, and Thickets, and making them Plain as arable Land, or the like.

*Minoverie*, is a Trespass or Offence committed by some Engine set up in the Forest to catch *Deer*, or the like.

*Tritis*, is a freedom that one hath from holding a Grey-Hound in ones Hand, when the Lord of the Forest is hunting there, or to be amerced for his Default.

*Protoforestarius*, was a great Officer heretofore in *Windsor Forest*.

*Stablestand*, is when one is found standing in the Forest with his Bow ready bent to shoot at any *Deer*, or with his Grey-hound in a Lease ready to slip.

*Swainmote*, or *Swannimote*, is a Court appointed to be held thrice in a Year within a Forest; the first, 15 Days before *Michaelmas*; the second, about *Martinmas*; and the third, 15 Days before *St. John Baptist*.

*Chiminage*, is taken by Foresters in Fee throughout their Bailiwick, for Bushes, Timber, &c; and signifies the same with Toll.



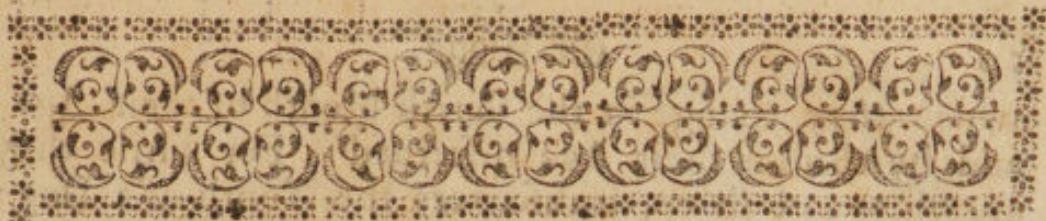
*Afforest*, is to turn Land into Forest.

*Disafforest*, is to turn Land from being Forest to other Uses.

Let what hath been said be sufficient for an Introduction, and let us conclude it with a Persuasion to all generous Souls not to slight this noble and worthy Exercise (wherein is contained so much Health and Pleasure) for the besotting Sensualities, and wicked Debaucheries of a City, in which the Course of Nature seems to be inverted, Day turn'd into Night, and Night into Day; where there is little other Recreation but what Women, Wine, and a Bawdy Play can afford them; whereby, for want of Labour and Exercise, Men's Bodies contain as many Diseases as are in a sickly Hospital.







## Of Dogs in general.



S there is no Country in the World wherein there is not plenty of Dogs, so no Animal can boast of greater Variety both in Shape and Kind.

Some Dogs are very great, as the *Wolf-Dog*, which is shaped like a *Grey-hound*, but by much taller, longer, and thicker; some are for the *Buck*, others for the *Boar*, *Bear*, and *Bull*; some for the *Hare*, *Coney*, and *Hedge-hog*; some are both for Water and Land, and they are called *Spaniels*; other are called *Lurchers*, *Tumblers*, *Brachers*, *Beagles*, &c. As for *Shepherds Dogs*, foisting *Curs*, and such whom some fond Ladies make their daily, nay nightly Companions too, I shall pass over, being neither worthy to be inserted into this Subject, nor agreeable thereunto: Wherefore I shall only treat of such whose Natures do incline them to Game, for Man's Pastime and Recreation.

In the first Place, let us consider the Nature of Dogs in general, wherein they agree, and their common Properties of Nature, such as are not destroyed in the distinction of Kinds, but remain like infallible Truths, and invariable in every Kind and Country through the Universe. Dogs (as it is to be observed) are generally rough; and their Hair indifferently long (which in Winter they lose every year) is a sign of a good Constitution; but if it grow over-long, the Mange will follow. The outward Proportion of the Head altereth as the Kind altereth, having no Commissure or Seam in the Skull, being a continued Bone without Separation.

The best Dogs (in *Pliny's* Opinion) have flat Nostrils, yet round, solid, and blunt: Their Teeth are like Saws,



which they change in the fourth Month of their Age ; and by them is their Age discerned : For while they are white and sharp, it discovers the Youth of a Dog ; but when they grow blackish or dusky, broken and torn, they demonstrate the elder Age.

The Breast of a Dog is narrow, so is his Ventricle : for which Cause he is always in Pain in the discharging his Excrements.

After they have run a Course, they relieve themselves by tumbling and rowling to and fro. When they lie down, they turn round in a Circle two or three Times together ; which they do for no other Cause, but that they may the more commodiously lie round, and from the Wind.

In their Sleep they often dream, as may appear by their Barking. Here observe, that they who love to keep Dogs, must have a special care that they let them not sleep too much, especially after their Meat, when they are young : For as they are very hot, so in their sleep doth their Heat draw much Pain into their Stomach and Ventricle. The time of their Copulation is for the most Part at a Year old ; yet the Females will lust after it sooner ; but they should be restrained from it, because it debilitates their Body, and dulls their Generosity. After the expiration of a Year, they may be Permitted to copulate ; it matters not whether in Winter or Summer ; but it is best in the beginning of the Spring : but with this caution, that Whelps of a Litter, or of one and the same Bitch, be never suffered to couple ; for Nature delights in variety.

In antient Time, for the more enobling of their Race of Dogs, they would not permit them to ingender till the Male was four Year old, and the Female three, for by that means the Whelps would prove more strong and lively. By Hunting, Labour, and Travel, the Males are made more fit for Generation, and they prove best which have their Sires of equal Age. When they grow Proud, give them Leaven mingled with Milk and Salt, and they will not stray and ramble Abroad.



It is not good to preserve the first or second Litter, but the third, and after they have Littered, it is good to give the Bitch Whey and Barly bread; for that will comfort her, and increase her Milk: Or take the Bones of broken Meat, and seeth them in Goats-Milk; which Nutriment will strengthen very much both Dam and Whelps.

There is no great regard to be had as to the Food of a Dog, for he will eat any thing but the Flesh of his own Kind; for that cannot be so dressed by the Art of Man; but they find it out by their Nose, and avoid it. It is good to let the Whelps suck two Months before they be weaned, and that of their own Dam.

Put *Cummin* now and then in their Bread, it will cure or prevent Wind in their Bellies; and if Oyl be mingled with that Water they lap, they will prove more able and swift to run. If he refuse and loath his Meat, give him a little hot Bread, or dip brown Bread in Vinegar, and squeeze the Liquor thereof into his Nose, and it will ease him.

There is some Difficulty to chuse a Whelp under the Dam that will prove the best of the Litter. Some observe that which seeth last, and take that for the best: Others remove the Whelps from the Kennel, and lay them severall and apart one from the other; then watch they which of them the Bitch first taketh and carrieth into her Kennel again, and that they take for the best; or that else which vomiteth last of all. Some again, give for a certain Rule, to know the best, that the same which weigheth least while it sucketh will prove the best; according to the Verses of *Nemesian*:

*Pondere nam Catuli poteris prependere viris,  
Corporibusque levis gravibus prenoscere cursu.*

But this is certain, that the lighter Whelp will prove the swifter, and the heavier will be the stronger.

As soon as the Bitch hath littered, it is requisite to chuse them you intend to preserve, and throw away the rest: Keep the black, brown, or of one colour, for the



spotted are not much to be accounted of; but of Hounds, spotted are to be valued.

There is not any Creature irrational, more loving to his Master, nor more serviceable than a Dog, enduring Blows from his Hands, and using no other Means to pacify his Displeasure, than Humiliation and Prostration; and after beating, turneth a Revenge into a more fervent Love. Irrational, did I say? I may mistake, if what *Ælianus* reports be true, who tho' Dogs have Reason, and use Logick in their Hunting; for they will cast about for the Game, as a Disputant doth for the Truth; as if they should say, the *Hare* is gone either on the Left Hand, the Right, or straight Forward; but not on the Left or Right; therefore straight Forward. Whereupon he runneth forthright after the true and infallible Footsteps of the *Hare*.

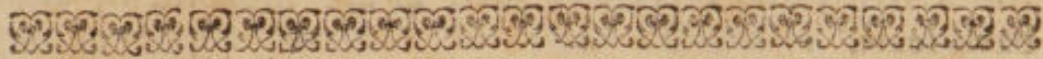


*Of Dogs for Hunting. Of the Hound Rache and Sluth-Hound, so called in Scotland, and by the Germans Schlathund.*

There are in *England* and *Scotland* two Kinds of Hunting-Dogs, and no where else in all the World: The first Kind is called *Ane Rache*, and this is a Foot-scenting Creature both of wild Beasts, Birds and Fishes also, which lie hid among the Rocks: The Female thereof in *England* is called a *Brache*. A *Brache* is a mannerly Name for all Hound-Bitches. The second in *Scotland* is called a *Sluth-hound*, being a little greater than the Hunting-hound, and in Colour for the most Part brown or landy spotted. The Sense of Smelling is so quick in these, that they can follow the Foot-steps of Thieves, and pursue them with Violence until they overtake them: Nay, should the Thief take the Water, so eager they are in their Pursuit, that they will swim after them, and are restless till they find the Thing they seek after: For this is common in the Borders of *England* and *Scotland*, where the People were wont to live much



much upon Theft; and if the Dog brought his Leader to any House where they may not be suffered to enter, they take it for granted, that there is both the stolen Goods and the Thief also.



### Of the Blood-Hound.

THE Blood-hound differeth nothing in quality from the *Scottish* Sluth-hound, saving that they are more largely sized, and not always of one and the same Colour; for they are sometimes Red, Sanded, Black, White, Spotted, and of all Colours with other Hounds, but most commonly either Brown or Red.

The *Germans* call this Beast *Langhund*, because their Ears are long, thin, and hanging down; and they differ not from vulgar Dogs in any other outward Proportion, than only in their Cry and Barking. Their nature is, being set on by the Voice and Words of their Leader, to cast about for the fitting of the present Game; and having found it, will never cease pursuing it with full Cry, till it is tired, without changing for any other. They seldom bark, except in their Chase, and are very obedient and attentive to the Voice of the Leader.

They which are White, are said to be the quickest scented, and surest nos'd, and therefore best for the *Hare*; the Black ones for the *Boar*; and the Red for the *Hart* and *Roe*. This is the Opinion of some, but none of mine, because the Colour (especially the latter) are too like the Game they hunt: Although there can be nothing certain collected of their Colour, yet is the black Hound hardier, and better able to endure cold, than the other which is White. They must be tied up till they hunt, yet so as they be let loose now and then a little to ease their Bellies; for it is necessary that their Kennel be kept sweet and dry. It is questionable how to discern a Hound of excellent Sense: Yet some are of the Opinion, that the square



and flat Nose is the best Sign thereof; likewise a small Head, having all his Legs on equal Length; his Breast not deeper than his Belly, and Back plain to his Tail; his Eyes quick; his Ears hanging long; his Tail nimble, and the Beak of his Nose always to the Earth; and especially such as are most silent, and bark least.

Consider now the divers and variable Dispositions of Hounds in their finding out the Beast. Some are of that Nature, that when they have found the Game, they will stand still till the Huntsman come up, to whom in silence, by their Face, Eye, and Tail, they shew the Game: Others, when they have found the Footsteps, go forward without any Voice or other shew of Ear or Tail: Another Sort, when they have found the Footings of the Beast, prick up their Ears a little, and either bark or wag their Tails; and others will wag their Tails, and not move their Ears.

There are some again that do none of these, but wander up and down barking about the surest Marks, and confounding their own Footsteps with the Beasts they hunt; or else forsake the Way, and so run back again to the first Head; but when they see the *Hare* are afraid, not daring to come near her, except she start first. These, with the other which hinder the cunning Labours of their Colleagues trusting to their Feet, and running before their betters, deface the best Mark, or else hunt Counter, and take up any false Scent for the Truth; or, which is more reprehensible, never forsake the High ways, and yet have not learned to be silent: Unto these you may also add those which cannot discern the Footing or Pricking of a *Hare*, yet will they run speedy when they see her, pursuing her hotly in the beginning, and afterwards tire, or hunt lazily. All these are not admitted into a Kennel of good Hounds.

On the contrary, those Hounds which are good, when they have found the *Hare*, make shew thereof to the Huntsman, by running more speedily, and with gesture of Head, Eyes, Ears, and Tail, winding to the Form of *Hares* Mute, never give over Prosecution with  
a gal-



a gallant Noise: They have good and hard Feet, and stately Stomachs.

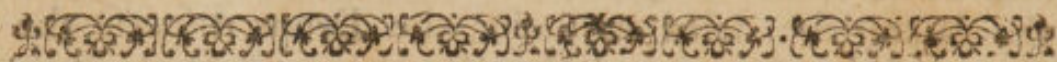
Now whereas the Nature of the *Hare* is sometimes to leap and make Headings, sometimes to tread softly, with but a very small Impression in the Earth, or sometimes to lie down, and ever to leap or jump out and into her own Form, the poor Hound is so much the more busied and troubled to retain the small Scent of her pricking which she leaveth behind her; for this Cause it is requisite that you help the Hound, not only with Voice, Eye, and Hand, but with a seasonable Time also: For in frosty Weather the Scent frezeth with the Earth, so that there is no certainty of Hunting till it thaw, or that the Sun arise. Likewise if very much Rain fall between the starting of the *Hare* and Time of Hunting, it is not convenient to hunt till the Water be dried up; for the Drops disperse the Scent of the *Hare*, and dry Weather collecteth it again. The Summer-Time also is not for hunting, because the Heat of the Weather consumeth the Scent; and the Night being then but short, the *Hare* travelleth not far, feeding only in the Morning and Evening: Besides, the fragrancy of Flowers and Herbs then growing, obliterates the Scent the Hounds are guided by.

The best Time for hunting with these Hounds is in Autumn, because then the former Odours are weakned, and the Earth better than at any other Time.

These Hounds do not only chase their Game while it liveth, but being dead also by any Manner of Casualty, make Recourse to the Place where it lieth, having in this Point an assured and infallible Guide, namely, the *Scent* and *Savour* of the Blood sprinkled here and there upon the Ground: For whether the Beast being wounded, doth notwithstanding enjoy Life, and escapeth the Hands of the Huntsman; or whether the said Beast, being slain, is conveyed clearly out of the Park, (so that there be some Marks of Bloodshed) these Dogs, with no less Facility and Easiness, than Avidity and Greediness, disclose and bewray the same by Smelling, applying to their pursuit, Agility and Nimbleness, with Tediuousness; for which  
con-



Consideration, of a singular speciality, they deserved to be called *Sanguinarii*, Blood-hounds: And although a Piece of Flesh be subtilly stolen, and cunningly conveyed away, with such Proviso's and Precaveats, as thereby all appearance of Blood is thereby prevented, or concealed; yet these Kind of Dogs, by certain Direction of an inward assured Notice and private Mark, pursue these desperate *Deer-stealers* through craggy Ways, and crooked Meanders, till they have found them out; yea, so effectual is their Foresight, that they can discover, separate, and pick them out from an infinite Multitude; creep they never so far into the thickest Throng, they will find them out notwithstanding.



### Of the Gaze-Hound.

**T**His Dog is little beholding in Hunting to his Nose or Smelling, but of Sharpness to Sight altogether, by the Virtue whereof it makes excellent Sport with the *Fox* and *Hare*.

This Dog will chuse and separate from amongst a great Flock or Herd, and such a one will it take by Election, as is not lank or lean, but full, fat, and round.

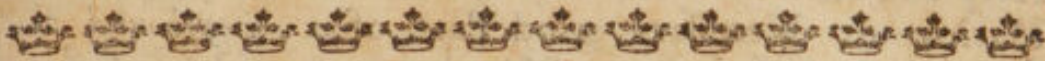
If a Beast be wounded, and go astray, this Dog will seek after it by the Stedfastness of the Eye; if it happen to return, and be mingled with the Residue of the Herd, this Dog will soon spy it out, leaving the rest untouch'd; and after he hath set sure Sight upon it, he separateth it from the Company; and having so done, never ceaseth till he hath wearied it to Death.

This Dog is called in Latin *Agasæus*, because the Beams of the Sight are so stedfastly settled, and unmoveably fastned. These Dogs are much used in the Northern Parts of *England*, much more than in the Southern; and on Champaign Ground, rather than in bushy



bushy and woody Places: Horsemen use them more than Footmen.

If it happen so at any Time that this Dog take a wrong Way, the Master making some usual Sign and familiar Token, he returneth forthwith, and taketh the right and ready Course, beginneth his Chase afresh, and with a clear Voice, and a swift Foot, followeth the Game with as much Courage and Nimbleness as he did at the first.



### Of the Grey-Hound.

**A**Mong the divers Kinds of hunting Dogs, the Grey-Hound, by Reason of his Swiftnes, Strength, and Sagacity to follow and pursue his Game, deserveth the first Place; for such are the Conditions of this Dog, as a Philosopher observeth, that he is reasonably scented to find out, speedy and quick of Foot to follow, and Fierce and Strong to take and overcome: and yet silent, coming upon his Prey at unawares, according to the Observation of *Grotius*.

*Sic Canis illa suos taciturna supervenit hostes.*

The best Grey-Hound hath a long Body, Strong, and reasonably great, not so big as the Wolf-Dog in Ireland; a neat sharp Head, and splendid Eyes, a long Mouth; and sharp Teeth; little Ears, and thin Gristles in them; a straight Neck, and a broad and strong Breast; his fore Legs strait and short, his hinder Legs long and straight; broad Shoulders, round Ribs, fleshy Buttocks, but not fat; a long Tail, strong, and full of Sinews. Thus *Nemesian* eloquently describes the best of Grey-Hounds:

*Sit cruribus altis,  
Costarum sub fine decenter prona carinam:  
Renbius ampla satis validis deductaq; ceras*

*Sit*



*Sit rigidis, multamq; gerat sub pectore lato,  
 Quæ sensim rursus sicca se colligat alvo:  
 Cuiq; nimis molles fluitent in cursibus Aures.  
 Elige tunc cursu facilem, facilemq; recursu,  
 Dum superant vires, dum læto flore juventus.*

Of this Kind, that is always the best to be chosen amongst the Whelps, which weigheth lightest; for it will be soonest at the Game, and so hang upon it, hindering its Swiftnes, till the stronger and heavier Dogs come to Help and offer their Assistance; and therefore besides the Marks, or Necessary good Part of a *Grey-hound* already spoken of, it is requisite that he have large Sides, and a broad Midriff, that so he may take his Breath in and out more easily: His Belly must be small; if otherwise, it will hinder the Swiftnes of his Course: Likewise he must have long Legs, thin and soft Hairs. And these must the Huntsman lead on his Left Hand, if he be on Foot; and on the Right, if on Horseback.

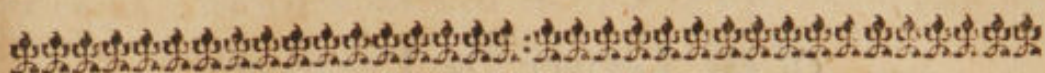
The best Time to try them and train them to their Game, is at twelve Months old; yet some begin sooner with them, that is at ten Months, if they are Males, and at eight if Females: Yet it is surest not to strain them, or permit them to run a long Course, till they be twenty Months old. Keep them also in the Slip while they are abroad, until they can see their Course, and loosen not a young Dog, until the Game have been on Foot for a good Season, lest being over-greedy of the Prey, he strain his Limbs too much.

The *Grey-hounds* which are most in request among the *Germans*, are called *Windspil*, alluding to compare their Swiftnes to the Wind; but the *French* make most Account of those that are bred in the Mountains of *Dalmatia*, or in any other Mountains, especially of *Turkey*; for such have hard Feet, long Ears, and bristle Tails.

The *Grey-hound* (called by the Latins *Leporarius*) hath his Name from the Word *Gre*, which Word soundeth *Gradus* in *Latin*, in *English* Degree; because among all Dogs, these are the most Principal, having the  
 chiefest



chiefeft Place, and being fimpfy and abfolutely the beft of the gentle Kind of Hounds.



### Of the Harrier and Terrier.

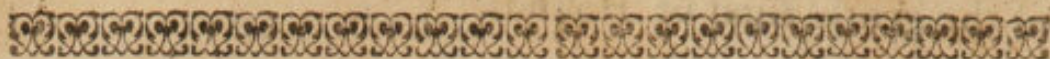
**T**HE *Harrier* in Latin is called *Leveratius*, or *Sagax*; by the Greeks, *Ichneuten*, of tracing or chafing by the Foot.

Nature hath endowed this Creature with an admirable gift of Smelling, and is bold and couragious in the purfuit of his Game. There are feveral Sorts of them, and all differ in their Services: Some are for the *Hare*, the *Fox*, the *Wolf*, the *Hart*, the *Buck*, the *Badger*, the *Otter*, the *Polecat*, the *Weafle*, the *Coney*, &c. fome for one Thing, fome for another.

As for the *Coney*, we ufe not to hunt, but take it fometimes with a Net, fometimes with a *Ferret*, and fometimes with a Lurcher or Tumbler. Among the feveral Sorts of *Harriers*, there are fome which are apt to hunt two divers Beafte, as the *Fox* fometimes, and otherwhiles the *Hare*; bur they hunt not with that good Successe and Towardneffe, who ftick not to one Sort of Game.

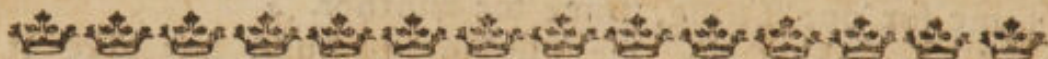
The *Terrier* hunteth the *Fox*, and the *Badger* or *Grey* only: And they are called *Terriers*, becaufe they (after the Manner and Custom of *Ferrets* in fearching for *Conneys*) creep into the Ground, and by that Means affright nip, and bite the *Fox* and the *Badger*, in fuch Sort, that either they tear them in Pieces with their Teeth, being in the Bosom of the Earth, or elfe hale and pull them by Force out of their lurking Angles, dark Dungeons, and clofe Caves; or at the leaft, through conceived Fear, drive them out of their hollow Harbours, infomuch, if they are not taken by Net or otherwife, they are compelled to prepare for Flight, and being defirous of the next, tho' not the fafeft Refuge, they are oft-times entrapped with Snares and Nets laid over Holes for the fame Purpofe.





*Of the Leviner, or Lyemmer.*

**T**HE *Leviner* is singular in Smelling, and in Swift-ness incomparable. This is as it were a middle Kind between the *Harrier* and the *Grey-hound*, as well for his Kind, as the Frame and Shape of his Body. It is called in *Latin Levinarius*, a *levitate*, of light-ness, and therefore may well be called a *Light-hound*. This Dog, for the excellency of his Conditions, namely, Smelling and swift Running, doth follow the Game with more Eagerness, and taketh the Prey with a jolly Quickness.



*Of the Tumbler.*

**T**HE Word *Tumbler* undoubtedly had its Derivation from the *French* Word *Tumbier*, which signifies to Tumble; to which the *Latin* Name agrees, *Vertagus* from *Vertere* to turn, and so they do: For in Hunting they turn and tumble, winding their Bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the Beast, do suddenly gripe it at the very Entrance or Mouth of the Holes or Receptacles, before they can make any Recovery of Self-Security.

This Dog useth another Craft and Subtilty, namely, when he runneth into a Warren, or fetcheth a Course about a *Coney-borough*, he hunts not after them, he no ways affrights them, he shews no Spite against them; but dissembling Friendship, and pretending Favour, passeth by with Quietness and Silence, marking their Holes diligently, wherein he seldom is deceived. When he cometh to a Place where there is a certainty of *Coneys*, he coucheth down close with his Belly to the Ground, provided always by his Skill and Policy, that  
the



the Wind be against him in that Enterprize, and that the *Coneys* discover him not where he lurketh; by which Means he gets the benefit of the Scent of the *Coneys*, which is carryed to him by the Wind and Air, either going to their Holes, or coming out, either passing this Way, or running that Way, and so ordereth the Business by his Circumspection, that the silly *Coney* is debarred quite from his Hole (which is the Haven of their Hope, and the Harbour of their Safety) and fraudulently circumvented and taken before they can get the Advantage of their Holes. Thus having caught his Prey, he carrieth it speedily to his Master, waiting his Dog's Return in some convenient lurking Corner.

These Dogs are somewhat lesser then the Hounds, being lanker, leaner, and somewhat prick-ear'd. By the Form and Fashion of their Bodies they may be justly called *Mungrel Grey-hounds*, if they were somewhat bigger. But notwithstanding they countervail not the *Grey-hound* in greatness, yet will he take in one Days Space as many *Coneys* as shall arise to as big a Burden, and as heavy a Load as a Horse can carry: For Craft and Subtilty are the Instruments whereby he maketh this Spoil, which pernicious Properties supply the Places of more commendable Qualities.

Let this suffice for a Taste. Now, after such Dogs as serve Hunting, will follow such as serve for Hawking and Fowling; among which, the principal and chiefeft is the *Spaniel*, called in *Latin Hispaniolus*, borrowing his Name for *Hispania*; wherein we *Englisb* Men, not pronouncing the Aspiration *H*, nor the Vowel *I*, for Quickness and Readiness of Speech, say, *Spaniel*.







*Of the Spaniel.*

THE RE are two Sorts of Dogs which necessarily serve for Fowling. The first findeth Game on the Land, the other on the Water. Such as delight on the Land, play their Parts either by Swiftnes of Foot, or by often Questing, to search out and to Spring the Bird for further Hope of Reward, or else by some secret Sign and privy Token, discover the Place where they fall. The first Kind of such serve the *Hawk*; the second, the Net or Train. The first Kind have no peculiar Names assigned them, except they are named after the Bird, which by natural Appointment he is allotted to take: for which Consideration, some are called Dogs for the *Falcon*, the *Pheasant*, the *Partridge*, and such like: They are commonly called by one Name, *viz. Spaniels*, as if they originally came from *Spain*.

The *Spaniel*, whose Service is required in Fowling on the Water, partly through natural Inclination, and partly by diligently Teaching, is properly called *Aquaticus*, as *Water-Spaniel*, because he hath usual Recourse to the Water, where all his Game lieth, namely, *Water-Fowl*, which are taken by their Help in their Kind.

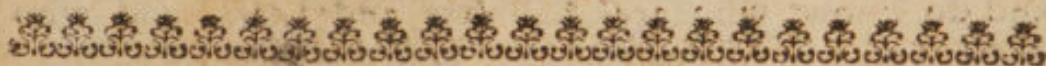
His Size is somewhat big, and of a measurable greatness, having long, rough, and curled Hair, which must be clipt in due Season: For by lessening that superfluity of Hair, they become more light and swift, and are less hindered in Swimming. *Ducks* and *Drakes* are his principal Game; whereupon he is likewise named a Dog for a *Duck*, because in that Quality he is excellent.





### *Of the White-Hound.*

Those Hounds which are all of one Colour, as all White, are the best Hounds; in like manner those which are spotted with Red: But those which are spotted with a dun Colour, are of little Value, being faint-hearted, and cannot endure much Labour: But should they happen to be whelpt coal-black, which is but seldom, they commonly prove incomparable Hounds: But if White Hounds are spotted with Black, Experience tells us, they are never the best *Hare*-hunters. White, and black and white, and grey streaked white, are also the most beautiful.



### *Of Fallow-Hounds.*

They are hardy, and of good Scent, keeping well their Chase without Change; but not so swift as the White. They are of a strong Constitution, and do not fear the Water; running surely, and are very hardy, commonly loving the *Hart* beyond any other Chase.

The best Complection for these *Fallow-hounds*, is the lively Red; and such as have a white Spot in their Forehead, or have a Ring about their Neck; but those which are yellowish, and spotted with Black or Dun, are of little Estimation. Those which are well jointed, having good Claws, are fit to make Blood-hounds; and those which have shagged Tails, are generally swift Runners. These Hounds are fitter for Princes than private Gentlemen, because they seldom run more than one Chase; neither have they any great Stomach to the *Hare*, or other small Chases; and, which is worst of all, they are apt to run at tame Beasts.





*Of the Dun-Hounds.*

THESE are good of all Chases, and therefore of general Use. The best coloured are such as are dun on the Back, having their four Quarters tanned, or of the Complexion of a *Hare's* Legs: But if the Hair on the Back be black, and their Legs freckled with Red and Black, they then usually prove excellent Hounds: And indeed, there are few dun-coloured to be found bad; the worst of them are such whose Legs are of a whitish Colour. It is wonderful, in these Creatures, to observe how much they stick upon the Knowledge of their Master, especially his Voice and Horn, and none's else. Nay, farther, they know the distinct Voices of their Fellows, and do know who are Babblers and Liars, and who not; and will follow the one, and not the other.

Now for Hounds, the West Country, *Cheshire*, and *Lancashire*, with other Wood-land and Mountainous Countries, breed our *Slow-hounds*; which is a large great Dog, tall and heavy. *Worcestershire*, *Bedfordshire*, and many well mixt Soils, where the Champaign and Covert are of equal Largeness, produce a middle-sized Dog, of a more nimble Composure than the former. Lastly, The North Parts, as *Yorkshire*, *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and many other plain Champaign Countries, breed the light, nimble, swift, slender, fleet Hound. After all these, the little Beagle is attributed to our Country; this is that Hound, which in *Latin* is called *Canis Agasæus*, or the *Gaze-hound*. Besides our Mastiff, which seems to be an *Indigena*, or Native of *England*: We train up most excellent Grey-hounds (which seem to have been brought hither by the *Calls*) in our open Champaigns. All these Dogs have deserved to be famous in adjacent and remote Countries, whither they are sent for great Rarities, and ambitiously sought for by their Lords and Princes; altho' only the fighting Dogs seem to have been known to the ancient Authors;  
and



and perhaps in that Age, Hunting was not so much cultivated by our own Countrymen.

*The Marks of a good and fair Hound*

His Head ought to be of a middle Proportion, rather long than round; his Nostrils wide; his Ears large; his Back bowed; the Fillets great; the Hanches large; the Thighs well trussed; the Ham straight; the Tail big near the Reins, and the rest slender to the End; the Leg big; the Sole of the Foot dry, and formed like a Fox's, with the Claws great.

*Of the Election of a Dog, and Bitch for good Whelps.*

Your Bitch must come of a good Kind, being strong, and well proportioned in all Parts, having her Ribs and Flanks great and large. Let the Dog that lines her, be of a good fair Breed; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot Hounds; for if the Dog be old, the Whelps will participate of his dull and heavy Nature.

If your Bitch grow not naturally proud so soon as you would have, you may make her so by taking two Heads of Garlick, half a Castor's Stone, the Juice of Cresses, and about twelve *Spanish* Flies, or Cantharides: Boil these together in a Pipkin which holds a Pint, with some Mutton, and make Broth thereof; and of this give to the Bitch twice or thrice, and she will infallibly grow proud. The same Pottage given to the Dog, will make him desirous of Copulation.

When your Bitch is lined, and with puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will be the Way to make her cast her Whelps; but let her unconfined, walk up and down in the House and Court, and never lock her up in her Kennel; for she is then impatient of Food; and therefore you must make her some hot Broth once a Day.



If you would spay your Bitch, it must be done before she ever had a Litter of Whelps ; and in spaying her, take not away all the Roots or Strings of the Veins ; for if you do, it will much prejudice her Reins, and hinder her Swiftnesse ever after : But by leaving some behind, it will make her much the stronger and more hardy. Whatever you do, spay her not when she is Proud ; for that will endanger her Life : But you may do it fifteen Days after. But the best time of all is, when the Whelps are shaped within her.

*How to enter young Hounds to Hunt the Hart ; and what Quarries and Rewards you shall give them.*

Having first taught your Hounds to know your Hallow, and the Sound of your Horn ; then about eighteen Months old, you must lead them once a Week into the Fields, and not oftner.

The best manner to teach you Hounds, is to take a live Hare, and trail her after you upon the Earth, now one way, now another ; and so, having drawn it a convenient Space, hide it in the Earth : Afterwards set forth your Hound near the Trail, who taking Wind, runneth to and fro near the Woods, Fields, Pastures, Path-ways, and Hedges, until he find which Way the Hare is gone, but with a soft and gentle Pace, until at length coming near the lodged Hare, he mendeth his Pace, and bestirreth himself more speedily, leaping on his Prey, and killing it, loadeth himself with his Conquest, and bringing it to his Master with Triumph, he must receive both Dog and it with all Tokens of Love into his Bosom.

When you hunt, let your Hare be in Prime of Grease, for then he is heavier than in April or May, and cannot stand up so long.

Then chuse your Forest, wherein the Relays are of equal Proportion ; then place all your young Hounds, with five or six old to enter them ; and then lead them to the farthest and last Relay, and cause the Hare to be hunted unto them. Being come up, uncouple your old Hounds ; and having found the Track of the Hare, being well entred in cry, uncouple likewise your young Hounds ;



Hounds; and if you find any of them lag behind, you must beat or whip them forward.

In what Place soever you kill the *Hart*, immediately flay his Neck, and reward your Hounds; for it is best whilst it is hot so to do.

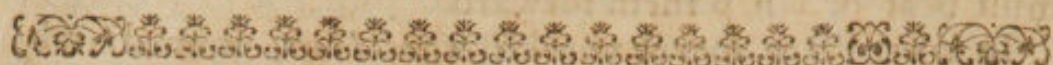
There are several Ways of entring Hounds: As first, by taking a *Hart* in Nets, and after you have cut off one of his Feet, let him go: A Quarter of an Hour after, assemble your young Hounds; and having found out the View or Slot of the *Hart* or *Buck* by your Bloodhounds, uncouple your young Hounds, and let them hunt. Secondly, you may bring them to quarry, by taking half a Dozen Huntsmen, swift of Foot, each whereof shall have two Couple to lead in Liams; and having unlodg'd the *Hart*, pursue him fair and softly, so that you tire not too much your young Hounds. After the *Hart* hath run two or three Hours, and that you find he begins to sink, you may then cast off your young Hounds: But beware it be not when he is at Bay, and his Head full summed; for so you may endanger the Lives of your Hounds.

But the best Way of entring the Hounds is at the *Hare*; for thereby they will learn all Doubles and Turns, better know the Hallow, will be more tender nosed, and better scented, by using the beaten Ways and Champaign Grounds.

Here note, that with whatsoever you first enter your Hounds, and therewith reward them, they will ever after love that most. Wherefore, if you intend them for the *Hart*, enter them not first with the *Hinde*. And for the better hunting the *Hart*, enter not your young Hounds within a Toil; for there a *Hart* doth nothing but turn and cast about, since he cannot run end-long, and so they are always in Sight of him. If then afterwards you should run at Force out of a Toil, and at length, and out of Sight, you will find the Hounds to give him over quickly.

Lastly, enter not your Hounds nor teach them in the Morning; for if so, you will find them apt to give over in the Heat of the Day.





## Of Courſing with Grey-Hounds.

I Need not declare the Excellencies which are contained in the noble and worthy Exercise of Courſing with *Grey-hounds*, ſince it is ſo well known to all Gentlemen who take Delight in this pleaſant and healthy Paſtime : I ſhall therefore only inſiſt upon the Breed of *Grey-hounds*, their Shape, their Diet, and the Laws belonging to the ſame, according as they were commanded, allowed, and ſubſcribed by the Duke of *Norfolk*, in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*.

First, for the breeding of *Grey-hounds* : In this you muſt have Reſpect to the Country, which ſhould be champaign, plain, or high Downs. The beſt Valleys are thoſe of *Belvoir*, *White-horſe*, and *Eveſholm*, or any other where there are no Coverts, ſo that a *Hare* may ſtand forth and endure a Courſe of two or three Miles. As for high Downs or Heaths, the beſt are about *Marlborough*, *Salisbury*, *Cirenceſter*, and *Lincoln*.

Though theſe Places are very commodious for the breeding and training up of *Grey-hounds* ; yet in my Opinion, the middle, or moſt Part arable Grounds are the beſt ; and yet thoſe Gentlemen who dwell on Downs or plain Grounds, to keep up the Reputation of their own Dogs, affirm, that they are more nimble and cunning in turning than the Vale-Dogs are : And Mr. *Markham* confeſſeth, that he hath ſeen a Vale-Dog ſo much deceived, that upon a Turn he hath loſt more Ground than hath been recoverable in the whole Courſe after : However, with a little Care in a ſhort Time this Error may be reſtified ; and then you will experimentally find, *The good Dogs upon the Deeps will ever beat the good Dogs upon the plains.*

It is a received Opinion, that the *Grey-hound* Bitch will beat the *Grey-hound* Dog, by Reaſon ſhe excelleth him in Nimbleneſs : But if you conſider that the Dog is longer  
and



and stronger, you must look upon that Opinion no more than as a vulgar Error.

Here note, as to the Breeding of *Grey-hounds*, that the best Dog upon an indifferent Bitch, will not get so good a Whelp, as an indifferent Dog upon the best Bitch.

Observe this in general as to Breeding, let your Dogs and Bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal Age, not exceeding four Years old: However, to breed with a young Dog and an old Bitch, may be the Means of producing excellent Whelps, the Goodness whereof you shall know their Shapes in by this Manner.

If they are raw-bon'd, lean, loose made, fickle or crooked-hough'd, and generally unknit in every Member; these are the proper Marks of excellent Shape and Goodness: But if after three or four Months they appear round and close truss'd, fat, straight, and as it were full summed, and knit in every Member, they never prove good, swift, nor comely.

The Goodness of Shape in a *Grey-hound* after a Year and a half old, is this: His Head must be lean and long, with a sharp Nose, rush grown from the Eye downward; a full clear Eye, with long Eye lids; a sharp Ear, short and close falling; a long Neck a little bending, with a loose hanging Weasand; a broad Breast, straight Fore-legs, hollow Side, straight Ribs; a square flat Back, short and strong Fillets, a broad Space between the Hips, a strong Stern or Tail, a round Foot, and good large Clefts.

The Dieting of *Grey-hounds* consists in these four things: Food, Exercise, Airing, and Kennelling.

Food of a *Grey-hound* is two-fold: General, that is, the maintaining of a Dog in good bodily Condition; and Particular, when the Dog is dieted for a Wager, or it may be for some Distemper he is afflicted with.

A *Grey-hound's* general Food ought to be Chippings, Crusts of Bread, soft Bones, and Gristles. Your Chippings ought to be scalded in Beef, Mutton, Veal, or Venison Broth; and when it is indifferently cool, then make your Bread only float with good Milk, and give it your *Grey-hounds* Morning and Evening; and this will keep them in good State of Body.



But if your Dog be poor, ſickly, and weak, then take Sheeps-heads, Wool and all, clean waſhed, and having broken them to Pieces, put them into a Pot; and when it boils, ſcum the Pot, and put therein good Store of Oatmeal, and ſuch herbs as Pottage is uſually made of; boil theſe till the Fleſh be very tender; then with the Meat and Broth feed your Dogs Morning and Evening, and it will recover them.

If you deſign your *Grey-hound* for a Wager, then give him this Diet-bread. Take half a Peck of the fineſt and drieſt Oatmeal, and a Peck of good Wheat; having ground them together, boul't the Meal, and ſcattering an indifferent Quantity of Liquoriſh and Anniſeeds well beaten together, knead it up with the Whites of Eggs, new Ale and Barm mixt together, and bake it in ſmall Loaves indifferent hard; then take it and ſoak it in Beef, or any of the aforeſaid Broths; and half an Hour after Sun-riſing, and half an Hour after its Setting, having firſt walk'd and air'd your *Grey-hound*, give it him to eat. This will not only encrease his Strength, but enlarge his Wind.

Having thus ſpoken of a *Grey-hound's* Feeding, either generally or particularly, either for keeping him in Health, or reſtoring it when it is loſt, I ſhall in the next Place proceed to his Excerciſe; and this likewise conſiſts in Two Things; that is, Courſing and Air-ing.

As to the firſt, he ought to be Courſed thrice a Week, in ſuch Manner that you uſually reward him with Blood, which will animate and encourage him to proſecute his Game: But be not unmindful to give the *Hare* all juſt and lawful Advantage, ſo that ſhe may ſtand long before the *Grey-hound*, that thereby he may ſhew his utmoſt Strength and Skill before he reap the Benefit of his Labour.

If he kill, ſuffer him not to break the *Hare*, but take her from him, and having cleanſed his Chaps from the Wool of the *Hare*, then give him the Liver, Lights, and Heart, and ſo take him up in your Leaſh; and having led him Home, waſh his Feet with ſome Butter and Beer, and then put him into the Kennel, and Feed him half an Hour afterwards.

Upon



Upon your *Grey-hound's* Courſing-days, give him in the Morning before you air him, a Toaſt and Butter, or Oyl, and nothing elſe; then Kennel him till he go to his Courſe.

The Reason of Kennelling your *Grey-hounds* is this, becauſe it breeds in Dogs Luſt, Spirit, and Nimble-neſs; beſides, it prevents ſeveral dangerous Casualties, and keeps the Pores from ſpending till Time of Neceſſity; therefore do not permit your Dog to ſtir out of the Kennel, but in the Hours of Feeding, Walking, Courſing, or other neceſſary Buſineſs.

*The Laws of the Leaſh or Courſing.*

Though the Laws of Courſing may alter according to ſome Mens ſwaying Fancies; yet theſe, ſubſcribed by the chief of the Gentry, were ever held authentical. Take them thus in order, according to my Collection out of Mr. Markham.

First, it was ordered, that he who was choſen *Fewterer*, or Letter-looſe of the *Grey-hounds*, ſhould receive the *Grey-hound's* Match to run together into his Leaſh, as ſoon as he came into the Field, and follow next to the *Hare-finder* till he came unto the Form; and no Horſe-man or Footman, on Pain of Diſgrace, to go before him, or on any Side, but directly behind, the Space of forty Yards, or thereabouts.

2. That not above one Brace of *Grey-hounds* do courſe a *Hare* at one Inſtant.

3. That the *Hare-finder* ſhould give the *Hare* three *Soho's* before he put her from her *Lear*, to make the *Grey-hounds* gaze, and attend her riſing.

4. That the *Fewterer* ſhall give twelve-ſcore Law e're he looſe the *Grey-hounds*, except it be in danger of loſing Sight.

5. That Dog that giveth the firſt *Turn*, if after the *Turn* be given, there be neither *Coat*, *Slip*, nor *Wrench* extraordinary; I ſay, he which gave the firſt *Turn* ſhall be held to win the Wager.

6. If one Dog give the firſt *Turn*, and the other bear the *Hare*, then he which bore the *Hare* ſhall win.

7. If



7. If one give both the firſt and laſt *Turn*, and no other Advantage between them, the odd *Turn* ſhall win the Wager.

8. That a *Coat* ſhall be more than two *Turns*, and a *Go-by*, or the *Bearing* of the *Hare*, equal with two *Turns*.

9. If neither Dog turn the *Hare*, then he which leadeth laſt at the *Covert*, ſhall be held to win the Wager.

10. If one Dog turn the *Hare*, ſerve himſelf, and turn her again, thoſe two *Turns* ſhall be as much as a *Coat*.

11. If all the Courſe be equal, then he which bears the *Hare* ſhall win only; and if ſhe be not *born*, the Courſe muſt be adjudged dead.

12. If he which comes firſt in to the Death of the *Hare*, takes her up, and ſaves her from breaking, cheriſhing the Dogs, and cleanſeth their Mouths from the Wool, or other Filth of the *Hare*, for ſuch Courteſy done, he ſhall in Right challenge the *Hare*: But not doing it, he ſhall have no Right, Priviledge, or Title therein.

13. If any Dog ſhall take a Fall in the Courſe, and yet perform his Part, he ſhall challenge the Advantage of a *Turn* more than he giveth.

14. If one Dog turn the *Hare*, ſerve himſelf, and give divers *Coats*, yet in the End ſtand ſtill in the Field, the other Dog, without *Turn* giving, running Home to the *Covert*; that Dog which ſtood ſtill in the Field ſhall be adjudged to loſe the Wager.

15. If any Man ſhould ride over a Dog, and overthrow him in his Courſe, (though the Dog were the worſe Dog in Opinion, yet) the Party for the Offence ſhall either receive the Diſgrace of the Field, or pay the Wager; for between the Parties it ſhall be adjudged no Courſe.

16. Laſtly, thoſe which are choſen *Judges* of the *Leaſt* ſhall give their Judgments preſently before they depart from the Field, or elſe he in whoſe Default it lieth, ſhall pay the Wager by a general Voice and Sentence.



Here note, that it lieth in the Power of him that hath the Office of the *Leash* conferred on him, to make Laws according to the Customs of the Countries, and the Rule of Reason.



*Of the Stiles of Hunting different from the English, both Antique and Foreign.*

THE Hunting used by the Ancients was much like that Way which is at Present taken with the *Rain-Deer*, which is seldom hunted at Force, or with Hounds, but only drawn after with a Blood-hound, and forestalled with Nets and Engines. So did they with all Beasts; and therefore a Dog is never commended by them for opening, before he hath by Signs discovered where the Beast lieth in his *Layre*, as by their drawing stiff our Harbourers are brought to give right Judgment. Therefore I do not find, that they were curious in the Musick of their Hounds, or in a Composition of their Kennel or Pack, either for Deepness, or Loudness, or Sweetness of Cry like to ours. Their Huntsmen were accustomed to shout and make a great Noise, as *Virgil* observes in the third of his *Georgicks*.

*Ingentem clamore preme ad retia Cervum.*

So that it was only with that Confusion to bring the *Deer* to the Nets laid for him.

But we comfort our Hounds with loud and courageous Cries and Noises, both of Voice and Horn, that they may follow over the same Way that they saw the *Hart* pass, without crossing or coasting.

The *Sicilian* Way of Hunting was this. When the Nobles or Gentry were informed which Way a Herd of *Deer* passed, giving Notice to one another, they appointed a Meeting, and every one brought with him a Cross-bow, or a Long-bow, and a Bundle of Staves.

These



These Staves had an Iron Spike at the Bottom, and their Head is bored, with a Cord drawn through all of them; their Length is about four Foot. Being thus provided, they come to the Herd, and there casting themselves about in a large Ring, they surround the *Deer*; and then every one of them receives a peculiar Stand, and there, unbinding his Faggot, ties the End of his Cord to the other who is set in the next Station; then to Support it, sticks into the Ground each Staff, about the Distance of ten Foot one from the other. Then they take out Feathers, which they bring with them, dyed in Crimson for this very Purpose, and fastned upon a Thread which is tied to the Cord, so that with the least Breath of Wind they are whirled round about. Those which keep the several Stands, withdraw and hide themselves in the next Covert. After this, the chief Ranger enters within the Line, taking with him only such Hounds which draw after the Herd; and coming near with their Cry, rouse them: Upon which the *Deer* fly till they come towards the Line, where they turn off towards the Left, and still gazing upon the shaking and shining Feathers, wander about them as if they were kept in with a Wall or Pale. The chief Ranger Pursues, and calling to every one by Name, as he passeth by their Stand, cries to them, that they shoot the first, third, or sixth, as he shall please; and if any of them miss, and single out any other than that which was assigned by the Ranger, it is counted a Disgrace to him; by which Means, as they pass by the several Stations, the whole Herd is killed by several Hands. This Relation is of undoubted Truth, as you may find it in *Pierus* his *Hieroglyphicks*. Lib. 7. Cap. 6.

*Boar* Hunting is very usual in *France*, and they call it *Sanglier*. In this Sort of Hunting, the Way is to use furious terrible Sounds and Noises, as well of Voice as Horn, to make the Chase turn and fly; because they are slow, and trust to their Tusks and Defence; which is *Agere Aprum*, to bait the *Boar*. Yet this must be done after his Den or Hold is discovered, and the Nets be pitched,



The Huntsmen give Judgment of the *Wild-Boar* by the Print of his Foot, by his Rooting. A Wild-swine roots deeper than our ordinary Hogs, because their Snouts are longer; and when he comes into a Corn-Field, (as the *Caledonian-Boar* in *Ovid*) turns up one continued Furrow, not as our Hogs, rooting here and there; and then by his Soil, he soils and wallows him in the Myre. These are his *Volutabra Silvestria*, where his Greatness is measured out; then coming forth, he rubs against some Tree, which marks his Height; as also when he sticks his Tusk into it, that shews the Greatness thereof. They observe the Bigness of his Lessees, and the Depth of his Den; where note, that they call his Dung by the Name of *Lessis*.

Whensoever the *Boar* is hunted and stands at Bay, the Huntsmen ride in, and with Swords and Spears striking on that Side which is from their Horses, wound or kill him. This is in the *French* Hunting: But the ancient *Romans* standing on Foot, or setting their Knees to the Ground, and charging directly with their Spear, did *Opponere Ferrum*, and *Excipere Aprum*: for such is the Nature of a *Boar*, that he spits himself with Fury, running upon the Weapon to come at his Adversary; and so seeking his Revenge, he meets with his own Destruction.

Though these *Wild-Boars* are frequent in *France*, we have none in *England*; yet it may be supposed, that heretofore we had, and did not think it convenient to preserve that Game: for our old Authors of Hunting reckon them amongst the Beasts of Venerie; and we have the proper Terms belonging to them, as you may find them at the Beginning of the Book. Of *Boar*-hunting you will read more hereafter.

There are no *Roe-Deer* in *England*; but there are Plenty of them in *Scotland*, as *Sir James Lindsay*, an old *Scottish* Writer testifies.

Yet in may be thought that they have been more common in *England*, because our ancient Huntsmen acknowledge the proper Terms for this Chase; and in the first Place we have distinct Ages for these *Dorces*, which we shall find in the Terms aforesaid. They make good Chase, stand long, and fly end-way. *Compellere*



*pellere Dorcas*, is to force the *Bevy*, and to drive them into the *Toyls*.

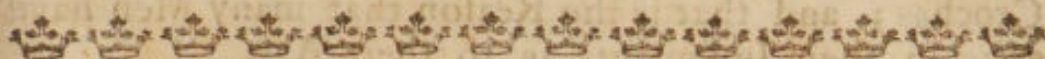
Although we have no *Wolves* in *England* at this present, yet it is certain, that heretofore we had Routs of them, as they have to this very Day in *Ireland*; and in that Country are bred a Race of *Grey hounds*, (which are commonly called *Wolf-Dogs*) which are strong, fleet, and bear a natural Enmity to the *Wolf*. Now in these the *Grey-hounds* of that Nation, there is an incredible Force and Boldness, so that they are in great Estimation, and much sought after in Foreign Parts, so that the King of *Poland* makes Use of them in his hunting of great Beasts by Force. Wherefore it may well be intended of the great Fierceness which these *Dogs* have in assaulting, that when the *Romans* saw them play, they thought them so wonderful violent, as that they must needs have been *Ferreis caveis advesti*, brought up in Iron Dens.

In *Poland*, when the King hunts, his Servants are wont to surround a Wood, though a Mile in Compass, with *Toyls* which are pitched on firm Stakes. This being done, the whole Town, all Sexes and Ages, promiscuously rush into the Inclosure, and with their loud Shouts rear all the Beasts within that Wood; which making forth, are intercepted in the Nets. There small and great Beasts are intangled together, after the same manner, as when amongst us we draw a Net over a Pond, and after beating it all over with Poles, we bring out not only *Pike* and *Carp*, but lesser Fry; so they inclose at once *Deer*, *Boar*, *Roe-buck*, and *Hare*: For so they order their Nets, that the space of those Meshes which are twisted with greater Cords, for the entangling of greater Beasts; that Space, I say, is made up with smaller Whip-cord, for the catching smaller Prey.

He hath a great Race of *English* Mastiffs, which in that Country retain their Generosity, and are brought up to play upon greater Beasts. It is not counted amongst them disagreeable to the Laws of the Chase, to use Guns. I shall now proceed to the Manner of *English* Hunting, both ancient and modern, according to the best Information I could gather, either  
out



out of Books, experienced Huntsmen, and my own Practice.



### Of Hart-Hunting.

**A** *Hart* can naturally swim a great Way; insomuch that I have heard of some so fore hunted in Forests near the Sea, that they have plunged into it, and have been killed by Fishermen a Dozen Miles from Land.

It is reported of them when they go to Rut, and must for that Purpose cross some great River or Arm of the Sea, they assemble in great Herds, the Strongest goes in first, and the next of Strength follows him, and so one after the other, relieving themselves by staying their Heads on the Buttocks of each other.

The *Hind* commonly carries her Calf eight or nine Months, which usually falls in May, although some alter: Some of them have two at once, eating the Skin up, wherein the Calf did lye.

As the Calf grows up, she teacheth it to run, leap, and the Way it must keep to defend itself from the Hounds.

*Harts* and *Hinds* are very long-lived, living commonly an hundred Years and upwards.

### The Nature of a Hart.

The *Hart* is strangely amazed when he hears any one call, or whistle in his Fift: For Tryal of which, some seeing a *Hart* in the plain in Motion, have called after him, saying, *Ware, Ware*, or, *Take Heed*; and thereupon have seen him instantly turn back, making some little Stand. He heareth very perfectly when his Head and Ears are erected; but heareth imperfectly, when he holdeth them down. When he is on Foot,  
and



and not afraid, he wonders at every Thing that he seeth, and taketh Pleasure to gaze at them.

They bear sometimes few, and sometimes more Croches; and that is the Reason that many Men have erred in their Judgments as to their Age.

*Harts* are bred in most Countries; but the Ancients do prefer those of *Britain* before all others, where they are of divers Colours.

These do excel all others in the Beauty of Horns; which are very high, yet do not grow to their Bones or Scalps, but to their Skin, branching forth into many Spears, being solid throughout, and as hard as Stones, and fall off once a Year: But if they remain abroad in the Air, and that thereby they are sometimes wet and dry, they grow as light as any vanishing or other Substance, as I have proved by Experience, finding some which have been lost by them in the Woods; wherefore I gather that they are of an earthly Substance, concrete and hardned with a strong Heat, made like unto Bones. They lose these Horns every year in the Spring. At one Year old they have nothing but Bunches, that are small Significators of Horns to come: At two Years they appear more perfectly, but straight and simple: At three Years they grow into two Spears: At four, into three; and so increase every Year in their Branches till they be six; and above that Time, their Age is not certainly to be discerned by their Head.

Having lost their Horns in the Day-time, they hide themselves, inhabiting the Shades, to avoid the Annoyance of Flies, and feed, during that Time only, in the Night. Their new Horns come out at first like Bunches, and afterwards (as I said before) by the Increase of the Sun's Heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough Skin, which is called a *Velvet Head*; and as that Skin drieth, they daily try the Strength of their new Heads upon Trees; which not only scrapeth off the Roughness, but by the Pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the Company of their Fellows; for at last, when in their Chafing and Fretting of their new Horn against the Tree, they can feel no longer Pain and Smart



Smart in them, they take it for high Time to forsake their solitary Dwellings, and return again to their former Condition.

The Reason why *Harts* and *Deers* do lose their Horns yearly, are these: First, because of the Matter whereof they consist; for it is dry and earthy, like the Substance of green Leaves which hath a yearly Fall, likewise wanting glewing, or holding Moisture to continue them; wherefore the Horn of a *Hart* cannot be bent. Secondly, from the Place they grow upon; for they are not rooted upon the Scull, but only within the Skin. Thirdly, from the efficient Cause: for they are hardned both with the Heat of Summer, and Cold of Winter; by Means whereof the Pores to receive their nourishing Liquor are utterly shut up and stopped, so as of Necessity their native Heat dieth; which falleth not out in other Beasts, whose Horns are for the most part hollow, and fitted for longer Continuance: But these are of lesser, and the new Bunches swelling up towards the Spring, do thrust off the old Horns, having the Assistance of Boughs of Trees, Weight of the Horns, or by the willing Excurssion of the Beast that beareth them.

It is observed, that when a *Hart* pricketh up his Ears, he windeth sharp, very far and sure, and discovereth all Treachery against him; but if they hang down and wag, he perceiveth no Danger. By their Teeth is their Age discerned, and they have four on both Sides wherewith they grind their Meat, besides two other, much greater in the Male than the Female. All these Beasts have Worms in their Heads underneath their Tongue, in a hollow Place where the Neck Bone is joined to the Head, which are no bigger than Flie-blows. His Blood is not like other Beasts, for it hath no Fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed. His Heart is very great, and so are all those of fearful Beasts, having in it a Bone like a Cross. He hath no Gall, and that is one of the Causes of the Length of his Life; and therefore are his Bowels so bitter, that the Dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat. The Genital Part is all Nervy, the Tail small; and the *Hind* hath Udders



betwixt her Thighs, with four Speans like a Cow. These are above all other four-footed Beasts, both ingenious and fearful, who although they have large Horns, yet their Defence against other four-footed Beasts, is to run away.

And now if you will credit *Gesner* as a Huntsman, pray here observe what Account he gives of Hunting the Hart. *This wild deceitful and subtile Beast, (says he) by Windings and Turnings does often deceive its Hunter, as the Harts of Meandros, flying from the terrible Cry of Diana's Hounds.* Wherefore the prudent Hunter must frame his Dogs as *Pythagoras* did his Scholars, with Words of Art, to set them on and take them off again at Pleasure; wherefore he must first of all encompass the Beast (*en son giste*) in her own Layr, and so unharbour her in the View of the Dogs, that so they may never lose her Slot or Footing: Neither must he set upon every one, either of the Herd, or those that wander solitary alone, or a little one; but partly by Sight, and partly by their Footing and Fumets, judge of their Game; also we must observe the Largeness of his Layr. Being thus informed, then *Discouplez les chiens*, take off your Dog Couplings; and some on Horseback, others on Foot, follow the Cry with greatest Art, Observation and Speed, remembering and preventing (*cer fruze*) the subtile Turnings and Headings of the Hart; standing with Dexterity to leap Hedge, Pale, Ditch, nay Rocks; neither fearing Thorns, down Hills, nor Woods, but providing fresh Horse if the first tire, follow the largest Head of the whole Herd, which you must endeavour to single out of the Chase; which the Dogs perceiving, must follow, taking for a Prohibition to follow any other.

The Dogs are animated by the Winding of Horns, and Voices of the Huntsmen, like Soldiers to the Battel by the Noise of Trumpets and other warlike Instruments: But sometimes the crafty great Beast sendeth forth his little Squire to be sacrificed to the Dogs and Huntsmen, instead of himself; lying close in the mean time. Then must a Retreat be sounded, and (*rompre le chiens*) the Dogs be broken off, and taken in (*le Limier*) that is, Leame again, until they be brought



brought to the fairer Game ; who ariseth in Fear yet still striveth by Flight, until he be wearied and breathless.

The Nobles call this Beast (*Cerf sage*) a wise Hart, who to avoid all his Enemies, runneth into the greatest Herds, and so bringeth a Cloud of Error on the Dogs, to keep them from further Prosecution ; sometimes also beating some of the Herd into his Footings, that so he may the more easily escape, and procure a Labyrinth to the Dogs : after which he betaketh himself to his Heels again, running still with the Wind, not only for Refrigeration, but because he may the more easily hear the Voice of his Pursuers, whether they be far or near. At last, being for all this found out again by the Observance of the Hunters, and skilful Scent of the Dogs, he flieth into the Herds of Cattel, as Cows, Sheep, &c. leaping on an Ox or Cow, laying the Foreparts of his Body thereon, that so touching the Earth only with his hinder Feet, to leave a very small, or no Scent at all, behind for the Hounds to discern.

The chief Huntsman to *Lewis* the Twelfth, ( call'd *le Grand Venieur* ) affirmeth, that on a Time, they having a Hart in Chase, suddenly the Hounds were at a Fault, so as the Game was out of Sight, and not a Dog would once stir his Foot ; whereat the Hunters were all amazed : At last, by casting about, ( as it is usual in such Cases ) they found the Fraud of the crafty Beast, which is worth the Memory.

There was a great White-thorn, which grew in a shadowy Place as high as a Tree, and was environed with other small Shrubs about it ; into which the said Hart leaped, and there stood aloft, the Boughs spreading from one another, and there remained till he was thrust through by a Huntsman, rather than he would yield to the angry and greedy Hounds. Yet their Manner is, when they see themselves every where intercepted, to make Force at him with their Horns who first comes unto him, except prevented by Sword or Spear ; which being done, the Hunter with his Horn windeth the Fall of the Beast, and then every one approacheth, luring with Triumph for such a Conquest,



of whom the skilfullest openeth the Beast, rewarding the Hounds with what properly belongeth unto them for their future Encouragement ; and for that Purpose the Huntsmen dip Bread in the Skin and Blood of the Beast, to give unto the Hounds their full Satisfaction.

*Veloces Spartæ catulos, acremq; Molossium  
Pasce fero pingui, &c.*

Much more might be said of this present Subject, which is not proper in this Place ; wherefore I shall refer to you what followeth, and your own Experience.

#### *Of the Rut of Harts.*

The Time of their Rutting is about the midst of *September*, and continues two Months, the older they are, the hotter, and the better beloved by the Hinds ; and therefore they go to rut before the young ones, and being very fiery, will not suffer any of them to come near the *Hinds* till they have satisfied their Veneries : But the young ones are even with the old, for when they perceive the old are grown weak by Excess of Rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the Place, that they may be Masters of the Sport.

They are easily killed in Rutting-time ; for they follow the Scent of the *Hinds* with such Greediness, laying their Noses to the Ground, that they mind that solely, and nothing else.

They are such great lovers of the Sport, it is very dangerous for any Man to come near them at this Season, for then they will make at any living Creature of different Kind.

In some Places, in *October* their Lust ariseth, and also in *May* ; and then, whereas at other Times the Males live apart from the Females, they go about like lascivious Lovers, seeking the Company of their Females, as it were at the Market of *Venus*.

The



The Males in their raging desired Lust have a peculiar Noise, which the *French* call *Reere*. One Male will cover a many Females, continuing in this carnal Appetite a Month or two. The Females are chaste, and unwilling to admit of Copulation, by Reason of the Rigour of the Male's Genetal; and therefore they sink down on their Buttocks, when they begin to feel his Seed, as it hath been often observed in tame *Harts*; and if they can, the Females run away, the Males striving to hold them back within their Fore-feet. It cannot be well said, that they are covered standing, lying, or going, but rather running; for so are they filled with greatest Severity. When one Month or six Weeks is over of their Rutting, they grow tamer by much, and laying aside all Fierceness, they return to their solitary Places, digging every one by himself a several Hole or Ditch, wherein they lye to assuage the strong Savour of their Lust; for they stink like Goats, and their Face beginneth to look blacker than at other Times; and in those Places they live till some Showers distil from the Clouds, after which, they return to their Pasture again, living in Flocks, as before.

The Female thus filled, never keepeth Company again with the Male until she is delivered of her Burden, which is eight Months; and but one at a Time, seldom two, which she lodgeth cunningly in some Covert. If she perceive them stubborn and wild, she will beat them with her Feet till they lye close and quiet.

Oftentimes she leadeth forth her young, teaching it to run and leap over Bushes, Stones, and small Shrubs, and so continueth all the Summer long, while their own Strength is most considerable.

It is very pleasant to observe them when they go to Rut, and make their Vaut: For when they smell the *Hind*, they raise their Nose up into the Air, looking aloft, as though they gave Thanks to the God of Nature, who gave them so great Delight and Pleasure. And if it be a great *Hart*, he will turn his Head and look about to see whether there be none near to intercept or spoil his Sport. Hereat the young fly away



for Fear: But if there be any of equal Bigness, they then strive which shall vaunt first: And in the opposing each other, they scrape the Ground with their Feet, shocking and butting each other so furiously, that you shall hear the Noise they make with their Horns a good half Mile, so long, till one or them is Victor. The *Hind* beholding this Pastime, never stirs from her Station, expecting, as it were, the Vauting of him who hath the Mastery; and having got it, he bellows, and then instantly covers her.

During the Time of their Rut, they eat but very little, for they feed only on what they see before them, minding more the Track of the *Hinds*. Their chief Meat is the red Mushrom, which helps them to evacuate their Grease: They are then extraordinary hot, insomuch that every where as they pass and find Waters, they tumble and lye therein.

*The Time of Harts Mewing, casting the Head.*

The old *Hart* casteth his Head sooner than the young; and the Time is about the Months of *February* and *March*.

Here note, that if you geld an *Hart* before he hath an Head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he hath it, he will never after Mew or cast it: And so, if you geld him when he hath a Velvet-head, it will ever be so, without fraying or burning.

Having cast their Heads, they instantly withdraw unto the Thickets, hiding themselves in such convenient Places where they may have good Water, and strong Feeding, near some Ground where Wheat or Pease is sown: But young *Harts* do never betake themselves to the Thickets till they have born their third Head, which is in the fourth Year.

After they have Mewed, they will begin to Button in *March* and *April*; and as the Sun grows strong, and the Season of the Year puts forward the Crop of the Earth, so will their Heads increase in all Respects:  
So



So that in the midst of *June* their Heads will be summed as much as they will bear all the Year.

*Of the Coats and Colour of Harts.*

The Coats of *Harts* are of three sundry Sorts, *Brown*, *Red*, and *Fallow*; and of every of these Coats there proceeds two Sorts of *Harts*, the one are great, the other little.

Of brown *Harts*, there are some great, long, and hairy, bearing a high Head, red of Colour, and well beamed, who will stand before Hounds very long, being longer of Breath, and swifter of Foot than those of a shorter Stature.

There are another Sort of brown *Harts*, which are little, short, and well-set, bearing commonly a black Main, and are fatter and better Venison than the former, by Reason of their better Feeding in young Coppes.

They are very crafty, especially when in Grease; and will be hardly found, because they know they are then most enquired after; besides, they are very sensible they cannot then stand long before the Hounds. If they be old, and feed in Good Ground, then are their Heads black, fair, and well-branched, and commonly palmed at the Top.

The *Fallow-harts* bears their Heads high, and of a whitish Colour, their Beams small, their Antlers long, slender and ill-grown, having neither Heart, Courage, nor Force. But those which are of a lively Red-fallow, having a black or brown Lift down the Ridge of the Back, are strong, bearing fair and high Heads, well furnished and beamed.

*Of the Heads and Branches of Harts, and their Diversities.*

As there are several Sorts of *Harts*, so have they their Heads in divers Sort and Manner, according to their Age, Country, Rest, and Feeding. Here note, that



they bear not their first Head, which we call *Broches*, and in a Fallow-Deer, Pricks, until they enter the second Year of their Age. In the third Year they bear four, six, or eight small Branches : at the fourth, they bear eight or ten : At the fifth, ten or twelve : At six, fourteen or sixteen ; and at the seventh Year, they bear their Heads beamed, branched, and summed with as much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply, but in Greatness only.

*How to know an old Hart by the Slot, Entries, Abatures, and Foils, Fewmets, Gate and Walks, Fraying-Stocks, Head and Branches.*

I shall proceed in Order, and first of the *Slot*. You must carefully look on the Treadings of the *Hart's* Foot : If you find the Treadings of two, the one long, and the other round, yet both of one Bigness ; yet shall the long Slot declare the *Hart* to be much larger than the round.

Moreover, the old *Hart's* Hind-foot doth never over-reach the Fore-foot ; the young ones doth.

But above all, take this Observation : When you are in the Wood, and have found the Slot of a *Hart*, mark what manner of Footing it is, whether worn, or sharp, and accordingly observe the Country, and thereby judge whether either may be occasioned thereby : For *Harts* bred in Mountains and stony Countries, have their Toes, and Sides of their Feet worn, by Reason of their continual climbing and resting themselves thereon, and not the on Heel ; whereas in other Places they stay themselves more on the Heel than Toes ; for in soft or sandy Ground, they slip upon the Heel, by Reason of their Weight ; and thus by frequent staying themselves thereon, it makes the Heel grow broader and greater. And thus you may know the Age of a *Hart* by his Slot or Treading.

The next Thing to be considered, is the Fewmishing, and this is to be judged of in *April* or *May*. If the Fewments be great, large, and thick, they signify the *Hart* to be old.



In the midst of *June* and *July*, they make their Fewments or Fewmishing in great Croteys, very soft; and from that Time to the End of *August*, they make them great, long, knotty, and anointed and gilded, letting them fall but few and scattered. In *September* and *October* there is no longer judging, by Reason of the Rut.

*Thirdly*, If you would know the Heighth and Thickness of the *Hart*, observe his Entries and Galleries into the Thickets, and what Boughs he hath over-stridden, and mark from thence the Heighth of his Belly from the Ground.

By the Heighth of the Entries, we judge the Age of a *Hart*; for a young Deer is such as creeps usually, but the old is stiff and stately.

His Greatness is known by the Heighth of his creeping as he passes to his Harbour, the young *Deer* creeping low, which the old will not stoop to.

*Fourthly*, Take notice of his Gate, by which you may know whether the *Hart* be great and long, and whether he will stand long before the Hounds or not. For all *Harts* which hath a long Step will stand up very long, being swift, light, and well breathed; but if he leave a great Slot, which is the Sign of an old *Deer*, he will never stand long when he is chased.

Lastly, Take notice of his Fraying-Post: Where note, the elder the *Hart* is, the sooner he goeth to Fray, and the greater is the Tree he seeketh the Fray upon, and such as he cannot bend with his Head.

All *Stags* as they are burnish'd, beat their Heads dry against some Tree or other, which is called their Fraying-post: The younger *Deer* against weaker and lesser Trees and lower, the elder against bigger and stronger, and Fray higher; so that accordingly we confidently judge of their Age, and of the nearness of their Harbour, for that is the last Ceremony they use before they enter it.

As to the Head and Branches, the *Hart* is old, first, when the compass of the Bur is large, great, and well pearled.

*Secondly*,



*Secondly*, When the Beam is great, burdened, and well pearled, being straight, and not made crooked by the Antlers.

*Thirdly*, When the Gutters therein are great and deep.

*Fourthly*, When the first *Antler*, called *Antoiller*, is great, long and near to the Bur; the *Surantlier* near unto the *Antler*; and they ought to be both well pearl'd.

*Fifthly*, The rest of the Branches which are higher, being well ordered, and set, and well grown, according to the bigness and proportion of the Head; and the Croches, Palm or Crown being great and large according to the bigness of the Beam, are the Signs of an old Hart.

Now since many Men cannot understand the Names and Diversities of Heads according to the Terms of Hunting, I shall in the following Chapter give you a brief Account thereof.

*The Names and Diversities of Heads according to Hunting Terms.*

The Thing that beareth the *Antlers*, *Royals*, and *Tops*, is called the *Beam*; and the little Streaks therein are called *Gutters*.

That which is about the Crust of the *Beam*, is termed *Pearls*; and that which is about the Bur it self, formed like little *Pearls*, is called *Pearls bigger than the rest*.

The Bur is next the head; and that which is about the Bur, is called *Pearls*. The first is called *Antler*; the second *Surantlier*: all the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the Crown, Palm, or Croche, are called *Royals*, and *Sur-royals*: The little Buds or Broches about the *Top*, are called *Croches*.

Their Heads go by several Names: The first Head is called a *crowned Top*, because the Croches are ranged in form of a Crown,

The *Second* is called a *Palmed-Top*, because the Croches are formed like a Mans Hand.

*Thirdly*



*Thirdly*, All Heads which bear not above three or four, the Croches being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluster of Nuts, are to be called *Heads* of so many *Croches*.

*Fourthly*, All Heads which bear two in the Top, or having their Croches doubling, are to be called *Forked Heads*.

*Fifthly*, All Heads which have double Burs, or the Antlers, Royals, and Croches turned downwards, contrary to other Heads, are only called *Heads*.

*How to seek a Hart in his Haunts or Feeding-places, according to the Seasons of the Year.*

All *Harts* do change their Manner of Feeding every Month; and therefore I shall treat orderly of every one till I have concluded the Year, beginning with that Month which is the conclusion of their Rutting-time, and that is *November*, in which Month they feed in Heaths and Broomy Places.

In *December* they Herd together, and withdraw themselves into the Strength of the Forests, to shelter themselves from cold Winds, Snows, and Frosts, and do feed on the Holm-trees, Elder-trees, Brambles, with whatsoever other green Thing they can find; and if it Snow, they will skin the Trees like a Goat.

In *January*, *February*, and *March*, they leave Herding, but will keep four or five in Company, and in the Corners of the Forest will feed on the Winter-pasture, sometimes making their Incurfions into the neighbouring Corn-Fields, if they can perceive the blades of Wheat, Rye, or such like, appear above Ground.

In *April* and *May* they rest in their Thickets, and other bushy and shady Places, during that Season, and stir very little till Rutting-time, unless they are disturb'd.

There are some *Harts* so cunning, that they will have two several Layrs to Harbour in, a good distance one from the other, and will frequently change (for their greater Security) from the one to the other, taking still the Benefit of the Wind,

In



In these Months they go not to the Soil, by Reason of the moisture of the Spring, and the Dew that continually overspreadeth the Grasse.

In *June, July, and August*, they are in their pride of Grease, and do resort to Spring-Copses, and Corn-Fields; only they seldom go where Rye or Barley grow.

In *September and October* they leave their Thickets and go to Rut, during which Season, they have no certain Place either for Food or Harbour.

*In what Manner the Huntsman shall go drawing in the Springs.*

Let him not come too early into the Springs or Hewts where he thinketh the *Hart* feedeth, and is at Relief. For they usually go to their Layrs in the Springs: And if they be old crafty *Deer*, they will return to the Border of the Copse, and there listen whether they can hear any approaching Danger; and if they Chance once to vent the Huntsman or the Hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntsman's proper Time. Let him beat the out-sides of the Springs or Thickets: If he find the Track of an *Hart* or *Deer*, let him observe whether it be new; which he may know thus: The Dew will be beaten off, the Foil fresh, or the Ground broken or printed, with other Tokens: So he may judge his Game lately went that Way.

Having found this Slot or Treading, and the Hound sticking well upon it, let him hold him short; for he shall better draw being so held, than if he were let at length of the Lyam: And thus let him draw till he is come to the Covert, if possible, taking notice by the Way of the Slot, Foils, Entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him. That done, let him plash down small Twigs, some above, and some below, as he shall think fit: And then, whilst the Hound is hot, let him beat the out-sides, and make his Ring-walks twice or thrice about the Wood, one while by the great and open Ways, that he may help himself by the Eye, another while through the Thick and Covert, for fear lest his Hound should  
over-



over-shoot it, having still better Scent in the Coverts than High-ways.

If he doubt the *Hart* is gone out of the Ring-walks, or fears he hath drawn amiss, then let him go to the Marks which he plashed, and draw Counter, till he may take up the Fewmet.

*The Directions of Harboursing a Stag are these :*

The Harbourser having taught his Hound to draw mute always round the outside of the Covert, as soon as his Hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing, and straining his Lyam, he then is to seek for his Slot: If he finds the Heel thick, and the Toe spreading broad, it argues an old *Deer*, especially if it is fringed, (that is, broken on the Sides.) However, if the Ground be too hard to make any judgment from the Slot, he is to draw into the Covert, as he passes, observing the Size of the Entries, the larger and higher, the older the *Deer*; as also his Croppings of the Tenders as he passes: (The younger the *Deer*, the lower; the elder the *Deer*, the higher he Branches.) Also observe his Fewmishings as you pass, whose largeness bespeak the largeness of the *Deer*; also be curious in observing his Fraying-post, which usually is the last Opportunity you have to judge by, the eldest *Deer* Fraying highest against the biggest Trees; and that found, you may conclude his Harbour not far off; therefore draw with more Circumspection, checking your Draught-hound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the *Deer* in the Wind: And then by his eagerness you having discovered that, ought to draw him; and having retired some Distance back, you are with your Hound to round the Place first at a considerable Distance, and then, if you find him not disturbed, a little within that make your second round; which will not only secure you that he is in his Harbour, but will also secure his Continuance there; for he will not (unforc'd) pass that Taint your Hound left in the rounding of him. So that having broken a Bough for his Direction, he may at any Time unharbour that *Hart*.

*How*



*How to find a Hart lost the Night before.*

A Huntsman may fail of killing a *Hart* divers Ways; sometimes by Reason of great heat, or overtaken with the Night, and the like. If any such Thing should happen, then thus you must do: First, they which follow the Hounds, must mark the Place where they left the Chase, and at break of Day bring your Bloodhound to it, with your Kennel after him. If any Hound vents, whom he knows to be a Lier or Babler, he shall put his Hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two Notes with his Horn, to call all his Fellows about him: And if he find where the *Hart* is gone into some likely Covert or Grove, then must he draw his Hounds about it, and beat cross through it. And if there he renews his Slot or View, let him first consider whether it be right or not: If it be the right, let him blow his Horn. Now if he find five or six Lays, let it not seem strange; for *Harts* hunted and spent, do frequently make many Lays together, because they cannot stand, but lie and feed.

*Harts* which are hunted, most commonly run up the Wind, and streight forwards as far as they are able, and finding any Water or Soil, do stay a long Time therein, by which means their Joints are so benumbed and stiffned, that coming out they cannot go far, nor stand up long; and therefore are compelled to take any Harbour they can find, which may be a present Covert to them.

*How to find a Hart in high Woods.*

In the seeking of a *Hart* in high Woods, regard must be had to two Things; that is, the Thickets of the Forests, and the Season.

If it be in very hot Weather, Gnats, Horse-flies, and such like, drive the *Deer* out of the high Wood, and they disperse themselves into small Groves and Thickets near Places of good Feeding. According to the Coverts, which are in the Forest, so accordingly the Huntsman must make his Enquiry: For sometimes the

*Harts*



*Harts* lie in the Tufts of White-thorn; sometimes under little Trees, otherwhiles under great Trees in the high Woods, and sometimes in the Skirts of the Forest, under the shelter of little Groves and Copses. And therefore the Huntsman must mak a Ring-walk great or small, according to the largeness of those Harbours or Coverts.

*How to Unharbour a Hart, and cast off the Hounds.*

When the Relays are well set and placed, let the Huntsman with his Pole walk before the Kennel of Hounds: Being come to the Blemishes, let him take Notice of the Slot, and such other Marks as may be observed from the View of the *Deer*, to the intent he may know whether the Hounds run Riot or not. Then let the Huntsman cast abroad about the Covert, to discover the *Hart* when he is unharboured, the better to distinguish him by his Head or otherwise. The Huntsman having unharboured him, all the Hounds shall be cast off, they crying one and all, *To him, to him; That's he, that's he*, with such Words of Encouragement.

If the *Blood-bound* as he draweth, Chance to overshoot, and draw wrong or Counter, then must the Huntsman draw him back, and say, *Back, Back; Soft, Soft*, untill he hath set him right again: And if he perceive that the Hound hath mended his Fault, by his kneeling down, and observing the Slot or Ports, he must then cherish him, by clapping him on his Back, and giving him some encouraging Words. Thus let him draw on with his Hound till the *Deer* be descried.

Now some are so cunning and crafty, that when they are unharboured from their Layr, they will coast round about to find some other *Deer*, whereby the Hounds may be confounded in the change of Hunts.

If the Huntsman have the *Hart* in View, let him still draw upon the Slot, blowing and hollowing until the Hounds are come in. When he seeth they are in full cry and take it right, he may then mount, keeping under the Wind, and Coast to cross the Hounds that  
are



are in Chase, to help them at Default, if need require.

*What Subtilties are used in Hunting a Hart at Force.*

Let the Huntsman never come nearer the Hounds in cry, than fifty or threescore Paces, especially at the first uncoupling, or at casting off their Relays: For if a *Hart* make Doublings, wheel about, or cross before the Hounds, as he seldom doth; if then you come in too hastily, you will spoil the Slot or View, and so the Hounds, for want of Scent, will be apt to overshoot the Chase: But if after Hunting an Hour, the Huntsman perceive that the *Hart* makes out End-ways before the Hounds, and that they follow full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer and blow a Recheat to the Hounds to encourage them. Hereupon the *Hart* will frequently seek other *Deer* at Layr, and rouze them, on Purpose to make the Hounds hunt change, and will lie down flat in some of their Layrs upon his Belly, and so let the Hounds over-shoot him, and because they shall neither Scent or Vent him, he will gather up all his four Feet under his Belly, and will blow or breathe on some moist Place of the Ground, in such Sort, that I have seen the Hounds pass by such a *Hart* within a Yard, and never vent him.

For which Cause Huntsmen should Blemish at such Places they see the *Hart* enter into a Thicket, to this End; that if the Hounds should fall to Change, they may return to those Blemishes, and put their Hounds to the right Slot and View, until they rouzed or found him again.

The *Hart* hath another Way to bring the Hounds to change; and that is, when he seeth himself closely pursued, and that he cannot shun them, he will break into one Thicket after another to find *Deer*, rousing and herding with them, continuing so to do sometimes above an Hour before he will part from them, or break Herd. Finding himself spent, he will break Herd and fall a doubling and crossing in some hard High-way that is much beaten, or else in some River or Brook, in which he will keep as long as his Breath will permit him.



him: and if he be far before the Hounds, it may be then he will use his former Device, in gathering his Legs up under his Belly, as he lies flat along upon some hard and dry Place. Sometimes he will take Soil, and so cover himself under the Water, that you shall perceive nothing but his Nose.

In this Case the Huntsman must have a special Regard to his old Hounds, who will hunt leisurly and fearfully; whereas the young Hounds will over-shoot their Game.

If it so Chance that the Hounds are at a Default, and hunt in several Companies, then it may be guessed that the *Hart* hath broken Herd from the fresh *Deer*, and that the fresh *Deer* have separated themselves also: Then regard how the old *Staunch-bounds* make it, and observe the Slot; and where you see any of the old Hounds challenge, cherish and encourage him, hastening the rest in to him, by crying *Hark* to such a Hound, calling him by his Name.

Here is to be noted, that they cannot make it so good in the hard High-ways as in other Places, because they cannot have there so perfect a Scent, either by Reason of the Tracks or Footing of divers Sort of Beasts, or by Reason of the Sun drying up the Moisture, so that the Dust covereth the Slot: Now in such Places (such is the natural Subtilty of that Beast for Self-preservation) the *Hart* will make many Crosses and Doublings, holding them long together, to make the Hounds give over the Chase.

In this Case, the first Care of the Huntsman is, to make good the Head, and then draw round apace, first down the Wind, though usually *Deer* go up the Wind; and if the Way is too hard to Slot, be sure to try far enough back. This expert Hounds will frequently do of themselves.

But if a *Hart* break out into the Champion Country, and that it be in the Heat of the Day, between Noon and Three of the Clock; then if the Huntsman perceive his Hounds out of Breath, he must not force them much, but comfort them; and though they do not call upon the Slot or View, yet it is sufficient if they do but wag



their Tails; for, being almost spent, it is painful for them to call.

The last Refuge of a *Hart* sorely hunted is the Water, (which, according to Art, is termed the *Soil*) swimming ofteneft down the Stream, keeping the middle, fearing lest by touching any Bough by the Water-side he may give Scent unto the Hounds.

Always when you come to a Soil, (according to the old Rule, *He that will his Chase find, let him first try up the River, and down the Wind*) be sure if your Hounds challenge but a Yard above his going in, that he is gone up the River: For though he should keep the very middle of the Stream, yet will that, with the help of the Wind, lodge part of them, and Imbosh that comes from him on the Bank, it may be a quarter of a Mile lower, which hath deceived many. Therefore first try up the Stream: And where a *Deer* first breaks Soil, both Man and Hound will best perceive it.

Now the Ways to know when a *Hart* is spent, are these; *First*, He will run stiff, high, and lompering. *Secondly*, If his Mouth be black and dry without any Foam upon it, and his Tongue hanging out; but they will often close their Mouths, to deceive the Spectators. *Thirdly*, By his Slot; for often times he will close his Claws together, as if he went at leisure; and straightway again open them wide, making great Glidings, and hitting his Dew-claws upon the Ground, following the beaten Paths without Doublings; and sometime going all along a Ditch side, seeking some Gap, having not Strength to leap it otherways: Yet it hath been often seen, that Dead-run *Deer* have taken very great Leaps.

Thus must a Huntsman govern himself according to the Subtilty and Craft of the *Deer*, observing their Doublings and Crossings, and the Places where they are made; making their Rings little or great, according to the Nature of the Place, Time, and Season: For Hounds are subject to shoot where Herbs and Flowers have their most lively Scent and odoriferous Smell. Neither must you be unmindful of the Perfection and Imperfection of  
your



your Hounds. Thus doing, it will be very hard luck if you lose a *Hart* by Default.

*How to kill a Hart at Bay.*

It is very dangerous to go in to a *Hart* at Bay, and especially at Rutting-time, for then they are more Fierce.

There are two sorts of Bays; one on the Land, the other on the Water. If now the *Hart* be in a deep Water, where you cannot well come to him, then couple up your Dogs; for should they long continue in the Water, it would endanger furbating or foundering. Get then a Boat, to swim to him with Dagger; or else with a Rope that hath a Noose, and throw it over his Horns: For if the Water be so deep that the *Hart* swims, there is no Danger in approaching him; otherwise you must have a care.

As to the Land-Bay, if the *Hart* be burnished, then you must consider the Place: For if it be in a Plain and open Place, where there is no Wood or Covert, it is dangerous and hard to come in to him; but if it be in a Hedge side or Thicket, then, whilst the *Hart* is staring on the Hounds, you may come covertly among the Bushes behind him, and cut his Throat. If you miss your aim, and the *Hart* turn head upon you, then make some Tree your Refuge; or when the *Hart* is at Bay, couple up your Hounds; and when you see the *Hart* turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your Sword.

*Directions at the Death of Buck or Hart.*

The first Ceremony when the Huntsmen come in to the Death of a *Deer*, is to cry *Ware Haunch*, that the Hounds may not break into the *Deer*; which having secured, the next is cutting his Throat, and there blood-ing the youngest Hounds, that they may the better love a *Deer*, and learn to leap up at his Throat; then having blown the *Mort*, and all the Company come in, the best Person, that hath not taken Say before, is to take up the Knife that the Keeper or Huntsman is to lay cross



the Belly of the *Deer*, standing close to the left Shoulder of the *Deer*, some holding by the Fore-legs, and the Keeper or Huntsman drawing down the Pizzle, the Person that takes Say, is to draw the Edge of the Knife leisurely along the very middle of the Belly, beginning near the Brisket; and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to discover how Fat the *Deer* is, then he that is to break up the *Deer*, first flits the Skin from the cutting of the Throat downward, making the Arber, that so the Ordure may not break forth; and then he is to paunch him, rewarding the Hounds therewith. Next, he is to present the same Person that took the Say with a drawn Hanger, to cut off the Head; which done, and the Hounds rewarded therewith, the concluding Ceremony is, if a *Buck* a double, if *Stag* a treble Mort blown by one, and then a whole Recheat in Consort by all that have Horns; and that finished, immediately a general *Whoo whoop*.

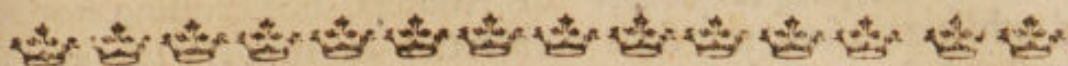
It was formerly termed *Wind a Horn*, because (as I suppose) all Horns were then compassed; but since straight Horns are come into Fashion, we say, *Blow a horn*, and sometimes, *Sound a Horn*.

In many Cases heretofore, *Leasing* was observed; that is, one must be held, either cross a Saddle, or on a Man's Back, and with a pair of Dog couples receive ten Pound and a Purse; that is, ten Stripes, (according to the Nature of the Crime, more or less severe) and an eleventh, that used to be as bad as the other ten, called a *Purse*.

There are many Faults, as coming too late into the Field, mistaking any Term of Art; these are of the lesser Size: Of the greater magnitude, hallowing a wrong *Deer*, or leaving the Field before the Death of the *Deer*, &c.

Buck





## Buck-Hunting.

**T**His Beast is common in most Countries, being as corpulent as a *Hart*; but in Quantity resembleth more a *Roe*, except in Colour.

The Males have Horns. which they lose yearly; but the Females none at all. Their Colours are divers, but most commonly branded or sandy on the Back, having a black List all down along on the Back; their Bellies and Sides spotted with white, which they lose by their old Age: And the *Does* do especially vary in Colour, being sometimes all White, and therefore like unto Goats, except in their Hair, which is shorter.

In their Horns they differ not much from a *Hart*, except in Quantity, and that they grow out of their Heads like Fingers out of the Hand; such is this *Fallow-Deer*, being therefore called *Carvus Palmatas*. As for their other Parts, they much resemble a *Roe-buck*. Their Flesh is excellent for Nourishment, but their Blood ingenders too much Melancholy.

Now know, the *Buck* is Fawn'd about the latter end of May, and its Nature and Properties differ little from the *Hart*.

There is not so much Art and Skill in Lodging a *Buck*, as in the Harboursing a *Hart*; neither is their required so much drawing after, but only you are to judge by the View, and mark what Grove or Covert he entreth; for he will not wander and rove up and down so often as a *Hart*, nor so frequently change his Liver.

He maketh his Fewmishing in divers Manners and Forms, as the *Hart* doth, according to the diversity of Food, and Time of the Day, Morning and Evening; but most commonly they are round.

The *Hart* and *Buck* differ thus in parallel. When the *Buck* is hunted, he oft-times betakes himself to such



Strong Holds and Coverts as he is most acquainted with, not flying far before the Hounds, not crossing nor doubling, using no such Subtleties as the *Hart* is accustomed to.

The *Buck* will beat a Brook, (but seldom a great River, as the *Hart*) but it must not be so deep; nor can he stay so long at Soil as the *Hart* will do: Only he leapeth lightlier at Rut than the *Hart*; and groaneth or troateth, as a *Hart* belleteth, but with a lower Voice, rarling in his Throat. And here is to be noted, they love not one another, nor will they come near each other's Layr.

*Buck*-Venison is incomparable Food, and dressed like *Hart*-Venison; only this last will be preserved longer than the former.

The *Buck* herd's more than the *Hart*, and lieth in the driest Places: But if he be at large, unconfined within the limitary Precincts of a Park, he will herd but little from May to August, because the Flies trouble him. He takes great delight in hilly Places, but the Dales are his joy to Feed in.

*Bucks* have seldom or never any other Relays than the old Hounds.

The greatest subtilty a Huntsman need use in the Hunting of the *Buck*, is to beware of Hunting Counter or Change, because of the Plenty of *Fallow-Deer*, which use to come more directly upon the Hounds than the *Red-Deer* doth. Now upon the breaking up of a *Buck*, the Hounds Reward is the same with that of the *Hart*.



### Roe-Hunting.

THE *Roe-Buck* is called by the *Greeks* and *Latins* by one Name, viz. *Dorcas*. These Beasts are very plentiful in *Africa*, *Germany*, and *Helvetian Alps*.

Their



Their swiftness doth not only appear upon the Earth, but also in the Waters, cutting them when they swim as with Oars; and therefore they love the Lakes and strong Streams, breaking the Floods to come at fresh Pasture, feeding deliciously on sweet Rushes, and Bull-rushes. Horns only grow upon the Male, and are set with six or seven Branches, not palmed, but branchy, yet shorter than *Fallow-Deer*: They differ not much from common *Deer*, but in their Horns: And whereas the Horns of other Beasts are hollow towards the Root, whereinto entereth a certain long Substance; the Horns of these, as also of the vulgar *Buck* and *Elk*, are solid without any such Emptiness, only they are full of Pores.

It is supposed by the Learned, that the *Roe* was called in *Greek Dorcas*, by Reason of the quickness of her Sight; and that she can see as perfectly in the Night as in Day. Physicians have observed a certain viscous Humor about her Bowels, which by anointing Eyes that are dark, heavy, and near blind, quickens the Sight most wonderfully.

It is reported of them, that they never wink, no not when they sleep; for which conceit their Blood is prescribed for them who are dim sighted or purblind. The tail of this Beast is lesser and shorter than a *Fallow-Deer's*; insomuch that it is doubtful whether it be a Tail or not.

They keep for the most in the Mountains amongst the Rocks, being very swift; and when they are Hunted (*Martial* saith) they hang upon the Rocks with their Horns, to delude the Dogs, after a strange Manner, ready to fall and kill themselves, and yet receive no harm, where the Dogs dare not approach, as appeareth in his Epigram:

*Pendentem summa Capream, de rupe videbis,  
Casuram speres, decipit illa Canes.*

This might be more properly meant of the Wild Goat.

They are most easily taken in the Woods. When, they are chased, they desire to run against the Wind,



because the coldness of the Air refresheth them in their Course; and therefore they who hunt them place their Dogs with the Wind. They are often taken by the counterfeiting of their Voice, which the skilful Huntsman doth by the Assistance of a Leaf in his Mouth.

This Beast is very easie to hunt, and goeth to Rut (or *Tourn* most properly) in *October*, the extent whereof consists of fifteen Days, and never parteth with the Doe till Fawning time.

The Doe finding herself near her Time, secretly departs from the Buck, fawneth as far from him and his Knowledge as she can; for could he find the Fawn he would kill it. Now when the Fawn grows big, and can run and feed, she then returns to the Buck again very lovingly, with all Expedition: The Cause whereof, is the Roes fawning Twins, which are commonly Buck and Doe; so that being accustomed together in Youth, they do love to keep Company ever after.

As soon as the Roe-Buck cometh from Rut, he casts his Horns; and there are few after two Years old which Mew not at *Alhallontide*, but their Heads grow quickly out again.

The Venison of a Roe is never out of Season, being never Fat, and therefore they are to be hunted at any Time: Only this, some Favour ought to be shewn the Doe whilst she is big with Fawn, and afterwards till her Fawn is able to shift for himself: Besides, some Roe-Does have been killed with five Fawns in their Belly.

They usually when hunted, take a large first Ring, and afterwards hunt the Hounds.

When they are hunted, they turn much and often, and come back upon the Dogs directly: When they can no longer endure, they then take Soil, as the *Hart* doth, and will hang by the Bough in such Manner, that nothing shall appear of them above Water but their Snout, and will suffer the Dogs to come just upon them before they will stir.

He is not called by the skilful in the Art of Hunting, a Great Roe-Buck, but a Fair Roe-Buck. The Herd of them is called a Bevy: And if he hath not Beavy-grease on



on his Tail when he is broken up, he is more fit to be Dogs-meat than Mans-meat.

The Hounds must be rewarded with the Bowels, the Blood, and Feet slit asunder, and boiled all together. This is more properly called a *Dose* than a *Reward*. For what might be said farther concerning *Roe-Hunting*, I shall refer you to the Chapters of *Hart* and *Buck-Hunting*.



### Rain-Deer-Hunting.

THE *Rain-Deer* is not unlike a *Hart*, only his Head is fuller of Antlers, being bigger and wider in Compass; for he bears four and twenty Branches, and more, according to his Age, having a great Palm on the Top, as a *Hart*, and his Fore-Antlers are Palmed also.

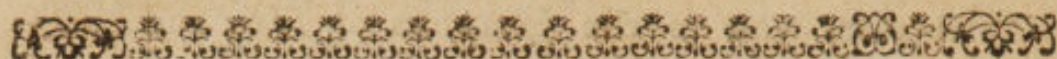
He flieth End-ways when he is Hunted, by Reason of the great weight of his Head. When he hath stood up a great while, doubled, crossed, and used other crafty Tricks to shun the Hounds, he makes a Tree his last Refuge; so planting himself, that nothing can assault him but just before, placing his Buttock and Haunches against the Tree, and hanging down his Head low to the Ground, whereby all his Body is covered.

As the *Hart* strikes with his Head, the *Rain-Deer* strikes with his Feet against any one that comes in to him to help the Dogs, not in the least turning his Head, that being his chiefest Defence, and seems very terrible to the Hounds.

He feedeth like the *Hart*, and maketh his Fewmets sometimes long, and sometimes flat, and beareth fatter Venison, when he is in pride of Grease, than any other *Deer* doth, and is very long-liv'd. He is more commonly drawn after with a Blood-Hound, than Hunted, and intrapped with Nets and Engines, and that in the thick and greatest Holds, if it may be; which



is the best and speediest Way, by Reason of his great and spreading Head. Since there are but few of them in *England*, I shall desist from discoursing farther concerning him.



*Of the Nature and Properties of a Hare.*

**A**N *Hare* is called in Hebrew *Arnebet* in the Feminine Gender, which Word possessed a great many that all *Hares* were Females: He is called *Lagus* by the Greeks, for his immoderate Lust; and by the same Nation *Proox*, for his Fear; and by the Latins *Lepus*, *quasi Levi-pes*, signifying Swiftness of feet (*alias*) Light-foot.

There are four Sorts of *Hares*; some live in the Mountains, some in the Fields, some in Marshes, some every where, without any certain Place of Abode. They of the Mountains, are most swift; they of the Fields, less nimble; they of the Marshes, most slow; and the wandering *Hares* are most dangerous to follow; for they are so cunning in the Ways and Muses of the Fields, running up the Hills and Rocks, because by custom they know the nearer Way, with other Tricks, to the Confusion of the Dogs, and Discouragement of the Hunters.

In the next Place, a Description of the Parts of an *Hare* will not be unnecessary, since it is admirable to behold how every Limb and Member of this Beast is composed for Celerity. In the first Place, the Head is round, nimble, short, yet of convenient longitude, prone to turn every Way. The Ears long and lofty, like an Asses: For Nature hath so provided, that every fearful and unarmed Creature should have long and large Ears, that by hearing it might prevent its Enemies, and save itself by Flight: The Lips continually move sleeping and waking; and from the Slit they have in the middle of their Nose, cometh the Term of *Hare-lips* which are so divided in Men.

The



The Neck of an *Hare* is long, small, round, soft, and flexible: The Shoulder-bone streight and broad, for her more easie turning: Her Legs before soft, and stand broader behind than before, and the hinder Legs longer than the former: A Breast not narrow, but fitted to take more breath than any Beast, tender Loins, hollow Sides, fat Buttocks, filled up, strong and nervous Lines. Their Eyes are brown, and they are subtil, but not bold; seldom looking forward, because going by Jumps. Their Eye-lids coming from the Brows, are too short to cover their Eyes, and therefore this Sense is very weak in them. When they watch they shut their Eyes, and when they sleep they open them.

They have certain little Bladders in their Belly filled with Matter, out of which both the one and the other Sex suck such a certain humor, and anoint their Bodies all over therewith, and so are defended against Rain.

Though their Sight be dim, yet they have *visum indefessum*, an indefatigable Sense of Seeing; so that the Continuance in a mean Degree, countervaieth in them the want of Excellency.

They feed Abroad, because they would conceal their Forms; and never drink, but content themselves with the Dew, and for that Cause they often fall rotten. As it is before, every Limb of a *Hare* is composed for Celerity, and therefore she never travellet, but jumpeth: Her Ears lead her the Way in her Chase; for with one of them she hearkneth to the Cry of the Dogs, and the other she stretcheth forth like a Sail, to hasten her Course; always stretching her hinder beyond her former, and yet not hindering them at all; and in Paths and High-ways she runs more speedily.

The *Hares* of the Mountains do often Exercise themselves in the Valleys and Plains, and through Practice grow acquainted with the nearest Ways to their Forms or Places of constant Abode; so that when at any Time they are hunted in the Fields, such is their subtil Dodging, that they will dally with the Huntsman till they seem to be almost taken



taken, and then on a sudden take the nearest Way to the Mountains, and so take Sanctuary in the inaccessible Places, whither Dogs nor Horse dare ascend.

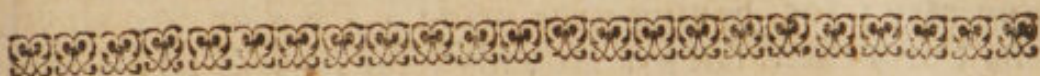
*Hares* which frequent Bushes and Brakes, are not able to endure Labour, and not very swift, by Reason of the Pain in their Feet, growing fat through Idleness and Discontinuance of running. The *Compestral* or *Field Hare*, being leaner of Body, by Reason of her singular Agility; she therefore when she beginneth her Course, leapeth up from the Ground as if she flew, afterwards passeth through Brambles, and over thick Bushes and Hedges with all Expedition; and if at any Time she come into deep Grass or Corn, she easily delivereth herself, and slideth through it, always holding up one Ear, and bending it at her Pleasure to be the Moderator of her Chase. Neither is she so unprovident and prodigal of her Strength, as to spend it all in one Course, but observeth the Force of her Prosecutor, who if he be slow and sluggish, she is not profuse of her Celerity, but only walketh gently before the Dogs, and yet safely from their Clutches, reserving her greatest Strength to her greatest Necessity: For she knoweth she can out-run the Dogs at her Pleasure, and therefore will not trouble herself more than she is urged. But if there be a Dog following her more swiftly than the residue; then she setteth forward with all the Force she can; and when she hath left both Hunters and Dogs a great Way behind her, she getteth to some little Hill or rising of the Earth, where she raiseth herself upon her hinder Legs, that thereby she may observe how far or near her Pursuers are distant from her.

The younger *Hares*, by Reason of their weak Members, tread heavier on the Earth than the elder; and therefore leave the greater Scent behind them. At a Year old they run very swift, and their Scent is stronger in the Woods than in the plain Fields; and if they lie down upon the Earth (as they love to do) in red Follow-grounds, they are easily descried.

Their



Their Foot-steps in the Winter-time are more apparent than in the Summer, because, as the Nights are longer, so they travel farther: Neither do they scent in the Winter-morning so soon as it is Day, until the Frost be somewhat thawed; but especially their Foot-steps are uncertain at the Full of the Moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering or putting out their Scent or Savour; and in the Spring time also, when they do ingender, they confound one anothers Footsteps by multitudes.



### Hare-Hunting.

**I**T is the Judgment of all, that a *Hare* doth naturally know the change of Weather from twenty four Hours to twenty four Hours. When she goeth to her Form, she will suffer the Dew to touch her as little as she can, but followeth the High-ways and beaten Paths.

They go to Buck commonly in *January, February, and March*, and sometimes all in the warm Months; sometimes seeking the Buck seven or eight Miles distant from the Place where they usually sit, following the High-ways, &c.

If when a *Hare* riseth out of her Form she couches her Ears and Scut, and runs not very fast at first, it is an infallible Sign that she is Old and Crafty.

You may know a Buck-*Hare* as you Hunt him to his Form by his beating the hard High-ways. He feedeth farther out into the Plains, and maketh his Doublings and Crossings much wider, and of a great Compass than the Female doth: For she will keep close by some Covert-side, turning and winding in the Bushes like a *Coney*, and if she go to relief in the Corn-fields, she seldom crosseth over the Furrows, but followeth them along, staying upon the thickest Tufts of Corn to feed.

Like-



Likewise you may know a Buck at the rising out of his Form by his Hinder-parts, which are more whitely ; or if you observe his Shoulders before he rise, which will be redder than the Does, having some loose long Hairs growing on them. Again, his Head is shorter, and better trussed ; his Hairs about his Lips longer ; and his Ears more shorter and more Gray. The Hairs upon the Female's Chine will be of a blackish Gray.

Besides, when Hounds hunt a Female *Hare*, she will use more crossing and doubling, seldom making out End-ways before the Hounds : Whereas the Male acts contrary ; for having once made a Turn or two about his Form then farewell Hounds ; for he will frequently lead them five or six Miles before ever he will turn his Head.

When you see that your Hounds have found where an *Hare* hath pass'd to relief upon the High-way-side and hath much doubled and crossed upon dry Places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the Corn, it is a Sign she is but lately come thither ; and then commonly she will stay upon some high Place to look about her, and to chuse out a Place to Form in, which she will be loth to part with.

#### *Of the Craft and Subtilty of an Hare.*

As of all Chases the *Hare* makes the greatest Pastime and Pleasure ; so it is a great Delight and Satisfaction to see the Craft of this little poor Beast in her own Self-preservation.

And that you may understand what these Subtilties are, you must first take Notice what Weather it is. If it be rainy, then the *Hare* will hold the High-ways more than at any other Time : And if she come to the Side of any young Grove or Spring, she will scarcely enter, but squat down by the Side thereof, until the Hounds have over-shot her ; and then she will return the self-same Way she came to the Place from whence she was started, and will not by the Way go into any Covert, for fear of the Wet and Dew that hang upon the Boughs.



In this Case, let the Huntsman stay a hundred Paces before he comes to the Wood-side, by which means he shall perceive whether she return as aforesaid; which if she do, let him hallow in his Hounds, and call them back, and that presently, that the Hounds may not think it the Counter she came first.

The next Thing to be observed, is the Place where the *Hare* sitteth, and upon what Wind she makes her Form: For if she Form either upon the North or South Wind, she will not willingly run into the Wind, but run upon a Side or down the Wind. But if she Form in the Water, it is a Sign she is foul and measles. If you hunt such a one, have a special Regard all the Day to the Brook-sides, for there and near Plashtes she will make all her Crossings, Doublings, &c.

I have seen a *Hare* so Crafty, that as soon as she heard the sound of a Horn, she would instantly start out of his Form, tho' it be a quarter of a Mile distant, and go swim in some Pool, and there rest herself upon some rush-bed in the midst thereof, from whence she would not stir till she heareth the Horn again; and then I have seen her start out again swimming to Land, and she hath stood up before the Hounds four Hours before we could kill her, swimming, and using all her Subtleties and Crossing in the Water.

Such is the natural Craft and Subtilty of a *Hare*, that sometimes, after she hath been Hunted three Hours, she will start a fresh *Hare*, and squat in the same Form. Others, having been Hunted a considerable Time, will creep under the Door of a Ship-coat, and there hide themselves among the Sheep; or when they are hard hunted, will run among a flock of Sheep, and cannot be gotten out from among them by any Means, till the Hounds are coupled up, and the Sheep driven into their Pens. Some (and that is something strange) will take the Ground like a *Coney*, and that is called going to the *Vant*. Some *Hares* will go up one side of the Hedge, and come down the other, the thickness of the Hedge being the only Distance between the Courses.

I have seen a *Hare*, that being sorely hunted, got upon a Quick-set Hedge, and ran a good Way up-  
on



on the top thereof, and then leapt off upon the Ground. And they will frequently betake themselves to Furz-bushes, and will leap from the one to the other, whereby the Hounds are frequently in Default. Nay, which is more, I have heard of a *Hare*, that being hunted two Hours, or more, at length, to save herself, got upon an old Wall six Foot high from the Ground, and hid herself in the Hole that was made for a Scaffold: And that several have swam over *Trent* and *Severn*.

A *Hare* liveth not above seven Years at most, especially the Buck; and if he and the Doe shall keep one Quarter together, they will never suffer any strange *Hare* to sit by them; and therefore it is proverbially said, *The more you hunt, the more Hares you shall have*; because when you have killed one *Hare*, another will come and possess his Form.

An. *Hare* hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the Hounds, when she feeds and relieveth upon green Corn, than at any other Time in the Year: And yet there are some *Hares* which naturally give a greater Scent than others; as the great Wood-*Hares*; and such as are foul and measles, and keep near to the Waters: But the little red *Hare*, which is not much bigger than a *Coney*, is neither of so strong a Scent, nor so eagerly hunted. Such as feed upon the small branches of wild Thyme, or such like Herbs, are commonly very swift, and will stand long up before the Hounds. In like Manner you have some *Hares* which have not been hunted are foolish, and are neither of Force nor capable to use such Subtilties and Crafts, but hold on End-ways before the Hounds most commonly, and do squat and start again oftentimes, which doth much encourage the Hounds, and enters them better than if the *Hare* flies End-ways, as sometimes they will five or six Mile an End.

The Females are more crafty and politick than the Bucks; for they double and turn shorter than they, which is displeasing to the Hounds; for it is troublesome for them to turn often, delighting more in an end-way Chase, running with all their Force: For such *Hares* as double and cross so often, it is requisite at Default



fault to cast the greater compass about, when you beat to make it out, for so you will find all her Subtilties, and yet need to stick upon none of them, but only where she went on forwards: By this means you will abate her Force, and compel her to leave doubling and crossing.

*How to enter Hounds to the Hare.*

Let the Huntsman be sure in the first Place to make his Hounds very well acquainted with him and his Voice, and let them understand the Horn; and to this End let him never blow his Horn, or hollow, but when there is good Cause for so doing, and let him be sure, that his Hounds want no Encouragement.

Here by the Way observe two remarkable Things. The first is, if you intend to enter a young Kennel of Hounds, you must take Notice of the Country, where you will make your first Quarry, and whereof you make it: For according to the Places, wherein they are first entred, and the Nature of the Quarry given them, they will prove accordingly for the future. Thus if they are first entred in the Plains and Champion Countries, they will ever after more delight to Hunt there than in any other Place: And so it is the same with the Coverts.

But, say some of our Huntsmen, all strange Countries that differ from that to which Hounds are accustomed, cause them at first to be at seek: But good Hounds will soon be Masters of any Country; and therefore he that would have the best Hounds, must use them to all kinds of Hunting: And it is easie to bring Hounds to enjoy a Scent from a bleak Down to a fresh Pasture. And therefore many of us love to enter in the worst Countries.

Do not accustom your Hounds to Hunt in the Morning, because of the Dew and Moisture of the Earth; and besides, you will find by Experience, that if afterwards you hunt them in the Heat of the Day, they will soon give over the Chase; neither will they call on willingly or chearfully, but seek out the shades to sleep in. Yet many of us agree, that to hunt both early and



late in the Morning by Trayling, advantageth the Hounds to use their Noses; and by keeping them sometimes in the Heat of the Day, or till Night, moves them to stoutness.

The best Season to enter your young Hounds is in *September* and *October*: for then the Weather is temperate, neither too hot nor too cold; and then is the Time to find young *Hares* which have never been hunted, which are foolish and ignorant of the politick Crossings, Doublings, &c. of their Sires, running commonly end-ways, frequently squatting, and as often starting, by which Encouragement the Hounds are the better entered.

A *Hare* hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the Hounds, when she feedeth and relieveth on green Corn, than at any Time of the Year.

Moreover, some *Hares* have naturally a greater Scent than others, as the great Wood-*Hares*, and such as are foul and measles, having their greatest resort near the Water and Plashe.

The little small red *Hare*, not much bigger than a *Coney*, is very feeble, and not much coveted by the Hounds, having a bad Scent: But such as feed on the small branches of wild Thyme are commonly very swift, and will stand up a long Time before the Hounds.

The Does are much craftier than the Bucks, doubling and turning oftner and shorter, which is very vexatious and troublesome to the Hounds. Now for such *Hares* as double and cross so often, it is requisite at a default to cast a greater Compass about when you draw to make it out; so shall you find all their subtilties; though it is needless to stick upon any, but where they went onwards. By so doing you will abate the Force of a *Hare*, and force her from crossing and doubling.

Some *Hares* hold the high beaten Ways only, where the Hounds can have no Scent; wherefore when the Huntsman finds his Hounds at a default in the Highway, let him hunt on until he find where the *Hare* hath broken from the High-way, or hath found some Dale or fresh place where the Hounds may recover Scent, looking  
ing



ing narrowly on the Ground as he goeth, if he can find the footing or pricking of the *Hare*.

There are other Places wherein a Hound can find no Scent; and that is in fat and rotten Ground, and it sticketh to the Foot of the *Hare*, which is called *Carrying*, and so consequently she leaves no Scent behind her. So likewise there are certain Months wherein a Hound can find no Scent, and that is in the Spring-time, by Reason of the fragrant smell of Flowers, and the like.

Shun, as much as you can, Hunting in hard frosty Weather, for so you will surbate or founder your Hounds, and make them lose their Claws: Besides, at that Time a *Hare* runneth better than at any other Time, the Soals of her Feet being hairy.

To conclude, the best Way of entring your young Hounds, is by the help of old Staunch Hounds; so will they the better learn to cast for it at a doubling or default.

*What Time of the Year is best for Hare-Hunting: How to find her, Start her, and Chase her.*

The best Time to begin *Hare-Hunting*, is about the middle of *September*, ending towards the latter End of *February*, lest you destroy the early Brood of *Leverets*. Moreover, upon the approach of Winter, the moistness and coolness of the Earth increaseth, which is agreeable to the Nature of the Hounds, and very acceptable, they ever hating extream Heats and hot Weather.

Your Hounds being two Years old and upwards, you may exercise them thrice a Week, and they will be the better for so often Hunting, provided you feed well; and keep out your Hounds the greatest part of the Day, both to try their stoutness, and to make them stout.

If there be any Hound, which hath found the Trail of a *Hare*, where she hath relieved that Night, let the Huntsman then forbear being over-hasty, but let the Hounds make it of themselves: And when he shall perceive that they begin to draw in together, and to call



on freshly, then let him encourage them, especially that Hound which hunteth best, frequently calling him by his Name.

Here Note, that a *Hare* leaveth better Scent when she goeth to relief, than when she goeth towards her Form: For when she relieveth in the Field, she coucheth her Body low upon the Ground, passing often over one Piece of Ground, to find where lieth the best Food; and thus leaveth the better Scent crotting also sometimes.

Besides, when she goes to her Form, she commonly takes the High-ways, doubling, crossing, and leaping as lightly as she can; in which Places the Hounds can have no Scent, (as is said before) by Reason of the Dust, &c. And yet they will squat by the sides of the High-ways, and therefore let the Huntsman beat very well the Sides of those High-ways.

Now having found where a *Hare* hath relieved in some Pasture or Corn-field, then must you consider the Season of the Year, and what Weather it is: For if it be in the Spring-time, or Summer, a *Hare* will not then sit in the Bushes, because they are frequently offended with Pismires, Snakes, and Adders, but will sit in Corn-fields and open Places.

In Winter they love to sit near Towns and Villages; in Tufts of Thorns and Brambles, especially when the Wind is Northerly or Southerly.

According to the Season and Nature of the Place where the *Hare* is accustomed to sit, there beat with your Hounds and start her; which is much better Sport than Trailing of her from her Relief to her Form.

When the *Hare* is started and on Foot, then step in where you saw her pass, and hollow in your Hounds untill they have all undertaken it, and go on with it in full cry: Then Recheat to them with your Horn, following fair and softly at first, making neither too much haste nor noise with Horn or Voice: For at the first, Hounds are apt to over-shoot the Chase through too much heat. But having ran the space of an Hour, and that you see the Hounds are well in with it, sticking well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the  
Hounds



Hounds, because by that Time their Heat will be cooled- and they will hunt more soberly. But above all Things mark the first doubling, which must be your Direction for the whole Day ; for all the doublings that she afterwards shall make, will be like the former : And according to the policies that you shall see her use, and the Place where you hunt, you must make your compasses great or little, long or short, to help the defaults, always seeking the moistest and most commodious Places for the Hounds to Scent in.

To conclude, those who delight in the commendable Exercise of Hunting the *Hare*, must rise early, lest they be deprived of the Scent of her foot-steps, by which means the Dogs will be incapacitated to follow their Game ; for the Nature of the Scent is such, that it will not remain long, but suddenly, in a manner every Hour, vanisheth away.



### Of Parks and Warrens.

HAVING thus discoursed of the Nature and properties of the *Hare*, together with the Manner of Hunting them ; in the next Place I hold it not improper in short to speak something of Parks and enclosed Warrens, wherein *Hares*, *Coneys*, *Deers*, &c. may always be ready as it were out of a Store-house or Seminary, to serve the Use and Pleasure of their Masters.

The first Roman that ever enclosed wild Beasts, was *Fulvius Herpinus* ; and *Varro* had the first Warren for *Hares*. The largest *Hare*-Parks that ever I heard of, and the best furnished with those fearful, yet subtile Creatures, are in *Ireland* ; the one belongs to the Lord-Leiutenant of that Kingdom, near *Dublin* ; and the other in the North, and belongs to the Lord of *Mazareen*. It will be a tedious task for me to give you an Account of the Variety of Parks and Warrens within the three Kingdoms ; I shall therefore only tell you



in what Manner they are erected, and that very briefly

The Walls or Pales must be high, or close jointed, so as neither *Badger* nor *Cat* can creep through, nor *Wolf* nor *Fox* can leap over; wherein ought also to be *Bushes* and broad *Trees* to cover the *Beasts* against *Heat* and *Cold*, and other secret Places to satisfy their *Natures*, and to defend the lesser *Beasts*, as *Hares*, *Coneys*, &c. from *Hawks*, *Kites*, and other ravening *Fowls*: In which three or four Couple of *Hares* will quickly multiply into a great *Warren*.

It is very good to sow *Gourds*, *Misceline*, *Corn*, *Barley*, *Pease*, and such-like, wherein *Hares* Delight, and will thereby quickly grow *Fat*.

*Warreners* have a very crafty Device to fatten *Hares*, which by Experience is found effectual, and that is by putting *Wax* into their *Ears*, and so make them deaf; then turn them into the Place where they should feed, where being freed from the fear of *Sounds* (for want of *Hearing*) they grow *Fat* before other of their *Kind*.

Here Note, That when you have pitched your *Hays* for *Coneys*, Sound a *Trumpet* in some of the *Burrows*, and scarce a *Coney* in the whole *Warren* but will Start *Abroad*.

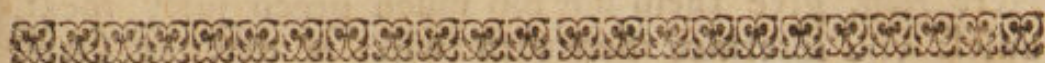
I shall End this Chapter with *Martial's* Praise of a *Hare* and a *Thrush*.

*Inter Aves Turdus, si quis me Iudice certet,  
Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus.*

Among all *Birds* none with the *Thrush* compare,  
And no *Beast* hath more glory than the *Hare*.







## Of Coney Catching.

**B**Efore we speak of the Hunting of the Coney, it will not be amiss to take Notice of her Nature and Properties, which are these: She carrieth her young in her Belly thirty Days; as soon as she hath kindled she goes to Buck. They begin to breed in *England* at a Year old (but sooner in other Places) and so continue, bearing at least seven Times in a Year if they Litter in *March*; this is the Reason that a small stock will serve to increase a large Warren. The Does cannot suckle their young till they have been with the Buck, which must be done presently, or she will not be inclined fourteen Days after.

When the Buck goes to Doe, he will beat very strongly with his Fore-foot upon the Ground, and by that means he heateth himself. When he hath buckt, he is accustomed to fall backwards, and lie as if he were in a Trance, or half dead, at which Time he is easily taken.

The *Latins* call a Coney, *Cuniculus*, because it maketh Holes in the Earth; and *Cuniculus* was a *Latin* Word for a Hole or Cave in the Earth, before it was taken for a Coney.

The Bucks will kill the young if they can come at them, like to your Bore-cats; and therefore the Doe prevents that Mischief, by covering her Stop or Nest, with Earth or Gravel, that so they may not easily be discovered.

Those who keep *Concys* tame for Profit, may give them to eat Vine-leaves, Fruits, Herbs, Grass, Bran, Oat-meal, Mallows, Milk-thistles, Appel-parings, Cabbage, Lettice, or Carret-tops. In Winter they will eat Hay, Oats, and Chaff, being given to them thrice a Day: But when they eat green Things, they must not Drink at all, because of the Dropsie which will follow: At all other Times a little Drink must



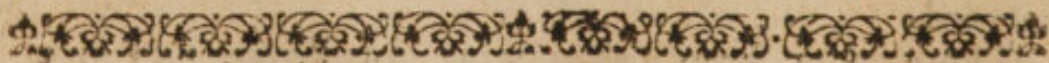
serve their Turn, and that must be always fresh. Here *Note*, give them not too much green juicy meat, unless you intermix therewith what is dry, as Oats, Chaff, &c. otherwise they will be Catbed, or tumbled.

Now the Way of taking them is either by small Currs or Spaniels bred up for that Sport; and their Places for Hunting are among Bushes and Hedges; or else by Courting them with small Grey-hounds. In their default they are commonly driven into their Burrows; and therefore it will be very requisite to set Purse-nets on the Holes, then put in a Ferret close muzzled, and she will make the *Coneys* bolt out into the Purse-nets, and so you may take them. Some say the Drone of a Bag-pipe, put into a *Coney-Burrow*, and blown on a sudden will make *Coneys* bolt.

For Want of a *Ferret*, you may take the Powder of Orpine and some Brimstone, and therewith make a Smother in the Burrows, and so they will bolt out. But this Way is not to be approved of; for by that Means the *Coneys* will forsake those Burrows, and so in a little Time a Warren will be destroy'd, should this Course be used frequently.

But above Nets and Ferrets Hays are to be preferred for the taking of *Coneys*; neither is the drawing Ferret to be despised when they are young. Likewise there is excellent Sport to be made with our Tumblers, who will kill *Coneys* abundantly.

Let this suffice, since any farther Discourse hereof is neither proper nor pertinent to my present Purpose.



### Of the Ferret.

THE *Ferret* is a little Creature that is not bred in Spain, Italy, France, nor Germany; but in England they breed naturally, and are tamed for the benefit of such as keep Warrens, and others.



It is a bold and audacious Beast, Enemy to all others but his own kind, drinking and sucking in the Blood of the Beast it biteth, but eateth not the Flesh.

When the Warrenner hath an Occasion to use his *Ferret*, he first makes a Noise in the Warren to frighten what *Coneys* are abroad into their Burrows, and then he pitcheth his Nets; after that, he puts his *Ferret* into the Earth, having a long Strick, with Bells about her Neck, whose Mouth must be muzzled, so that he may not seize, but frighten the *Coneys* out of their Burrows, and afterwards driven by Dogs into the Nets or Hays so planted for them.

The Body is longer for the Proportion than the Quantity may afford. Their Colour is variable, sometimes Black and White on the Belly, but most commonly of a yallowish sandy Colour, like Wool died in Urine. The Head is little like a Mouse's; and therefore into whatsoever Hole she can put it in, all her Body will easily follow after. The Eyes are small, but fiery like red hot Iron, and therefore she seeth most clearly in the Dark. Her Voice is a whining cry without changing it: She hath only two Teeth in her nether Chap, standing out, and not joined and growing together. The Genital of the Male is of a bony Substance, and therefore it always standeth stiff, and and is not lesser at one Time than another. The Pleasure of the Sence in Copulation is not in the Genital Part, but in the Muscles, Tunicles, and Nerves wherein the said Genital runneth. When they are in Copulation, the Female lieth down, or bendeth her Knees, and continually crieth like a Cat, either because the Male claweth her with his Nails, or by Reason of the roughness of his Genital.

She usually brings forth seven or eight at a Time, carrying them forty Days in her little Belly: The young ones newly littered ate blind thirty Days together; and within forty Days after they can see, they may be used as their Dam for Profit and Recreation.

When tamed, they are nourished with Milk or with Barley-bread, and they can fast a very long Time. When they go, they contract their long Back, and make it stand



stand upright in the middle round like a Bowl: When they are touched, they smell like a *Martel*; and they sleep very much. Thus much of the *Ferret*, which I Thought good to Place after the Chapter of *Coney-catching*, because this little Animal is such a necessary Instrument for that Purpose.



### Of Fox-Hunting.

**H**IS Shape and Proportion is so well known, being a Beast so common, that it will be needless to describe him.

His Nature in many Respects is like that of a *Wolf*; for they bring as many Cubs at a Litter one as the other: But thus they differ; the *Fox* Litters deep under the Ground, so doth not the *Wolf*.

A Bitch-*Fox* is hardly to be taken when she is bragged and with Cub; for then she will lie near her Burrow, into which she runs upon the hearing of the least Noise: And indeed at any Time it is somewhat difficult; for the *Fox* (and so the *Wolf*) is a very subtile crafty Creature.

*Fox*-hunting is very Pleasant; for by Reason of his strong hot Scent he maketh an excellent Cry: And as his Scent is hotter at Hand, so it dies soonest. Besides, he never flies far before the Hounds, trusting not on his Legs, Strength, or Champion Ground, but strongest Coverts. When he can no longer stand up before the Hounds, he then taketh Earth, and then must he be digged out.

If Grey-hounds course him on a Plain, his last Refuge is to piss on his Tail, and flap it in their Faces as they come near him; sometimes squirting his thicker Excrement upon them, to make them give over the Course or Pursuit,

When a Bitch-*Fox* goes a clicketing and seeketh for a Dog, she crieth with a hollow Voice, not unlike the howling of a mad Dog; and in the same Manner she  
cries



cries when she misseth any of her Cubs: But never makes any cry at all when she is killing, but defends herself to the last Gasp.

A *Fox* will prey upon any Thing he can overcome, and feeds upon all Sorts of Carrion; but their Dainties, and the Food which they most Delight in, is Poultry. They are very destructive and injurious to *Coney-Warrens*, and will sometimes kill *Hares* by deceit and subtilty, and not by swift Running.

The *Fox* is taken with Hounds, Grey-hounds, Terriers, Nets, and Gins.

Of Terriers there are two Sorts. The one is crooked-legg'd, and commonly short-hair'd: And these will take Earth well, and will lie very long at *Fox* or *Badger*. The other Sort is shagged and streight-legg'd: And these will not only hunt above-ground as others, but also enter the Earth with much more fury than the former; but cannot stay in so long by Reason of their great eagerness.

The Time of entring these Terriers, is when they are near a twelve Month old; for if you enter him not in within this Time, you will hardly after bring him to take the Earth. And to Encourage the young Terrier the more, put in an old one before him, that can better endure the Fury of the *Fox* or *Badger*; and be careful that neither of them be old, when you engage your young Terrier with him.

The entring and fleshing them may be done several Ways. In the first Place thus: When *Foxes* and *Badgers* have young Cubs, then take your old Terriers and enter them in the Ground; and when they begin to Bay, you must then hold every one of your Terriers at a sundry Hole or Mouth of the Earth, that they may listen and hear the old ones Bay. Having taken the old *Fox* or *Badger*, and that nothing remains within but the young Cubs, then couple up all your old Terriers, and put in the young in their stead, encouraging them by crying, *To him, to him, to him*. And if they take any young Cub within the Ground, let them alone to do what they please with him; and forget not to give the old Terriers their reward, which is the Blood and Livers, fried with Cheese and some of their own



own Grease, shewing them the Heads and Skins to encourage them. Before you reward them, wash them with Soap and warm Water, to clear their Skins from Earth and Clay that is clodded to the Hare, otherwise they are very apt to be mangie. You may also enter them in this Manner: Take an old *Fox*, or *Badger*, and cut away the neather Jaw, but meddle not with the other, leaving the upper to shew the Fury of the Beast, although it can do no harm therewith. Then dig an Earth in some convenient Place in your own Grounds, and be careful to make it wide enough, to the Intent the Terriers may turn therein the better, and that there may be Room enough for two to enter together: Then cover the Hole with Boards and Turf, putting the *Fox* or *Badger* first therein, and afterwards put in your Terriers both young and old, encouraging them with Words that are the usual Terms of Art. When they have bay'd sufficiently, then begin to dig with Spades and Mattocks, to encourage them against such a Time as you are to dig over them: Then take out the *Fox* or *Badger* with the Clamps or Pincers, killing it before them, or let a Grey-hound kill it in their Sight, and make them Reward thereof. Here *Note*, that instead of cutting away the Jaw, it will be very whit as well to break out all his Teeth, to prevent him from biting the Terriers.

Now to say the Truth, there is not much Pastime or Pleasure in Hunting a *Fox* under-ground; for as soon as that subtle Creature perceiveth the Terriers, if they bay hard, and lie near unto them, they will bolt out immediately, unless it be when the Bitch hath young Cubs, then they will sooner die than stir.

They make their Earths as near as they can in Ground that is hard to dig, as in Clay, Stony-ground, or amongst the Roots of Trees; and their Earths have commonly but one Hole, and that is streight a long Way in before it come at their Couch. Sometimes craftily they possess themselves of a *Badger's* old Burrow, which hath variety of Chambers, Holes, and Angles.

When a good Terrier doth once bind the *Fox*, he then yearns, and defends himself very notably, but not  
so



so strenuously as the *Badger*, nor is his biting half so dangerous. Here *Note*, if you take a *Bitch-Fox* when she goeth a Clicketing, and cut out that Gut which Gelders deprive Bitches of when they spay them, and cut them into small gobbets, mingling therewith the Gum of Mastich, and put them hot as they are into a Pot, and cover the same close, it will serve for an excellent Train for a *Fox*, and will keep the whole Year round. Take the Skin of Bacon, and broil it well on a Gridiron, then dip it in the Ingredients of the Pot aforesaid, and make a Train thereof, you will experimentally find, that if there be any *Fox* near to any Place where the Train is drawn, he will follow it; let him who makes the Train rub the Soals of his Feet with Cow-dung, least the *Fox* Scent his Footing: And thus you may Train a *Fox* to a Standing, and kill him in an Evening with Gun or Cross-bow. It is likewise found by Experience, that if a Terrier be rubbed with Brimstone, or with Oil of Cade, and then put him into an Earth where either a *Fox* or *Badger* is, they will leave that Earth, and come not to it again a good while after.

I shall conclude this Discourse with what I have observed in *Gesner's History of Beasts*, tending to the same Purpose: Saith he, *As he frequently cheats the Badger of his Habitation by laying his Excrements at the Mouth of his Earth or Burrow; so, forasmuch as the Wolf is an Enemy to the Fox, he layeth in the Mouth of his Earth an Herb called a Sea-onion, which a Wolf naturally hates, and is so averse thereunto, that he will never come near the Place where it either lies or grows.*



### Of Fox-Hunting above Ground.

TO this Purpose you must draw with your Hounds about Groves, Thickets, and Bushes near Villages & *Fox* will lurk in such Places, to prey on young Pigs and Pullein.

But



But it will be necessary to stop up his Earths, if you can find them, the night before you intend to Hunt; and the best Time will be about Midnight, for then the *Fox* goeth out to seek his Prey. You may stop his Holes by laying two white Sticks across before them, which will make him imagin it is some Gin or Trap laid for him: Or else you may stop them up close with black Thorns and Earth together.

The best Hunting a *Fox* above-ground is in *January*, *February*, and *March*, for then you shall best see your Hounds hunting, and best find his Earthing; besides, at those Times the *Fox's* Skin is best in Season.

Again, the Hounds best hunt the *Fox* in the coldest Weather, because he leaveth a very strong Scent behind him; yet in cold Weather it chills fastest.

At first only cast off your sure Finders, and as the Drag mends, so add more as you dare trust them.

Shun casting off too many Hounds at once, because Woods and Coverts are full of sundry Chases, and so you may engage them in too many at one Time.

Let such as you cast off at first be old Staunch-hounds, which are sure; and if you hear such a Hound call on merrily, you may cast off some other to him; and when they run it on the full cry, cast off the rest: and thus you shall compleat your Pastime.

The Words of comfort are the same which are used in the other Chases, attended with the same Hollowings and other Ceremonies.

Let the Hounds kill the *Fox* themselves, and worry and hare him as much as they please: many Hounds will eat him with eagerness.

When he is dead, hang him at the end of a Pike-staff and hollow in your Hounds to Bay him: But Reward them not with any Thing belonging to the *Fox*, for it is not good, neither will they eat it.





## Of Badger-Hunting.

**A** Badger is called by several Names, viz. a Gray-Brock, Boreson, or Bauson, and in France Tauffon; The Male is called a Badger or Bore-pig; and the Female is called a Sow.

These Beasts are plentiful in Naples, Sicily, Lucane, and in the Alpine and Helvetian Coasts; so are they also here in England.

There are two Kinds of this Beast, (saith Gesner) one resembling a Dog in his Feet, and the other a Hog in his cloven Hoof: They differ too in their Snout and Colour, for the one resembles the Snout of a Dog, the other of the Swine: The one hath a greyer Coat, or whiter Coat than the other, and goeth farther out in seeking of its prey. They differ also in their Meat, the one eating Flesh and Carrion like a Dog, the other Roots and Fruits like a Hog: Both these Kinds have been found in Normandy, France, and Sicily.

Mr. Turbervil makes mention of two Sorts of Badgers likewise, but in a different Manner: For the one (saith he) casteth his Fiaunts long like a Fox, and have their residence in Rocks, making their Burrows very deep. The other Sort make their Burrows in light Ground, and have more variety of Cells and Chambers than the former. The one of these is called the Badger-pig, and the other the Badger-whelp; or call one Canine, and the other Swinish. The first hath his Nose, Throat, and Ears yellowish like a Martens Throat; and are much blacker, and higher legged than the Badger-whelp. Both Sorts live upon all Flesh, hunting greedily after Carrion. They are very mischievous and hurtful to Warrens, especially when they are big with young.



*Badgers* when they Earth, after by digging they have entred a good Depth, for the clearing of the Earth out, one of them falleth on the Back, and the other layeth Earth on the belly; and so taking his hinder Feet in his Mouth, draweth the Belly-laden *Badger* out of the Hole or Cave; and having disburdened herself, re-enters, and doth the like till all be finished.

These *Badgers* are very sleepy, especially in the Day-time, and seldom stir abroad but in the Night; for which Cause they are called *Lucifugæ*, avoiders of the Light.

It is very pleasant to behold them when they gather materials for their Couch, as straw, leaves, moss, and such like; for with their Feet and their Head they will wrap as much together as a Man can well carry under his Arm, and will make shift to get it into their Cells and Couches.

He hath very sharp Teeth, and therefore is accounted a deep biting Beast: his Back is broad, and his Legs are longer on the right Side than the left, and therefore he runneth best when he gets on the Side of an Hill, or a Cart-road-way. His Fore-legs have very sharp Nails, bare, and apt to dig withal, being five both before and behind, but the hinder very much shorter, and covered with hair. His Savour is strong, and much troubled with Lice about the Secrets. Both Male and Female have under their Hole another Hole outwardly, but not inwardly in the Male. If she be hunted Abroad with Hounds, she biteth them most grievously wherever she lays hold on them. For the prevention thereof, the careful Huntsmen put great broad Collars made of *Grays* Skins about their Dogs Necks. Her Manner is to fight on her Back, using thereby both her Teeth and her Nails; and by blowing up her Skin after a strange and wonderful Manner, she defendeth herself against any Blow and Teeth of Dogs; only a small Stroke on the Nose will dispatch her presently; you may thrash your Heart weary on her Back, which she values as a matter of nothing.

In *Italy* they eat the Flesh of *Badgers*, and so they do in *Germany*, boiling it with Pears, some have eaten it



here in *England*, but like it not, being of a sweet rankish Taste.

The Flesh is best in *September*, if it be Fat, and of the two Kinds, the *Swinish Badger* is better Flesh than the other.

They love Hogs-flesh above any other, for take but a Piece of Pork and train it over a *Badgers* Burrow, if he be within, you shall soon see him appear with out.

Their Nature is very cold, and therefore when it snoweth they will not come out of their Holes for three or four Days together.

They live long, and by meer Age will grow blind, then they will not stir out of their Holes, but are fed by those who have their Sight.

This Subtilty they have, that when they perceive the Terriers begin to yearn them, they will stop the Hole between the Terriers and them: If the Terriers continue baying, they will remove their Baggage with them, and go into another Appartment or Chamber of the Burrow, (for know that some of their Houses have half a dozen Rooms at least;) and so will remove from one to the other, till they can go no farther, barricadoing the Way as they go.

The hunting of a *Badger* must be after this Manner: You must first seek the Earths and Burrows where he lieth, and in a clear Moon shine Night go and stop all the Holes but one or two, and therein Place some Sacks fastned with some drawing-strings, which may shut him in as soon as he straineth the Bag.

The Sacks or Bags being thus set, cast off your Hounds, and beat all the Groves, Hedges, and Tufts within a Mile or two about. What *Badgers* are abroad, being alarmed by the Dogs, will streight repair to their Earths or Burrows, and so be taken.

Let him that standeth to watch the Sacks, stand close, and upon a clear Wind, for else the *Badger* will soon find him, and fly some other Way for Safety. But if the Hounds either encounter him, or undertake the Chase, before he can get into his Earth, he will then stand at Bay like a *Bear*, and make most incomparable Sport.



*What Instruments are to be used in digging, and how to dig for Badger or Fox.*

In the first Place, you must have such as are able to dig; next, you must have so many Terriers garnished with Bells hung in Collars, to make the *Fox* or *Badger* bolt the sooner; besides, the Collars will be some small defence unto the Terriers.

The Instruments to dig withal are these: A sharp-pointed Spade, which serveth to begin the Trench where the ground is hardest, and broader Tools will not so well enter; the round hollowed Spade, which is useful to dig amongst Roots, having very sharp Edges; the flat broad Spade, to dig withal when the Trench is better opened, and the Ground softer; Mattocks and Pick-Axes, to dig in hard Ground where a Spade will do but little Service; the Coal-rake, to cleanse the Hole, and to keep it from stopping up; the Clamps, whereby you may take a *Fox* or *Badger* out alive to make sport therewith afterwards. And it would not be amiss to have a Pail of Water to refresh your Terriers, after they are come out of the Earth to take breath.

In this order you may besiege a *Fox* or *Badger* in their strongest Holes or Castles, and may break their Casmates, Platforms, Parapets, and work to them with Mines and Counter-mines, until you have obtained your Satisfaction. But there is a shorter Method than this, which by Reason of its commonness I shall forbear to Mention.



### *Of the Otter.*

**I**T is supposed by some that the *Otter* is of the Kind of *Beavers*, being it is an amphibious Creature, living both in the Water and on the Land; besides, the outward form of the Parts beareth a similitude of that Beast,



Beast. Some say were his Tail off, he were in all Parts like the *Beaver*, differing in nothing but Habitation. For the *Bever* frequenteth both the Salt-water and the Fresh; but the *Otter* never goeth to the Salt.

Though the *Otter* liveth in the Water, yet it doth not Breath like Fishes through the Benefit of the Water, it doth Breath like other four-footed Beasts, yet it will remain a long Time underneath the Water without respiration.

If he want Prey in the Water, then he will quit them for the Land; and if he by painful Hunting ashore cannot fill his Belly, he will feed on Herbs, Snails, or Frogs; neither will he take less Pains in the Water to satisfy Hunger: For he will swim two Miles together against the Stream, that so, when his Belly is full, the Current of the Stream may carry him again down to his designed Lodging, which is near the Water, very artificially built with Boughs, Sprigs, and Sticks, couched together in excellent Order, wherein he sitteth to keep him from the wet.

In the hunting of Fish, he often pops his Nose above Water to take Breath: It is a Creature of wonderful Swiftnes and Nimblenes in taking his Prey, and for greediness takes more than he knows what to do with.

It is a very subtile and crafty Beast, and endowed with a wonderful Sagacity and Sense of Smelling, inso-much that he can directly wind the Fishes in the Waters a Mile or two off.

The Flesh of this Beast is both cold and filthy, because it feedeth on stinking Fish, and therefore not fit to be eaten; yet it is eaten in *Germany*; and the *Carthusian* Fryers, who are forbidden to eat all manner of Flesh of other four-footed Beasts, yet they are not prohibited the eating of *Otters*. There are those in *England*, who lately have highly valued an *Otter-Pie*, much good may do them with it.

These *Otters* must be hunted by special *Dogs*, such as are called *Otter Hounds*, and also with special Instruments called *Otter-Spears*. When they find themselves wounded with a Spear, they then come to Land, where they fight with the *Dogs* furiously; and except they be



first wounded, they forsake not the Water: For they are not ignorant, how safe a refuge the Waters are unto them, and how unequal a combat they shall sustain with Men and *Dogs* upon the Land: Yet, because the cold Water annoyeth their green Wounds, therefore they spin out their Lives to the length of the Thread, chusing rather to die in Torments among *Dogs*, than to die in the Waters.

The Food of an *Otter* (as I said) is Fish; and her abode is commonly under the Root of some Tree near Rivers, Brooks, Pools, Meers, or Fish-ponds; and sometimes she will lie in a hollow Tree four or five foot above Ground: And no Vermin can be more destructive to a Warren, than an *Otter* is to a Fish-pond, for she diveth and hunteth under Water after that most wonderful manner, that few Fish escape her, unless they are very swift and great.

An *Otter* and *Ferret* grow Salt much about the same Time, and bring forth their Young much after the same manner, neither having their constant Number.

There is much craft and cunning in the hunting them; yet with pains-taking you may ensnare them under the Water, and by Rivers-sides, as you may a *Hare* with *Hare-pipes* and such like Gins. They bite sore and venomously, and when Occasion serves they will defend themselves stoutly. If after their ensnaring they chance to abide there long, they will soon enlarge themselves with their Teeth.

These Creatures are footed like your Water-Fowl, having a Web between their Claws, and have no Heel, but a round Ball under the Soal of their Feet: And their Track is called their *Mark*, as the Slot of a *Hart*, and their Excrements are called *Spraints*.

An *Otter* will not abide long in a Place, for he is apt to be afraid and take distaste, having an excellent Ear and Nose, for hearing and smelling; and then he will forsake his Couch, and shift a Mile or two up or down the River: and this he will do according as he finds scarcity of Fishing.

In Hunting of the *Otter* observe this, to send some to one Side of the River whilst you are on the other, and so beat on the Banks with your *Dogs*, and so you will soon



soon find, if there be an *Otter* in that Quarter: For an *Otter* cannot endure long in the Water, but must come forth to make his Spraints, and in the Night sometimes to feed on Grass and such Herbs as the Fields afford.

If any of the Hounds find an *Otter*, then look in the soft Grounds and moist Places to see which Way he bent his Head: If the Marks make no Discovery, you may partly perceive it by the Spraints, and so follow the Hound, and lodge him as a *Hart* or *Deer*. If you find not the *Otter* quickly, you may then imagine he is gone to Couch somewhere farther off from the River: For sometimes he will seek his Food a Mile from the Place of his Rest, chusing rather to go up the River than down, because upwards he meets with better Scent of Fish; and bearing his Nose into the Wind he shall the sooner find any fault that is above him.

Remember, in the Hunting of the *Otter*, that you and your Friends carry your *Otter-Spears* to watch his Vents, for that is the chief advantage: And if you perceive where the *Otter* swims under Water, then strive to get to a stand before him where he would vent, and there endeavour to strike him with your Spear; but if you miss, pursue him with the Hounds, which if they be good *Otter-Hounds*, and perfectly entred, will come chaunting and trailing along by the River-side, and will beat every Tree-root, every Osier-bed and tuft of Bull-rushes; nay, sometimes they will take the Water, and beat it like a Spaniel. And by these Means the *Otter* can hardly escape you.







## Of the Squirrel.

THE first Author, that ever wrote of this little Animal, was *Oppianus*, who liv'd in the Days of *Antonius Cæsar*, and wrote a Book also of Hunting.

A *Squirrel* is greater in Compass than a *Weasle*, but the latter is longer than the other; the Back-parts and all the Body is reddish except the Belly, which is White. In *Helvetia* they are Black and branded, and they are Hunted at the fall of the Leaf, when the Trees grow naked, for they run and leap from Bough to Bough in a most admirable and agile Manner, and when the Leaves are on, they cannot so well be discerned. They are of three Colours, in the first Age Black, in the second of a rusty Iron-colour, and lastly, when old, they are full of white-hoar Hairs. Their Teeth are like the Teeth of Mice, having the two under-teeth very long and sharp. Their Tail is always as big as their Body, and it lieth continually on their Back when they sleep or sit still, and it seemeth to be given them for a covering.

In the Summer-time they build them Nests (which by some are called *Drays*) in the Tops of the Trees very artificially with Sticks and Moss, with other Things the Woods afford, and then they fill it with Nuts for Winter-provision, and do sleep like the *Alpine Mouse* most Part thereof very soundly, in such Sort, that the beating of the outside of their *Drays* will not wake them.

When they leap from Tree to Tree, they use their Tail instead of Wings, leaping a great Distance, and are supported without sinking to any ones Appearance, nay, they will frequently leap from a very high Tree down to the Ground, and receive no harm.

Many must go to together to Hunt them, and must carry Dogs with them, and the fittest Place for the Exercise



gise of this Sport, is in little and small slender Woods, such as may be shaken by the Hand. Bows are requisite to remove them, when they rest in the twists of Trees, for they will not be much terrified with all the hollowing, except they be struck now and then by one means or other. Well do they know what Harbour a high Oak is unto them, and how secure they can lodge therein from Men and Dogs, wherefore since it is too troublesome to climb every Tree, that Labour must be supplied with Bows and Bolts, that when the *Squirrel* resteth, presently he may be thumpt by the blow of an Arrow; the Archer need not fear to do her much harm, except he hit her on the Head, for by Reason of a strong Back-bone, and fleshy Parts, she will abide as great a stroak as a Dog.

If they be driven to the Ground from the Trees, and they creep into Hedges, it is a sign of their weariness, for such is the lofty Mind of this little Beast, that while her strength lasteth, she saveth herself in the Tops of high Trees, but being wearied she descendeth, and falls into the Mouths of the yelping Currs that attend her.

The admirable Wit of the *Squirrel* appeareth (if it be true) in her swimming, or passing over a River; for when Hunger constraineth her so to do, she seeks out some rind or small Bark of a Tree, which she setteth upon the Water, and then goeth into it, and holding up her Tail like a Sail, letteth the Wind drive her to the other side; and carry Meat in their Mouths, to prevent Famine whatsoever should befall them.



### Of the Martern and Wild-Cat.

**A** *Martern* is about the bigness of a Cat, having a longer Body, but shorter Legs, with Head and Tail like a *Fox*, its Skin is commonly Brown, White on the Throat, and somewhat yellowish on the Back.



Their Teeth are exceeding White and unequal, being above measure sharp, the canine Teeth both above and below hang out very long.

This and the Wild-Cat are a sort of Vermin, which we use here in *England* commonly to hunt, and as necessary to be hunted as any Vermin can be: For the Question may be doubtful, whether either *Fox* or *Badger* do more hurt than the Wild-Cat doth, since there are so many Warrens every where throughout the Kingdom of *England*, which are very much infested by the Wild-Cat,

It is the Opinion of long-experienced Huntsmen, that she leaveth as great Scent, and maketh as good a Cry for the Time as any Vermin that is Hunted, especially the *Marten* passeth all other Vermin for sweetness of Scent, and her Case is a noble Furr. The Wild Cat's Case is not so good, but it is very warm, and medicinal for several Aches and Pains in the Bones and Joints: Also her Grease is very good for Sinews that are shrunk.

These two Chases are not to be sought purposely, unless the Huntsman do see them where they Prey, and can go readily to them, but if the Hound chance to cross them, he will hunt it as soon as any Chase, and they make a noble Cry as long as they stand up, when they can do it no longer, they will take a Tree, and so deceive the Hounds, but if the Hounds hold in to them, and will not give it over so, then they leap from one Tree to another, and make great Shift for their Lives, with much Pastime to the Huntsman.

When they are killed, you must hold them upon a piked Staff, and hollow in all your Hounds, and then Reward them with some Meat; for the Flesh of these Vermin is naught for Hounds.





A SHORT  
ACCOUNT

Of some particular BEASTS that  
are not hunted in *England*, but in  
Foreign Countries.



*The Nature and Properties of a Wolf, and the Man-  
ner of its Hunting,*



Heretofore I read, that there were many *Wolves*  
in *England*, but now there are none, however,  
they are still in *Ireland*, but their Number  
is very much decreased within these thirty  
Years; and that they may more and more  
decrease, being so pernicious to all Sorts  
of Cattle, I Thought good to publish the Nature and  
Manner of their Hunting.

First, as to their Nature: They go a Clicketting in  
*February*, and continue in that Manner ten or twelve  
Days. Where many *Wolves* are, many will follow one  
Bitch, as Dogs will follow a Bitch that is Salt, but she  
will be only lined with one.

A notable Story I have heard when I was in *Ireland*,  
and attested for a truth by the Inhabitants: That a  
Bitch



Bitch *Wolf* proud, will suffer a great many of the Male to follow her, and will carry them after her sometimes eight or ten Days without Meat, Drink, or Rest; and when they are tired that they cannot travel farther, she will first lie down, then will the rest follow her Example: When she perceives that they are all asleep, and through weariness snore, then will she arise and awake that *Wolf* which she observed to follow her most, and having so done, entice him with her far from the rest, and suffer him to line her, the rest awaking and finding how she hath cunningly deluded them, they fall instantly on her Companion who hath been before-hand with them, and revenge themselves on him by depriving him of his Life, which verifies the Proverb, *Never Wolf yet ever saw his Sire.*

Their Whelps are able to ingender at twelve Months End, at which Age they part with their Dam, that is, when those Teeth are grown which they cast the first half Year, and being grown, they never shed them again: And here see their gratitude, (though bloody cruel Creatures) after they have preyed for themselves if they chance to meet their Dam or Sire (for *Turbervile* doth not believe the aforesaid Story) they will fawn upon them, and lick them, rejoycing at the Sight of them.

The Dog will never bring any of his Prey to his Whelps till he hath filled his own Belly, whereas the Bitch will not eat a bit till she hath served them first, they go nine Weeks with Whelp, and sometimes a little longer, and grow Salt but once a Year. As to Number of Whelps, they have more or less as Dogs have, for doubtless both the *Wolf* and *Fox* are but a kind of wild Mastiffs and wild Currs.

They prey upon all kind of Things, and will feed on Carrion, Vermin, &c. They will kill a Cow or a Bullock, and as for a Sheep, Goat, or good Porket, they will roundly carry him off in their Mouths, not touching Ground with it, and will run so fast away, notwithstanding the load, that they are hardly to be stopped but by Mastiffs or Horse men. There is no Beast which runneth faster than the *Wolf*, and holdeth wonderfully also. When he is hunted with Hounds, he



he flieth not far before them; and unless he be coursed with Grey-hounds or Mastiffs, he keepeth the Covert like the *Bear*, or *Boar*, and especially the beaten Ways therein. Night is the usual Time of his preying, though Hunger will force him to prey by Day. They are more subtile and crafty (if more can be) than the *Fox* or any other Beast: When they are hunted, they will take all their advantages, at other Times they will never run over-hastily, but keep themselves in Breath and Force always.

A *Wolf* will stand up a whole Day before a good Kennel of Hounds, unless that Grey-hounds or Wolf-dogs course him. If he stand at bay, have a care of being bitten by him; for being then mad, the Wound is desperate, and hard to be cured.

When a *Wolf* falls into a Flock of Sheep, with his good Will he would kill them all before he feed upon any of them, and therefore all means should be used to destroy them, as by hunting at Force, or with Grey-hounds or Mastiffs, or caught in Gins and Snares, but they had need be strong. For Encouragement to the meaner Sort in *Ireland*, whosoever took a sucking Whelp, or preying Cub, a Dog or a Bitch-*Wolf*, and brought the Heads of either to the next Justice of Peace, for Reward for the first, he received twenty Shillings; for the second, Forty; for the third, five Pound; and for the last, six Pounds: Which late Encouragement hath in a manner cleared that Kingdom of them.

They bark and howl like unto Dogs; and if there be but two of them together, they make such a terrible hideous Noise, that you would think there could be no less than twenty of them in a Body.

When any one would Hunt the *Wolf*, he must Train him by these means: First, let him look out some fair Place, a Mile or more from the great Woods, where there is some close standing, to place a Brace of good Grey-hounds in, if need be, the which should be closely environed, and some Pond of Water by it: There he must kill a Horse that is worth little, and take the four Legs thereof, and carry them into the Woods and Forrests adjoyning; then let four Men  
take



take every Man a Leg of the Beast, and draw it at his Horse-tail all along the Paths and Ways in the Woods, until they come back again to the place where the Carcass of the said Beast lieth; there let them lay down their Trains. Now when the *Wolves* go out in the night to prey, they will follow the scent of the Train till they come to the Carcass where it lieth. Then let those who love the Sport, with their Huntsmen come early and privately near the Place; and if they are discernible as they are feeding, in the first Place let them consider which Way will be the fairest Course for the Grey-hounds, and place them accordingly, and as near as they can let them forestal with their Grey-hounds the same Way that the *Wolves* did or are flying either then or the Night before; but if the *Wolves* be in the Coverts near the Carrion that was laid for them to feed upon, then let there be Hewers set round the Coverts to make a Noise on every side but only that where the Grey-hounds do stand; and let them stand thick together, making what Noise they can to force them to the Grey-hounds: Then let the Huntsman go with his Leam-hound, and draw from the Carrion to the Thickets Sides, where the *Wolves* have gone in, and there the Huntsmen shall cast off the third Part of their best Hounds; for the *Wolf* will sometimes hold a Covert along Time before he will come out.

The Huntsmen must hold near in to the Hounds blowing hard, and encouraging them with their Voice: For many Hounds will strain Courtesie at this Chase, although they are strong and fit for all other Chases.

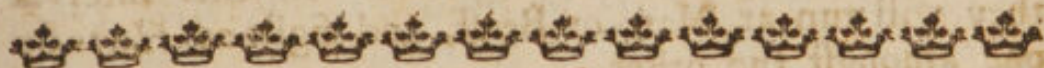
When the *Wolf* cometh to the Grey-hounds, they who hold them will do well to suffer the *Wolf* to pass by the first Rank until he come further, and let the last Rank let slip their Grey-hounds full in the Face of the *Wolf*, and at the same Instant let all the other Ranks let slip also: So that the first Rank staying him but ever so little, he may be assaulted on all Sides at once, and by that means they shall the more easily take him.



It is best entring of Hounds at young *Wolves*, which are not yet past half a Year or a Year old, for a Hound will Hunt such more willing, and with less Fear than an old *Wolf*, or you may take *Wolves* alive in Engines, and breaking their Teeth, enter your Hounds at them.

A Man may know a *Dog-Wolf* from a Bitch by the Tracks of his Feet, for the Dog hath a greater Heel, a greater Toe, greater Nails, and a rounder Foot. Besides, the Bitch casteth her Fiaunts commonly in the midst of an High-way, whereas the Dog casteth them either on the one Side or the other of the Path.

The Reward of the Dogs is thus: When they have bit and shaken the dead *Wolf*, let the Huntsman then open his Belly streight along, and taking out his Bowels, let him throw in Bread, Cheese, and other Scraps, and so let the Dogs feed therein.



### Wild-Goat Hunting.

I Never could read or hear, that there was ever any such Chase in *England*, as the hunting of the *Wild-Goat*: But since there may be such Sport in *Wales*, as there hath been elsewhere, it will not be much a miss to give Some short Account thereof.

The *Wild-Goat* is as big as a *Hart*, but not so long, or so long-legg'd, but is as fleshy. They have Wreaths and Wrinkles on their Horns, which declare what their Age is: For according to the Quantity of the Wreaths, such is the Number of their Years; which Wreaths he meweth, but not his Beam, the which may be, if he be an old *Goat*, as big as a Man's Leg.

They have a great long Beard, and are of a brownish grey Colour very shaggy, having a long black List down the ridge of the Back, and the Track is bigger than the Slot of a *Hart*.

They



They fawn as a *Hind* or *Doe* in *May*, and have but one Fawn, which they suckle and bring up as the tame *Goat* doth her Kid.

They feed like *Deer*, only they will eat besides *Ivy*, *Moss*, and such like. In the *Spring* they make their *Fumets* round, and afterwards broad and flat, as the *Hart* when he comes to feed well.

They go to *Rut* about *Alhallontide*, and continue therein a Month or five *Weeks*; that Season being over, they descend from the Mountains and Rocks, their Abode for the Summer Season, and herd themselves, not only to avoid the *Snow*, but because they can find no Food any longer; and yet they come not very low, but keep at the Foot of the Mountains, feeding there till *Easter*; then they return again, every one chusing some strong Hold in the Rocks, as the *Harts* in the Thickets.

About Fawning-time the Females separate from the Males, attending till Rutting-time: In this Interval they will run at Man or Beast, and fight as *Harts* do one amongst the other.

When he goeth to *Rut*, his Throat and Neck is much bigger than usual: He is very strong backt; and (which is wonderful) though he should fall from on high ten Poles length, he will receive no harm; and will walk as securely on the sharp Tops of Rocks, as a Horse in the High-way.

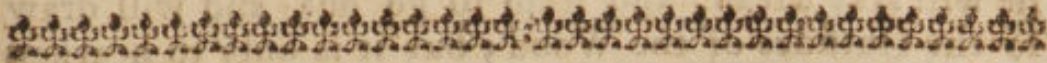
*Alhallontide* is the chiefeft Season for hunting these Wild-Goats, observing very well before you hunt, the advantages of the Coasts, the Rocks and Places where the Goats do lie.

Having thus done, set Nets and Toils toward the Rivers and Bottoms; for you cannot expect your Hounds should follow a Goat down every Place of the Mountains.

Also it will be needful that some stand on the Top of the Rocks, and throw down Stones as they see Occasion. Where the Goat goeth down to the small Brooks or Waters in the Bottom, there place your Relays, and let the Relays never tarry till the Hounds come



come in which were cast off: And this is your best Help; for a Man can neither follow on Foot nor Horseback.



### *Hunting of the Wild-Boar.*

**T**HE Boar is ever pigg'd with as many Teeth at first as he shall have ever after, which will only increase in bigness, not Number. Amongst the rest, they have four which are called *Tusbes* or *Tusks*, whereof the two biggest do not hurt when he strikes, but serve only to whet the other two lowest, with which they frequently kill.

They feed upon all Kind of Corn and Fruits which they can come at; also Roots. In *April* and *May* they feed on the Buds of Plumb-trees, and Chestnut-trees, and all other sweet Buds they can find, especially on the Buds of Broom and Juniper, and are never measled, as our tame Swine. Being near the Sea-coast, they will feed on all Manner of Shell-fish.

Their Season beginneth in the midst of *September*, and endeth about the Beginning of *December*, at which Time they go a *Brimming*. A Boar will commonly abide the Bay before he goes out of his Den; and he lies most commonly in the strongest Holds of Thorns and thick Bushes.

If it so chance that there is a Sounder of them together, then if any break Sounder, the rest will run that Way: And if you hunt a Boar from a thick and strong Covert, he will not fail to go back by the same Way he came thither: and when he is rear'd he never stays, but flies continually till he comes to the Place where he was farrow'd and brought up. This Mr. Turbervile observed himself when he was in *France*; attesting he saw a Boar hunted from a Thicket, which returned the same Way he came to the Place of his farrowing, which



was distant seven *French Leagues*. And this was performed by the Track of his Feet.

If he be hunted in a Forest or Hold where he was bred, he will hardly be forced out of it. Sometimes he will take Head, and seem to go out, and will draw to the Outfides of the Wood; but it is only to hearken to every Side; and if he hear the Noise of the Hounds, then will he return, and will not be compell'd to go that Way till Night. But having broken out of a Forest, and taken Head end-ways, he will not be put out of his Way, either by Men, Dog, Voice, Blowing, or any Thing.

A Boar, especially a great one, will not cry when you kill him: The Sows and young Swine will sometimes.

#### *Terms to be used in Boar-hunting.*

If it should be demanded what you will call a Boar of three years old; you may answer, He is a young Boar which hath lately left the Sounder. An old Boar you must call a Singular, or Sanglier, that hath left the Sounder four or five years since. In making a Report, if you are asked where the Boar fed the Night before, you may say he fed in the Corn; but if in the Fields or Meadows, you must then say, he hath been routing and worming in such a Place, or such a Fern-field. Where Note, that whatsoever he feeds on, excepting Roots, is called feeding; the other is called routing, worming, or fearning: But when he feedeth and routeth not, you must then call that grasing.

#### *Boar Hunting with Hounds or Force.*

Be advised not to Hunt a young Boar of three Years old at Force; for he will stand up as long, if not longer, than any light young Deer which beareth but three in the Top; but in the fourth Year you may hunt him at Force, as you do a Hart at ten.

In the rearing of your Boar, you need not be afraid to come near him, for he values you not, and will lie still, and will not be rear'd by you alone.



Here Note, that if a *Boar* intend not to bide in his Den, Couch, or Fort, then will he make some crossing or doubling at the Entry thereof, upon some High-way or beaten Path; by such Means a Huntsman, being early in the Woods, may judge of the Subtilty of the *Boar*, and accordingly may make Preparations for his Game.

If he be a great *Boar*, and one that hath lain long to rest, let him hunt him with good Store of Hounds, and such as will stick close to him; and let him on Horse-back be ever amongst them, charging the *Boar*, to discourage him: For if you hunt such a *Boar* with half a dozen Couple of Dogs, he will not value them; and they having chased him, he will take Courage and keep them still at Bay, running upon any Thing he seeth before him, but if he be charged home, and hard laid unto with the Hounds, he will turn Head and fly.

If you strike at him with your Sword or *Boar-spear*, strike not low, for then you will hit him on the Snout, which he little values; for he watcheth to take Blows upon his Tusks, or thereabouts: But lifting up your Hand strike right down, and have a special Care of your Horse; for if you strike and hurt him, so will he you, if he can.

It behoveth the Hunters of *Boars* to be very wary; for he will run fiercely without any fear upon his Pursuers; in which Encounter, if he receive not his Death's Wound, he overthroweth his Adversary, except he fall flat on the Ground, and then he need not fear much harm; for his Teeth cannot cut upward, but downward: But it is otherwise with a Female; for she will bite and tear any Way.

It is good to raise this Beast early in the Morning, before he hath made Water, for the burning of his Bladder doth quickly make him weary.

When the *Boar* is first raised out of the Wood, he snuffeth in the Wind, lifting up his Nose to smell what is with him, and what against him; and rarely strikes a Man till he be first wounded himself.

The Hunting Spear must be very sharp and broad, branching forth into certain Forks, so that the *Boar*



may not break through them upon the Huntsman: The best Places to Wound him in therewith, are the middle of his Forehead betwixt his Eye-lids, or else upon the Shoulder; either of these Wounds is mortal.

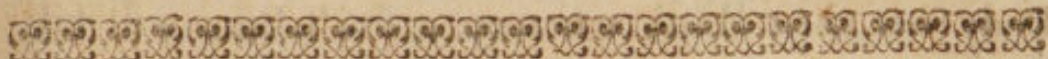
If the *Boar* make Head against the Hunter, he must not fly for it, but must meet him with his Spear, holding one Hand on the middle of it, and the other at the End, standing one Foot before the other, having an especial Eye to the Head of the Beast, which Way soever he windeth or turneth the same: For such is the Nature of the *Boar*, that sometimes he snatcheth the Spear out of their Hands, or else recoileth the Force back again upon the Hunter, by which means he is in great Danger of Life: Whensoever this hapneth, there is but one Remedy, which is; another of his Companions must come and Charge the *Boar* with his Spear, and then pretend to Wound him with his Dart, but not casting it, for fear of hurting the Hunter. The *Boar* seeing this, forsaketh the first Man, and rushing upon the second, who must look to defend himself with all dexterity, composing his Body, and ordering his Weapons according to artificial *Boar* hunting: In the mean Time he that was overthrown must rise again, taking fresh hold on his Spear, and with all Courage assault his Adversary, and assist his Friend, who was the Cause of the saving of his Life.

When he feeleth himself so wounded that he cannot live, were it not for the Forks of the *Boar*-spear, he would press it on his Vanquisher, and so revenge his Death: For such is the Fury of this Beast, that he will endeavour to wound and kill, although he feel upon him the Pangs of Death: and what Place soever he biteth, whether Man or Dog, the Heat of his Teeth causeth the Wound to be inflam'd: And for this Cause if he but touch the Hair of a Dog, he burneth it off: Nay, Huntsmen have tried the Heat of his Teeth, by laying Hairs on them as soon as he was dead, and they have shrivel'd up as with a hot Iron.

To conclude, the same Devices, Diligence, Labour, Prosecution, and Observations, are to be used in the Hunting of the *Boar*, which are prescribed for the Hunting



ing of the *Hart*. Not but that there are several Policies and Stratagems, which have been invented, and are still used in several Countries, whereby to take them without the pursuit of Dogs; for the Knowledge whereof I shall refer the Reader to *Blondus*, *Oppianus*, *Gesner*, *Turberville*, and many others both antient and modern Writers, who have largely treated on this Subject.



*Of the Nature and Properties of a Bear, and after  
what Manner hunted.*

There are two Sorts of *Bears*, a greater and lesser; the last is more apt to climb Trees than the other.

*Bears* are bred in many Countries; in the *Helvetian Alpine* Region they are so strong and courageous, that they can tear in Pieces both Oxen and Horses; for which Cause the Inhabitants are studiously laborious in the taking them.

A *Bear* is of a most venereous and lustful Disposition; for Night and Day the Females with most ardent inflam'd desires, do provoke the Male to Copulation; and for this Cause at that Time they are more fierce and angry. The Time of their Copulation is in the beginning of Winter, and the Manner of it is like a Man's; the Male moving himself upon the Belly of the Female, which lieth flat on her Back, and they embrace each other with their Fore-feet: They remain a very long Time in that Act; insomuch (as some have observed, how true I cannot say) that if they were very Fat at their first Entrance, they dis-join not themselves again till they be lean.

There is a strange Report in History (if it be true) That in the Mountains of *Savoy* a *Bear* carried a young Maid into his Den by violence, where in a venereal Manner he had a carnal use of her Body; and while he kept her in his Den, he daily went forth and brought



her the best Fruits he could get, presenting them to her as Food, as courtly as he could do it; but always when he went to forrage, he rowled a very great Stone to the Mouth of his Den, that the Virgin should not make her escape from him: At length her Parents, with long search, found their Daughter in the *Bear's Den*, who delivered her from that bestial Captivity.

They are naturally very cruel and mischievous unto all tame Beasts, and are very strong in all Parts of their Body but their Head, whereon a small Blow will kill them.

They go to mate in the beginning of the Winter, some sooner, some later, according to their Rest and Feeding; and their Heat lasteth not passing fifteen Days.

When the She *Bear* perceiveth herself with Whelp, she withdraws herself into some Cave, or hollow Rock, and there remains till she brings forth her Whelps, where without Meat they grow very fat, especially the Males, only by sucking their Fore-feet. When they enter into their Den, they convey themselves backward, that so they may put out their Foot-steps from the Sight of the Hunters.

The Nature of all of them is to avoid Cold, and therefore in the Winter Time they hide themselves, chusing rather to suffer Famine than Cold; lying for the most Part three or four Months together, and never see the Light, whereby in a Manner their Guts are clung together: Coming forth, they are so dazled by long Darkness, being in the Light again, that they stagger and reel to and fro; and then by a secret Instinct they Remedy the Straightness of their Guts by eating an Herb called *Arum*, in English *Wake-robin* or *Calves-foot*, by the acidity whereof their Guts are enlarged; and being recovered, they remain more fierce and cruel than at other Times, during the Time their Young are with them: And this is the Herb, some say, which they eat to make them sleep so long in Winter without Sense of Cold or Hunger.

They are Whelped most commonly in *March*, sometimes two, and not above five in Number; the most part  
of



of them are dead one whole Day after they are whelped; but the Bear doth so lick them and warm them with her Breath, and hug them in her Bosom, that she quickly revives them again.

It is commonly received as a truth (though it be a palpable vulgar Error) *That the Whelps of Bears at their first Littering are without all Form and Fashion, and nothing but a little congealed Blood like a Lump of Flesh, which afterwards the Old one frameth with her Tongue by licking them to her own likeness.* This Opinion may be easily disproved; for they are only littered blind, without Hair, and the hinder Legs not perfect, the Fore-feet folded up like a Fist, and other Members deformed, by Reason of the immoderate Humour or Moistness in them; which also is one Cause, why she cannot retain in her Womb the Seed to the Perfection of the Young ones, whereof *Joachimus Rhericus* is an Eye-witness.

As soon as the Dam perceiveth her Cubs to grow strong, she suckleth them no longer, by Reason of their curstness; for they will surely bite her, if they cannot get Suck enough. After this she preyeth Abroad upon any Thing she can meet with, which she eats, and casts up again to her Young ones, and so feeds them till they can prey for themselves: They will climb a Tree for the Fruit.

If they be hunted, they will follow a Man, but not run upon him, unless they are wounded. They are very strong in their Paws, in such Sort, that they will so hug a Man or Dog till they have broke his Back, or squeez'd his Guts out of his Belly: With a single Paw they will pull a lusty Dog to their tearing and devouring Mouth. They bite very severely; for they will bite a Man's Head to the very Brains; and for an Arm or Leg, they will crush it, as a Dog may do a slender Bone of Mutton.

When they are hunted, they are so heavy, that they make no speed, and so are always in Sight of the Dogs: They stand not at Bay as a Boar, but fly wallowing; but if the Hounds stick in, they will fight valiantly in their own Defence; sometimes they stand up strait on their hinder Feet, and then take that as a Sign of



Fear and Cowardice; they fight stoutest and strongest on all four.

They have an excellent Scent, and smell farther off than any other Beast except the *Boar*; for in a whole Forest they will smell out a Tree laden with Mast.

They may be hunted with Hounds, Mastiffs, or Grey-hounds; and they are chased and killed with Bows, *Boar*-spears, Darts, and Swords; so they are also taken in Snares, Caves, Pits, with other Engines.

They do naturally abide in great Mountains; but when it snoweth, or in hard Weather, then they descend into Valleys and Forests for Provision. They cast their Lessees sometimes in round Croteys, and sometimes flat like a Bullock, according to their Feeding.

They go sometimes a gallop, at other Times an amble; but they go most at ease when they wallow.

When they come from their Feeding, they beat commonly the High-ways and beaten Paths; and where-soever they go out of the High-ways, there you may be sure they are gone to their Dens; for they use no Doublings nor Subtilties.

They tumble and wallow in Water and Mire as Swine, and feed like a Dog. Some say their Flesh is very good Food; let who will eat it for me, who are not so nicely palated as myself.

The best finding of a *Bear* is with a lame Hound; and yet he who is without one may trail after a *Bear* as we do after a *Buck* or *Roe*, and you may lodge and hunt them as you do a *Buck*. For the more speedy Execution, mingle Mastiffs among your Hounds; for they will pinch the *Bear*, and so provoke her to anger, until at last they bring her to the Bay, or else drive her out of the Plain into the Covert, not letting her be at Rest till she fight in her own Defence.







## Of the Beaver.

A Beaver differeth but a little from an Otter but in his Tail: His Colour is somewhat Yellow and White, aspersed with Ash-colour, which stand out beyond the shorter Hairs, double their Length, and are neat and soft like an Otter's.

There is Plenty of them in the River *Pontus*, whence the Beaver by some is called *Canis Ponticus*: They are also bred in *Spain*, some few in *France*, *Germany*, *Polonia*, *Sclavonia*, *Russia*, *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, and abundance of them in *New England*.

These Beasts are amphibious, living both on Land and Water, both fresh and salt; keeping the last in the Day-time, and the first in the night: Without Water they cannot live; for they participate much of the Nature of Fish, which may be gathered from their Tails and hinder Legs.

They are about the bigness of a Country Cur; their Head short; their Ears small and round; their Teeth very long; the under Teeth standing out beyond their Lips three Fingers Breadth, and the upper about half a Finger, being very broad, crooked, strong, and sharp, standing very deep in their Mouth, wherewith they defend themselves against Beasts, take Fishes as it were upon Hooks, and will gnaw in sunder Trees as big as a Man's Thigh.

Their Fore-feet are like Dogs, and their hinder like Geese, made as it were on Purpose to go on the Land, and swim in the Water; but the Tail of this Beast is most strange of all, being without Hair, and covered over with a Skin like the Scales of a Fish, it being like a Soal, and for the most Part six Fingers broad, and half a Foot long. They are accounted a very delicate Dish, and eat like Barbels: the Manner of their dressing is by roasting them first, and boiling or stewing them afterwards; they must be Food that is very sweet,



since this Proverb proceeds from them : *Sweet is that Fish, which is no Fish at all.*

As for the wonderful Manner of their Building, I shall let that alone, since it is at large described by *Gesner* in his *History of Beasts*, pag. 36.

There is nothing so valuable in this Beast as his Stones ; for they are in great esteem, and a precious Commodity.

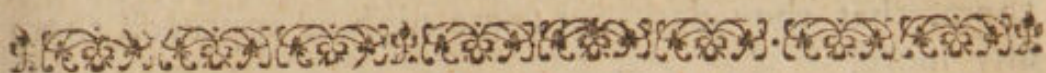
It hath been the Opinion of some, that when a *Beaver* is hunted, and is in Danger to be taken, he biteth off his own Stones, knowing that for them only is he thus pursued : But this is found to be a meer Fiction ; for their Stones being small, and placed like a *Boar's*, it is impossible for them to come at them.

They are taken for their Skins, Tails, and Cods, and that many Ways. First, when their Caves are found : (in which are several Chambers built one over another by the Water-side, to ascend or descend according as the Water riseth or falleth) I say, their Abode being found, they make a Breach therein, wherein is put a little Dog, which the *Beaver* perceiving, flies instantly to the End of her Cave, and there defendeth herself with her Teeth, till her Building be raised, and she laid open to her Enemies, who kill her with Instruments for that purpose ; these Dogs for the *Beaver* are the same which hunt *Otters*.

They cannot dive long Time under Water, but must put up their Heads for Breath ; which being seen by those who are hunting them, they kill them with Gun-shot or *Otter-Spears* : His Nature is, if he hear any Noise, to put up his Head above Water, whereby he is discovered, and so loseth Life. Those Skins are best which are blackest.







## Of the Elk.

**T**His Beast is twice as big as a *Hart*, whose upper Lip is so great, and hangeth over the nether so far, that he cannot eat going forward; but as he eateth he goeth backward, and so gathereth up his Sustenance.

His Mane is diverse both on the top of his Neck, and underneath his Throat, which buncheth like a Beard, or curled Lock of Hair; his Neck is very short, disproportionable to his Body.

He hath two very large Horns bending towards the Back in a plain Edge, and the Spires stand forward to the Face: Both Males and Females have them; they are solid at the Root, and round, but afterwards branched; they are broader than a *Hart's*, and are very heavy, being not above two Foot long; and these Horns they mew every Year: He is coloured for the most Part like a *Hart*, and hath cloven Feet, but without Joints (like an Elephant) in his Fore-legs, and therefore sleepeth leaning to Posts or Trees, and fighteth notwith his Horns, but Fore-feet.

It is a most timorous Creature, not desiring to stir much, unless provoked thereunto by Hunting. There is no danger in hunting this Beast, except a Man come right before him: For if this Beast fasten his Fore-feet on him, he cannot escape alive: But if it receive any small Wound, it instantly dies.

They are taken by Nets and Toils, or as Elephants are taken: For when they have found the Trees whereunto they lean, they so cut and saw them, that when the *Elk* cometh, he overthroweth the Tree, and falleth with it, and being not able to rise, is so taken alive. When they are chased eagerly, and can find no Place to rest themselves, and lie secret, they run to the Waters, and therein stand, taking up Waters into their Mouths, and in a little time do so heat it, that squir-  
ting



ting it upon the Dogs, the Heat thereof so scaldeth them, that they dare not come nigh or approach them any more.

Many more exotick Beasts I might here insert, describing their Natures, and the manner of their foreign Hunting: but since they are not to be found in *England*, let these suffice, which I have already described.



**D O G S**



DOGS Diseases Remedied,  
and their Hurts Healed,

According to the best Prescriptions of  
Antient and Modern Huntsmen.

Of a Fivefold Madness in a DOG; the Symp-  
toms of the Maladies, and their Cure



THE Antients have derived Rabies, Madness, from *Ravies* Hoarsness of Voice, for mad Dogs have no perfect Voice: But it is more probable, that Rabies cometh *à Rapiendo*; because when a Dog beginneth to go mad, he biteth, runneth, snatcheth, and roves to and fro, to his own perdition. A mad Dog is most dangerous in the Dog-days; for at that Time the very Foam or Spittle falling on a Man breeds danger.

There are properly seven Sorts of Madneffes which afflict a Dog, whereof two of them are incurable, and therefore I shall speak little of them, only so much as may give you warning to shift them from your other Dogs, because their Disease is infectious: and that you may beware of them yourself, lest they injure you; for their biting is dangerous.

The first of these incurable Madneffes is called the *Hot burning Madnefs*, and is known by these Symptoms: First. when they run they raise their Tails bolt  
up



upright, and run upon any Thing that stands before them, having no respect where nor which Way they run: Also their Mouth will be very Black, having no Foam in or about them. They will not continue thus above three or four Days, after which Time they die, their Pain being so intolerable. Where *Note*, that all those Dogs they have bitten and drew Blood from, will be mad in like Manner.

The second is called the *running Madnefs*, and is less dangerous, however incurable. The Dogs that are troubled with this Madnefs run not on Men, but Dogs, and on other Beasts. The Symptoms are, they will smell on other Dogs, and having smelt them, will shake and bite them, yet shaking their Tails, and seeming to offer no harm; with other Tokens I omit for brevity Sake.

#### *Of the Dumb Madnefses.*

The five Madnefses (or rather Sicknefses) which are curable, are these.

The first is called the *Dumb Madnefs*, and is thus known: The Dog that is troubled therewith will not feed, but hold his Mouth wide open continually, putting his Feet to his Mouth frequently, as if he had a Bone in his Throat.

The Cure is thus: Take four Ounces of the Juice of *Spathula putrida*, and put it into a Pot; then take the like Quantity of the Juice of black *Hellebore*, and as much of the Juice of *Rue*: having strained them all well thro' a fine Cloth, put them into a Glass: Then take two drams of Scammony unprepared, and having mingled it with the former Juices, put it into a Horn or Funnel, and convey it down his Throat, keeping his Head up strait, lest he cast it up again: Then bleed him in the Mouth, cutting three or four Veins in his Gums, that he may bleed the better; and in a short Time you will find amendment. Or you may only take eight drams of the Juice of an Herb called Hartshorn, or Dogs-tooth, and you will find it a most excellent Receipt against any Madnefs whatsoever.



*Of the Falling Madnefs.*

The *Second* is called the *Falling Madnefs*: The disease lieth in their Heads, which maketh then reel as they go, and fall.

The cure is thus: Take four Ounces of the Juice of Piony, with the like quantity of the Juice of Briony, the like of the Juice of *Cruciata*, and four Drams of Stavef-acre pulverized, mingle these together, and give it your Hound or Dog as aforesaid, then let him Blood in the Ears, or the two Veins which come down the Shoulders, and if he is not cured at first, give him a second or third Time.

*Of the Lank Madnefs.*

The *Third* kind of Madnefs is called the *Lank Madnefs*, by Reason of the leanness of their Bodies, occasioned by *Skumming*.

The Cure is thus: *First*, purge your Dog with this potion: Take an Ounce and a half of *Cassia fistularis* well cleansed, two drams and a half of Stavef-acre pulverized, and the like Quantity of Scammony prepared in White-wine Vinegar, and four Ounces of Oil-olive, temper these, and warm them over the Fire, and give it your Dog. In the Morning put him into this Bath fasting as followeth: Put into six pails full of Water ten Handfuls of Mugworth, of Rosemary, of red Sage, of the Roots or Leaves of Marsh-mallows, of the Roots or Leaves of Wall-wort, of the Roots or Stalks of Fennel, of the Leaves or Stalks of Elecampane, Bawm, and Rue, Sorrel, Bugloss, and Melilot; let these boil together in two thirds of Water and the other Wine, until one third be consumed, the Bath being no hotter than your Dog can endure it, bathe him therein for the Space of an Hour, then taking him out, put him in some warm Place for fear of catching Cold. Do this four or five Times in the same Bath, and it will Cure.

*Of*



*Of the Sleeping Madnefs.*

The fourth Madnefs is called the *Sleeping Madnefs*, and is caused by some little Worms breeding in the Mouth of the Stomach from corrupt Humours, the Vapours and Fumes whereof ascending into the Head, make the Dog sleep continually, and frequently he dieth sleeping.

For the Cure, you must take five Ounces of the Juice of Worm-wood, with two Ounces of the Powder of Hartshorn burned, and two Drams of Agarick: mingle these together, and if they be too thick, thin them with White-wine, and give it your Dog to Drink.

*Of the Rheumatick or Slavering Madnefs.*

This Madnefs is called so, because when a Dog hath got it, his Head swelleth, his Eyes are as Yellow as a Kites Foot, and he commonly slavereth at the Mouth.

The Cure is thus: Take six Ounces of the Juice of Fennel-roots, and the like Quantity of the Juice of Miffeltoe, four Ounces of the Juice of Ivy, four Ounces of the Powder of the Roots of Polypody, boil these in White wine, and give your Dog to Drink as hot as he can suffer it.

Here Note, that when a Dog hath any of these kind of Madneffes, he will have no desire to eat, fasting frequently eight or nine Days, and so starving to Death. Nay, if they are troubled with any Distemper they will refuse their Meat, nay, the daintiest bit you can give them, until they have eaten Grasse, and have cleared their Stomach of what did offend it, and then they will eat.

*Concerning the Madnefs of Dogs, and their Venomous Bittings.*

I think no reasonable Man ought to Question why the Teeth of a mad Dog should do more harm than those of a Sound one, because in rage and anger the Teeth of every



ry Beast and Creature receive Venom and Poison from the Head, whereby when they bite at that Time they do much more harm.

Against the simple biting of a Dog, take the Urine of a Dog, which is sufficient, since there is but little Venom in those Wounds. To lay the Hair of the same Dog thereon (tho' so much talkt on) I look upon as a meer foppery. Or being bit by a Dog, take Vinegar, and with your Hand rub the Wound very well, then pour into it Vinegar mixed with Water or Nitre, then wet a Sponge in the same Liquids, and so let it remain bound up three Days; then take Pellitory of the Wall, mingled and beaten with Salt, or any other Plaister for green Wounds.

Diverse are the cures and remedies for bitings of mad Dogs, which I omit in this Place, as belonging not to my Subject, but to Phisick.

*A Remedy against the common Mange.*

This Distemper befalls a Dog frequently for want of fresh Water to drink when he desires it, and sometimes by foul Kennelling, and sometimes by foundering and melting his Grease.

You may cure it in this Manner: Take two handfuls of wild Cresses, two Handfuls of Elecampane, and as much of the Leaves and Roots of Rhoerb and Sorrel, and two Pound of the Roots of Frodels, make them all boil well in ley and Vinegar: Having strained the decoction, put therein two pound of grey Soap, and when it is melted therein, then rub your Dogs with it four or five Days together, and it will cure them.

*A brief*





*A brief Discourse of the Cure of Maladies belonging to Spaniels, with other Accidents happening.*

**H**OW necessary a Thing a *Spaniel* is to Faulconry, and for those that delight in that noble Recreation, keeping Hawks for their pastimes and pleasure, I think no Body need Question, as well to spring and retrieve a Fowl being flown to the Mark, as also divers other Ways to help and assist Faulcons and Goshawks.

Now since they are Subject to many Diseases and casualties, I shall endeavour to propound a suitable Cure for them, and first, I shall begin with the Mange, as the capital Enemy to the quiet and beauty of a brave *Spaniel*, wherewith, poor Creatures, they are often grievously tormented, and as frequently infect others.

For the Cure of this Distemper, take a Pound of Barrow-flick, common Oil three Ounces, Brimstone well pulverized four Ounces, Salt well beaten to Powder, Ashes well sifted and searched, of each two Ounces, boil all these in a Kettle or earthen-pot, and when they are all well incorporated together, anoint your *Spaniel* with this thrice every other Day, either against the Sun or Fire, having so done, wash him all over with good strong Ley, and this will kill the Mange. Remember you shift his Kennel and Litter often.

If the *Spaniel* lose its Hair, as it often happens, then bathe your *Spaniel* in the Water of Lupines or Hops, and anoint him with stale Barrow-flick.

This Ointment, besides the Cure, maketh his Skin look slick and beautiful, and kills the Fleas, the Dogs disquieters, and Enemies to his ease.

If this be not strong enough to destroy this malady, then take two quarts of strong vinegar, common Oil six Ounces, Brimstone three Ounces, Soot six Ounces, braid Salt and Searched two Handfuls, boil all these together in the Vinegar, and anoint your Dog as aforesaid. This

receipt



receipt must not be administred in cold Weather, for it may hazard his Life in so doing.

If a *Spaniel* be not so much troubled with the Mange, then it is easie to Cure him thus:

Make Bread with wheaten-bran, with the Roots, Leaves and Fruit of Agrimony, beating them well in a Morter, and making it into a Paste or Dough, bake it in an Oven, and so made, give thereof to your *Spaniel*, giving him no other Bread for some Time, letting him eat as long as he will.

#### *Cure of the Formica.*

In the Summer-Time there is a scurvy malady, which very much afflicts a *Spaniels* Ears, and is occasioned by Flies, and their own scratching with their Feet: We Term it a *Mange*, the *Italians* *Formica*, and the *French* *Fourmier*.

For the Cure, take Gum-tragaganth four Ounces, infused in the strongest Vinegar may be gotten for the space of eight Days, and afterwards bruised on a marble Stone, as Painters do their Colours, adding unto it Roch-Allum and Galls beaten to Powder, of either two Ounces, mingle all these well together, and lay it on the Place afflicted.

#### *For Swelling in the Throat.*

By Reason of a Humour distilling from the Brain, the Throat of a *Spaniel* will often swell unreasonably: For Cure whereof, anoint the grieved Place with Oil of Camomil, then wash it with Vinegar not over-strong, mixed with Salt. *Probatum est.*

#### *Of Worms breeding in the Hurts and Mangy parts of a Spaniel.*

These Worms do hinder the Cure of the Mange or Wounds, causing them to continue at one stay, or to grow worse and worse. To remove this hindrance, take the Gum of Ivy, and convey it into the Wound, and let it there remain a Day or two, washing the



Wound with Wine, and after that anoint it with Bacon-grease, Oil of Earth-worms, and Rue.

The Powder of wild Cucumbers is excellent good to kill these Worms, and will prove a good corrosive also, eating away the dead flesh, and encreasing the good.

If the Worms be within the Body, you must destroy them in this Manner: Cause your *Spaniel*, by fair means or foul, when fasting, to eat the Yolk of an Egg, with two scruples of Saffron pulverized and confectioned with the same Egg, keeping him after it fasting till Night.

When a *Spaniel* is hurt, as long as he can come to lick the Wound with his Tongue, he needs no other Remedy, his Tongue is the best Chirurgeon, but when he cannot do that, then such Wounds as are not venemous, you may Cure with the Powder of *Matresilva* dried in an Oven, or in the Sun. If it be a bite of a Fox, anoint it with Oil, wherein Earth-worms and Rue have been boiled together. If by a mad Dog, let him lap twice or thrice of the Broth of Germander, and eat the Germander too boiled.

Others bore the Skin of his Neck through with a hot Iron just betwixt his Ears, so as the Fire may touch both sides of the Hole made: after that plucking up the Skin of the Dogs Shoulders and Flanks backwards, thrust it through with a hot Iron in like Manner, by giving the Venom this Vent, it is a ready way to Cure him.

*To help a Spaniel that has lost his Sense of Smelling.*

*Spaniels* sometimes, by Reason of too much rest and Grease, or some other accident, do lose their Sense of Smelling, so as they cannot spring to retrieve a Fowl after their usual Manner: To recover it again, take Agarick two Drams, Sal gemma one scruple, beat these into Powder, and incorporate them with Oxymel, making a Pill as big as a Nut. cover it with Butter, and give it the Dog by fair means or Foul. This will bring him into a quick Scent, as I have oftentimes proved it.



*The benefit of cutting off the tip of a Spaniel's Tail or Stern.*

It is necessary for several Reasons to cut off the tip of a *Spaniel's* Stern, when it is a Whelp : First, by so doing Worms are prevented from breeding there ; in the next Place, if it be not cut, he will be the less forward in pressing hastily into the Covert after his Game ; besides this Benefit, the Dog appears more beautiful.



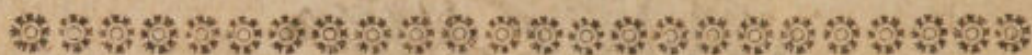




A  
TREATISE

OF

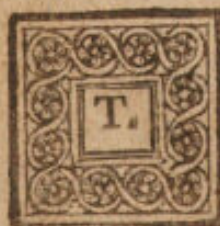
*Hawking and Faulconry, &c.*



PART II.



*The Introduction.*



THE Element wherein the *Faulconer* useth to Trade, is the *Air*, and though he deal-eth sometimes in the *Water*, yet he prefers the *Air* before it, that yielding him most Recreation, for it is unable to stop the high Soarings of his generous *Faulcon*: In it she flies to such a height, that being lost to the Sight of Mortals, she seems to converse with Heaven alone, and, like *Icarus*, endangers her Wings to be scorched by the Sunbeams, and yet is fearless, cutting the fluid *Air* with her nimble Pinions, making her High-way over the steepest Mountains and deepest Rivers, and in her lofty career looks down with a seeming contempt on the greatest











greatest Glories we most estimate : And yet such is her Loyalty and Obedience to her Master, that a Word from his Mouth shall make her stoop and condescend.

This Element of Air is not only to be praised for the Recreation it affords the Faulconers, but for its usefulness to all, no Creature being in a Condition to live without it: For if the inspiring or expiring Organ of any Creature be stopt, it must speedily die, and pay the Debt that's due to Nature.

And as this Element justly merits praise, so do its wing'd Inhabitants, both feeding and refreshing Mankind ; with their Bodies they perform the first, and the latter with their harmonious Voices.

The Number of Heaven's Airy Choir is so great, I cannot here well enumerate them, yet I must not pass by these nimble Musicians of the Air, which warble forth such curious Notes as puzzle Art to imitate.

I mean to speak of a few, and first of the *Lark*: When she means to recreate herself and Hearers, she quits the Earth, and sings as she ascends, and having made an End of her heavenly Ditty, she seems to swoond to think she must descend again unto the dull Earth, which she would scorn to tread but for necessity.

Again, observe how the *Black-bird* and the *Thrush* contend, who shall with their unimitable Voices bid the best welcome to the fragrant Spring.

Nor doth the *Nightingale* come short in breathing out her loud Musick through the small Organ of her Throat. How have I oft admired in a still Night the clearness of her Airs, the sweetness of her Descants, her natural Risings and Fallings, her Doublings and Redoublings!

Much more might be said of these, which I shall wave, being a digression from my Purpose, which is to Treat of another Bird of Pleasure, *viz.* the *Hawk*.

**H**ERE Note, that the *Hawk* is distinguished into two Kinds, the *Long-winged*, and *Short-winged Hawk*.



Of the first Kind there are these, which are here amongst us most in Use.

The *Gerfaulcon* and *Ferkin*,  
*Faulcon* and *Tiercel-gentle*,  
*Lanner* and *Lanneret*,  
*Bockerel* and *Bockeret*,  
*Saker* and *Sakaret*,  
*Merlin* and *Jack merlin*,  
*Hobby* and *Jack*,  
The *Stelletto* of *Spain*,  
The *Blood red Rook* of *Turkie*,  
The *Waskite* from *Virginia*.

Of the *Short-winged Hawks* there are these :

The *Eagle* and *Iron*,  
*Goshawk* and *Tiercel*,  
The *Sparrow-hawk* and *Musket*,  
Two Sorts of the *French Pie*.

Of inferiour Sort are these :

The *Stanyel* or *Ring-tail*,  
The *Raven* and *Buzzard*,  
The *Forked Kite* and bold *Buzzard*,  
The *Hen-driver*, &c.

It is not to be expected that we should treat of all these and many others bearing different Names, but only such which are most in Use, of which I shall regularly treat concerning their Eyries, Mewings, Castings, Renovation of Feathers, &c. with their Reclaiming, Dieting, Diseases, Cures, and Method of Practice.





## Terms of Art in Faulconry.

*As they were used by Ancient Faulconers, and are now by Modern Practitioners, with their Explanations.*



THE Age of a Hawk:

The first Year, a *Soarage*.

The second Year, an *Enterview*.

The third Year, a *White Hawk*.

The fourth Year, a *Hawk of the first Coar*.

*Arms*, are the Legs from the Thigh to the Foot.

*Bate*, is when the *Hawk* fluttereth with her Wings, either from *Pearch* or *Fist*, as it were striving to get away.

*Bathing*, is when the *Hawk* washeth herself at Home or Abroad.

*Beak*, is the upper Part of the Bill that is crooked.

*Beam Feathers*, are the long Feathers of the *Hawks* Wings.

*Beavy of Quails*, are a brood of Young *Quails*.

*Bewits*, are the Leathers with Bells buttoned about the *Hawks* Legs.

*Binding*, is tying, or when a *Hawk* seizeth.

*Bowet*, is when a young *Hawk* draweth any Thing out of her Nest, and covets to clamber on the Boughs.

*Bowfing*, is when the *Hawk* drinks often, and yet continually thirsteth for more.

*Branch or Stand*, is to make the *Hawk* leap from Tree to Tree till the Dog springs the *Partridge*.



*Branches*, is a young *Hawk* newly taken out of the Nest.

*Cadge*, is that circular Piece of Wood, on which *Hawks* are carried when they are exposed to Sale.

*Canceleer*, is when a high-flown *Hawk* in her stooping turneth two or three Times upon the Wing, to recover herself before she seizeth.

*Carry*, is flying away with the Quarry.

*Cast your Hawk to the Pearch*, is to put your *Hawk* on the Pearch.

*Castig*, is when you give your *Hawk* any Thing to cleanse and purge her Gorge.

*Carvist*, a *Hawk* may be so called at the beginning of the Year, and signifies as much as to carry on the Fist.

*Cataract*, a Disease in *Hawks* so called.

*Cauterizing-Irons*, are Irons to sear with.

*Cawking-time*, is Treading Time,

*Crabbing*, is when *Hawks* standing too near, fight with one another.

*Creance*, is a fine small long Line of strong and even-wound Pack-thread, which is fastened to the *Hawks* Lease or Leash when she is first Lured.

*Check*, that is when the *Hawk* forsakes her proper Game to fly at Pies, Crows, or the like, crossing her in her flight.

*Clap*, is the nether Part of the *Hawks* Beak.

*Coping-Irons*, are used in coping or paring the *Hawks* Beak, Pounces, or Talons, when over-grown.

*Cowring*, is when young *Hawks* quiver and shake their Wings, in Testimony of Obedience towards the old ones.

*Crinets*, are the small black Feathers like Hairs about the Sere.

*Disclosed*, is when the young just peep through the Shell.

*Dropping*, is when the *Hawk* muteth directly downward in several drops, not yerking it streight forwards.

*Endew*, is when the *Hawk* digesteth her Meat, that she not only dischargeth her Gorge thereof, but likewise cleanseth her Pannel.



- Enseame*, is the purging of a *Hawk* of her Glut and Grease.
- Enter a Hawk*, is when she first begins to kill.
- Eyefls*, is a young *Hawk* newly taken out of his Nest, not able to Prey for himself.
- Eyrie*, is that Place where *Hawks* build and hatch their young.
- Feaking*, is when the *Hawk* wipeth her Beak after feeding.
- Filanders*, a Sort of little red Worms that usually breed in *Hawks*.
- Flags*, Feathers next the principal Feathers in the *Hawks* Wing.
- Fly on Head*, is missing her Quarry, and betaking herself to the next Check, as Crows, &c.
- Formale*, is the Female *Hawks*.
- Formica*, a Disease in *Hawks* so called.
- Frounce*, is a Disease common in the Mouth or Throat of a *Hawk*.
- Gleam*, after a *Hawk* hath cast, she gleameth, or throweth up filth from her Gorge.
- Glut*, is the slimy Substance that lies in the *Hawk* Pannel.
- Gorge*, is called in other Fowl the *Craw* or *Crop*.
- Gurgiting*, is when she is stuft and suffocated.
- Hack*, is the Place where the *Hawks* Meat is laid.
- Hawk keeps her Mark*, is when she waits at the Place where she lays in *Partridge*, or the like, until it be retrieved.
- Hern at seidge*, is when you find a *Hern* standing by the Water-side watching for Prey, or the like.
- Jack*, is the Male *Hawk*.
- Jesses*, are those short Straps of Leather which are fastened to the *Hawks* Legs, and so to the Lease or Leash by Vervails, and such like.
- Imp*, is to insert a Feather into the Wing of a *Hawk*, in the Place of one that is broken.
- Inke*, is the Neck from the Head to the Body of any Bird which the *Hawk* doth prey upon.



*Intermewing*, is from the first exchange of the *Hawks* Coat, till she turn white, and this is so called from the first Mewing.

*Jouketh*, is when she sleepeth.

*Lure*, that is when a young *Hawk* is called by the Faulconer thereunto, and is made of Feathers and Leather, not much unlike a *Fowl*, which he casteth up into the Air.

*Lease* or *Leash*, is a small long thong of Leather, by which the Faulconer holdeth his *Hawk* fast, folding it many Times about his Finger.

*Lean*, is when the *Hawk* holds in to you.

A *Make-Hawk*, is an old Staunch-*Hawk* which used to fly will easily instruct a young *Hawk*.

*Managing a Hawk*, is to use her with Art and Skill.

*Make out*, is when the *Hawk* goeth forth at Check.

*Mailes*, are the Breast-feathers.

*Manning*, is making a *Hawk* endure Company.

*Mantleth*, is when the *Hawk* stretcheth one of her Wings after her Legs. and so the other,

*Mew*, is the Place where you set down your *Hawk* during the Time she raiseth her Feathers.

*Muting*, is the Excrements or Dung of a *Hawk*, and so it is of a *Hern*.

*Mites*, are a Sort of Vermin that trouble the Head and Nares of a *Hawk*.

*Nares*, are the little Holes in a *Hawks* Beak.

*Pearch*, is the *Hawks* resting-place when she is off the Faulconers Fist.

*Pelt*, is the dead Body of any Fowl the *Hawk* hath killed.

*Pill* or *Pelf*, is what the *Hawk* hath left of her Prey, after she is relieved.

*Plume*, is the general mixture of Feathers and Colours by which the Constitution a *Hawk* is known.

*Plumage*, are small Feathers given the *Hawk*, to make her cast.

*Pluming,*



*Pluming*, is after the *Hawk* hath seized her Prey, and dismantles it of the Feathers,

*Pannel*, is the Pipe next the Fundament of a *Hawk*, where she digesteth her Meat from her Body.

*Pantas*, a Disease in *Hawks* so called.

*Pendant-Feathers*, those Feathers behind the Thigh of a *Hawk*.

*Petty-singles*, are the Toes of the *Hawk*.

*Pounces*, are the Claws of the *Hawk*.

*Principal-Feathers*, are the two longest Feathers in the *Hawks* Wings.

*Pruneth*, is when a *Hawk* picketh herself.

*Put over*, is when a *Hawk* removeth her Meat from the Gorge into her Bowels, by traversing with her Body, but chiefly with her Neck.

*Quarry*, is the Fowl which the *Hawk* flies at, dead or alive

*Raised in Flesh*, is when a *Hawk* grows fat.

*Rake*, is when the *Hawk* flies out too far from the Fowl.

*Ramage*, is when the *Hawk* is wild, and difficult to be reclaimed.

*Rangle*, is when we give a *Hawk* Gravel to bring her to her Stomach.

*Retrieve*, is when Partridges having been sprung, are to find again.

*Rouze*, is when a *Hawk* listeth herself up, and shaketh herself.

*Ruff*, is when a *Hawk* hits the Prey, and yet not trusses it.

*Rufter Hood*, is a plain easie Leather-hood, being large, wide, and open behind, and is to be worn by the *Hawk* when you first draw her.

*Reclaim*, is to make a *Hawk* tame, gentle, and familiar.

*Sails*, are the Wings of a *Hawk*.

*Sear* or *Sere*, is the yellow between the Beak and the Eyes of the *Hawk*.

*Seeling*, is when a *Hawk* first taken is so blinded with a Thread run through the Eye-lids, that she seeth not,  
or



- or very little, the better to make her endure the Hood.
- Seizing*, is when a *Hawk* gripes her Prey, or any Thing else, fast within her Foot.
- Setting down*, is when the *Hawk* is put into the Mew.
- Slice*, is when a *Hawk* muteth a great Distance from her.
- Sliming*, is when a *Hawk* muteth without dropping.
- Sniting*, is when a *Hawk* as it were sneezeth.
- Soar-hawk*, that is from the first taking her from the Eyries till she hath Mewed her Feathers.
- Spring*, is when any Partridge or Pheasant rise.
- Stooping*, is when the *Hawk* is aloft upon her Wing, and then descends to strike her Prey.
- Summ'd*, is when the *Hawk* is in all her Plumes.
- Swivel*, is that which keepeth a *Hawk* from twisting.

- Tiercel* or *Vassel*, is the Male *Hawk*.
- Tiring*, is when you give your *Hawk* a Leg or Pinion of a Pullet, Pidgeon, &c. to pluck at.
- Train*, is the Tail of a *Hawk*.
- Trassing*, is when she raiseth any Fowl aloft, and soaring with it, at length descendeth with it to the Ground.
- Varvels*, little Rings of Silver at the End of the Jeffes, whereon the Owners of the *Hawk* have their Names ingraven.
- Unreclaimed*, is when a *Hawk* is wild.
- Unfeeling*, is when you take away a Thread that runs through the *Hawks* Eye-lids, and hinders her Sight.
- Unstrike the hood*, is to draw the Strings, that it may be in a readiness to pull off.
- Unsumm'd*, is when the Feathers of a *Hawk* are not fully grown.
- Urines*, are Nets to catch *Hawks* withal.
- Warbling*, is after a *Hawk* hath mantled herself, she crosses her Wings together over her Back.
- Weathering*, is when you Air your *Hawk* in Frost, Sun, or by the Fire-side.
- Whur*, is the rising and fluttering of Partridge or Pheasant.



\*\*\*\*\*

*The Names and Natures of Hawks in general ; and  
first of the Haggard-Faulcon.*

I Begin with the *Haggard-Faulcon*, since it is a Hawk which most Men now a Days covet, to fit and prepare for their Delight and Pleasure ; altho' heretofore I hear less spoken of her praise by the Antients than she deserves.

Some of old have preferred the *Faulcon-gentle* for Mettle and Courage, being of a loving Disposition, strong and daring, and hardy in all Seasons ; and by a mere mistake have undervalued the *Haggard faulcon*, condemning her as being a Bird too tender to endure rough and boisterous Weather.

Experience confutes this Opinion, she being known to be able to indure as much the Extremity of Weather, or more than the *Tiercel*, *Faulcon-gentle*, or most other *Hawks* whatsoever ; and therefore she shall first take place in this manner.

The *Haggard Faulcon*, wild and unreclaimed, takes a large liberty to herself for her abode, either by Sea or Land ; and is so absolute in her Power, that wherever she comes, all flying Fowl stoop under her Subjection. Nay the *Tiercel gentle*, altho' her natural companion, dares not sit by her, nor come near her residence but in cawking Time, and that is in the Spring ; and then for procreation Sake, she will admit him to come near her with submission, which he manifests by bowing his Head at his approach, and by calling and cowering with his Wings, as the *young ones* do, in Testimony how fearful he is of incurring her Displeasure.

Whilst she is very young ( and so will a *Passenger Soar-faulcon* ) she will prey upon Birds which are too big to encounter withal ; and this she doth for want of Understanding ; and she continues this rashness and folly,



folly, till Experience and a Sound beating have reclaimed her.

The *Haggard-Faulcon* will prey on any other Fowl she can meet with advantageously, especially tame Pigeons, or such as belong to a Dove-house; for these they frequently meet withal.

This Hawk is an incessant Pains-taker; no Weather discourageth her from her Game, but that only wherein no Fowl can well stir abroad to seek for sustenance; otherwise she is continually working, either in the Air or elsewhere, unless she stoop and miss of her Prey, and then she will rest a little, to take Breath and renew her Courage. Nay, if she hath laboured in boisterous and tempestuous Weather three or four Days together, she will be so far from being the worse for it, that she will appear much better, and more lively. And therefore it is a vulgar Error for Men not to fly their *Hawks* but after three or four Days rest, some a Week or Fortnight. For old staunch *Hawks*, I judge a little rest will do no harm; but for the young, till she is blood-ed give her but little; and if you can fly her every Day, you will find it so much the better.

When the Faulcon unreclaimed hath seized her Prey and broke her Neck (in artificial terms, her *Ink*) she then falls on the Crop, and feeds first on what is there contained, afterwards on other Parts; and having filled her Gorge, she will fly to some solitary Place which is near Water, or what liketh her best, and there she will sit all Day: Upon the approach of Night she takes Wing and flies to some convenient Place she hath afore purposed, to pearch therein till the Morning.

Thus much of her as He is wild and unreclaimed. In the next Place it will be requisite to inform you with the Manner of reclaiming of a *Haggard-faulcon*, and her entry to the Lure.

Having taken or purchased one of them, set her down, and let her rest quietly the first Night in a Rust-hood.

The next Day take her up easily on your Fist, and carry her up and down that whole Day, using a Feather to stroke her withal instead of your Hand. When you find her not impatient of being toucht, take her Hood  
off



off speedily, and put it on again as speedily, observing thus to do till she is willing to feed; then frequently offer her Food, but let her have but a little at a Time; never pulling her Hood off or on, but you must gain her Love with a bit or two, using your Voice unto her when you are taking off her Hood, and all the while she is feeding, and no longer; and by that Means, after she is reclaimed, she may know by your Voice she shall be fed.

Having thus done, teach her to come to your Fist from the Perch, by doing thus: Let her stand on a Perch about Breast-high; if lower, kneel, for this low Posture will less affright than any other: After this unstrike her Hood, and lure her, using your Voice; and have a special care that you affright her not to distaste her, and so cause her to bate from you. But you must, before you unstrike her Hood, encourage her with a bit or two, which will make her the more eager to come to you: For it is her Stomach that Rules her, and is the Bridle that keeps her in Subjection, pricking her forward to perform her Duty; wherefore if you keep not her Appetite sharp and truly edged, instead of Submission you will find Disobedience. When you find she will willingly feed from and come to your Hand, you may then let her sit bare-fac'd, now and then diverting her starting about, by giving her a bit or two, to direct her Face towards you: After this you may set her to the Lure.

When you find she will come readily to the Lure, garnisht with Meat in the *Creance*, fearing lest she scorn this Way of luring, fix a live Pidgeon to the Lure, and lure her therewith. When she hath killed the Pidgeon and eaten the Head, take her up gently with a bit of Meat, and put on her Hood; then unstrike her Hood and lure her to the Pelt, doing thus twice or thrice, and no more: If you do it oftner, she will become in Time very loth to Part with the Pelt, and by this Means you will provoke her to carry. This is a great Fault, and more incident to and worse in Field-Hawks than such as are fitted for the River.

But



But be sure you lure her not far till her Stomach be perfect: for otherwise she may discover something by, the which she hath a greater Esteem for, and so be lost for that Time, which will be very detrimental to her altho' you should happen to recover and reclaim her afterwards.

Here observe, in the Time of her making (while she is on the Ground either pluming or feeding) forget not to Walk round her, using your Voice, and giving her many bits with your Hand; continuing so to do till you have won her to a more than ordinary Familiarity.

But above all, Mark this; spring her some living Doves between the Man and the Lure, and let them be given in a long Creance, that she may kill them near you, in such a Manner that she may trust them over your Head; by this means she will not be afraid when you come to her from afar off; the neglect whereof will make her timorous: Thence will proceed her dragging and carrying from you; nay sometimes she will leave her Prey, and totally forsake you.

There are some *Hawks* will not be taken up without striking or rapping in the Creance, which must be infallibly the loss of such a *Hawk* without such a Device. This is a great Fault in the *Hawk*, and argueth great negligence in the Faulconer, in suffering, and not remedying that ill property in her first making.

*Rules of ordering a Haggard-faulcon in the Luring; with the Causes and Remedies of Carrying; and other ill Qualities.*

Having thus far acquainted your *Hawk* with the Lure, take her out some convenient Evening, and be no farther from her than she can see and hear you; then hold in your Lure, and suffer her to fly about you, holding her as near you as you can with your Voice and Lure, teaching her to do her Business, and work it on your Head, and then cast up a live Dove: Which some disapprove of, because (say they) the light.



lightness of the Dove inclines the *Hawk* to that ill quality of carrying; but I rather impute that Fault to the Ignorance, or Negligence and Harshness of the Falconer, who hath been either unskilful, and remiss, or hath not used that gentleness, which is requisite, in reclaiming a Hawk in her first making; so that instead of gaining her Love by fair Allurements, he hath converted it into Hatred, Abhorrency, and disdainful Coyness.

Another cause of this Dragging or Carrying proceeds from the Keepers ill or slender rewarding his Hawk in the Luring, in giving her the Pelt of a Pidgeon, or some other dead Thing, which gives her no Delight. It is the Pleasure she takes in the Reward, that engages her coming to you: If then she chance to find her Expectation frustrated in her usual satisfaction, she will after shun you; and tho' you should throw her a live Pidgeon, she may seize it, and keep close to it, or remove it as you approach, for fear that your unkindness would deprive her of it. Wherefore you must have a special care you disoblige her not in her Luring.

There are several other Errors, which must be rectified, in a *Haggard-falcon*, *Falcon-gentle*, or *Slight-falcon* (which naturally are all of one kind, yet differ much in quality and Condition) which I shall leave to the Study of the ingenious and industrious Falconer or Keeper. I say, the first Fault is, that tho' you have lured your Hawk well, and given her all the Content and Satisfaction imaginable, yet will she not tarry with you, but take her flight and forsake you. This argueth an Aversion in her from you to something else. This fault Mr. *Turberville* and Mr. *Latham* say they have known remedied; but because I look upon the trouble therein to be so great, and the future Satisfaction so small and uncertain, I shall not lay down what Means are commonly made use of in the cure of this ill Quality.

But there is another fault, which at first may be easily prevented; and that is, an aspiring quality and working humour, when altho' the Hawk never shewed any dislike to the Keeper, or discontent, yet by observation she hath been found conceited, and would not en-



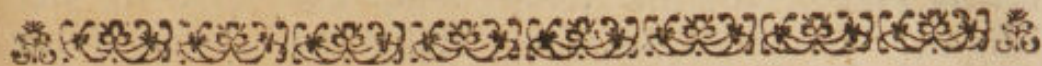
sure the society of another Hawk; and having been well Blooded on Fowl, she would not be kept down near her Keeper. To remedy this, let no scope be given to the *Haggard* in the time of making; let her not fly high, but be held down and near you; and if you should let this Hawk in to another Hawk, and find her fall to her Work without any Regard or Notice taken of the other Hawk, suspect her instantly, and let her see Fowl in due Time, lest when she comes to her due Place, she go her Way; for she will prove Impatient: Wherefore the shorter Work you make with her, the greater delight you give her, and so consequently you engage her Love continually towards you.

Having taught your Hawk to sit bare-fac'd in the Evening among Company undisturbed, and that she knows your Voice, and will come to the Lure, then give her every Night Stones, till you find her Stomach good: After that, Profer her *Casting*, and let her not receive it unless she likes it well; otherwise she is apt to take a dislike, and will never afterwards receive it willingly.

These Stones aforesaid prepare and make ready the Way for casting, stirring, and dissolving whatever is offensive within, and fitting it to be carried downward in her Mutes, or upwards in her Casting. The time for giving these Stones is, when she hath put away her Supper from above; then give her half a Dozen above the hand, if you have so much Skill: If not otherwise as you are able. Do thus often, until such time as you shall give her such things, whereof she shall take Plumage in her living or training. But of this, more hereafter.







*How to know the Nature and Disposition of several  
HAWKS, and what must be observed from  
thence.*

There is a certain *Hawk* called a *Blank Hawk*, which is a kind, loving, and docible *Hawk*; for she will diligently listen and give Ear unto you, and your Voice; she will soon learn to come to Hand, being very eager and hot to seize on what you shall either throw or give her, and will be very familiar: Lastly, having done your will on the Ground, she will look up for your Fist, and will readily jump thereon,

They are much subject to little Grubs, which are ingendred in the Guts, and discover themselves in their Mutes, crawling out from them, shrinking themselves up, and so instantly dying. These Worms do little harm, and that *Hawk* which hath them is seldom bad. The Colour of these Worms is red in a *Slight Falcon*, and red in a *Barbary-Falcon*; and when dead, in both White.

There is a Sort of *Swarthy black-plum'd Hawk*, that is good-mettl'd, and a high flier, yet hard to be reclaimed: For she will neither mind you nor your Voice; but when you lure her, will look any other Way than that she should. However, you must shew yourself very loving towards her, tho' you shall get no more from her than what you extort by Force. For her due reclaiming, lessen her Pride by ordering her Diet with Measure, with respect had unto the Weather; which if it be mild and temperate, you need not fear to hold her down until you have quarried her; and as you shall see her mend her Mannets, alter her Diet, and add to her strength according to reasonable Expedition; she will be soon obtained if she be sound and the Weather moderate. But if the Weather be Frosty, have a care of abating Flesh.



When at any Time you fly any one of these black or tawny *Hawks*, and she stoops foul, and falls in her Flight, you must take her down with some living Thing.

If she be young, suffer not her (or any other *Hawk*) to fly too long; for nothing is more prejudicial and distasteful to a young *Hawk* at her first making, than to let her toil and make many stoopings before she be served; by this dislike she is induced to fly wide and carelessly, and frequently to go away through displeasure.

Now to the intent I may go on methodically, and with as little confusion as may be, I shall in the next Place here nominate, what *Hawks* I intend to treat of; and in the same Order as I Name them, in like Manner I will Discourse of them. Take them thus.

|                      |                |                        |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|
| <i>Faulcon,</i>      | } Their Males. | <i>Tiercel-gentle,</i> |
| <i>Gerfaulcon,</i>   |                | <i>Jerkin,</i>         |
| <i>Mylion,</i>       |                | <i>Tiercel,</i>        |
| <i>Merlin,</i>       |                | <i>Jack,</i>           |
| <i>Hobby,</i>        |                | <i>Robbin,</i>         |
| <i>Goshawk,</i>      |                | <i>Tiercel,</i>        |
| <i>Sparrow-hawk,</i> |                | <i>Musket,</i>         |
| <i>Lanner,</i>       |                | <i>Lanneret.</i>       |

Here Note, that the Female of all Birds of Prey are much larger, and of greater bulk than the Male, and are more serviceable, being more watchful, hardy, and bold: But of such Birds as do not prey, the Cocks are the larger.

The *Faulcon*, *Gerfaulcon*, *Mylion*, *Merlin*, and *Hobby* do stoop and seize their Prey with their Foot, breaking with their Beak the Neck-bone of the Fowl, without pluming or tiring thereupon, till the Fowl hath left busking and bating on the Foot.

The *Goshawk*, with her Male the *Tiercel*, and the *Sparrow-hawk*, kill their Game by strength and force of Wing at Random, and do instantly plume and tire upon their Prey.





*Of the Faulcon.*

There are seven Kinds of *Faulcons*, viz.

|                                   |     |                    |
|-----------------------------------|-----|--------------------|
| <i>Faulcon-gentle,</i>            | } { | <i>Gerfaulcon,</i> |
| <i>Haggard-faulcon,</i>           |     | <i>Saker,</i>      |
| <i>Barbary or Tartar-faulcon,</i> |     | <i>Lanner,</i>     |
|                                   |     | <i>Tunician.</i>   |

The *Faulcon-gentle* is so called for her familiar courteous Disposition; she is withal valiant, strong, and better able to endure any Sort of Weather than any other Hawk.

She hath a natural Inclination and love to fly the Hern every Way, either from her Wings to the down-come, or from the Fist and afore-hand. She is most excellent at the Brook or River, especially at large Fowl, as the Shoveler, Wild-goose, &c. If she be an *Eyess*, you may venture her at the Crane; otherwise she will not be hardy and bold. Where Note, Hawks prove Valiant or Cowards according as they are first quarried: And if you take them out of the Eyrie, before they are fully summed and hard penned, you must never expect their Wings should grow to perfection, but their Legs will be apt to wear crooked, and their Train, their long Feathers, and their Flags also will be full of Taints.

In the choice of your *Faulcon*, observe that she have wide Nares; high and large eye-lids; a great black Eye; a round Head, somewhat full on the top; a short, thick, azure Beak, and indifferent high Neck; barb Feathers under the clap of the Beak; a good large, round, fleshy Breast: Let her be strong, hard, and stiff bonded, broad-shouldered; having slender Sails, full Sides, long and great Thighs; strong and short Arms; large Feet, with the Sear of the Foot soft



and blewish; black Pounces, long Wings, and crossing the Train, which Train must be short, and very pliable.

Here observe, that *Faulcons* of one Kind differ much, and are diversly named according to the Time of their first Reclaiming, places of Hunt, and Countries from whence they come; as *Mew'd Hawks*, *Rammage Hawks*, *Soar Hawks*, *Eyesses*; and these again are divided into large *Hawks*, mean *Hawks*, and slender *Hawks*. All these have different Males and Plumes, according to the Nature of the Countries from whence they come: As some are Black, some Blank or Russet; and they differ in Disposition, some are best for the Field, others for the River.

Names are bestowed on a *Faulcon*, according to her Age or Taking.

The first is an *Eyess*, which Name lasts as long as she is in the Eyrie. These are very troublesome in their feeding, do cry very much, and are difficultly entred; but being well entred and quarried, prove excellent *Hawks* for the *Hern*, River, or any Sort of Fowl, and are hardy and full of Mettle.

The second is a *Rammage-faulcon*, and reserves the Name after she hath left the Eyrie, being so called *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. These are hard to be manned, but being well reclaimed, they are not inferiour to any *Hawk*.

The third is a *Soar-hawk*, so called *September*, *October* and *November*. The first Plumes they have when they forsake the Eyrie, they keep a whole Year before they mew them, which are called *Soar-Feathers*.

The fourth is termed *Murzarolt* (the latest Term is *Carvift*, as much as to say, *Carry on the Fist*) they are so called *January*, *February*, *March*, *April*, and till the middle of *May*, during which Time they must be kept on the *Fist*. They are for the most Part very great Baters, and therefore little Eaters: They are bad *Hawks*, frequently troubled with *Filanders Worms*, and are rarely brought to be good for any Thing.



The fifth are called *Enter-mews*, from the middle of May, to the latter End of December. They are so called because they cast their Coats. They were excellent *Hawks*, could they be trusted; therefore they must be kept hard under, and must make your Fist their Preach. Having discours'd of the Names and Nature of the *Faulcon*, I next come to his Manning, Luring, Flights, and mewing in every Condition; which Course I shall orderly take in my ensuing Discourse of the other *Hawks* I have only named heretofore. And because what Diseases or Casualties are incident to one, are likewise to all, I shall put their Cures at the latter End all together.



*Of the Manning, Luring, Flights and Mewing of a Faulcon, with other Things properly belonging to an Ostrager.*

**H**AVING taken a *Faulcon*, you must Seel her, in such manner, that as the Seeling slackens, the *Faulcon* may be able to see what Provision is straight before her, which she will better see so than any other Way: And be sure you Seel her not too hard.

A *Hawk* newly taken ought to have all new Furniture, as new Jesses of good Leather, mailed Leases with Buttons at the End, and new Bewets. You must have a small round Stick likewise hanging in a String, with which you must frequently stroak your Hawk: the oftner you do it, the sooner and better you will Man her. She must have two good Bells, that she may the better be found and heard, when she either stirreth or scratteth: Her Hood must be well fashioned, raised and bossed against her Eyes, deep, and yet streight enough beneath, that it may the better fasten about her Head without hurting her; and you must cope a little her Beak and Talons, but not so near as to make them bleed.



Take Notice, if you take a *Soar-falcon* which hath already past the Seas, altho' she be very hard to be reclaimed, yet she is the best of *Faulcons*.

Her Food must be good and warm twice or thrice a Day, till she be full gorg'd; which Food must be either *Pidgeons*, *Larks*, or other live *Birds*: and the Reason is, because you must break her by Degrees off from her accustomed Feeding.

When you feed her, you must whoop and Lure, as you do when you Call a *Hawk*, that she may know when you give her Meat.

You must unhood her gently, giving her two or three Bits; and putting on her Hood again, you must give her as much more, and be sure that she be close Seeled, and after three or four Days lessen her Diet, and when you go to Bed, set her on some *Pearch* by you, that you may awaken her often in the Night. Thus you must do till you observe her grow Tame and Gentle: And when you find she begins to feed eagerly, then give her a *Sheep's Heart*. And now you may begin to unhood her by Day-time, but it must be far from Company; first giving her a bit or two, then Hood her again gently, and give her as much more. Be sure not to affright her with any Thing when you unhood her. And when you perceive her to be acquainted with Company, and that she is sharp set, unhood her, and give her some Meat, holding her just against your Face and Eyes, which will make her less afraid of the Countenances of others. If you can, reclaim her without over-watching.

You must bear her continually on the Fist till she be thoroughly Manned, causing her to feed in Company, giving her in the Morning about Sun-rising the Wing of a *Pullet*, and in the Evening the Foot of a *Coney* or *Hare* cut off above the Joint, flay'd and laid in Water; which having squeez'd, give it her with the Pinion of a *Hen's Wing*.

For two or three Days give her washt Meat, and then Plumage, according as you think her foul within. If she Cast, hood her again, and give her nothing till she Glean after her Casting: having gleamed and casted, then give her a beaching of hot Meat in Company; and  
towards



towards the Evening let her plume a Hen's Wing in Company also,

If the Feathers of her Casting be foul or slimy, and of a yellowish Complexion, then be sure to cleanse her well with washt Meat and Casting: If clean within, give her gentle Castings, as the Pinions of an old Hens Wing, or the Neck-bone chopped four or five Times between the Joints, washt and steeped in fair Water.

Having well reclaimed her, thoroughly manned her, and made her eager and sharp set, then you may venture to feed her on the Lure.

But before you shew her the Lure, you must consider these three Things. 1. That she be bold in and familiar with Company, and no Ways afraid of Dogs and Horses. 2. That she be sharp set and hungry, regarding the Hour of the Morning and Evening when you will Lure her. 3. And lastly, she must be clean within, and the Lure must be well garnished with Meat on both Sides, and you must abscond yourself, when you intend to give her the Length of a Lease.

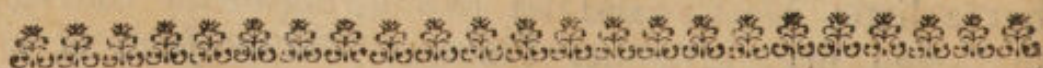
You must first unhood her, giving her a bit or two on the Lure as she sitteth on your Fist: Afterwards take the Lure from her, and so hide it that she see it not; and when she is unseiz'd, cast the Lure so near her that she may catch it within the Length of her Lease. When she hath seiz'd it, use your Voice according to the Custom of Faulconers, and feed her upon the Lure on the Ground with the Heart and warm Thigh of a Pullet. Having so lured her, in the Evening give her but a little Meat; and let this luring be so timely, that you may give her Plumage and a Juck of a Joint.

In the Morning betimes take her on your Fist, and when she hath cast and gleamed, give her a little baeching of warm Meat. Towards Noon take a Creance and tie it to her Lease, and go into some pleasant Field or Meadow, and give her a bit or two on the Lure; then unseize her: And if you find she is sharp set, and hath seized on the Lure eagerly, then give her some one to hold, to let her off to the Lure; then  
unwind



unwind the Creance, and draw it after you a good Way, and let him which holds the Hawk hold his right Hand on the Tassel of the Hawks Hood in readiness, so that he may unhood her as soon as you begin to Lure: And if she come well to the Lure, and stoop upon it roundly, and seize it eagerly, then let her eat two or three bits thereon; then unseize her and take off the Lure, Hood her, and deliver her to him again that held her, and going farther off Lure her, feeding her as before with the accustomed Voice. Thus Lure her every Day farther and farther off till she is accustomed to come freely and eagerly to the Lure.

After this, Lure her in Company, but have a Care that nothing affright her; and when you have used her to the Lure on Foot, then lure her on Horse-back, which you may effect the sooner, by causing Horsemen to be about you when you Lure her on Foot; also you may do it the sooner by rewarding her upon the Lure on Horse-back among Horsemen. When this Way she grows familiar, let some Body afoot hold the Hawk, and he that is on Horse-back must call, and cast the Lure about his Head; then must the Holder take off the Hood by the Tassel: And if she seize eager on the Lure without fear of Man or Horse, then take off the Creance, and Lure her at a greater Distance. And if you would have her love Dogs as well as the Lure, call Dogs when you give her Tiring or Plumage.



*Of Bathing a Faulcon lately reclaimed, how to make her Flying, and to hate the Check.*

HAVING wean'd your Faulcon from her Rammage-fooleries, being both ways lured, rewarded, and thoroughly reclaim'd, offer her some Water to Bath herself in, in a Bason wherein she may stand up to the Thighs,



Thighs, chusing a temperate clear Day for that Purpose. Then having lured your Hawk, and rewarded her with warm Meat, in the Morning carry her to some Bank, and there hold her in the Sun, till she hath endewed her Gorge, taking off her Hood that she may prune and pick herself: that being done, Hood her again, and set her near the Basen, and taking off her Hood, let her bath again as long as she pleaseth: After this, take her up, and let her pick herself as before and then feed her. If she refuse the Basen to bath in, shew her some small River or Brook for that Purpose.

By this use of Bathing she gains Strength and a sharp Appetite, and thereby grows bold; but that Day wherein she batheth, give her no washt Meat.

If you would make your Faulcon upwards, the next Day after she hath bath'd, get on Horseback, either in the Morning or Evening, and chuse out some Field, wherein are no Rooks or Pidgeons; then take your Lure well garnished on both Sides, and having unhooded your *Hawk*, give her a bit or two on the Lure, then Hood her: Afterwards go leisurely against the Wind, then unhood her, and before she bate, or find any Check in her Eye, whistle her off from your Fist fairly and softly. As she fieth about you, Trot on with your Horse, and cast out your Lure, not suffering her to fly long about you at first: Continue thus doing Morning and Evening for seven or eight Days. But if you find your *Hawk* unwilling to fly about you, or stoop to the Lure, then you must let her fly with some *Hawk* that loves the Company of others, and will not rove at any Change or Check; and that must first be done at the Partridge, for they will not fly far before the *Hawk*. If she hath flown twice or thrice, cast out the Lure, and reward her on Horseback. If the Fowl you flew her at be killed by another *Hawk*, let her feed with him a little, and then farther reward her on the Lure.

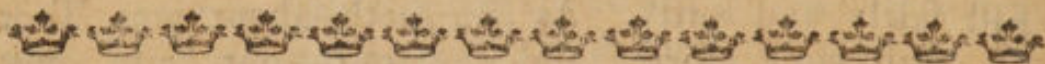
If you would have your Faulcon prove upwards, and a high-flying *Hawk*, you must let her fly with such as are so qualified. If she love the Company of others, and is taught to hold in the Head, then if the  
Fowl



Fowl be in Pool, Pit, or Plash, cast off your high-flying *Hawk*, and let him that hath your newlur'd *Hawk* get under the Wind, and when he seeth his Advantage, let him unhood her; and if she bate, then it is to get up to the other *Hawk*.

Let him then cast her off, and before she get up to the other near his full pitch, lay out the Fowl: If she kill her Game, Reward her with the Heart, and let her participate of the Breast with the other *Hawks*.

To take your Faulcon from going out to any Check, thus you must do: If she hath kill'd a Check, and hath fed thereon before you could come in, rebuke her not severely at first, but take her down to the Lure, give her a bit or two, hood her, and fly her not in three or four Days; and if you do, let it be where no Checks are: But if you come in, before she hath tasted the Check she hath killed, then take the Gall of an Hen, and anoint the Breast of that Check she hath killed, (any other bitter Thing will do) and this will make her hate to go at Check again.



*How to enseam a Faulcon with her Castings and Scowrings.*

**W**HEN you feed your Faulcon, call and Lure, as if you called her to the Lure, and every Day proffer her Water, and every Night give her Castings accordingly as she endeweth. Take off her Hood frequently in Company; and that you may hinder her from beating, hold always the Hood ready by the Tassel in your Hand.

In the Evening by Candle-light take off her Hood among Company, until she Rouze and Mewt; then set her



her on the Peach, and not before, setting a light before her.

Every Faulcon ought to have a *Make-Hawk* to teach her to hold in the Head; if that will not do, cut off some part of her two Principals in each Wing, the long Feather and that next to it, which will force her to hold in.

Be sure to reward your *Hawk* well at the beginning, and let her feed well on the Quarry; which will so encourage her, that she will have no fancy to go out to the Check. When she is well in Blood and well Quarried, then let her fly with other *Hawks*.

If you would make your Faulcon to the Crane, her Lure should be a counterfeit Crane. If you would make her to the Hare, her lure should be then a Hares Skin stuf with some light matter: When she is well Lured, and you would enter her, tie the Hares Skin so stuf to the end of a Creance, and fasten it to your Saddle-pummel, by which means when you Gallop it will resemble a running Hare: then unhood your *Hawk*, and cry, *Back with the Dogs, back with the Dogs*. When you find she hath seized it, let go your Creance, and suffer her to fasten thereon; then instantly reward her upon it, and encourage her as much as is possible.

When she is well entred after this manner, take a living Hare and break one of her hinder Legs, and having before well acquainted your Faulcon with your Dogs by continual feed among them, I say then put your Hare out in some fair Place with your Dogs, and the Faulcon will stoop and ruff her, until the Dogs may take her; then take the Hare from the Dogs and cast her out to the Faulcon, crying, *Back, Back, there*.

If you would make your Hawk flying to the Partridge or Pheasant after she is reclaimed and made, then every Time you Lure her, cast your Lure into some low Tree or Bush, that she may learn to take the Tree or Sand: if she takes the Sand before she sees the Lure, let her stand a while; and afterwards draw the Lure out before her, and cry with what Words you have acquainted her to understand you by, and then reward her



her well. After this Manner she will learn to take Stand.

Feed her always on the Ground, or in some thick Place, for in such Places she must encounter with the Pheasant at Pearch.

As first fly with her at young Pheasant or Partridge, to encourage her by Advantage, and afterwards at the old.

If a Faulcon will not take Stand but keep on the Wing, then must you fly her in plain Places, where you may always see her upon you.

Draw your Faulcon out of the Mew twenty Days before you Enseam her. If she trust and carry, the Remedy is to cope her Talons, her Powlse and Petty-fingle.

Never Reward your *Hawk* upon River-fowl, but upon the Lure, that she may the better love and Esteem thereof.

The Crane ought to be flown at before Sun-rising; for she is a sloathful Bird, and you may cast off to her a Cast or Lease of Faulcons, or a Coshawk from the Fist, without Dogs. You must fly but once a Day at the Crane, after which you must Reward your Hawk very well, ever succouring her with a Grey-hound, which is the best of Dogs for that Purpose.

Give your Faulcon a Beaching very early in the Morning, and it will make her very eager to fly, when it is Time for it.

If you would have her a high-flying *Hawk*, you must not feed her highly, but she should be fed nine Days together before Sun-rising, and at Night late in the cool of the Evening.

The Faulcon will kill the Hern naturally, if she be a Peregrin or Traveller: Yet you will do well to give her Trains.

A Faulcon may fly ten Times in a Day at a River, if the Season be not Extreme; but more is inconvenient.

A *Hawk* ought to have forty Castings before she be perfectly made. And indeed all *Hawks* ought to have Castings every Night, if you would have them clean and sound: For *Hawks* which have not this continual noctur-



nocturnal Casting will be surcharged with abundance of superfluous Humours, which ascending to the Brain, breed so great a Disturbance that they cannot fly so high as otherways they would. And it is good to give them Tiring or Plumage at Night, especially field-Hawks, but not Rive-Hawks, for fear of weakning their Backs.

When your Hawk hath flown or bated, feed her not so long as she panteth (but let her be first in Breath again;) otherwise you may bring her into a Disease called the *Pantas*.

If a Faulcon or other Hawk will not Seize nor Gorge, take the Quill of a Wild-goose, and tie it under her long Single; then will she Seize and Gripe. When she beginneth to seize, take away the said Quill, and she will seize long afterwards.

If you cannot give Covert to your Faulcon or Goshawk, then cast off with the Sun in her Back.

When you draw your Hawk out of the Mew, if she be greasy, (which you shall know by her round Fat Thighs and her full Body, the flesh being round, and as high as her Breast-bone) and if she be well mew'd, and have all her Feathers summed, then give her at feeding-time in the Morning two or three bits of hot Meat; and at Night give her less, unless it be very Cold: and if she feed well and without Compulsion give her washt Meat. Thus prepared, take the Wings of a Hen for her Dinner and wash them in two Waters. In the Morning give her the Legs of a Hen very hot, at Noon Meat temperately warm, a good Gorge; then let her fast till it be late in the Evening. If she have put over her Meat, and there is nothing left in her Gorge, then give her warm Meat, as in the Morning. Thus Diet her till it be convenient to give her Plumage, the which you may know by these Tokens: *First*, the Flesh of the End of the Pinion of the Hawks Wing will seem softer and tenderer than it did before she did eat washt Meat. *Secondly*, if her Mewt be White, and the Black thereof be very Black, and not mingled with any other Colour. *Lastly*, if she be sharp set, and doth plume eagerly, you may give her Casting



ing either of a Hare's or Coney's Foot, or the small Feathers on the Joint of the Wing of an old Hen.

Having set her on the Peach, sweep clean underneath, that you may see whether the Mewt be tull of Streaks, or Skins, or Slimy: If it be, then continue this Sort of Casting three or four Nights together, but if you find the Feathers digested and soft, and that her Casting is great, then take the Neck of an old Hen, and cut it between the Joints, then lay it in cold Water, and give it your Faulcon three Nights together; in the Day-time give her washt Meat, after this Casting or Plumage, as you shall see requisite: And this will bear all down into the Pannel.

When you have drawn her out of the Mew, and her principal Feathers are summed, give her washt Meats, but quick Birds with good Gorges, and set her out in open places.



*General Instructions for an Ostrager or Faulconer.*

**L**ET his *Jesses* and *Bewets* be of good Leather, having Bells big and shrill according to the Proportion of the *Hawk*, with a Hood that is bossed at the Eyes, and fizable for the Head.

He must use his *Hawk* in such Manner, that he may make her grow familiar with him alone or in Company, and to that End he must often unhood and Hood her again.

In nine Nights the Faulconer ought not to let his *Hawk* Jouk at all, nor suffer her to Peach, but keep her during that Time continually on his Fist.

When the Faulconer would call his *Hawk*, let him set her on the Peach, unhood her, and shew her some Meat within his Fist, call her so long till she come to it, then feed her therewith: If she come not, let her stand without Food till she be very sharp set. Observe this Order for about nine Days.

When



When you will Lure her give her, some Man to hold, and call her with a Lure well garnisht with Meat on both Sides, and give her a bit: Use her to this six or seven Days; then cause her to be held farther from you, and cast the Lure about your Head, and throw it on the Ground a little Way from you: If she come to it roundly, reward her bountifully. Having used her to this some certain Days, take your Lure garnished as aforesaid, and every Day call her to you as far as it is possible for her to see or hear you, and let her be loose from all her furniture, without Loins or Creance. If she come freely, Reward her, and stop her now and then in her feeding: for that will make her come better. You may do well to stop the Lure upon her sometimes, and let her fly upon you. Here *Note*, it is requisite to Bath her before you take this Course, lest when she is at Liberty she range to see for Water, and in the mean Time you lose your *Hawk*; therefore Bath her seven or eight Days, for her Nature requireth it.

When you have thus manned, reclaimed, and lured your *Hawk*, go out with her into the Fields, and whistle her off your Fist, stand still to see what she will do, and whether she will rake out or not: But if she fly round about you, as a good *Hawk* ought to do, let her fly a turn or two, and fling her out the Lure, and let her Foot a Chicken or Pullet, and having killed it, let her feed thereon.

Unhood her often as you bear her; continue so doing till she hath endewed and mewted sufficiently.

Your *Hawk* being thus made and manned, go abroad with her every Morning when it is fair, and let the Place where you intend to fly her be plashy, or some narrow Brook; and when you cast her off, go into the Wind so far, that the Fowl may not discover you. When she is cast off, and beginneth to recover her Gate, make then to the Brook or Plash where the Fowl lies, always making your *Hawk* to lean in upon you: And when you see her at a reasonable pitch, (her Head being in) lay out the Fowl, and Land it if you can; and if you cannot, take down your *Hawk*, and



let her kill some Train ; to which End you must always carry some live Fowl with you, as a Duck, &c. And having plipt one of her Wing Feathers, thrust it through her Nares, and cast her up as high as you can underneath your *Hawk*, that she may the better know your Hand.

If you would have your *Hawk* fly at one particular Fowl more than at another, you must then feed her well upon a Train of the same kind, as thus : Take a Creance, and tie that Fowl you would accustom her to fly to by the Beak, with Meat on her Back, and cause one to stand close that shall hold the Creance ; then standing afar off, unhood your *Hawk*, and let the Fowl be stirred and drawn with the Creance until your *Hawk* perceive it stir ; and if she Foot it, make another Train thus : Take a living Fowl that can fly, half feel it and cast it out ; then let your *Hawk* fly to it ; and if she kill it, Reward her well upon it.

#### Of the Rammage-falcon.

If a falconer Chance to recover a *Rammage-Hawk* that was never handled before, let him immediately Seel her, and at that instant put on her Jesses made of soft Leather ; at the End thereof fix two Varvels, the one may bear your Coat of Arms, and the other your Name, that if she Chance to be lost, they that take her up may know where to return her : Put her on also a Pair of Bells with two proper Bewets. Having thus furnished her, you must begin her manning by gentle handling. To avoid the Danger of her Beak, you must have a smooth Stick about half a Foot in Length, with which you must stroak your *Hawk* about the Pinions of her Wings, and so downwards tahwart her Train. If she offer to snap at the Stick, withdraw not your Hand, and let her bite thereon, the hardness whereof will soon make her weary of that Sport.

If you would Man her well, you should Watch all the Night, keeping her continually on your Fist.

You



You must teach her to feed feel'd; and having a great and easie Ruffer hood, you must hood and unhood her often, feel'd as she is, handling her gently about her Head, coying her always when you unhood her, to the Intent she may not be displeased with her Keeper.

Let her plume and tire sometimes upon a Wing on your Fist, keeping her so Day and Night, without pearching, until she be weary, and will suffer you to Hood her without stirring.

If your *Hawk* be so rammage that she will not leave her snapping or biting, then take a little *Aloes succotrina*, and when she offers to snap, give it her to bite; the bitterness whereof will quickly make her leave that ill Quality, Garlick I have heard will do the like, the strong Scent thereof being equally offensive.

#### *How to Hood a Hawk.*

Having feel'd your *Hawk*, fit her with a large easie Hood, which you must take off and put on very often, watching her two Nights, handling her frequently and gently about the Head as aforesaid. When you perceive she hath no aversion to the Hood, unfeel her in the Evening by Candle-light; continue handling her softly, often hooding and unhooding her till she takes no offence at the Hood, and will patiently endure handling.

Take this Observation by the Way, That it is the Duty of a Faulconer to be endowed with a great deal of Patience; and in the next Place he ought to have a natural Love and Inclination to *Hawks*; without these two Qualifications, all the Professors of this Art will prove *Mar-Hawks* instead of good Faulconers.

But to return where I left off: If your feel'd *Hawk* feeds well, abides the Hood and handling without striking or biting, then by Candle-light in an Evening unfeel her, and with your Finger and Spittle anoint the Place where the Seeling Thread was drawn through; then Hood her, and hold her on your Fist



all Night, often hooding, and unhooding and handling her, stroaking her gently about the Wings and Body, giving her sometimes a bit or two, also Tiring or Plumage. Being well reclaimed, let her sit upon a Peach; but every Night keep her on the Fist three or four Hours, stroaking, hooding, and unhooding, &c. as aforesaid: And thus you may do in the Day-time, when she hath learn'd to feed eagerly without Fear.

*How to make a Hawk know your Voice, and her own Feeding.*

Having mann'd your *Hawk* so that she feeds boldly, acquaint her with your Voice, Whistle and use such Words as Faulconers use: you may do it by frequently repeating them to her as she is feeding on your Fist, &c. But I think the best Way of making her acquainted with them, is by your Experience and Practice.

When she feeds boldly, and knows your Voice and Whistle, then teach her to know her feeding, and to bate at it in this Manner: Shew her some Meat with your right Hand, crying and luring to her aloud; if she bate or strike at it, then let her quickly and neatly Foot it, and feed on it for four or five Bits. Do thus often, and she will know her feeding the better.

After this, give her every Night some Casting either of Feathers, or Cotton with Cloves or Aloes wrapt up therein, &c. These Castings make a *Hawk* clean and eager.

*How to make your Hawk bold and venturous.*

In the first Place, to make her hardy, you must permit her to Plume a Pullet or large Chicken in a Place where there is not much light: Her Hood in a readiness, you must have either of the aforesaid alive in your Hand; then kneeling on the Ground, luring and crying aloud to her, make her plume and pull the Pullet a little; then with your Teeth drawing the Strings, unhood her softly, suffering her to pluck it with



with her Beak three or four Times more ; then throw out the Pullet on the Ground, and encourage her to seize it. When you perceive she breaks it and takes Blood, you must Lure and cry aloud to her, encouraging her all the Ways imaginable : Then Hood her gently, and give her Tiring of the Wing or Foot of the said Pullet.

*How to make a Hawk know the Lure.*

Your *Hawk* having three or four Times thus killed a Pullet or large Chicken in some secret Place, then thus teach her to know the Lure.

Having fastned a Pullet unto your Lure go apart, giving your *Hawk* unto another, who must draw loose the Strings of her Hood in readiness : Being gone a little Way, take half the Length of the String, and cast it about your Head, Luring with your Voice at the same Time, then let your *Hawk* be unhooded as you are throwing your Lure a little Way from her, not ceasing luring all the while. If she stoop to the Lure and seize, suffer her to Plume the Pullet, still coying and luring with your Voice ; then let her feed on the Pullet upon the Lure : After that, take her on your Fist together with her Meat, then Hood her, and let her tire as aforesaid. And thus you may teach her to come by Degrees to a very great Distance.

*How to make a Hawk flying.*

When your *Hawk* or *Haggard-falcon* will come and stoop to the Lure roundly without any Fear or Coyness, you must put her on a Pair of Luring-bells, the like you must do to a *Soar-hawk* : By so much greater must the Bells be, by how much your *Hawk* is giddy-headed, and apt to rake out at Check.

That being done, and she sharp set, go in a fair Morning into some large Field on Horseback, which Field must be very little incumbred with Wood or Trees : Having your *Hawk* on your Fist, ride up into the Wind and having loosened her Hood, Whistle softly to provoke her to fly ; and then you will observe she



will begin to Bate, or at least flap with her Flags and Sails, and to raise herself on your Fist: Then suffer her until she Rouze or Mewt: When she hath done either of them, unhood her, and let her fly with her Head into the Wind; for thereby she will be the better able to get upon the Wing; then will she naturally climb upwards, flying in a Circle.

When she hath flown three or four Turns, then cry and Lure with your Voice, casting the Lure about your Head, unto which you must first tie a Pullet: And if your Faulcon come in and approach near you, then cast out the Lure into the Wind; and if she stoop to it, Reward her as before.

There is one great Fault you will often find in the making of a *Hawk* flying, and that is, when she flieth from the Fist she will not get up, but take stand on the Ground; a frequent Fault in Soar-faulcons. You must then fright her up with your Wand, riding in to her; and when you have forced her to take a Turn or two, take her down to the Lure and feed her. But if this do no good, then you must have in Readiness a Duck seeled, so that she may see no Way but backwards, and that will make her mount the higher. This Duck you must hold by one of the Wings near the Body in your right Hand, then Lure with your Voice to make your Faulcon turn the Head: When she is at a reasonable Pitch, cast up your Duck just under her, that she may perceive it: If she strike, stoop, or truss the Duck, permit her to kill it, and reward her, giving her a reasonable Gorge. Use this Custom twice or thrice, and your *Hawk* will leave the Stand, delighting on the Wing, and will become very obedient.

Here *Note*, that for the first or second Time it is not convenient to shew your *Hawk* great or large Fowl, for it often happens that they slip from the *Hawk* into the Wind; the *Hawk* not recovering them, raketh after them, which puts the Faulconer to much trouble, and frequently Occasions the loss of his *Hawk*.

But if it so Chance that your *Hawk* so rake out with a Fowl that she cannot recover it, but gives it  
over



over and comes in again directly upon you, then cast out a feeled Duck; and if she stoop and truss it, cross the Wings, and permit her to take her Pleasure, rewarding her also with the Heart, Brains, Tongue, and Liver. For want of a quick Duck, take her down with the dry Lure, and let her plume a Pullet, and feed her upon it.

By so doing, your *Hawk* will learn to give over a Fowl that rakes out, and hearing the Lure of the Faulconer, will make back again to the River, and know the better to hold in the Head.

*A Flight for a Haggard.*

When you intend a Flight for a Haggard, for the first, second, and third Time, make Choice of such a Place where there are no Crows, Rooks, or the like, to take away all Occasion of her raking out after such Check.

Let her not fly out far on Head at the first, but run after and cry, *Why lo, why lo*, to make her turn Head. When she is come in, take her down with the Lure, unto which must be fastned a live Pullet, and let her Tire, Plume, and feed as aforesaid.

Sometimes a Haggard out of pride and a gadding Humour will rangle out from her Keeper: Then Clog her with great Luring-bells, and make her a Train or two with a Duck feeled, to teach her to hold in and know her Keeper. Take her down often with the dry Lure, and Reward her bountifully, and let her be ever well in Blood, or you may whoop for your *Hawk* to no Purpose.

*How to make a Soar-faulcon or Haggard kill her Game at the very first.*

If she be lured, flieth a good Gate, and stoopeth well, then cast off a well quaried *Hawk*, and let her stoop a Fowl on Brook or Plash, and watch her till she put it to the plunge: Then take down your *Make Hawk*. Reward her, Hood her, and Set her; so you may make Use of her if need require.



Then take your *Hawk* unenterd, and go up the Wind half a Bow-shot, unloose her Hood, and softly Whistle her off your Fist, until she have rouzed or mewted: Then let her fly with her Head into the Wind, having first given Notice or Warning to the Company to be in readines against the *Hawk* be in a good Gate, and to shew Water and to lay out the Fowl.

When she is at a good Pitch, and covering the Fowl, then notify that all the Company make in at once to the Brook upon the Fowl, to Land her: If your Faulcon strike, stoop or trufs her Game, run in to help her, and crossing the Fowls Wing, let her take her Pleasure thereon.

If she kill not the Fowl at first stooping, give her then respite to recover her Gate. When she hath got it, and her Head in, then lay out the Fowl as afore-said, until you Land it at last; nor forgetting to Help her as soon as she hath seized it, giving also her due Reward.

*Remedy for a Hawk's taking Stand in a Tree.*

In the first Place you must chuse such Places where are no Wood or Trees, or as little as may be. If you cannot avoid it, then have two or three live Train, and give them to as many Men, placing them conveniently for to use them. When therefore your *Hawk* hath stooped, and endeavours to go to stand, let him to whom the *Hawk* most bends cast out his Train-Duck seeled: If the *Hawk* kill her, Reward her therewith. If this Course will not remedy that Fault in her by twice or thrice so doing, my advice is then to part with the Buzzard.

*How to help a Hawk froward and coy through pride of Grease;*

There is a scurvy Quality in some *Hawks*, proceeding from pride of Grease, or being high kept, which is a disdainful coyness. Such a *Hawk* therefore must not be rewarded altho she kill; yet give her leave to  
plume



plume a little; and then let the Faulconer take a Sheeps-Heart cold, or the Leg of a Pullet, and whilst the *Hawk* is busie in pluming, let either of them be conveyed into the Body of the Fowl, that it may favour thereof; and when the *Hawk* hath eaten the Brains, Heart, and Tongue of the Fowl, then take out your Inclosure, and call your *Hawk* with it to your Fist, and feed her therewith: After this give her some Feathers of the Neck of the Fowl to scowr and make her cast.

*To make a Hawk hold in her Head and not Mind Check.*

Take a Piece of a Lease, and fasten it to your Lure-string, the other End to the Wing of a Pidgeon, which you may put in and pull out of your Hawking-bag at your Conveniency: When you find your *Hawk* apt to goe out, shew your Pidgeon. I would not have you use it often; for it draws a *Hawk* from her Place if well flown.

*How to continue and keep a Hawk in her high-flying*

If your *Hawk* be a stately high-flying *Hawk*, you ought not to engage her in more Flights than one in a Morning: For often Flying brings her off from her stately Pitch. If she be well made for the River, fly her not above twice in the Morning; yet feed her up, tho she kill not.

When a high-flying *Hawk* being whistled to, gathers upward to a great Gate, you must continue her therein, never flying her but upon broad Waters and open Rivers; and when she is at the highest, take her down with your Lure; where when she hath plumed and broken the Fowl a little, then feed her up, and by that Means you shall maintain your Faulcon high-flying, inwards, and very fond of the Lure.

Some will have this high-flying Faulcon seldom to kill, and not to stoop: Yet if she kill every Day, altho she stoop from a very high Gate, yet if she be not rebuked



rebuked to hurt therewith, she will, I can assure you, become a higher Flier every Day than another; but she will grow less fond of the Lure. Wherefore your high-flying *Hawks* should be made inwards, it being a commendable Quality in them to make in and turn Head at the second or third Toss of the Lure, and when she poureth down upon it as if she had killed.

And as the teaching of a Faulcon, or any other *Hawk* to come readily to and love the Lure, is an Art highly commendable, because it is the Effect of great Labour and Industry: So it is the Cause of saving many a *Hawk*, which otherwise would be lost irrecoverably.

Mark this by the Way, that some naturally high-flying *Hawks* will be long before they be made upwards, still fishing and playing the Slugs; and when they should get up to recover the Fowl, they will stoop before the Fowl be put out: And this may proceed from two Causes. In the first Place, she may be too sharp set, and in the next Place, it may be she is flown untimely, either too soon or too late.

When you see a *Hawk* use those evil Tatches without any visible Cause, cast her out a dead Fowl for a dead Quarry, and Hood her up instantly without Reward to discourage her from practising the like another Time: Half an Hour afterwards call her to the Lure and feed her, and serve her after this Manner as she fisheth in that Fashion.

Besides, to correct this Error, the Faulconer ought to consult the Natures and Dispositions of his *Hawks*, and should carefully observe which fly high when in good Plight, and which best when they are kept low; which when the Sun is but two Hours high; which sooner, and which later in an Evening.

For know, that as the Natures of *Hawks* are different, so are the Times to fly each one: For to fly a *Hawk* in her proper Time, and to fly her out of it, is as disagreeable as the flight of a *Gerfaulcon* and a *Buzzard*. Therefore the Ostrager must fly his *Hawks* according to their Natures and Dispositions, keeping them always in good Order.

Where



Where by the by take Notice, all *Hawks*, as well *Soar-hawks*, as *Mew'd-hawks* and *Haggards*, should be set out in the Evening two or three Hours, some less, having respect to their Nature, as it is stronger or weaker; and in the Morning also, according as they cast, hooking them first and then setting them abroad a weathering, until you get on Horseback to prosecute your Recreation.

*A Flight for the Hern.*

This Flight hath less of Art in it than Pleasure to the Beholders; and, to say the truth, the Flight is stately and most noble.

As it is less difficult to teach a *Hawk* to fly at Fowl than it is to come unto and love the Lure, the first being natural, and not the last; so there is less industry to be used in making a *Hawk* fly the Hern than Water-fowl. To the first she is instigated by a natural propensity and Inclination; to the latter she is brought with Art, Pains, and much Diligence.

At the Beginning of *March* Hens begin to make their Passage: If therefore you will adapt your *Falcons* for the Hern, you must not let them fly longer at the River, and withal you must pull them down to make them Light; which is done by giving them Hearts and Flesh of Lambs and Calves, also Chickens; but give them no wild Meats.

To the Intent you may acquaint them one with the other, so that they may the better fly the Hern, and Help one another, you must call a Cast of them to the Lure at once; but have a care they Crab not together, for so they may endanger one another in their flight.

When your *Hawk* is scowred and clean and sharp-set, you must get a live Hern, upon the upper Part of whose long sharp Bill you must Place a Joint of a hollow Cane, which shall prevent her from hurting the *Hawk*; that being done, tie the Hern in a Creance; then setting her on the Ground, unhood your *Hawk*, who will fly the Hern as soon as she sees her. If she seize her, make in apace to Succour her, and let her



her plume and take Blood of the Hern: then take the Brains, and Marrow of the Bones, and the Heart, and laying it on your Hawking-glove, give it your Faulcon. After this, rip up her Breast, and let your *Hawk* feed thereon till she be gorged: This being done, Hood her up upon the *Hern*, permitting her to plume at her Pleasure, then take her on your Fist, and let her tire on the Foot or Pinion.

Because *Herns* are not very plentiful, you may preserve one for a Train three or four Times, by arming Bill, Head, and Neck, and painting it of the same Colour that the *Hern* is of; and when the *Faulcon* seizeth her, you must be very nimble to make in, and deceive her by a live *Pidgeon* clapt under the Wing of the *Hern* for the *Faulcon*, which must be her Reward.

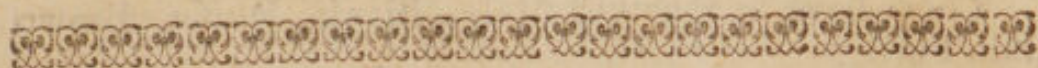
The *Hawk* having thus several Times taken her Train without discovery of the Delusion, you may then let the *Hern* loose in some fair Field without a Creance, or without arming her; when she is up of a reasonable Height, you may cast off your *Faulcon*, who if she bind with the *Hern*, and bring her down, then make in apace to secure her, thrusting the *Hern's* Bill into the Ground, and breaking his Wings and Legs, that the *Hawk* may with more ease Plume and Foot him. Then Reward her as before, with the Brains, Marrow of the Bones, and Heart, making thereof an *Italian Soppa*.

Thus much of a Train-*Hern*. Now to fly the wild *Hern*, it is thus: If you find a wild *Hern* at Seige, win in as nigh unto her as you can, and go with your *Hawk* under the Wind; and having first loosed her Hood in a readines, as soon as the *Hern* leaveth the Siege, off with her Hood, and let her fly. If she climb to the *Hern* and bring her down, run in (as I said before) to rescue her, thrusting her Bill into the Ground, breaking her Wings and Legs, and rewarding her aforesaid on your Hawking-glove.

Now if your *Faulcon* beat not down the *Hern*, or do give him over, never fly your *Faulcon* again at a *Hern*, unless with a *Make-hawk* well-entred; for the Coward by this Means seeing another fly at the *Hern*  
and



and bind with her, takes fresh Courage. And if they kill the Hern flying both together, then must you Reward them both together, while the Quarry is hot, making for them a *Soppa* as aforefaid. This is the only Way to make them both bold and perfect Her-ners.



Of the HAGGARD-FAULCON, *why so called: Her good Shape and Properties: And what what difference there is between a Haggard and a Faulcon-gentle.*

THE *Haggard* is by some called the *Peregrin-Faulcon*, because, say some, she is brought from a Country Foreign and Remote; and therefore others call them *Travellers*, or *Passengers*. But if there be no other Reason for the Name but this, all other *Hawks* coming from exotick Places might borrow that Appellation.

Upon a three-fold Consideration, I conceive they are called *Haggard* or *Peregrin-faulcons*.

*First*, because their Eyrie was never found in any Country by any Man that ever I could hear or read of.

*Secondly*, because these Faulcons range and wander more than other Faulcons do, still seeking strange and foreign Coasts; so that wherever they come they may be justly called *Peregrins* or *Foreigners*.

*Thirdly*, and *Lastly*, she never takes up her Habitation long in a Place.

This *Haggard* is not inferiour to any other Faulcon, but very tender, and cannot endure cold Weather, say some; but my Experience hath found it otherwise. The Reason that may be alledged is this: *First*, she Travels far as a Stranger, and comes into Countries commonly in the hardest Time of the Year: Next, she is a hot *Hawk*, which may be gathered from her high



high-flying, where the Air is much colder than below, and therefore ought to be more hardy: *Lastly*, she meweth with more Expedition (if she once begin to cast her Feathers) than other Faulcons do.

They are of Shape like other Faulcons; but as to Mould there are three Sorts, large, middle-siz'd, and little; some long-shaped, some short-trussed; some larger, some less.

They have a fourfold Male, Blank, Ruffet. Brown and Turtle.

The goodness of her Shape consists in having her Head plum'd Dark or Blank, flat on the Top, with a white Wreath environing the same, a large blue bending Beak, wide Nares, a great Black full Eye, high stately Neck, large Breast, broad Shoulders, a great Turtle-coloured Feather, long Veins and Sails, but slender shaped, a long Train, high Thighs, and White on the Pendant Feathers, a large wide Foot, with slender Stretchers, and Talons tending somewhat to an azure Colour.

You may know her in her flight from another by the stirring of her Wings; for she useth no thick Stroak, but getteth up to her *Mountee* leisurely, without any great making out; besides she may be known by her extraordinary large Sails.

The differences between the *Haggard* and *Faulcon-gentle* are these.

*First*, the *Haggard* is larger, being longer-armed with longer Beak and Talons, having a higher Neck, with a long and fair-seasoned Head.

*Secondly*, her Beam-feathers in flight are longer than the *Faulcon-gentle*'s, her Train somewhat larger: Again, the *Haggard* hath a flat Thigh, and the other's is round.

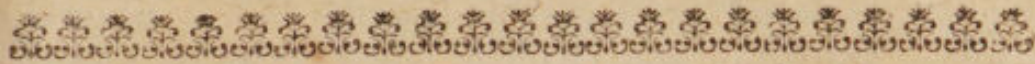
*Thirdly*, the *Haggard* will lie longer on the Wing.

*Fourthly*, the *Haggard* at long flight exceeds the *Faulcon-gentle*; which last flieth with more speed from the Fist than the other. For maintenance of Flight and Goodness of Wing the *Haggard* exceeds all other *Hawks*.

*Fifthly*, and *Lastly*, the *Haggard* is more deliberate and advised in her Stooping than the *Faulcon-gentle*, who



who is more hot and hasty in her Actions, and missing the Fowl, is apt presently to fly on Head at the Check.

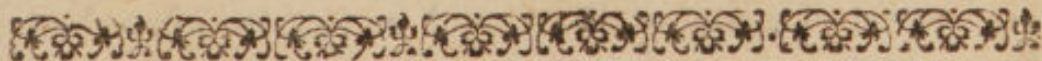


### Of the BARBARY-FAULCON.

THE *Barbary*, or, as some call her, the *Tartaret-Falcon*, is a Bird seldom found in any Country, and is called a *Passenger* as well as the *Haggard*. They are somewhat lesser than the *Tiercel-gentle*, and plum'd Red under the Wings, strong-arm'd, with long Talons and Stretchers.

The *Barbary-Falcon* is venturously bold, and you may fly her with the *Haggard* all May and June. They are *Hawks* very slack in Mewing at first; but when once they begin, they mew their Feathers very fast.

They are called *Barbary Falcons*, because they make their Passage through that Country and *Tunis*, where they are more frequently taken than in any other Place, namely in the Isles of the *Levant*, *Candy*, *Cyprus*, and *Rhodes*. In my Opinion, she is a *Hawk* of not much Value, and therefore I shall leave her, to speak of another of greater Reputation.



### Of the GER-FAULCON.

THE *Gerfaulcon* is a very fair *Hawk*, and of great Force, especially being mewed: She is strong-armed, having long Stretchers and Singles: She is fierce and hardy of Nature, and therefore difficultly to be reclaimed. She is a lovely Bird to behold,  
larger



larger then any Kind of Faulcon : Her Eyes and Head are like the *Haggard's*.

Her Beak is great and bending: She hath large Nares, and a Male like a *Lanner's*: Her Sails are long and sharp-pointed, her Train much like the *Lanner's*: She hath a large Foot Marble-seated, and is plum'd Black, Brown, and Ruffet. She expects great civility from her Keeper, who must Exercise a great deal of Patience on her.

The *Gerfaulcon's* Eyrie is in some Parts of *Prussia*, and on the Borders of *Russia*; and some come from the Mountains of *Norway*, and from *Germany*: These may be also called *Passengers*.

By Reason of the Fiercencs and Hardness of this Bird, she is very hardly manned and reclaimed; but being once overcome, she proves an excellent *Hawk*, and will scarce refuse to fly at any Thing.

Their Beaks are Blue, so are the Sears of their Legs and Feet, having Pounces and Talons very long.

These *Hawks* do not fly the River, but always from the Fift fly the Hern, Shovelers, &c.

In going up to their Gate they do not hold that Course or Way which others do; for they climb up upon the Train when they find any Fowl, and as soon as they have reacht her they pluck her down, if not at the first, yet at the second or third Encounter. You must Feed and Reward them like other Faulcons.

They are very crafty, and covet to keep their Casting long through sloth; therefore instead of Cotton, give them a Casting of Tow, and be sure to keep them sharp set.

In the manning and reclaiming you must by kindness make her Gentle and Familiar with you. When you have taught her to be lured loose, then learn her to come to the Pelts of Hens, or any other Fowl: but let her not touch any living Flesh, for fear that draw her Love away from your Voice and Hand.

All this Time you must be close by her, about her, and upon your Knees using your Voice unto her, with her Dinner and Supper clear drest and washt, giving her still some Bits thereof with your Hand, that she may



may the more delight therein. By doing thus frequently you will so win her, that should she be guilty of Carrying, yet by this Means she will be reclaimed, and forget that Error.

Let the Ostrager have special care how he make his *Gerfaulcon* at first, and indeed all other *Hawks*; for as they are made then, he shall ever find them after; and if they are well made, they are twice made, and for ever made; and therefore have a care of too much precipitation in posting them forward from one lesson to another, before they are perfect in any Thing.

If you Train her with Doves, she will not carry a Feather from you: But first before you Spring her any Doves, let her kill four or five at Lure close by your Foot, having a Pair of short Creances at your Lure.

Here Note, that the *Gerfaulcon* is most desired for her high-flying, and is best at Hern and the Mountee: And that you may bring her to Perfection herein, play with your entermewed *Gerfaulcon* the first Year, shewing her all imaginable Kindness, and shew all possible means to make her Love you. When you have brought her forward, give her often Castings to Cleanse and Purge her, also prevent the growth of too much Glut and Fatness in her inward Parts, which will endanger her Life.



### Of the SAKER.

THE *Saker* is a Passenger or Peregrin-Hawk, for her Eyrie hath not been found by any. They are found in the Isles of the *Levant*, *Cyprus*, *Rhodes*, and *Candia*, and in several other Islands in the Sea.

She is somewhat larger then the *Haggard-faulcon*; her plume is rusty and ragged; the Sear of her Foot and Beak like the Lanner: her Pounces are short, however she hath great Strength, and is hardy to all

N

Kind



Kind of Fowl. She is more disposed to the Field a great deal than to the Brook, and delights to prey on great Fowl, as the Hern, the Goose, &c. As for the Crane, she is not so free to fly at her as the *Haggard-falcon*. The *Saker* is good also for lesser Fowl, as Pheasant, Partridge, &c. and is nothing so dainty of her Diet as *Hawks* long-winged.

This *Hawk* will make excellent Sport with a Kite, who, as soon as she sees the *Saker* (the Male thereof is called a *Sakaret*) cast off, immediately betakes herself to, and trusts in the goodness of her Wings, and getteth to her Pitch as high as possibly she may, by making many Turns and Wrenches in the Air; which if well observed, together with the variety of Contests and Breakings that are between them, it cannot but be very pleasant and delightful to the Beholder. I have known in a clear Day and little Wind stirring, that both the *Saker* and Kite have soar'd so high that the sharpest Eye could not discern them, yet hath the *Saker* in the encounter conquered the Kite, and I have seen her come tumbling down to the Ground with a strange precipitancy.

Of all Birds the *Saker* hath the longest Train. This *Hawk* will fly at Hern, Kite, Pheasant, Partridge, Quail, and sometimes at the Hare; but her chiefest excellency consists in her flying at the Crane. Now because we have but few of them in *England*, I shall desist from speaking farther of the *Saker*, only that she is made to the Lure as other *Hawks* are: And indeed all *Faulcons* are made after the same Manner, yet are not flown withal alike; for *Sakers*, *Lanners*, *Gerfaulcons*, *My lions*, and *Merlins* do not fly the River; if any do, it is very rarely.







Of the LANNER, LANNERET, and  
TUNISIAN.

THE *Lanner* is a *Hawk* common in all Countries, especially in *France*, making her *Eyrie* on high Trees in Forests, or on high Cliffs near the Sea-side.

She is lesser than the *Faulcon-gentle*, fair-plumed when an *Enter-mewer*, and of shorter Talons than any other *Faulcon*. Those who have the largest and best-seasoned Heads are the best *Lanners*.

With the *Lanner* or *Lanneret*, you may fly the River, and both are very good also for the Land.

They are not very choice in their Food, and can better away with gross Viſtuals than any other *Hawk*.

Mew'd *Lanners* are hardly known from the *Soar-hawks* (and so likewise the *Saker*) because they do not change their Plume.

You may know the *Lanners* by these three Tokens. 1. They are blacker *Hawks* than any other. 2. They have less Beaks than the rest. 3. And lastly, They are less armed and pounced than other *Faulcons*.

Of all *Hawks* there is none so fit for a young *Faulconer* as the *Lanner*, because she is not inclined to Surfeits, and seldom melts Grease by being overflown.

There are a Sort of *Lanners*, which *Eyrie* in the *Alps*, having their Heads white and flat aloft, large and black Eyes, slender Nares, short and thick Beaks, and lesser than the *Haggard* or *Faulcon-gentle*. Some are indifferent large, some less, and others middle-sized.

Their Tail is Marble or Russet; their Breast Feathers White and full of russet Spots; the Points and extremities of their Feathers full of white drops; their



Sails and Train long: They are short leg'd, with a Foot less then that of a Faulcon, marble-feer'd; but being mew'd the Seer changeth to a Yellow.

The *Lanner* never lieth upon the Wing after she hath flown to Mark, but after once stooping she maketh a Point, and then, like the *Goshawk*, waits the Fowl.

If she miss at the first down-fall and kill not, she will consult her Advantage to the greatest Ease.

These Kind of *Hawks* are highly prized in *France* and *Italy*, neither is she despiseable in *England*; but we look upon them as slothful and hard metled: And therefore if you intend to have any good of her, keep a strict Hand over her; for she is of an ungrateful Disposition, and will slight your Kindnesses, contrary to the Nature of the *Faulcon-gentle*, who for one good Usage will return a treble Courtesie, and the better she is rewarded, the better she will fly.

They are flown at Field or Brook, and are *Hawks* that maintain long Flights, whereby much Fowl is killed (and more than by a better *Hawk*) by Reason of Dogs and Hawking-poles.

If you will fly with a *Lanner*, you must keep her very sharp; and because they keep their Castings long, by Reason they are hard-metled *Hawks*, give them therefore hard Castings made of Tow and Knots of Hemp.

In the reclaiming the *Lanner* and the *Lanneret* much Pains and Labour must be taken, and the chiefeſt Thing is to make her well acquainted with the Lure, which must be garnished with hard waſht Meat, and let her receive the major Part of her Reward in bits from your Hand: As for the rest of her Training, take the same Course, which I have directed in the manning and ordering of the *Haggard-faulcon*. But above all, take Pains to stay her, and by your utmost Art restrain her from dragging or carrying any thing from you, to which ill quality she is more inclined than any other *Hawk* whatever.

To conclude this Chapter, I come next to the *Tunisian-Faulcon*, which is not much different in nature from the *Lanner*, yet somewhat less, but in Foot and Plume much alike



alike, She hath a large round Head, and is more creese than the *Lanner*, and more heavy and sluggish in her flight.

She is called a *Tunisian-Falcon*, from *Tunis* the Metropolis of *Barbary*, the Country where she usually makes her Eyrie.

They are excellent *Hawks* for the River, lying long upon the Wing, and will fly the Field also very well.

They naturally delight to seize upon the Hare, and will strike boldly at her. Much more might be said of her, which I here omit, she being a *Hawk* not very common in *England*,

Having cursorily discoursed in as good a Method as I could of the seven Sorts of *Falcons*, with their Manning, Reclaiming, Luring, Training, Staying, &c. I shall proceed to give you an Account of some other *Hawks*, which I propounded and promised in the beginning of this Treatise. Take them thus in Order.



### Of the MERLIN.

THE *Merlin* in Plume is much like the *Haggard-Falcon*, also in the Sear of the Foot, Beak, and Talons, and is much alike in Conditions.

A *Merlin* well mann'd, lur'd and carefully lookt after, will prove an excellent *Hawk*. Their Flight is swifter than any other *Hawks*, and naturally they fly at Partridge, Thrush, and Lark.

It is a Bird very busy and unruly, and therefore the Falconer ought to take special heed and care of them, lest unnaturally they eat off their own Feet and Talons, which several of them have been known to do, and die thereby. For which Cause *Merlins* ought not to be mew'd or intermew'd, because in the Mew they often spoil themselves.



She is accounted a *Hawk* for the *Fist*, and not of the *Lure*; but to my Knowledge she may be brought to love the *Lure* very well.

She is very venturous and hardy, which may appear by her flying at Birds as big or bigger than herself, with such eagerness, as that she will pursue them even into a Town, or Village.

If you will fly with a *Merlin* at a Partridge, chuse the *Formal*, which is the Female. The *Jack* is not worth the Training.

When you have made her to the *Lure*, and that she will patiently endure the Hood, then make her a Train with a Partridge: If she foot and kill it, Reward her well, suffering her to take her pleasure thereon: after this, fly her at the wild Partridge; if she take or mark it at first or second flight, being retrieved by the Spaniels, feed her upon it with a reasonable Gorge, chearing her with your Voice in such a manner that she may know it another Time. If she prove not hardy at first Train, try her with a second or third: If she prove not then, she will prove nothing worth.

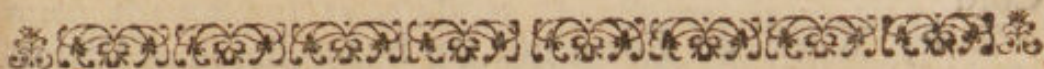
If you fly the *Merlin* at Lark or Linnet, let it be with a Cast of *Merlins* at once, because they love to fly in Company: Besides, it is a greater delight to the Spectators to see them fly together; you shall observe the one climb to the Mountee above the Lark, and the other lie low for her best Advantage.

When your *Merlin* is thoroughly manned and made gentle, (which you must bring to pass according to the Method propounded for other *Hawks*) I say, when she is reclaimed, you may then carry her into the Fields, where having found a Lark or Linnet, get as near as you can into the Wind to the Bird; and as soon as the Bird riseth from the Ground, unhood your Cast of *Merlins*, and cast them off, and when they have beaten down the Lark, let them feed a little thereon.

There is a Sort of Larks which I would not advise the Faulconer to fly at, and they are called *Cut-larks*, which do not mount as the long-spurr'd Field Lark, but



but fly straight forward, to the endangering the loss of your *Hawk* without any Pastime or Pleasure.



*Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, and Mylions at Stock or at Large; and which is the best way of Mewing.*

**I**T is the Opinion of some (but how commendable, I will leave the Reader to judge) that *Merlins* cannot be mew'd, or if they be, that they are very rarely good afterwards. Experience tells me the contrary: For if they be hardy, and have flown well in their Soarage, they have proved much better after mewing than before.

The Time of Mewing for Faulcons should be about the latter End of *April*, at which Time set down your Faulcons, diligently observing whether they be louzy or not: If they are, Pepper them and that will infallibly kill the Lice. You must also scour them before you cast them into the Mew.

Mewings are of two Sorts; the one loose and at large, the other at Stock or Stone.

Mewing at large is thus in short: If your Room be large, by Divisions you may mew four Faulcons at once, each Partition consisting of about twelve Foot Square, and as much in Height, with two Windows two Foot broad, the one opening to the North, for the benefit of cold Air; the other to the East, for the beneficial warmth of the Sun. At your East Window let there be a Board two Foot broad, even with the Bottom of the Window, with a Lath or Ledge round; in the middle set a green Turff, laying good Store of Gravel and Stones about it, thus your *Hawk* may take them at her Pleasure.

If your Faulcon be a great Bater, let your Chamber be on the Ground, which must be covered four Fingers thick with gross Sand, and thereon set a Stone



somewhat taper, of about a Cubit in Height, on which they love to sit, by Reason of its coolness.

Make her two Perches, at each Window one, to recreate herself as she pleaseth, either with Heat or Cold

Every Week or Fortnight set her a Bason of Water to Bath in; and when she hath bathed therein, take it away the Night following.

Your Mew must have a Portal to convey in the Hack, a Thing whereon the Meat is served. I need not prescribe the Manner how to make it, since it is a Thing so generally known already.

You ought to keep one set Hour in Feeding; for so will she Mew sooner and better; When she hath fed and gorged herself, then remove the Stick from the Hack, on which the Meat was fastened, to keep her from dragging it into the Mew.

In the Opinion of most, it is better Mewing at the Stock or Stone, which must be performed thus: Make choice of a Ground-room remote from Noise or concourse of People, and therein set a Table of what Length you think is most convenient for the Number of your Faulcons, and of about six Foot in Breadth, with thin Boards along the Sides and Ends about four Fingers high from the Superficies of the Table, which must stand on Treffels about three or four Foot high from the Ground. Let this Table be covered indifferently thick with great Sand mixt with small Pebbles, in the midst whereof place a pyramidal Free-Stone about a Yard in Height, unto which tye your Faulcon, Gerfaulcon, Merlin or Mylion: Then take a small Cord of the Bigness of a Bow-string, and put it through a Ring or Swivel, and bind it about the Stone in such sort that the Swivel may go round the Stone without let or hindrance, and thereunto tye the Lease of your *Hawk*.

Here *Note*, that if you Mew more than one *Hawk* in one Room, you must set your Stones at that Distance, that when they Bate they may not Crab one another.

The Reason of placing this Stone is, because the Faulcon delights to sit thereon for its coolness sake, and



and the little gravelly Stones the *Hawk* frequently swallows to cool her within. The Sand is necessary to preserve their Feathers when they Bate, and their Mewets are the more easily cleaned. The little Cord with the Swivel tyed about the Stone, is to keep the *Hawk* from tangling when she bateth, because the Ring will still follow her.

All Day let your *Hawk* stand hooded, only when you take her on your Fist to feed: At Night unhood her, and lest any Accident should happen in the Night, prejudicial to the *Hawk*, the Faulconer ought to lie in the Mew.



### Of the H O B B Y.

**T**HE *Hobly* is a *Hawk* of the Lure, and not of the Fist, and is a high-flier, and is in every respect like the *Saker*, but that she is a much lesser Bird.

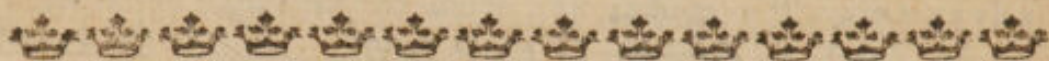
The *Hobly* hath a blue Beak, but the Seer thereof and Legs are yellow; the Crinets or little Feathers under her Eye are very Black; the top of her Head is betwixt Black and Yellow, and she hath two white Seams on her Neck; the Plumes under the Gorge and about the Brows are reddish, without Spot or Drop; the Breast-feathers are brown for the most Part, yet powdered with white Spots; her Back, Train, and Wings are black aloft, having no great Scales upon the Legs, unless it be a few beginning behind the three Stretchers and Pounces, which are very large in Respect of her short Legs; her Brail-feathers are engouted betwixt red and black; the Pendant-feathers (which are those behind the Thigh) are of a rusty smoaky Complexion. The daring *Hobly* may be well called so, for she is nimble and light of Wing, and dares encounter Kites, Buzzards, or Crows, and will give Soufe for Soufe, Blow for Blow, till sometimes they seize and come tumbling down to the Ground both together.

They



They are chiefly for the Lark, which poor little creature so dreads the Sight of a *Hobby* soaring in the Air over her, that she will rather chuse to commit herself to the Mercy of Man or Dogs, or to be trampled on by Horses, than venture herself into that Element where she sees her mortal Enemy soaring.

The *Hobby* makes excellent Sport with Nets and Spaniels, which is performed after this Manner. The Dogs range the Field to spring the Fowl, and the *Hobbies* soar over them aloft in the Air: The silly Birds, fearing a Conspiracy between the Hawks and Dogs to their utter Destruction, dare not commit themselves to their Wings, but think it safer to lie close to the Ground, and so are taken in the Nets. This Sport is called *Daring*.



### Of the G O S H A W K.

There are several sorts of *Goshawks*, and they are different in Goodness, Force and hardness, according to the diversity of their choice in Cawking: At which Time, when *Hawks* begin to fall to liking, all Birds of Prey do assemble themselves with the *Goshawk*, and flock together.

The Female is the best: And although there be some *Goshawks*, which come from *Sclavonia*, *Sardinia*, *Lombardy*, *Russia*, *Puglia*, *Germany*, *Armenia*, *Persia*, *Greece*, and *Africa*; yet there are none better than those which are bred in the North Parts of *Ireland*, as in the Province of *Ulster*, but more especially in the County of *Tyrone*.

Take these Rules as to the goodness of her proportion or Shape.

She ought to have a small Head, her Face long and strait, a large Throat, great Eyes, deep set, the Apple of the Eye black, Nares, Ears, Back, and Feet, large and blank; a black long Beak, long Neck, big Breast, hard Flesh, long Thighs, fleshy, the Leg and Knee short, long large Pounces and Talons. From the

Stearn



Stearn or Train to the Breast forward she ought to grow round; the Feathers of the Thighs towards the Train should be large, and the Train-feathers short, and soft, somewhat tending to an Iron Mail. The Baryl-feathers ought to be like those of the Breast, and the Covert-feathers of the Train should be spotted and full of black rundles; but the extremity of every Train-feather should be black-streaked.

The Sign of Force in a *Goshawk* is this: Tie diverse of them in several Places of one Chamber or Mew, and that *Hawk* that doth flie and Mewt highest and farthest off from her, is without Question the strongest *Hawk*; for the high and far Mewting argues a Strong-Back.

I might tell you the ill shape of a *Goshawk*: but since I have declared the good, the bad may be collected from thence: *Contraria contrariis dignoscuntur*. However take this general Rule, that *Goshawk* that hath pendant Plumes over her Eyes, the Whites whereof are waterish and blank, that is red mail'd or bright Tawny, hath the most assured Tokens of a *Hawk* that is ill conditioned.

The *Goshawk* preyeth on the Pheasant, Mallard, Wild-goose, Hare, and Coney; nay, she will venture to seize on a Kid or Goat; which declareth the inestimable Courage and Valour of this *Hawk*.

She ought to be kept with great Care, because she is very Choice and Dainty, and looks to have a nice Hand kept over her.

*How to make the Soar or Haggard-Goshawk.*

First trim them with Jesses, Bewets, and Bells, as soon as they come to your Hands; keep them feeled some Time, hooding and unhooding them often, teaching them to feed on the Fist three or four Days, or till they have lost their Rammageness and become gentle: Having so done, unfeel them by Candle-light at Night, causing them to tire or plume upon a Wing or Leg of a Pullet; and be sure to deal gently and mildly with them, until you have won and thoroughly maned them: Then you may go into some pleasant Feild,  
and



and first give them a bit or two unhooded on your Fift, and the like hooded, cast them down fair and softly on some Perch, and make them come from it to your Fift, calling to them with a Faulconer's usual Terms; and when they come, feed them, calling all the while in the same Manner, to make them acquainted with your Voice. The next Day you may call them with a Creance at a farther Distance, feeding them as before.

When you have thus called your *Goshawk* abroad three or four Days, and that you find her grow cunning, then take her on your Fift, and mount on Horseback, and ride with her an Hour or two, unhooding and hooding her sometime, giving her a bit or two in Sight of your Spaniels, that she may not be afraid of them: This being done, set her on a Tree with a short Creance tied to her Loins, and going halfa score Yards from her on Horseback, call her to your Fift according to Art; if she come, reward her with two or three Bits, and cast her up again to the Tree; then throw out a dead Pullet (to which she was used before) about a dozen Yards from her; if she fly to it and seize it, let her feed three or four Bits upon it; ride the mean while about her on Horseback, and rate back your Spaniels, because they shall not rebuke her at first, and make her ever after afraid of them: Then alight, and gently take her on your Fift, feed her, Hood her, and let her plume or tire.

Here Note, that the *Goshawk* is a greater Poulterer, and therefore it would be more requisite to throw out a dead Partridge, or one made artificially with its Wing Tail and Plumage; which will cause her to know Partridge better, and Poultry less.

*How to make a Goshawk fly to a Partridge.*

Having manned your *Goshawk*, go into the Field with her, carrying with you a Train Partridge, and unhooding your *Hawk*, bear her as gently as you can; and you will do well to let her plume or tire, for that will make her the mote eager.



If the Partridge spring, let her fly: If she mark one, two, three, or more on the Ground, then go to her and make her take Pearch on some Tree thereby: then if you can retrieve the Partridge with your Spaniels, as soon as they spring it, you must cry, *Howit*, *howit*, and retrieve it the second time, crying when it springeth as afore said: If your *Hawk* kill it, feed her upon it,

If it so happen your Spaniels should take it (as it is very frequent for hot Spaniels to light upon the Partridge, being either flown out of Breath, or overcharged with fear) then alight from your Horse, and taking it speedily from the Dogs, cast it to your *Hawk*, crying, *Ware hawk*, *ware*, and let her feed thereon at her pleasure.

After this you must not fly her in two Days: For having fed on bloody Meat, she will not so soon be in good Case to fly again; for such meat is not so easily endewed by a *Hawk* as the Leg of a Chicken or the like. Using her thus three or four Times, she will be well in Blood, and become an excellent Flier at this pleasant Field flight.

Here *Note*, that you must do at first with her as with other *Hawks*, that is, Seel and Watch her, and win her to feed, to the Hood, to the Fist, &c. and then enter her to young Partridges till *November*, at which Time both Trees and Fields become bare and empty, then you may enter her to the old *Rewen*, setting her short and eager; if she kill, feed her up with the Partridge three or four Times, and this will bring her to Perfection.

If your *Hawk* be a good Partridger, let her not fly at the Powt or Pheasant, for they fly not so long a Flight as the Partridge; and therefore the *Goshawk*, being more greedy of Prey than any other *Hawk*, (yet desirous of ease) would always cover short Flights, not caring to hold out: Not but that there are some good both for long and and short Flights, but they are rarely found.

Besides, you must have a great care in keeping them in good Order, with Flying, Bathing, Weathering, Tiring, and Pluming.



*How to help a Goshawk that turneth Tail to Tail, and giveth over her Game.*

It is usual for a *Goshawk* to fly a Partridge, yet neither kill it nor fly it to Mark, but to turn *Tail to Tail*; that is, having flown it a bow-shot or more, she giveth over her Game, and takes a Tree: Then must you call in your Spaniels to the Retrieve that Way your *Hawk* flew the Partridge; let the Faulconer draw himself that Way also, and carrying with him a quick Partridge, let him cast it out to her, which will make her believe it is the same she flew at. When you cast it out, cry, *Ware hawk, ware*; make her seize it, and feed her upon it: And this will encourage her to fly out her flight another Time. If the next Time you fly her (which must be the third Day) she serve you so again, then must you do as aforesaid with a live Partridge carried about you for that Purpose: If she serve you so the third Time, I would advise you to rid your Hands of her as soon as you can.

*How to make a Goshawk fly quickly*

The *Goshawk* (especially Soars and Niaffes) are very loving to and fond of Man, and therefore should be flown with a little more Rammage, else frequently, after two or three stroaks with their Wings, they give over the Flight, and return to the Keeper: Wherefore you must fly with them as soon as you can. And yet there is an evil which attends this Direction, and that is, by flying over-soon you will pull down your *Hawk* and make her poor, from whence proceeds fearfulness and cowardise. To remedy which, you must give your *Hawk* some respite, and set her up again before you fly her. There are some *Goshawks* (but very few) which will not fly, when they are in good Plight: Then must you bate your Flesh, and pinch them with scouring, washt Meat, and the like. But the best Way of flying such a one is when she is lusty and high: And to add to her vivacity and courage, let her be set abroad in the Morning an Hour or two, when the  
Wea-



Weather is not very cold; for being so weather'd, when she hath flown a Partridge to the Mark, she will not away until it be retrieved by the Spaniels.

*How to fly a Goshawk to the River.*

A *Goshawk* (but no *Tiercel*) may fly the River at Mallard, Duck, Goose, or Hern, with other large Waterfowl: She is made for that purpose after this Manner.

First, make her to the Fist, as is prescribed in her making to the Field: Then carry her into the Field without Bells, and with a live Duck, which you must give to one of the Company, who must hide himself in some Ditch or Pit with the Duck tied to a Creance: Then must you draw near him with your *Hawk* unhooded on your Fist, and giving him some private Notice to throw out the Duck, cast off your *Hawk*: And if she take it at the Source, let him reward and feed her with a reasonable Gorge: Then take her upon your Fist and hood her, permitting her to tire and plume upon the Leg or Wing of the Duck. The third Day go again with her into the Field in like Manner, or else find out some Plash or Pool, where Wild-Fowl lie, taking the advantage of the rising Bank: Being near the Fowl, let some of the Company raise them up, and your *Hawk* being unhooded, cast her off; if she kill any of them at Source, make in to her quickly, and cross the Fowl's Wings, so that she may Foot and Plume it at her Pleasure, Reward her as before. After this, take her on your Fist, and let her tire and plume the Leg or Wing of the Fowl atore said.

When your *Goshawk* is thoroughly nouzled, and well in blood, you may fly her twice a Day or oftner, rewarding her as above.



*An excellent Way to preserve a Goshawk in the time of her flying, especially in hot Weather.*

Take a Pint of Red-rose Water, put it into a Bottle, bruise one Stick or two of green Liquorish and put in it, likewise a little Mace, and the Quantity of a Walnut of Sugar-candy, and draw her Meat through it twice or thrice a Week, as you shall find Occasion: It prevents the Pantafs, and several Diseases they are subject to: Besides it gives a huge Breath, and gently scoureth her.

*How to fly the Wild Goose or Crane with the Goshawk.*

Having mann'd your *Goshawk*, brought her to the Fist, and train'd her with a Goose in the Field, then seek out, where Wild-geese, Cranes, or other large Wild-fowl lie: Having found them afar off, alight and carry your *Hawk* unhooded behind your Horse, stalking towards them, until you have got pretty nigh them, holding down your *Hawks* Covert under the Horse's Neck or Body, yet so that she may see the Fowl: Then you must raise them, and casting off your *Hawk* if she kill, reward her. and thus she may kill four or five in a Day.

In like manner, you may make her to the Crane, and may stalk to Fowl, which lie in Ponds or Pits, as afore said.

Here Note, that if you can fly at great, slight the lesser Flights, which will make your *Hawk* the bolder.

*How to Mew a Goshawk, and draw her out of the Mew, and make her Flying.*

Having flown a *Goshawk*, Tiercel, Soar, or Haggard till March, give her some good Quarry in her Foot, and having seen her clean from Lice, put off the Bottoms of her Jesses, and throw her into the Mew; which



which Room should be on the Ground, and scituated towards the North, if possible.

Let the Pearches therein be lined with Canvas or Cotton; for otherwise by hurting her Foot she may get the Gout or Pynn.

Let the Mew have also a Window towards the East, and another Northward. There must be also a Bason of Water in the Mew for bathing, which must be shifted every three Days. Feed your *Hawk* with Pidgeons, or else with the hot Flesh of Weather-Mutton.

About the beginning of *October*, if you find your *Goshawk* fair mew'd and hard penn'd, then give her Chickens, Lambs-hearts or Calves-hearts, for about twenty Days together, to scowr her, and make her slife out the slimy Substance and glitt out of her Pannel, and enseam her.

Having done thus, some Evening draw her out of the Mew, and new furnish her with Jesses, Bells, Bewits, and all other Things needful for her: Then keep her feel'd two or three Days, till she will endure the Hood patiently; for mew'd Hawks are as impatient of the Hood as those newly taken.

When you have won her to endure the Hood, then in an Evening by Candle-light you may unfeel her, and the next Day shew her the Fist and Glove, making her to tire and plume Morning and Evening, giving her sometimes in the Morning (when her Gorge is empty) a little Sugar-candy, which will help her in an excellent Manner to endew.

When you find your *Goshawk* feed eagerly, and that you think in your Judgment she is enseamed, and that you may boldly fly with her, then go with her into the Field; she will then bate, (if empty) and fly of her own accord: If she kill, feed and reward her; but if she fly to the Mark with a Partridge, then must you retrieve it, and serve her as afore declared.





*Some general Observations for an Ostrager or Faulconer in Keeping and Reclaiming a GOSHAWK.*

**I**t frequently happens, that a *Goshawk* or *Tiercel*, where good in their Soarage, become worse after they are mewd; and the Reason may be, because she was not cherished nor encouraged, to make her take delight in her Soarage.

For in a Manner the major Part of a Faulconer's Skill consists in coying and kind Usage of his *Hawk*, so cherishing her that she may take delight in her Flight.

At the first entring of his *Hawk* he ought always to have a Train-Partridge in his Bag, to serve her with, when need requires, to purchase her love: And let him take such observations, which may keep his *Hawk* always in good Order. As first he must know naturally all *Goshawks* are full of moist Humours, especially in the Head, and therefore let him ply them with Tiring and Pluming Morning and Evening; for that will open them in the Head, and make them cast Water thereat. Let the *Goshawks* tiring be a Rump of Beef, a Pinion or Leg of a Chicken, given by the Fire, or in the warm Sun: This not only opens the Head, but keeps her from sloathfulness and is a good Exercise.

Give her every Night Casting of Feathers or Cotton, and in the Morning mark whether it be wrought round or not, whether sweet or not, whether moist or dry, and of what Colour the Water is that drops out of her Casting: By these means he shall know what Condition his *Hawk* is in.

He also ought to regard her Mewts, to see whether they be clean or not, and give remedies accordingly. He ought also to consider the Season; for in cold Weather he must set his *Hawk* in some warm Place where



where Fire is made, he must line the Pearch with Canvas or Cotton, and must set it so far from the Wall, that the *Hawk* hurt not her Feathers, when she bateth. If the Weather be temperate, he may then set her in the Sun-shine for an Hour or two in the Morning.

Let no Hens or Poultry come near the Place, where your *Hawk* doth Pearch; and in the Spring offer her Water every Week, or else she will Soar away from you when she flieth, and you may go look her.

If your *Hawk* bath herself spontaneously in the cold Weather after her flight, go presently to the next House and Weather her with Back to the Fire, and not her Gorge, for that will make her Sick: And dry your *Hawk*, if you have carried her in the Rain.

A good Faulconer will always keep his *Hawk* high and lusty, yet so that she may be always in a condition to fly best.

Also he must keep his *Hawk* clean, and her Feathers whole: And if a Feather be broken or bruised, he must presently imp it; and to that End he must have his Imping-needles, his Semond, with other Instruments always in readiness.

The first Year it is most requisite to fly your *Goshawk* to the Field, and not to the Covert; for so they will learn to hold, and not turn Tail in the midst of their Flight: And when they are mewed *Hawks*, you may make them do what you will: And it is better to let her be a little rammage than to be overmanned.

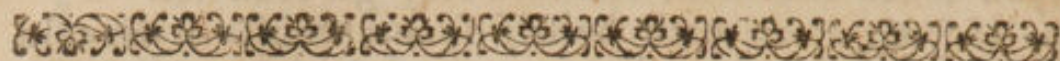
Her feeding is best on hot Meats: And if you would instruct her to kill great Fowl, make her Trains thereof; and if you would have her continue those Flights, never fly her at less, for that will take her off from them and spoil her. If you will make her to fly with a Dog to assist her, then feed your *Hawk* with great Fowl, and your Dogs with Flesh tied under their Wings. If you train your *Hawk* with them, rewarding her upon the Train, and your Dog with her, this will make them acquainted together.

Thus continue doing till your Dog thoroughly knows his Duty: and be sure keep your Dog tied up; for



if you let him go loose, it will spoil the best Dog that is: And never give him a Reward, but when he maketh sin at such Fowls to rescue the *Hawk*.

Call your *Goshawk* to no other Thing than your Fist, and oftentimes spurt good Wine on your *Goshawks* Sears: And Note, that in all Distempers sweet Things are best to be administered in her Medicines.



### Of the SPARROW-HAWK.

THE last *Hawk* which we shall treat of, is the *Sparrow-hawk*; of which there are several Kinds, and of different Plumes.

For the Kinds there is the *Sclavonian*, *Calabrian*, *Corfican*, *German*, *Vicentian*, and *Veronian*, *Alpisan*, *Sabbean*, and *Bergamascan*, in the black Vale near the Confines of *Valtolina*. It is needless to give you a particular Account of them.

Their Plumes are different: Some are small plumed and blank *Hawks*, others of a larger Feather, some plumed like the Quail, some brown Canvas-mail'd, and others have just thirteen Feathers in their Train, &c.

To be short, this Character I may justly give the *Sparrow-hawk* in general, that she is in her kind, and for that Game her strength will give her leave to kill, a very good *Hawk*. Besides he that knows how to Man, reclaim, and fly with a *Sparrow-hawk*, may easily know, how to keep and deal with all other *Hawks*.

And herein lieth an excellency in the *Sparrow-hawk*, she serves both for the Winter and Summer with great pleasure, and will fly at all kind of Game more than the *Falcon*. If the Winter *Sparrow-hawk* prove good, she will kill the Pie, the Chough, the Jay, Woodcock, Thrush, Black-bird, Felfare, with divers other Birds of the like Nature.



*How to make a Sparrow-hawk, whether Eyess, Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard.*

*Sparrow-hawks* are to be considered as all other Kinds of *Hawks* are, according to their Age and disposition.

The several Kinds of *Sparrow-hawks* may be comprehended under these five Heads; the *Eyesses* or *Nyesses*, *Branches*, *Soars*, *Mew'd*, and *Haggard*.

*Eyesses*, are mewed in the Wood, and are taken in the Eyrie.

*Branchers*, are those which have forsaken the Eyrie, and are fed near it by the old Ones on Boughs and Branches.

*Soar-hawks*, are so called, because, having forsaken the Eyrie, and beginning to prey for themselves, they soar up aloft for pleasure.

*Mew'd Hawks*, are such which have once or more shifted the Feather.

Lastly, *Haggards*, are they, which prey for themselves, and do also mew in the Wood, or at large.

This Division of Kinds is not peculiar to the *Sparrow-hawk*, but common to all: Give me leave to run them over in Order, as I have set them down.

For the *Eyess* or *Nyess*, (which is of greatest difficulty to bring to any perfection) you must first feed her in some cool Room, which hath two Windows, the one to the North, and the other to the East, which must be open, and barred over with Laths, not so wide for a *Hawk* to get out, or Vermin to come in: Strow the Chamber with fresh Leaves, and do in every respect to this Room, as I have ordered in a former Chapter for the Mewing the Faulcon.

You must feed your *Eyess* with Sparrows, young Pidgeons, and Sheeps-hearts. Whilst she is very young and little, you should cut her meat, or shred it into small pallets, and feed her twice or thrice a day, according as you find her endew it or put it over.

When she is full summed and fligh about, then give her whole small Birds, and sometimes feed her



on your Fist, suffering her to strain and kill the Birds in your Hands, and sometimes put live Birds into the Chamber where she is, that she may learn to know to Foot and to kill them; and let her feed upon them in your Presence: By this course you will not only unseel her, but take her off from that scurvy quality of hiding her Prey when she hath seized it, a natural property belonging to all Eyesses. Likewise every Morning go into the Room, call her to your Fist, whistle, and use such Terms as you would have her hereafter acquainted with. When she hath put forth all her Feathers and is full summed, then take her out of the Chamber, and furnish her with Bells Bewits, Jesses and Lines.

It will be altogether requisite to seel her at first, that she may the better endure the Hood and handling: And let it be a Ruffer-hood that is large and easie, which you must pull off and put on frequently, stroaking her often on the Head, till she will stand gently.

In the Evening by Candle-light unseel her, giving her somewhat to tire upon, handling and stroaking her Feathers gently, hooding and unhooding her as often as you think fit.

Before I proceed any farther, I shall inform you how to Seel a *Hawk* after the best Manner. Take a Needle threaded with untwisted Thread, and casting your *Hawk* take her by the Beak, and put the Needle through her Eye-lid, not right against the Sight of the Eye, but somewhat near the Beak, that she may have liberty to see backward; and have especial care that you hurt not the Web: Then put your Needle through the other Eye lid, drawing the Ends of the Thread together, tie them over the Beak, not with a straight knot, but cut off the Threads near to the End of the Knot, and so twist them together, that the Eye-lids may be raised so upwards, that the *Hawk* may not see at all, but as the Thread shall slacken, she shall be able to see backwards only, which is the Cause that the Thread is put nearer the Beak.

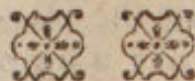
When



When your *Eyef* is well won to the Hood, and to the Fift, let her kill small Birds thereon; then call her two or three Days or longer, till she will come far off; then take a live Pidgeon tied by the Foot with a Creance, and stir it till your *Hawk* will bate at it and seize it, but not far off, that you may quickly help her at the first, lest the Pidgeon struggling with her prove too strong, and discourage your young *Hawk*: Then let her plume and feed her thereupon, whistling the while, that she may know it another Time: Then Hood her, and let her plume and tire a little.

You may use her to the Trains of Chicken and Quail: And when she will seize readily by often Training, ride out with her in the Morning into the Fields, where calling your *Sparrow-hawk* to your Fift, and giving her a bit or two, go with your Spaniels to seek some Beavy of young Quails, advancing your Fift aloft, that your *Hawk* may see them when they Spring, flying her at advantage: If she kill, Reward her, &c. if she miss, serve her with the Train of a Quail.

Let your Dogs hunt on your right Hand, when they range, but especially when they quest and call, to the End you may the better cast off your *Hawk*. When your *Hawk* is thoroughly entred and well nouzled, you may then hold your Hand low, for she will now bate at the Whur: But whatsoever you do, have a quick Eye and a good Regard to the Spaniels, not coveting to be too near them, but a little above them, that you may let your *Hawk* fly coasting at the advantage, when the Game springeth.





Of the Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, and Haggard Sparrow-hawk.

HAVING spoken of the first Kind of Sparrow-hawks, viz. the *Eyess*, the other four in the Title of this Chapter, must consequently be discoursed of.

I shall give you but few Instructions, for in Effect the same Precepts that serve for the *Eyess* will serve also for the *Brancher*, *Soar*, *Mew'd*, and *Haggard Hawks*, only this, these four last require not so much pains to be taken to make them know their Game as the *Eyess*, because they have been accustomed to prey for themselves.

Above all Things, the Faulconer must take them off from their ill Custom of carrying, and that may be done by serving them with great Trains, whereby they will learn to abide on the Quarry.

Be very mindful of coying them as much as you can, for they will remember a Kindness or Injury better than any other *Hawk*.

If the *Hawk* be newly taken, and will not feed, then rub her Feet with warm Flesh, whistling to her, and sometimes putting the Flesh unto her Beak: If she will not yet feed, rub her Feet with a live Bird; if at the crying of the Bird, the *Hawk* seizeth it with her Feet, it is a Sign she will feed; then tear off the Skin and Feathers of the Bird's Breast, and put the Bird to her Beak, and she will eat.

When she will feed upon your whistle and chirp, then Hood her with a Ruffer-hood, and feed her sometimes in the Morning; and when she hath endewed, give her a Beaching in the Day-time, and every Time you Hood her, give her a bit or two; at evening give her the Brains of a Hen for her Supper: And in every Thing else Order these *Hawks* aforesaid, as you do the *Faulcon* and the rest.

Some



*How to Mew Sparrow-hawks.*

Some use to put their *Sparrow-hawk* into the Mew, as soon as they leave flying her, cutting off both her Bewits, Lines, and Knots of her Jesses, and so leave them in the Mew till they are clean mewed.

If you would have your *Sparrow-hawk* to fly at Quail, Partridge, or Pheasant-powt, then you must draw her in the beginning of *April*, and bear her on the Fist till she be clean and thoroughly enfeamed.

Others keep their *Sparrow-hawks* on the Pearch until *March*, and then throw them into the Mew, peppering them for Lice, if they have any. Her Mew should be a Chamber aloft from the Ground, eight or nine foot long, and about six Foot broad, her Windows and Pearches must be like the Goshawks.

Her Mew being thus provided, in *May* go in to her in an Evening by Candle-light, and taking her up softly, pull out all her Train-feathers one after another, this shall make her mew the faster, especially if you feed her with hot Meat and Birds, observing a certain Hour to feed her in.

Once in fourteen Days set Water before her in the Mew ; if you perceive she hath any Feathers or Down, which stand staring upon her Back, sitting as if she would rouze, then set her Water sooner. If you put Water by her continually, it delays her Mewing ; and to keep it always from her, causeth her to mew her Feathers uncleanly, but Water once in a fortnight is the best Medium for her Mewing between those two Extremes.

Thus having given you a summary Account of most *Hawks* commonly in use in *England*, and in most Parts of *Europe*, shewing their Shapes, Complexions, Natures, Manner of Manning, Reclaiming, Ordering, Luring, Flying, Mewing, &c. I shall next give you an Account of the several Diseases and Maladies they are subject to, with their proper Cures and Remedies : but before I shall enter thereon, give me leave to inform



from the Ostrager or Faulconer of his necessary Duties.



*The Duty of a Faulconer ; with necessary Rules and Observations for him to follow,*

A Faulconer ought to consult and consider the Quality and Mettle of his *Hawks*, and to know which of them he shall fly with early, and with which late.

He must be fond of his *Hawk*, patient, and cleanly in keeping her from Lice, Mites, and the like Vermin. He must rather keep his *Hawks* high and full of Flesh, than poor and low, which makes them more subject to infirmities, than when they are in very good plight.

Every Night after flying, he must give his *Hawk* Casting, sometimes Plumage, sometimes Pellets of Cotton, sometimes Physick, as he shall find her diseased by her Casting or Mewt.

Every Night he must make the Place very clean under her Peach, that he may know by her Casting, whether the *Hawk* stands in need of Scourings upwards or downwards.

Let him remember every Evening to Weather his *Hawk*, excepting such Days wherein she hath bathed, after which, in the Evening she should be put into a warm Room on a Peach with a Candle burning by her, where she must sit unhooded, if she be not rammage, to the intent she plume and pick herself, and rejoyce by enoiling herself after bathing, and in the Morning he ought to Weather her, and let her cast, if she hath not done it already, keeping her still hooded till he carry her in the Field.

In feeding his *Hawk* he must have a care of feeding her with two Sorts of Meat at one Time, and what he giveth her must be very sweet.

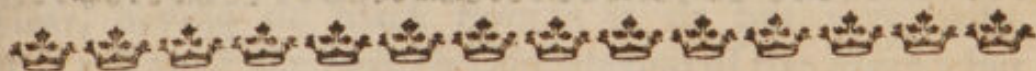


If he have an Occasion to go abroad, let him have a care, that he Pearce not his *Hawk* too high from the Ground, for fear of bating and hanging by the Heels, whereby she may spoil herself.

He ought to carry to the Field with him Mummy in Powder, with other Medicines, for frequently the *Hawks* meet with many accidents, as bruises at encounters, &c. neither must he forget to carry with him any of his necessary Hawking implements.

Lastly, he must be able to make his Lures, Hoods, of all Sorts, Jesses, Bewets, and other needful Furniture for his *Hawk*: neither must he be without his Copping-Irons to cope his *Hawk's* Beak, if it be overgrown, and to cope her Pounces and Talons, as need shall require, neither must he be without his Cauterizing-Irons.

Let these Instructions suffice, I being willing to leave the rest to the care and Observation of the ingenious Faulconer.



*Of Diseases and dangerous Accidents incident to  
H A W K S, and their several Cures.*

**I**T is necessary for a skilful Faulconer not only to know how to Man, Reclaim, Keep, Fly, Imp, and Mew his *Hawk*, with other things pertinent to that Purpose, but also to know their Diseases, with the proper Cures of them, and other Accidents frequently befalling *Hawks*, both in their Flights and otherways.

Before we shall characterize their Maladies and prescribe Rules for their Cures, it will not be irrequisite to tell you what *Hawks* as well as Men, (which seems somewhat strange) have four Complexions, the true indicators of their Natures; and as in Man his natural Complexion and Constitution is known by his Skin, so is the Temperament and natural Disposition of a *Hawk* by her Coat and Plume. This Opinion hath not only been averr'd by the Ancients, but confirmed



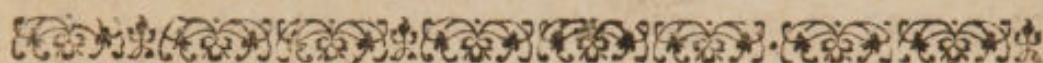
med by the modern Experience of the Skilful in the noble Art of Hawking. Take it in this Manner.

Faulcons that are *black* are *Melancholick*, and are to be Physicked with hot and moist Medicines, because their Complexion is cold and dry, for which purpose Aloes, Pepper, Cocks-flesh, Pidgeons, Sparrows, Goats-flesh, and the like, are very good.

Faulcons *black* are *Phlegmatick*, and must have Physick hot and dry, because Phlegm is cold and moist, to which purpose Cinamon, Cloves, Cardamomum, Goats-flesh, Choughs, &c. are very good.

Faulcons *Russet* are *Sanguine* and *Cholerick* indifferently mixed, and their Physick must be cold, moderately moist and dry, Myrtle, Cassia-fistula, Tamarinds, Vinegar, Lambs-flesh, and Pullets.

Thus much of the Complexions. Now for the Diseases and their Cures.



*Of Castings, and Mewtings, either good or bad according to their several Complexions and Smells.*

*Castings* are of two Sorts, *Plumage* or *Cotton*, the latter is most commonly given in *Pellets*, which must be about the bigness of an Hazle-nut, made of fine soft white Cotton; after she hath supped, you must convey this into her Gorge.

In the Morning diligently observe, how she hath tolled and cast it, whereby you shall know whether she be in a bad or good Condition; for Example, if she cast it round, white, not stinking, nor very moist or waterish, you may conclude her sound, but if she roll it not well, but cast it long, with properties contrary to the former, then she is unsound and full of Diseases.

Besides, if her *Casting* be either black, green, yellowish, slimy, or stinking, it denotes your Hawk to be diseased. The former *Casting* is remedied by hot Meats,  
the



the latter by feeding her well, and washing her Meats in cool Water, as of Endive, &c. and give her one or two *Castings* of Cotton, incorporating therewith Incense and Mummy. But if she continue notwithstanding in this Condition, give her an upward Scouring made thus. Take Aloes pulverized one Scruple, Powder of Clove four Grains, Powder of Cubebs three Grains, incorporate these, and wrap them in Cotton, and give it your *Hawk* empty, having no Meat in her Pannel.

*Casting of Plumage* is to be observed as the former  *Casting*, that is, if in the Morning you find them round and not stinking, it is a good Sign; but if long, slimy, with indigested Flesh sticking to the same, and having an ill Scent, it is very bad. Here *Note*, that by much the more sweet or stinking the  *Casting* is, by so much is the *Hawk* in a better or worse Condition.

*Mewts* must be observed as well as *Castings*, in this Manner: If the Mewt be white, not very thick nor clear, having no black Spot in it, or but very little, it is a Sign of the healthy Constitution of the *Hawk*; but if it be white and very thick in the middle, though it doth not import Sickness, yet it sheweth her to be too gross and over-full of Grease, which you must Remedy by giving her moist Meats, as the Heart of a Calf or Lamb, &c. and for two Mornings after give her some Sugar-candy, or else the Gut of a Chicken well washt and fill'd with Oyl-Olive; either of these will scour her and make her to slice freely.

It is a very bad and mortal Sign, to see your *Hawks* Mewt full of variety of Colours, therefore you must speedily prevent ensuing mischiefs by giving her Mummy purified and beaten to Powder, wrapping it in Cotton.

If the Mewt be more Yellow than White, then doth she abound with Choler, proceeding from great Flights in hot Weather, also from much Bathing. This is remedied by washing her Meat in Bugloss, Endive, Borage, and such like cold Waters, wringing the said Meat after you have so washed it.



The *black* Mewt is a most deadly Sign, and if it continue four Days she will peck over the Peach and die. If she mewt so but once, there is no great Danger, for it proceeds either from the Blood or Guts of the Fowl in tiring, or else from being gorged with filthy Meats; in this case give her good warm Meat and Cotton-casting, with the Powder of Cloves, Nutmeg, and Ginger, or Mummy alone.

If the Mewt be *green*, it is a bad Sign, and denotes her troubled with an infection and corrupt Liver, or with some Apostume, unless she be a Rammage-Hawk and then that Sign holds not good. Her Cure is, by feeding her with Meat powdered with Mummy, if she will not take it with her Food, then give it her in a Scowring or Casting, but if this ill-colour'd Mewting continue still, then give her a Scowring of Agarick, and after that another of Incense pulverized to comfort her.

The dark *sanguine* Mewt with a black in it is the most deadly Sign of all, that differs but little, if any thing, from the former black mewt. A Hawk mewting after this Manner is irrecoverable, and therefore it is needless to prescribe a Cure.

Lastly, the *gray* Mewt like sour Milk, is a mortal Token, yet curable as shall be shewn hereafter.

Thus you may see how requisite it is for a Faulconer to observe diligently every Morning his *Hawks* Castings and mewtings, that knowing thereby their Maladies, he may timely find out their Remedies. Let us now proceed to their particular Diseases.

#### Of the Cataract.

The *Cataract* in the Eyes of a *Hawk* is a malady not easily removed, and sometimes incurable, when it is too thick, and of a long Continuance.

It proceedeth from gross Humours in the Head, which frequently do not only dim, but extinguish the Sight, and sometimes the Hood is the Cause of this Mischief.

The cure must be effected by Scowring her two or three Days with Aloes or Agarick, then take the Powder



der of washt Aloes finely beaten one Scruple, and two Scruples of Sugar-candy, mingle these together, and with a Quill blow it into your *Hawks* Eye, afflicted as aforesaid, three or four times a Day. This is the gentlest and most Sovereign Medicine of any yet I have tried. But if this will not do, you must use stronger Medicines as the juice of Celandine Roots, bathing their Eyes often with warm Rose-water, wherein hath been boil'd the Seed of Fenugreek.

*Of the Pantas or Asthma.*

The *Pantas* is a dangerous Distemper, and few *Hawks* escape which are afflicted therewith. It happens when the Lungs are as it were so baked by excessive heat, that the *Hawk* cannot draw her Breath, and when drawn, cannot well emit it again. You may judge of the beginning of this Distemper by the *Hawks* labouring much in the Pannel, moving her Train often up and down at each Motion of her Pannel, and she cannot many Times mewt or slice, or if she do, she drops it fast by her. It is known likewise by your *Hawks* frequent opening her Clap and Beak.

The best Remedy is, to scour your *Hawk* with good Oyl-Olive well washed in several Waters, till it become clear and white, which you must do after this Manner: Take an earthen Pot with a small Hole in the Bottom thereof, which you must stop with your Finger, then pour therein your Oyl with a Quantity of Water, and coil these together with a Spoon till the Water grow darkish, after which remove your Finger, and the Water will run out, but the Oil remain behind, floating on the top; thus do seven or eight Times, till you have thoroughly purified the Oyl: Then take a Sheeps Gut above an Inch long for a Faulcon and Goshawk, but of less Length for lesser *Hawks*, and fill it with this Oil, and fasten it with a Thread at both Ends. Your *Hawk* having first cast, convey this Gut into her Throat, holding her on the Fist till she make a Mewt; an Hour after she hath done mewting feed her with a Calf's Heart or a Pullet's Leg, giving her every  
third



third or fourth Day a Cotton casting with Cubebs and Cloves. I shall only add one Receipt more for the *Pantas* or *Asthma*, and that is the Oyl of sweet Almonds poured into a washt Chicken's Gut, and given the *Hawk*, which is of great efficacy in the Cure of this Disease.

### Of Worms.

There are a Sort of Worms an Inch long, which frequently afflict *Hawks*, proceeding from gross and viscous Humours in the Bowels, occasioned through want of natural heat and ill Digestion.

You may know when she is troubled with them by her casting her Gorge, her stinking Breath, her trembling and writhing her Train, her croaking in the Night, her offering with her Beak at her Breast or Pannel, and by her Mewt being small and unclean.

You may cure her of them with a Scowring of washt Aloes, Hepatick, Mustard-seed, and Agarick, of each an equal Quantity, or the Powder of Harts-horn dried, or lastly, a Scowring of white Dittander, Aloes, Hepatick washt four or five Times, Cubebs, and a little Saffron wrapt in some Flesh, to cause her to take it the better.

### Of the Filanders.

There are several Sorts of *Filanders*, but I shall speak but of one sticking to the Reins. They are Worms as small as a Thread, and about an Inch long, and lie wrapt up in the Skin or Net near the Reins of a *Hawk*, apart from either Gut or Gorge.

You shall know when your *Hawk* is troubled with them, by her poverty, by ruffling her Train, by straining the Fist or Pearch with her Pounces, and lastly, by croaking in the Night, when the *Filanders* prick her. You may Remedy this Malady betimes, before these Worms have enlarged themselves from their proper Station, roving elsewhere to your *Hawks* Ruin and Destruction.

You



You must not kill them as other Worms, for Fear of Impostumes from their Corruption, being incapable to pass away with the *Hawks* Mewt, but only stupify them, that they may be offensive but seldom, and that is done thus: take a Head of Garlick, taking away the utmost rind, then with a Bodkin heated in the Fire make holes in some Cloves, then steep them in Oyl three Days, and after this give her one of the Cloves down her Throat, and for forty Days after she will not be troubled with the Filanders. Wherefore a Faulconer will shew himself prudent, if seeing his *Hawk* low and poor, he give her once a Month a Clove of this Garlick for prevention of the Filanders.

*Another approved Medicine for Filanders or Worms in Hawks.*

Take half a dozen Cloves of Garlick, boil them in Milk, until they are very tender, then put them out and dry the Milk out of them, then put them into a spoonful of the best Oyl of Olives you can get, and when she hath cast, in the Morning give these to your *Hawk*, feed her not in two Hours after, and be sure it be warm Meat, and not much, and keep her warm that Day for fear of taking cold, give her the Oyl with the Garlick, they must steep all Night.

*Of Hawks Lice.*

These *Lice* do most infect the Head, the Ply of a *Hawks* Wings, and her Train. In the Winter you may kill them thus: Take two Drams of Pepper beaten to Powder, and mingle it with warm Water, and with this Lotion wash the Places infected with these Lice or Mites, then set your *Hawk* on a Pearch with her Back and Train against the Sun, then hold in your Hand a small Stick about an Handful long, with a Piece of soft Wax at the End of it, and with that (whilst the *Hawk* is weathering herself) take away those Vermin crawling upon the Feathers. you may do  
P well



well to add to the Pepper and Water some Staves-acre.

In the Summer-time you may kill the Lice with *Auripigmentum* beaten to Powder, and strowed on the Places, where they lie.

*A safe and easie way to kill Lice in Hawks.*

Mail your *Hawk* in a piece of Cotton, if not in some Woollen-Cloth, and put between the Head and her Hood a little Wooll or Cotton, then take a Pipe of Tobacco, and putting the little End in at the Tream, blow the Smoak, and what Lice escape killing will creep into the Cloath. This is a certain Way.

*How to keep and Maintain all Manner of Hawks in health, good Plight and liking.*

In the first Place, never give them a great Gorge, especially of gross Meats, as Beef, Pork, and such as are hard to be endewed and put over.

*Secondly*, never feed them with the Flesh of any Beast that hath lately gone to Rut, for that will insensibly destroy them.

*Thirdly*, if you are constrained to give your *Hawk* gross Food, let it be well soaked first in clean Water, and afterwards sufficiently wrung; in Summer with cold Water, in Winter with luke-warm Water.

Ever observe to reward your *Hawks* with some good live Meat, or else they will be brought low, however, the serving them with washt Meats is the Way to keep them in Health.

I shall conclude how to keep *Hawks* in perfect Health with this most excellent Receipt. Take Germander, Pelamountain, Basil, Grummer-seed, and Broom-flowers, of each half an Ounce, Hyssop, Saffiras, Polpodium, and Horse-mints, of each a Quarter of an Ounce, and the like of Nutmegs, Cubebs, Borage, Mummy, Mugworth, Sage, and the four Kinds of Mirobolans, of each half an Ounce, of Aloes Succotrina the fifth Part of an Ounce, and of Saffron one whole Ounce. All these



these you must pulverise, and every eighth or twelfth Day give your *Hawks* the Quantity of a Bean thereof with their Meat. If they will not take it so, put it into a Hens Gut tied at both ends, and let him stand empty an Hour after.

*Of the Formica.*

This is a Distemper which commonly seizeth on the Horn of *Hawks* Beaks, which will eat the Beak away, and this is occasioned by a Worm, as most Men are of Opinion.

You may perceive it by this, the Beak will grow rugged, and it will begin to separate from the Head.

To remedy this Malady, you must take the Gall of a Bull, and break it into a Dish, and add thereto the Powder of Aloes Succatrina, mingle these well together, and anoint the Clap or Beak of your *Hawk* therewith, and every Place where the *Formica* grows, twice a Day, but touch not her Eyes or Nares; continue thus doing till your *Hawk* be perfectly cured, and Bath her with Orpiment and Pepper to keep her from other Vermin.

*Of the Frownce.*

This *Frownce* proceedeth from moist and cold Humours, which descend from the *Hawks* Head to the Palate and Root of the Tongue, by means whereof they lose their Appetite, and cannot close their Clap. This by some is called the *Eagles-bane*, for she seldom dieth of Age, but of the over-growing of her Beak.

You may know if your *Hawk* be troubled with this Distemper, by opening her Beak, and seeing whether her Tongue be swoln or not, if it be, she hath it.

There are several ways to Cure this Distemper, but the best that ever yet I could find for it, is only to take the Powder of Alum reduced to a Salve, with



strong Wine-vinegar, and wash the *Hawks* Mouth therewith.

*To cure the dry Frownce.*

Take a Quill and cut it in the shape of a Pen, and at the other End tie a fine little Rag; with one End scrape off the white Skin, which you will see in the Mouth or Throat of your *Hawk* until it bleedeth, then with the other End wash it with the Juice of Lemon or White-wine-Vinegar very clean, then take a little burnt Alum, and some of a Shoe-soal burnt upon Wood-Coals and beaten to Powder, mix them, and lay them on the Place or Places, but let your *Hawk* have no Meat above, nor be ready to be fed; by this I have cured many.

*Of the Pip.*

The *Pip* frequently troubleth *Hawks*, as it doth Chickens, and proceedeth from cold and moistness of the Head, or from feeding on gross Meat not well washed in warm Water in the Winter, and cold Water in the Summer.

The Symptoms of this Distemper are the *Hawks* frequent Sniting, and making a noise twice or thrice in her Sniting.

For the Cure thereof, you must cast your *Hawk* gently, and look upon the tip of her Tongue, and if you find the Pip there, you must scour her with a Pill made with Agarick and *Hiera picra* given two or three Days together with her Casting at Night, this will cleanse her Head, and the sooner if she be made to tire against the Sun in the Morning: Then bind a little Cotton to the End of a Stick, and dipping it in good Rose-water wash her Tongue therewith, after this anoint it three or four Days with Oyl of sweet Almonds and Oyl-olive well washed as aforesaid. Having so done, you will find the Pip all white and soft, then take an Awl, and with the Point thereof lift up the Pip softly, and remove it, as Women pip their Chickens,  
but



but remove it not till it be thoroughly ripe, and wet her Tongue and Palate twice or thrice a Day with the aforesaid Oyl, till she be thoroughly cured.

*How to remedy that Hawk which Endeweth not, nor putteth over as she should do.*

This happens either by being foul within, or by a Surfeit, or else, when she was low and poor, her Keeper over-gorged her, by being too hasty to set her up, and she being weak was not able to put over and endew, and surfeited thereupon.

The Cure whereof is this: You must feed her with light Meats, and a little at once, as with young Rats and Mice, Chickens or Mutton dipt in Goats-milk or otherwise, or give her a quarter of a Gorge of the Yolk of an Egg.

If you feed her with the Flesh of any living Fowl, first steep it well in the Blood of the same Fowl, so shall your Hawk mount her Flesh apace, if you also scour her with Pills made of Lard, Marrow of Beef, Sugar and Saffron mix'd together, and given her three Mornings together, giving her also a reasonable Gorge two Hours after.

*How to make a Hawk feed eagerly, that hath lost her Appetite, Without bringing her low.*

A Hawk may lose her Appetite by taking too great Gorges in the Evening, which she cannot well endew, or by being Foul in the Pannel, or sometimes by Colds.

To remedy which, take Aloes Succotrina, boil'd Sugar, and Beef marrow, of each alike, only less of the Aloes, incorporate these, and make them into Balls or Pills as big as Beans, and give them to your Hawk, and hold her in the Sun till she hath cast up the filth and slime within her, then feed her not till Noon, at which time give her good Meat, and three Days after for the same Disease it is good tiring on Stock-doves, small Birds, Rats or Mice.



*How to raise a Hawk that is low and poor.*

The poverty of a *Hawk* happens several ways, either by the ignorance of the Faulconer of some latent lurking Distemper, or by her soaring away, and so being lost four or five Days, in which time, finding little or no Prey, she becomes poor and lean.

To set her up, you must feed her a little at once, and often, with good Meat and of light Digestion, as small Birds, Rats, Mice, &c. Or thus, take two spoonfuls of Honey, four of fresh Butter, and boil them together in a new earthen Pot of Water, then take Pork well washed, and steep it in that Water, giving your *Hawk* a reasonable Gorge thereof twice a Day, warming the said Water when you intend to feed your *Hawk*, and get some Snails that breed in running Waters, and give them her in the Morning, and they will not only scour away the gross slimy Humours which are within, but also nourish her exceedingly.

*How to remedy a Hawk that is slothful, and is averse to flying.*

A *Hawk* frequently hath no mind to fly, either by Reason of her ill keeping, that is, when she is kept by those, who know not how to give her her Rights, as bouzing, bathing, &c. or because the *Hawk* is too high and full of Grease, or too poor and low, by the first she becomes proud and coy, and by the latter so weak that she wants Strength and Spirit to perform it.

For the curing of which Distemper, she ought to be thoroughly view'd by some skilful Faulconer, by whom such Remedies should be administered to her as are needful for her, but above all, there is nothing like giving her in a Morning three or four Pills of Celandine well washt.



*Of Swoln Foot in a Hawk.*

*Hawks* have Swellings in their Feet upon several accounts, sometimes by chafing their Feet in flying their Prey, striking it, and taking cold thereupon, sometimes for want of rolling or lining the Peach with some soft warm Cloath, or else through gross Humours and toulness within, which through Exercise drop down into their Feet, and so cause them to swell. Lastly this swelling happens by pricks when they fly fiercely into Bushes after Game.

For a Remedy, you must scour your *Hawk* three Mornings together with the Pills of Lard, Marrow, Sugar and Saffron, and set her in the Sun, two Days after this feed her with good Meat, then take Bole-Armorick, and half the Quantity of *Sanguis Draconis*, and having made them into Powder, temper them well together with the White of an Egg and Rose-water, and anoint her Feet twice a Day three or four Days together, setting her on some Cloth to keep her Feet warm.

*How to scour Hawks before you cast them into the Mew.*

When Mewing Time is come, you must scour and cleanse your Hawks, for in luring and flying time by foul feeding they ingender Filanders and other Distempers, whereof they die for want of timely care and cure.

When you set down your Hawk use the same as you find Page 246, which will not only kill the Worm, but scour a Hawk also.

The best way is, (when you mean to cast a Hawk into the Mew) first to scour her well according to former Directions, to cope her, and set her up well in flesh, to discharge her as near as we can of all Diseases, also to free her from Mites and Lice, to set her Water, sometimes to feed her with young Rats, Mice, Dogs-flesh, Pidgeons, Rabbits, and now and then with some liquid Thing and meats Laxative.



Take notice of this special Observation: A Haggard is not to be cast in loose to the Mew, but is to be mewed on the Fist; for otherwise she will become too coy and strange; for if she fall to bating and beating herself for heat, then you must hood her up, or bespout her with cold Water, which is the readiest Way to make her leave Bating.

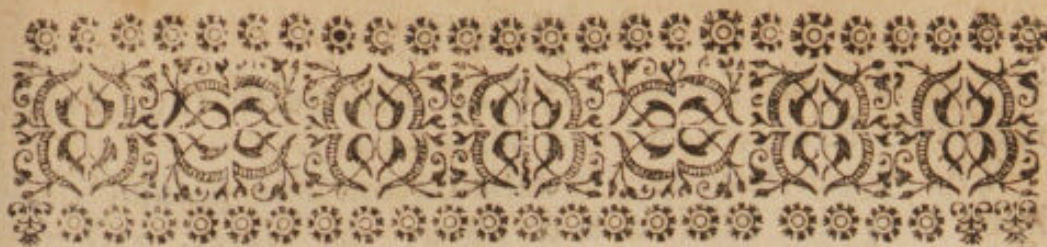
You must continue her on your Fist till she begin to shed her Feathers; then set her down, and tie her to a Stone or Pearch, as you do the rest; and after she hath mewed and comes to fly, then let her stand on a Block or Billet cased or rolled. In the same manner mew Goshawks, Tiercels, and Sparrow-hawks; only they will not be born on a Fist, but be at liberty in the Mew, and very cleanly served.

Fifteen or Twenty Days before you draw your Hawk out of the Mew, you must begin to abate her of her Diet, the sooner and better to enfeam her. And forget not to feed her with washt Meat, which will prevent many dangers that may follow.

Many more diseases there are incident, and Accidents happening to Hawks, of which with their cures there are large Discourses written in *Italian*, *French*, and *English*, and therefore I thought fit to insert in this Place no other Maladies than what most usually occur: If you desire to be further satisfied, I shall refer you to those larger and (it may be) less useful Volumes.







THE  
GENTLEMAN'S  
Recreation :  
OF  
FOWLING:  
With a short Account of  
Singing-Birds.

*What Fowling is; with the Nature and Diversity of all manner of Fowl.*



FOWLING is used two Manner of Ways either by Enchantment, or Enticement; by winning or wooing the Fowl unto you by Pipe, Whistle, or Call; or else by Engine, which, unawares surprizeth them.

Fowl are of divers Sorts, which alter in their Nature as their Feathers; but by reason of their multiplicity,



plicity, I shall for brevity-sake distinguish them only into two Kinds, Land and Water-Fowl.

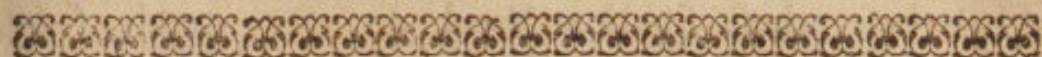
The Water-fowl are so called from the natural delight they still take in and about the Water, gathering from thence all their Food and nutriment.

Here *Note*, that Water-fowl are in their own Nature the subtlest and wisest of Birds, and most careful of their own safety: Hence they have been formerly compared to an orderly and well-governed Camp, having Scouts on Land afar off, Courts of Guards, Sentinels, and all Sorts of other watchful Officers surrounding the Body, to give an alarm on any approach of seeming danger.

For in your Observation you may take Notice, that there will be ever some stragling Fowl, which lie aloof from the greater Number, which still call first. Now it is the Nature of Water-fowl to fly in great Flocks, having always a Regard to the general safety; so that if you see a single Fowl, or a Couple fly together, you may imagine they have been somewhere affrighted from the rest by some sudden Amazement or apprehension of danger: But so naturally are they inclined to Society, that they seldom leave wing till they meet together again. And this is occasioned not only by the near Approach of Men, but also by the beating of Haggards on the Rivers, as also by the Appearance of every bold *Buzzard* and *Ring-tail*.

Of Water-fowl there are two Sorts; such as live of the Water, and such as live on the Water: The one taking their Sustenance from the Water without swimming thereon, but wading and diving for it with their long Legs: The other are Web-footed and swim: as the *Swan*, *Goose*, *Mallard*, &c.





*Of the Haunts of Fowl.*

THE Thing of greatest Moment for the Fowler to understand, is the Haunt of Fowl. In order thereunto you are to understand, that all Sorts of greater Fowl, viz. those who divide the foot, have their residence by the Edge of the Rivers that are shallow, Brooks, and Plashes of Water : And these appear not in Flocks, but you shall see here one single, there a Couple and the like ; which makes them difficult to be taken by Engine or Device ; but they are the best flights for *Hawks* that can be imagined.

Likewise these Fowl delight in low and boggy Places ; and the more sedge, marish and rotten such Grounds are, the fitter they are for the Hunting of these Fowl.

They love also the dry Parts of drowned Fens, which are overgrown with tall and long Rushes, Reeds, and Sedges.

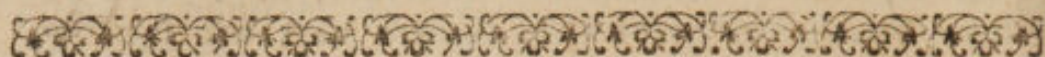
Lastly, they delight in half drowned Moors, or the hollow vales of Downs, Heaths, or Plains, where there is Shelter either [of Hedges, Hills, Tufts of Bushes or Trees, where they may lurk obscurely.

Now the lesser Fowl, which are Web-footed, haunt continually drowned Fens, where they may have continual plenty of Water, and may swim undisturbed by Man or Beast : Their haunt is likewise in the main Stream of Rivers, where the Current is swiftest and least Subject to freez ; and the broader and deeper such Rivers are, the greater delight these Fowl take therein, the *Wild-goose* and *Barnacle* excepted, who never abide on Waters above their sounding ; for when they cannot reach the Ouze, they instantly remove thence, seeking out more shallow places. These two last named are infinitely delighted with green Winter Corn, and therefore you shall see them evermore, where such Grain



is sown, especially if the Ends of the Lands have much Water about them.

Likewise these smaller Fowl do very much frequent small Brooks, Rivers, Ponds, drowned Meadows, Pastures, Moors, Plashe, Meres, Loughs and Lakes; especially if well stored with Islands unfrequented, and well furnished with Shrubs, bushes, Reeds, &c. and then they will breed there, and frequent such Places both Summer and Winter.



*The readiest way of taking great Fowl with NETS.*

THE first Thing you are to consider, is the making of your Nets, which must be of the best Pack-thread, with great and large Meshes, at least two Inches from Point to Point: For the larger the Meshes are, (so that the Fowl cannot creep through them) the better it is; for they more certainly intangle them.

Let not your Nets be above two Fathom deep, and fix in Length, which is the greatest Proportion that a Man is able to overthrow. Verge your Net on each Side with very strong Cord, and extend it at each End upon long Poles made for that Purpose.

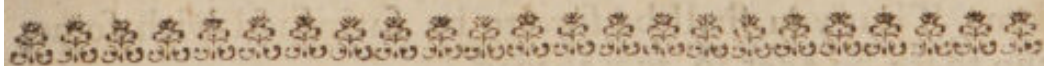
Having thus your Nets in readiness, let the Fowler observe the haunts of Fowl, that is to say, their Morning and Evening feedings, coming at least two Hours before those Seasons; then spreading his Net smooth and flat upon the Ground, staking the two lower Ends firm thereon, let the upper Ends stand extended upon the long Cord, the farther End thereof being staked fast down to the Earth two or three fathom from the Net; and let the stake which staketh down the Cord stand in a direct and even Line with the lower Verge of the Net, the Distance still observed: Then the other End of the Cord, which must be at least ten or twelve Fathom long, the Fowler shall



shall hold in his Hand at the uttermost Distance afore-said, where he shall make some artificial shelter either of Grass, Sods, Earth, or such like Matter, where by he may lie out of the Sight of the Fowl.

Observe to let the Net lie so ready for the Game, that upon the least pull it may rise from the Earth and fly over.

Strew over all your Net, as it lies upon the Ground, some Grass, that you may hide it from the Fowl. It will not be amiss (but altogether requisite) to stake down near your Net a live *Hern*, or some other Fowl formerly taken, for a *Stale*. When you observe a competent Number of Fowl come within the verge of your Net, then draw your Cord suddenly, and so cast the Net over them: Continue thus doing till the Sun be near an Hour high, and no longer; for then their feeding is over for that Time; and so do at Evening from about Sun-set till Twilight. By this means you may not only take great Quantities of larger Wild-fowl, but also *Plover*, which takes his Food as much from Land as Water.



### *How to take small Water-fowl with Nets.*

LET your Nets be made of the smallest and strongest packthread, and the Meshes nothing near so big as those of the greater Fowl, about two Foot and a half or three Foot deep; line these Nets on both Sides with false Nets, every Mesh being about a Foot and a half square each Way, that as the Fowl striketh either through them or against them, so the smaller Net may pass through the great Meshes, and so streighten and entangle the Fowl.

These Nets you must pitch for the Evening-flight of Fowl before Sun-set, staking them down on each Side of the River about half a foot within the Water, the lower Side of the Net being so plumb'd, that it  
may



may sink so far and no farther: Let the upper Side of the Net be placed slantwise, shoaling against the Water, yet not touching the Water by near two Foot; and let the Strings which support this upper side of the Net be fastned to small yielding Sticks prickt in the Bank, which as the Fowl strikes may give Liberty to the Net to run and entangle them. Thus Place several of these Nets over divers parts of the River, about twelvescore one from another, or as the River or Brook shall give leave; and be confident, if any Fowl come on the River that Night, you shall have your Share.

And that you may the sooner obtain your desire, take your Gun and go to all the Fens and Plashes that are a good Distance from your Nets, and fire it three or four Times; which will so affright the Fowl, that they will instantly post to the Rivers; then plant your Nets upon these Fens and Plashes.

In the Morning go first to the River and see what Fowl are there surprized; and having taken them up with your Nets, if you espy any Fowl on the River, discharge your Gun, which will make them fly to the Fens and Plashes, and then go see what you have taken: Thus you shall be sure to be furnished with some, tho there be ever so few abroad,



*How to take all manner of small Birds, with Bird-Lime.*

**I**N cold Weather, that is to say, in Frost or Snow, all Sorts of small Birds do congregate in Flocks, as Larks, Chaffinches, Linnets, Gold-finches, Yellow-hammers, Buntings, Sparrows, &c. all these but the Lark do perch on Trees or Bushes as well as feed on the Ground: If you perceive they resort about your House or Fields adjacent, then use your Bird-lime that is well prepared, and not over old; order it after this manner:



ner: Take an Earthen Dish and put the Bird-lime into it, add thereunto some fresh Lard, or Capons-grease, putting an Ounce of either to a quarter of a pound of Bird-lime: then setting it over the Fire, let it melt gently together; but let it not boil by any means, for if you do, you will take away the Strength of the Bird-lime, and so spoil it. Having thus prepared it, get a Quantity of ~~Wheat ears~~, as many as you think you shall conveniently use, and ~~cut the Straw about a Foot long besides the Ears~~, then from the bottom of the Ears to the middle of the Straw, lime it about six Inches: The Lime must be warm when you lime the ~~Straw~~, that so it may run thin upon the Straw, and therefore the less discernable, and consequently not suspected by the Birds.

Having thus got your Lim'd-straws in this Manner ready, go into the Field adjacent to your House, and carry a Bag of Chaff and thresht Ears, and scatter these together twenty yards wide, (it is best in a Snow) then take the Lim'd-~~ears~~ and stick them up and down with the ~~Ears~~ leaning, or at the End touching the Ground; then retire from the Place, and traverse the Grounds all round about; the Birds hereupon being disturbed in their other Haunts fly thither, and pecking at their Ears of Corn, finding that they stick upon them, they straightways mount up from the Earth, and in their flight the Bird-limb'd-straws lay under their Wings, and falling are not able to disengage themselves from the ~~Straw~~, and so are certainly taken.

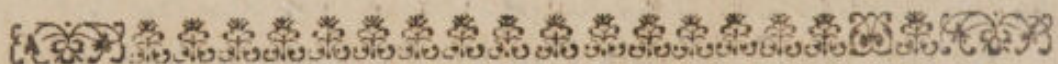
By the Way take this Caution; do not go and take up five or six you see entangled, for that may hinder you it may be from taking three or four Dozen at one Time. If they be *Larks* that fall, where your Bird-lim'd Straws do lie, go not a near them, till they spontaneously rise of themselves, and flying in great Flocks; I can assure you I have caught five Dozen at one lift.

You may lay some nearer Home to take *Finches*, *Sparrows*, *Yellowhammers*, &c. who resort near to Houses, and frequent Barn-doors, where you may easily take them after the same manner as aforesaid. The taking of  
Spar-



rows is a very great Benefit to the Husbandman, for they are his and the Farmers principal Enemies, of all small Birds; insomuch as I dare assure them, that every Dozen of *Sparrows* taken by them in the Winter, shall save them a Quarter of Wheat before Harvest be ended. In the taking of them, you may stick the Top of your House if thatcht; and tho' you never have the Birds, yet the Destruction of them will be a great advantage. Before a Barn door if you lay your Twigs, or lim'd-straws, you may there take them with abundance of other small Birds. The *Sparrow* is excellent Food and a great restorer of decayed Nature. You may also take them at the roost in the Eves of Thatcht-houses, by coming in the Night with a Clap-net, and rubbing the Net against the Hole where they are flying out, you Clap the Net together, and forsake them: The darkest Night with a Lanthorn and Candle is the chief time to take them.

Having performed your Morning Bird-recreation, go bait the same place where you were before, and bait it with fresh Chaff and ~~Ears of Corn~~, and let them rest till next Morning; then take some fresh ~~Wheat ears~~ again, and stick them as aforesaid: and when you bate in the Afternoon, take away all your Limed ~~Ears~~, that so the Birds may feed boldly, and not be frightened or disturbed against next Morning.



#### *How to take great Fowl with* LIME-TWIGS.

**Y**OU must supply your self with good Store of Rods, which are long, small, and straight-grown Twigs, being light and apt to ply to and fro.

Lime the upper-part of these Twigs, holding the Bird-lime before the Fire, so that it melt, for the better besmearing them.

Having first well acquainted yourself, where these Fowl do frequent Morning and Evening, you must then



then observe from Sun set for the Evening-flight, and before Day for the Morning, that you plant your Lime-twigs where these Fowl haunt, pinning down for a Stale one of the same Fowl alive (which you have formerly taken for that purpose) which you intend to catch with your Bird-lime: Round about the Stale (giving the Fowl liberty to flutter to and fro) prick your Twigs in rows a foot Distant one from the other till you have covered all the Place so haunted, that there shall be no Room left, but that they must certainly fall foul with the Lime-twigs.

Prick the Rods stooping with their heads bending into the Wind about a Foot or somewhat more above ground: If you please (and I think it the best Way) you may cross-prick your Rods, that is, one point into the Wind, and another against the wind; by which means you may take the Fowl which way soever they come.

Place also a Stale some Distance from your Lime-twigs, and fasten small Strings to it, which upon the sight of any Fowl you must pull, then will your Stale Butter, which will allure them down.

If you see any taken, do not run instantly and take them up if you see any Fowl in the Air; for by their fluttering others will be induced to swoop in among them. It will not be amiss to have a welltaught Spaniel with you for the retaking of such Fowl (as it is common) which will flutter away with the Lime-twigs about them.

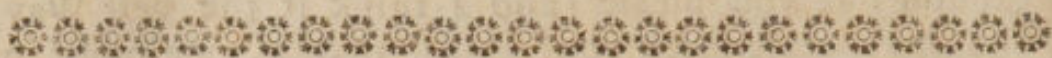
If you intend to use the Twigs for smaller Wild-fowl, and such as frequent the Water only, then must you fit them in length according to the Depth of the River; and your Lime must be very strong Water-lime, such as no wet or frost can injure. Prick these Rods in the Water, as you did the other on the Land, as much of the Rod as is limed being above Water; and here and there amongst your Rods you must Stake down a live Stale, as a *Mallard*, a *Widgeon*, or *Teal*: And this you may do in any shallow Plash or Fen.

You need not wait continually on your Rods, but come thrice a Day, and see what is taken, viz, early



in the Morning, at high Noon, and late in the Evening; but come not unattended with your Water-spaniel: for if you perceive any of your Rods missing, you may conclude some Fowl are fastned to them which are crept in some Hole, Bush, or Hedge by the River side, and then will your Dog be very necessary for the discovery.

Do not beat one Haunt too much, but when you find their numbers fail, remove and find out another, and in three weeks Time your first will be as good as ever.



### *Of the greater and lesser SPRINGIES.*

**H**AVING noted the Morning and Evening feeding of divided-footed-Fowl, observing the Furrows and Water-Tracts where they usually stalk and paddle to find Worms, Float-Grass roots, and the like; you must mark, where many Furrows meet in one, and break out as it were into one narrow Passage, which so descending, afterwards divides itself into other Parts and Branches; then mark how every Furrow breaketh and cometh into this Centre or little pit which is most paddled with the Fowl, or which is easiest for Fowl to wade in: This being done, take small and short Sticks, and prick them cross-wise athwart over all the other passages, one stick within half an Inch of the other, making as it were a kind of Fence to Guard every Way but one which you would have the Fowl to pass: If they stand but somewhat more than a handful above the Water, such is the Nature of the Fowl that they will not pass over them, but stray about till that they find the open Way.

Having thus hemmed in all ways but one, take a stiff stick cut flat on the one Side, and Prick both Ends down into the Water, and make the upper Part  
of



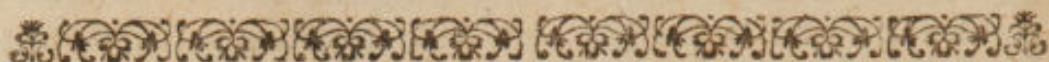
of the flat Side of the Stick to touch the Water, and no more: Then make a Bow of small Hazel or Willow made in the Fashion of a pear, broad and round at one end, and narrow at the other, at least a foot long, and five or six Inches broad, and at the narrow End make a small nick: then take a good stiff-grown plant of Hazel, clean without Knot, three or four Inches about at the bottom, and an Inch at the Top, and having made the botton end sharp, at the Top you must fasten a very strong Loop of about an hundred Horse-hairs plaited very fast together with strong Packthread, and made so smooth that it will run and slip at pleasure: Let the Loop be of the just Quantity of the Hoop, made Pearwise as aforesaid: then hard by this Loop you must fasten a little broad Tricker within an Inch and half of the End of the Plant, which must be made equally sharp at both Ends: Thrust the bigger sharp end of the Plant, into the Ground close by the edge of the Water, the smaller end with the Hoop and the Tricker must be brought down to the first Bridge, and then the Hoop made Pear wise being laid on the Bridge, one End of the Tricker must be set upon the nick of the Hoop, and the other End against a Nick made on the small End of the Plant, which by the violence and bend of the Plant shall make them stick and hold together until the Hoop be moved. This done, lay the Swickle on the Hoop in such a fashion as the Hoop is proportioned; then from each Side of the Hoop prick little Sticks, making an impaled Path to the Hoop; and as you go farther and farther from the Hoop or Springe, so make the Way wider and wider, that the Fowl may enter a good Way before it shall perceive the Fence. By this means the Fowl will be enticed to wade up to the Springe, which shall be no sooner toucht, but that part of the Bird so touching will be instantly ensnared: And thus according to the Strength of the Plant you shall take any Fowl of what bigness soever.

The Springe for lesser Fowl, as *Woodcock*, *Snipe*, *Plover* &c. is made after the Fashion aforesaid, only differing in strength according unto the bigness of the Birds you intend to catch.



The main plant or Sweeper you may make of Willow, Ofier, or any Stick that will bend and return to its proper Straitness.

This Device is for the Winter only, when much wet is on the Ground, and not when the Furrows are dry. Now if the Waters be frozen, you must make Plashes; and the harder the Frost, the greater Resort will there be of these smaller Fowl.



### *Of the* FOWLING-PIECE, *and the* STALKING-HORSE

**T**Hat is ever esteemed the best Fowling-Piece which hath the longest Barrel, being five Foot and a half or six Foot long, with an indifferent bore, under Harquebuzs.

Provide the best Sort of Powder as near as you can, and let it not be old, for keeping weakens it much, especially if it grow damp; therefore when you have Occasion to use it, dry it well in a Fire-shovel, and sift it through a fine Searcher to take away that Dust which hindreth the more forcible Effects, and fouleth your Piece.

Let your shot be well sized, and of a Moderate bigness; for if it be too great, then it scatters too much; if too small, it hath not Weight nor strength sufficient to do Execution on a large Fowl.

Shot being not to be had at all Times, and in all Places, suitable to your Occasions and Desires, I shall therefore here set down the true process of making all Sorts and Sizes under Mould-shot.

Take what Quantity of Lead you please, and melt it down in an Iron Vessel, and as it melts keep it stirring with an Iron Ladle, and clear it of all impurities whatsoever, that may rise at the Top by skimming them off. Then when the Lead begins to be of a greenish Colour, strew on it *Auripigmentum* finely powdered,



as much 'as will lie on a Shilling to 12 Pound of Lead. Then stir them together, and the *Auripigmentum* will flame.

Your Ladle ought to have a Notch on one side of the Brim for the more easie pouring out of the Lead, and the Ladle ought to remain in the melted Lead, that the heat may be agreeable to it, to prevent all inconveniencies which may happen through excess of heat or cold. Then try your Lead by dropping it into Water. If the Drops prove round, then the Temper of the heat is right; but if the shot have Tails, then there is want both of heat and *Auripigmentum*,

Then take a Copper plate about the size of a Trencher plate, with an hollownes in the midst about three Inches Compass, with about forty Holes bored according to the Size of the Shot you intend to cast. The hollow Bottom should be thin, but the thicker the Brim the better, because it will longer retain the Heat. Place it on an Iron Frame over a Bucket of Water, about four Inches from it, and spread burning Coals on the Plate to keep the Lead melted upon it.

Then take up some Lead and pour it gently on the Coals on the plate, and it will force its Way through the holes into the Water, and form itself into Shot. Thus do till your Lead be run through the Holes of the Plate: Observing to keep your Coals alive, that the Lead may not cool, and so stop up the Holes. Whilst you are casting Shot, another Person may catch some of the shot with another Ladle, placed four or five inches (underneath the bottom of the Plate) in the Water, and by that Means you may discern if there are any defects in your process, and rectify them.

The chief Business is to keep your Lead in a just Degree of Heat, that it be not so Cold as to fill up the Holes, nor so hot as to make the Shot crack. To remedy the coolness of your Lead and Plate, you must blow your Coals; to remedy the Heat, you must refrain working till it be cool enough, observing, that the cooler your Lead, the larger your Shot; the hotter, the smaller.



When you cast your Shot, take them out of the Water, and dry them over the Fire with a gentle Heat, and be sure to keep them continually stirred that they melt not. When they are dry, you are to separate the great Shot from the small, by the help of Sieves made on Purpose according to their several Sizes. If you would have very large Shot, you may with a Stick force the Lead to trickle out of your Ladle into the Water without the Plate.

If it stop on the Plate, and yet the Plate be not too cool, give but the Plate a little Knock, and it will run again. Take care that none of your Instruments be greasie. When you have separated your Shot, if any prove too large for your Purpose, or any Ways imperfect, 'tis only your pains lost, and it will serve again at your next Operation.

In shooting, observe always to shoot with the Wind, if possible, and not against it: and rather Side-ways, or behind the Fowl, than full in their Faces.

Next, observe to chuse the most convenient Shelter you can find, as either Hedge, Bank, Tree, or any thing else which may abscond you from the view of the Fowl.

Be sure to have your Dog at your Heels under good command, not daring to stir till you bid him, having first discharged your Piece: For some ill-taught Dogs will upon the snap of the Cock presently rush out, and spoil all the Sport.

Now if you have not Shelter enough, by Reason of the nakedness of the Banks and want of Trees, you must creep upon your Hands and Knees under the Banks, and lying even flat upon your Belly, put the Nose of your Piece over the Bank, and so take your level; for a Fowl is so fearful of a Man, that tho an Hawk were soaring over her Head, yet at the Sight of a Man she would betake herself to her Wing, and run the risque of that danger.

But sometime it so happeneth, that the Fowl are so shie, there is no getting a shoot at them without a Stalking-horse, which must be some old Jade trained up for that Purpose, who will gently, and as you will



will have him, walk up and down in the Water which Way you please flodding and eating on the Grass that grows therein.

You must shelter yourself and Gun behind his fore-shoulder, bending your Body down low by his Side, and keeping his Body still full between you and the Fowl: Being within shot, take your Level from before the forepart of the Horse, shooting as it were between the Horses Neck and the Water; which is much better than shooting under his Belly, being more secure, and less perceivable.

Now to supply the want of a Stalking-horse, which will take up a great deal of Time to instruct and make fit for this Exercise, you may make one of any Pieces of old Canvas, which you must shape into the Form of an Horse, with the Head bending downwards as if he grazed. You may stuff it with any light matter; and do not forget to paint it of the Colour of an Horse, of which the Brown is the best; and in the midst let it be fix'd to a Staff with a sharp Iron at the end, to stick into the Ground as you shall see Occasion, standing fast whilst you take your Level.

It must be made so portable, that you may bear it with ease in one Hand, moving it so as it may seem to Graze as you go. Let the Stature of your artificial Stalking-horse be neither too low nor too high; for the one will not abscond your Body, and the other will be apt to frighten the Fowl.

Instead of this Stalking-horse, you may Fashion out of Canvas painted an Ox or Cow: and this change is necessary, when you have so beaten the Fowl with your Stalking-horse, that they begin to find your deceit, and will no longer endure it, (as it frequently falls out.) Then you may stalk with an Ox or Cow, till the Stalking-horse be forgotten, and by this means make your Sport lasting and continual.

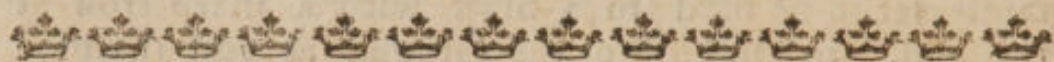
Some there are that stalk with Stags or Red Deer form'd out of painted Canvas, with the natural Horns of Stags fixt thereon, and the Colour lively painted; that the Fowl cannot discern the fallacy: and these are very useful in low Fenny Ground, where any such Deer do usually feed; and are more familiar with



the Fowl, and so feed nearer them than Ox, Horse, or Cow: By which Means you shall come with a far nearer Distance.

There are other dead Engines to stalk withal, as an artificial Tree, Shrub or Bush, which may be made of small Wands, and painted Canvas made into the shape of a Willow, Poplar, or such Trees as grow by Rivers and Water-sides; for these are the best.

If you stalk with a Shrub or Bush, let them not be so tall as your Tree, but much thicker; which you may make either of one entire Bush, or of divers Bushes interwoven one with another, either with small Withy-wands, Cord or Pack-thread, that may not be discerned: And let not your Bush exceed the Height of a Man, but be thicker than four or five, with a Spike at the bottom to stick into the Ground whilst you take your level.



*How to take all manner of Land-fowl by Day or Night.*

Since the Dissolution and spoil of Paradise, no Man hath either seen, or can give the Names of all Land-fowl whatever, there being such great variety, every Country producing some particular Sorts, which are unknown to other Nations.

To avoid prolixity, I shall rank them under two Heads.

The first are such who are either fit for Food or Pleasure, either for Eating or Singing: For Eating Pidgeons of all Sorts, Rook, Pheasant, Partridge, Quails, Rail, Telfarés, &c. and for Eating or Singing, the Black-Bird, Throstle, Nightingale, Linnet, Lark, and Bullfinch.

Secondly, such as are for Pleasure only, and they are all Manner of Birds of Prey, as Castreys, Ring-tails, Buzzards, &c.

The



The general Way of taking these Land-fowl of several Sorts together, is either by Day or by Night. If by Day, it is done with the great Net, commonly called the *Crow-net*, and not at all differs in Length, Depth, bigness of Mesh, manner of laying, &c. from the *Plover-net*; only it will not be amiss if the Cords be longer.

This Net you may lay before Barn-doors, or where Corn hath been winnowed, also in Stubble-fields, so concealing the Net that the Fowl may not discern the Snare. When you perceive a quantity within the Net scraping for Food, and you lie concealed afar off, with your Cord in your Hand, suddenly pull the Net over upon them.

You may do well to take Notice of their Morning and Evening Haunts, to worm and feed upon the Greenswarth; and here lay your Net, and it will prove as effectual as in other places, so that you observe to abscond your self in some Covert, so as not to be described: In the next place, pull not too hastily but wait for a good Number of Fowl within the Net, and then pull freely and quickly; for the least deliberation after the Net is raised, is the ruin of your design.

Thus much for Day-fowling with the Net: Now if you will prosecute your Sport by Night, you must do it according to the Nature and Manner of the Country, or Situation or Fashion of the Ground, whether Woody, Mountainous, or Champain.

In plain and Champain Countries you must use the *Low-bell*, from the End of *October* until the End of *March*; and this Method you must follow.

The Day being shut in, the Air mild without Moonshine, take a *Low-bell*, (which must have a deep and hollow Sound, for if it be shrill it is stark naught) and with it a Net whose Mesh is twenty Yards deep, and so broad, that it may cover five or six Lands or more according to the Company you have to carry it. With these Instruments go into any stubble Corn-field, but Wheat is the best. He that carries the Bell must go foremost, tolling the Bell as he goes very mournfully letting it but now and then Knock on both Sides  
After



After him must follow the Net, born up at each Corner and on each Side by several Persons; then another must carry some Iron or Stony Vessel which may contain burning, but not blazing Coals, and at these you must light bundles of Straw: Or you may carry Links with you. And having pitcht your Nets where you think the Game lies, beat the Ground and make a Noise, and as the Fowl rise they will be entangled in the Net. Thus you may take good Store of *Partridge, Rails, Larks, Quails, &c.*

Having so done, extinguish your Light, and proceed, laying your Net in some other Place as before-mentioned.

Here Note, that the sound of the *Low-bell* makes the Birds lie close, so as they dare not stir whilst you are pitching the Net, for the sound thereof is dreadful to them; but the Sight of the Fire much more terrible, which makes them instantly to fly up, and so they become entangled in the Net.

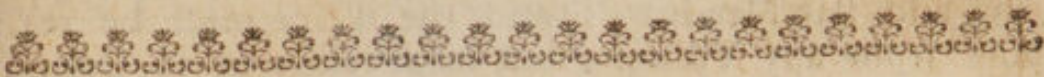
Furthermore, if you intend to have the full Fruition of your Sport, you must be very silent, and nothing must be heard but the sound of the *Low-bell* till the Net is placed and the Lights blazing; but as soon as they are extinguished, a general silence must be again.

The Trammel is much like this Net for the *Low-bell*, and must be necessarily used on the same Grounds; only it ought to be longer, tho not much broader.

When you come to a Place fit for your purpose where Birds lodge on the Earth, you shall then spread your Trammel on the Ground; and let the farthest End thereof, being plumb'd with Lead, lie loose on the ground; but let the foremost ends be born up by two men, and so trail the Net along, keeping the foremost Ends a Yard or more Distance from the Ground.

On each Side of the Net carry Whisps of Straw lighted, or Links, and let some beat the Ground with long Poles; and as the Birds rise under the Nets, take them. And thus you may continue doing as long as you please, to your great Profit and Pleasure.





## of BAT-FOWLING.

**B**AT-FOWLING is the taking of all Manner of Birds, great and small, by Night, which roost in Bushes, Shrubs, Hawthorn-trees, &c.

The Manner is: You must be very silent till your Lights are blazing, and you may either carry Nets or none; if none, you must then have long Poles with great bushy Tops fixt to them; and having from a *Cresset* or Vessel to carry Fire in lighted your Straw or other blazing combustible Matter, then must you beat those Bushes where you think Birds are at roost; which done, if there be any in those Bushes or Trees, you will instantly see them fly about the Flames: For it is their Nature, through their Amazedness at the Strangeness of the Light, and extreme Darkness round about it, not to depart from it, but they will scorch their Wings in the same, so that those who have the bushy Poles, may beat them down as they please, and take them up: Thus may you continue your Sport as long as it is very dark, and no longer.

*Of the DAY-NET, and how to take Birds therewith.*

The *Day-Net* is generally used for the taking of *Larks*, *Buntings*, *Merlins*, *Hobbies*, or any Birds which play in the Air, and will stoop either to Stale, Prey, Gig, Glass, or the like.

The Season for these Nets is from *August* to *November*: The Time you must plant these Nets must be before Sun-rising. Where Note, The milder the Air, the brighter the Sun, and the pleasanter the Morning is, the better will your Sport be, and of longer Continuance.

Let



Let the Place you select for this Purpose be plain and champain, either on Barley-stubbles, green Lays, or level and flat Meadows; and the Place must be remote from any Villages, but near adjacent to Corn-fields.

The Fashion of a Day-net is this; you must make them of fine Packthread, the Mesh small, and not above half an Inch square each Way; let the Length be about three Fathom, the Breadth one Fathom and no more; the Shape is like the Crow-net, and it must be verg'd about in the same Manner with a strong small Cord, and the two Ends extended upon two small long Poles suitable to the Breadth of the Net, with four Stakes, Tail-strings, and Drawling-lines, as afore-mentioned: Only whereas that was but one single Net, here must be two of one Length, Breadth and Fashion. These Nets must be laid opposite to each other, yet so close and even together, that when they are drawn and pulled over, the Sides and Edges may meet and touch one the other.

These Nets being staked down with strong Stakes very stiffly on their Lines, so as with any nimble twitch you may cast to and fro at your Pleasure; you shall then to the upper Ends of the fore-most Staves fasten your Hand-lines or drawing Cords, which must be at the least a Dozen, a Fathom long; and so extend them of such a reasonable Streightness, as with little Strength they may raise up the Nets and cast them over.

When your Nets are laid, some twenty or thirty Paces beyond them place your Stales, Decoys, or playing Wantons, upon some pearching Boughs, which will not only entice Birds of their own Feather to stoop, but also *Hawks* and Birds of Prey to swoop into your Nets.

Remember to keep the first half Dozen you take alive for Stales, and to that End have a Cage or Linnen-bag to put them in: The rest squeeze in the hinder-part of the Head, and so kill them; and thus do every Day.



*Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bushes with  
Lime-Twigs.*

THE great Lime-bush is best for this Use, which you must take after this Manner; cut down the main Arm or chief Bough of any bushy Tree, whose Branches or Twigs are long, thick, smooth and strait, without either Pricks or knots; of which the Willow or Birch-tree are the best, when you have prickt it and trimm'd it from all Superfluity, making the Twigs neat and clean; take then of the best Bird-lime, well mixed and wrought together with Goose-grease or Capon's-grease, which being warmed, lime every Twig therewith within four Fingers of the bottom. The Body from whence the Branches have their rise, must be untouch'd with Lime.

Be sure you do not daub your Twigs with too much Lime, for that will give distaste to the Birds; yet let none want its Proportion, or have any Part left bare which ought to be touch'd: For, as too much will deter them from coming, so too little will not hold them when they are there.

Having so done, place your Bush on some Quickset or dead Hedge near unto Towns Ends, Back-yards, old Houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small Birds in the Spring-time; in the Summer and Harvest in Groves, Bushes, White-thorn-trees, Quickset-hedges near Corn-fields, Fruit-trees, Flax and Hemp-lands; and in the Winter about Houses, Hovels, Barns, Stacks or those Places where stand Ricks of Corn, or scattered Chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts plant your Lime-bush, and plant yourself also at a convenient Distance undiscovered, imitating with your Mouth the several Notes of Birds, which you must learn by frequent Practice, walking the Fields for that very Purpose  
often



often, observing the Variety of several Birds Sounds, especially such as they call one another by. I have known some so expert herein, that they could imitate the Notes of twenty several Sorts of Birds at least, by which they have caught ten Birds to another's one that was ignorant therein.

But if you cannot attain to it by your Industry, you must then buy a *Bird-call*, of which there are several Sorts, and easie to be framed, some of Wood, some of Horn, some of Cane, and the like.

Having first learned how to use this Call, you shall sit and call the Birds unto you : and as any of them light on your Bush, step not to them till you see them sufficiently entangled : Neither is it requisite to run for every single Bird, but let them alone till more come, for the fluttering is as good as a Stale to entice more.

This Exercise you may use from Sun-rising till ten a Clock in the Morning, and from one till almost Sun-set.

You may take these small Birds with Lime-twigs only, without the Bush. When I was a Boy, I have taken two or three hundred small Twigs about the Bigness of Rushes, and about three Inches long, and have gone with them into a Field where were Hemp-cocks ; upon the Tops of half a score, lying all round together, I have stuck my Twigs, and then have gone and beat that Field, or the next to it, where I saw any Birds : and commonly in such Fields there are infinite Numbers of *Linnetts* and *Green-Birds*, which are great lovers of Hempseed. I say, they fly in such vast Flocks, I have caught at one Fall of them upon the Cocks eight dozen at a Time.

But to return, there is a pretty Way of taking Birds with Lime-twigs, by placing near them a Stale or two made of living *Night-baits*, placing them aloft, that they may be visible to the Birds thereabouts ; which will no sooner be perceived, but every Bird will come and gaze, wondring at the Strangeness of the Sight : Then they having no other convenient lighting-place, but where the Lime-twigs are, you may take what Number you list of them.



But the Owl is a far better Stale than the Bat, being bigger, and more easily to be perceived; besides, he is never seen abroad, but he is followed and persecuted by all the Birds near adjacent.

If you have not a living Bat or Owl, their Skins will serve as well being stuffed, and will last you twenty Years. There are some have used an Owl cut in Wood, and naturally painted, with wonderful Success.

It is strange to me that this Bird above all others should be so persecuted by all Birds whatsoever, especially by the Goose; and therefore some arch Cracks in *Lincolnshire* and other Places, where are great Quantities of Geese, observing their Tempers, have made great Advantage of them; for by only throwing a live Owl among a Flock of Geese, they got as many Quills as they knew what to do with; for the Geese endeavouring to beat the Owl with their Wings, never left till they did beat the Quills out of their Wings, and commonly the best, which are Seconds.

*How to make the best Sort of Bird-lime, and how to use it.*

**T**AKE at Midsummer the Bark of Holly, and pill it from the Tree, so much as will fill a reasonable big Vessel; then put to it running Water, and set it over the Fire, and boil it till the grey and white bark rise from the green, which will take up sixteen Hours in the boiling: Then take it from the Fire, and separate the Barks after the Water is very well drained away; then take all the green Bark, and lay it on the Ground in a close Place and moist Floor, and cover it over with all Manner of green Weeds, as Hemlock, Docks, Thistles, and the like; thus let it lie ten or twelve Days, in which Time it will rot, and turn to a filthy slimy Matter. Then take it and put it into a Mortar, and there beat it till it become universally thick and tough, without the discerning of any Part of the Bark or other Substance; then take it out of the Mortar, and carry it to a running Stream, and there wash it exceedingly, not leaving any Mote or Foulness within it; then put it up in a very close Earthen-pot, and let it stand and purge for divers Days together, scumming it



as often as any foulness arises for four or five Days: When you perceive no more Scum, you shall then take it out of that Pot, and put it into another clean Earthen Vessel, cover it close, and keep it for your use.

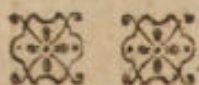
When you are about to use your Lime, take what quantity you think fit and put it into a Pipkin, adding thereto a third part of Goose-grease or Capons-grease finely clarified, and set them over a gentle Fire, and there let them melt together, and stir them continually till they are well incorporated: Then take it from the Fire, and stir it till it be cold.

When your Lime is cold, take your Rods and warm them a little over the Fire; then take your Lime and wind it about the Tops of your Rods, then draw your Rods asunder one from the other, and close them again, continually plying and working them together, till by smearing one upon another, you have equally bestowed on each Rod a sufficient Proportion of Lime.

If you Lime any strings, do it when the Lime is very hot, and at the thinnest, besmearing the Strings on all Sides, by folding them together and unfolding them again.

If you Lime Straws, it must be done likewise when the Lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well grasp in your Hand, tossing and working them before the Fire till they are all besmear'd, every Straw having its due Proportion of Lime: having so done, put them up in cases of Leather till you have Occasion to use them.

Now to prevent the freezing of your Lime either as it is on Twigs, Bushes, or Straws, you must add a Quarter as much of the Oyl called *Petroleum* as of your Capons-grease, mix them well together, and then work it on your Rods, &c. and so it will ever keep supple, rough, and gentle, and will not be prejudiced should it freeze ever so hard.

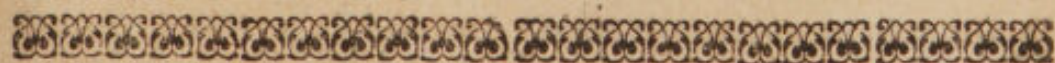






*The best and most experienced way of making Water-Bird-Lime:*

**B**UY what Quantity you think fit of the strongest Bird-lime you can procure, and wash it as long in a clear Spring-water, till you find it very pliable, and the hardness thereof removed; then beat out the Water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a Drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into a Pot made of Earth, and mingle therewith Capons-grease unsalted, so much as will make it run; then add thereto two spoonfuls of strong Vinegar, a spoonful of the best Sallet-Oyl, and a small Quantity of *Venice-Turpentine*: This is the Allowance of these Ingredients which must be added to every Pound of strong Bird-lime, as aforesaid. Having thus mingled them, boil them all gently together over a small Fire, stirring it continually; then take it from the Fire and let it cool: When at any Time you have Occasion to use it, warm it, and then anoint your Twigs or Straws, or any other small things, and no Water will take away the strength thereof. This sort of Bird-lime is the best, especially for *Snipes* and *Fel fares*,



*In what manner a Man may take Snipes with this Bird-lime.*

**T**AKE what Number you shall think most expedient for your purpose of Birch-twigs, and lime fifty or sixty of them very well together. After this, go and seek out those places where *Snipes* do usually frequent, which you may know by their Dung.



In very hard frosty or snowy Weather, where the Water lies open, they will lie very thick: Having observed the Place where they most feed, set two hundred of your Twigs, more or less, as you please, at a Yard distance one from the other, and let them stand sloping some one Way and some another then retire a convenient Distance from the Place, and you shall find there shall not one *Snipe* in ten miss your Twigs, by Reason they spread their Wings, and fetch a round close to the Ground before they light. When you see any taken, stir not at first, for he will feed with the Twigs under his Wings; and as others come over the Place, he will be a means to entice them down to him. When you see the Coast clear, and but few that are not taken, you may then take up your Birds, fastning one or two of them, that the other flying over, may light at the same Place. If there be any other open Place near to that where your Twigs are planted, you must beat them up: The Reason why they delight to haunt open Places, and where Springs do gently run, is because they cannot feed, by Reason of their Bills, in Places that are hard and stony; and about these Plashes, in snowy Weather, they very much resort.

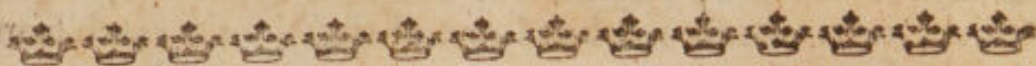


*The manner of taking Felfares by Water-Bird lime.*

**A**Bout Michaelmas, or when the cold Weather begins to come in, take your Gun and kill some *Felfares*; then take a couple of them, or one may serve, and fasten them to the top of a Tree, in such manner that they may seem to be alive; Having so done, prepare two or three hundred Twigs, take a great Birchen-bough, and therein Place your Twigs, having first cut off all the small Twigs; then set a *Felfare* upon the top of the Bough, making of him fast, and let this Bough be planted where the *Felfares* do resort in a Morning to feed; for they keep a constant Place to feed in, till there is  
no



no more Food left. By this means others flying but near will quickly espie the top-bird, and fall in whole Flocks to him. I have seen at one fall three Dozen taken.



*How to take Pidgeons with Lime-twigs.*

**P**idgeons are great devourers and destroyers of Corn; wherefore when you find any Ground much frequented by them, get a couple of *Pidgeons*, either dead or alive; if dead, put them in such a stiff Posture, as if they were living and feeding; then at Sun-rising take a quantity of Twigs, as many as you think fit, let them be small, (but I Judge Wheaten-straws are better for this Purpose) and lay them up and down, where your *Pidgeons* are placed, and you shall find such Sport at every fall that is made; that you may quickly be rid of them without offending the Statute: If there come good Flights, you may easily take four or five Dozen of them in a Morning.

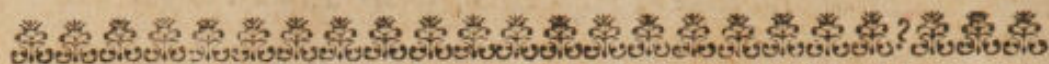


*How to take Mag-pies, Crows, and Glead with Lime-twigs.*

**W**Hen you have found any Carrion which *Crows* *Pies*, *Kites*, &c. are preying upon, over Night set your Lime-twigs every where about the Carrion; but let them be small, and not set too thick: if otherwise, being subtile Birds, they will suspect some danger or mischief designed against them. When you perceive one to be fast, advance not to him presently; for most commonly, when they are surely caught, they are not sensible thereof.

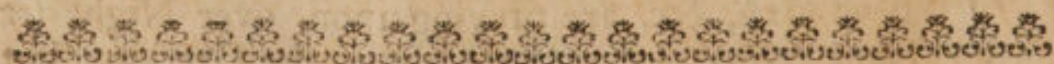


You may take them another Way, and that is by joining to a Packthread several Nooses of Hair up and down the Packthread, and peg it down about a Yard from the Carrion; for many Times when they have gotten a Piece of Flesh, they will be apt to run away to feed by themselves; and if your Nooses be thick, it is two to one but some of the Nooses catch him by the Legs.



*How to take Rooks, when they pull up the Corn by the Roots.*

*a*  
*rooks*  
*Cap //*  
**T**AKE some thick Brown-paper, and divide a sheet into eight parts, and make them up like Sugar-loaves; then lime the inside of the Paper a very little; (let them be limed three or four Days before you set them) then put some Corn in them, and lay threescore or more of them up and down the Ground: lay them as near as you can under some clod of Earth, and early in the Morning before they come to feed; and then stand at a Distance, and you will see most excellent Sport; for as soon as *Rooks*, *Crows*, or *Pidgeons* come to peck out any of the Corn, it will hang upon his Head, and he will immediately fly bolt upright so high, that he shall soar almost out of sight; and when he is spent, come tumbling down, as if he had been Shot in the Air. You may take them at Ploughing Time when the *Rooks* and *Crows* follow the Plough; but then you must put in Worms and Maggots of the largest Size.



*How to take Birds with BAITS, either Land or Water-fowl.*

**I**F you desire to take *House-doves*, *Stock-doves*, *Rooks*, *Choughs*, or any other like Birds, then take Wheat, Bar ey, Fetches, Tares or other Grain, and boil them  
\* very



very well with good Store of *Nux vomica* in ordinary running water : When they are almost boil'd, dry and ready to burſt, take them off the Fire, and ſet them by till they be thoroughly cold. Having ſo done, ſcatter this Grain in the Haunts of thoſe Birds you have a mind to take ; and as ſoon as they have taſted thereof they will fall down into a dead Sound, and ſhall not be able to recover themſelves in a good while.

And as you take theſe great Land-fowl with this drunken Device, ſo you may take the middle and ſmaller Sort of Birds, if you obſerve to boil with what Food they delight in, a quantity of this *Nux vomica*.

Some, inſtead of *Nux vomica*, uſe the Lees of Wine ; the ſharper and quicker they are, the better ; boiling their Grains in theſe Lees, alſo Seeds or any other Food, and ſtrewing them in the Haunts of thoſe Birds you would ſurprize. Theſe do as effectually as *Nux vomica* ; and it's the cleaner and neater Way, there being not that poiſonous Quality in them.

You may chuſe whether you will boil your Grain or Seed in the aforeſaid Lees ; for they will be every whit as effectual, if only ſteeped a conſiderable while therein, giving them leave to drink in the Lees, till they are ready to burſt, before you uſe them.

Others, having neither *Nux vomica*, nor Wine-lees, take the Juice of Hemlock, and ſteep their Grains therein, adding thereto ſome Hebane-ſeed or Poppy-ſeed, cauſing them to be infuſed therein four or five Days ; then draining the Grain or Seed from the Liquor, ſtrew them as aforeſaid. The Birds having taſted hereof, are immediately taken with a dizzineſs, which will continue ſome Hours, ſo that they cannot flie ; but they will recover again, if you kill them not. If you intend them for Food, let them be firſt recovered.

Thus much for the Land ; now let us ſpeak of the Water-fowl.

The ready Way by Bait to take ſuch Fowl as receive part of their food by Land, and part by Water, as *Wild-Geefe*, *Barnacles*, *Grey-plover*, *Mallard*, *Curlew*, *Shoveler*, *Bitter*, *Buſlard*, with many more ; I ſay, the beſt Way my Experience hath found out is, to take Bel-



lenge-leaves, Roots and all, and having cleansed them very well, put them into a Vessel of clear running Water, and there let them lie in steep twenty four Hours; then never shift them from the Water, but boil them together till the Water be almost consumed: Then take it off, and set it a cooling. Then take a Quantity hereof, and go to the Haunts of any of the aforesaid Fowl, and there spread of this Bait in sundry and divers Places; and those that shall tast hereof will be taken with the like drunken dizziness as the former. To make this Confection the more effectual, it will be requisite to add a Quantity of Brimstone thereunto in its boiling.

*How to recover Fowl thus entranced.*

If you would restore these entranced Fowl to their former health, take a little quantity of Sallet-oil, according to the Strength and Bigness of the Fowl, and drop it down the Throat of the Fowl; then chafe the Head with a little strong White-wine-Vinegar, and the Fowl will presently recover, and be as well as ever.

And thus much for taking of all sorts by Baits.



*A most excellent and approved Way how to take the*  
**H E R N.**

**A** *Hern* is as great a devourer of Fish as any is; nay some dare affirm, ten Times as much as an *Otter*, and shall do more mischief in one Week than an *Otter* shall do in three Months: For I have been told by one, that hath seen a *Hern*, that hath been Shot at a Pond, to have had seventeen *Carp*s at once in his Belly, which he will digest in fix or seven Hours, and then betake himself to fishing again. I have been informed by another, that he saw a *Carp* taken out of a *Hern*s Belly, which was nine inches and a Half long.

Several



Several Gentlemen, that have kept *Herns* tame, have put Fish in a Tub, and tried the *Hern* how many small *Roaches* and *Dace* he would eat in a Day, and they have found him to eat about fifty in a Day, one Day with another.

One *Hern* that haunts a Pond, in a Twelve-months time, shall destroy a thousand *Store-Carps*, and when Gentlemen sue their Ponds, they think their Neighbours have robbed them, not in the least considering an *Hern* is able to devour them in half a Years time, if he put in half as many more.

Now since this ravenous Fowl is so destructive to Ponds and Fish of the River, it will be very necessary to find out a Way to destroy that, that destroys so many, which may be done in this manner.

Having found out his Haunt, get three or four small *Roaches* or *Dace*, and have a strong Hook with Wyre to it, draw the Wyre just within the Skin of the said Fish, beginning without Side of the Gills, running of it to the Tail, and then the Fish will live five or six Days. Now if the Fish be dead, the *Hern* will not meddle with him. Let not your Hook be too rank, then having a strong Line with Silk and Wyre, about two Yards and a half long, (if you twist not Wyre with your Silk, the Sharpness of his Bill will bite it in two immediately) and tye a round Stone about a Pound Weight to the Line, and lay three or four Hooks, and in two or three Nights you shall not fail to have, him if he comes to your Pond. Lay not your Hooks in the the Water so deep that the *Hern* cannot wade unto them. Colour your Line of a dark Green, for an *Hern* is a subtile Bird. There are several other Fowl devourers of Fish, as *Kings-Fishers*, *More-Hens*, *Balcoots*, *Cormorant*, &c, but none like the *Hern* for Ponds and small Rivers.



#### *How to take PHEASANTS several Ways.*

THE taking of *Pheasants* is to be performed three several Ways, by Nets, by Lime-bush, or else by  
 R 4 other



other particular Engines, which shall be discours'd of hereafter.

The taking of *Pheasants* with Nets, is done either generally, or particularly, generally, when the whole Eyre of *Pheasants* is taken, that is the old Cock and the Hen with all their Powts, as they run together in the obscure Woods; or particularly, when you take none but the old *Pheasants*, or the young, being of an Age fit to couple or pair.

For the greater Facility of taking *Pheasants*, you must first understand their Haunts, which are never in open Fields, but in thick young Copses well grown, and not in old high Woods.

Having thus found out their Coverts, which must be solitary and untraced by Men or Cattle, the next thing will be how to find out the Eye or Brood of *Pheasants*.

The first Way, is by going into these young Copses, and carefully viewing the same, searching every where, and by that Means at last finding where they run together, as Chickens after a Hen. Or secondly, you must rise early in a Morning, or come late in the Evening, and observe how and when the old Cock and Hen call their young ones to them, and how the young ones answer back unto them again, and so from that Sound direct your Path as near as you can to the Place where they are, lying there down so close you may not be discerned, by which Means you will know where they meet, and how accordingly you may place your Nets.

But the most certain Way of finding them out, is to have a natural *Pheasant* Call, which you must learn how to use, understand all their Notes, and how to apply them: For they have several Notes, and different, one to cluck them together when the Hen would feed them, another to chide them when they straggle too far, a third to call them to Meat when she hath found it, a fourth to make them look out for Food themselves, and a fifth to call them about her to sport withal. You must use your Call in the Morning early, at which time they straggle abroad to find Provinder, or else in the Evening just before Sun-setting, which is their Time likewise for feeding.

Now



Now altho these are the best times to use your Call, yet you may call them at any other time of the day, only altering your Note. Just at, or before Sunrising, your Note must be to call them to feed, and so at Sun-set, but in the Forenoon and Afternoon your Notes must be to cluck them together to brood, or chide them for straggling, or to give them notice of some approaching danger.

Knowing your Notes, and how to apply them, with the places where *Pheasants* haunt, which you shall know by the Strength of the under-groth, obscureness, darkness, and solitariness of the Place, you must then lodge your self as close as possible, and then call at first very softly, lest the *Pheasants* being lodged very near you, should be affrighted at a loud Note, but if nothing reply, raise your Note higher and higher and higher, till you extend it to the utmost Compass, and if there be a *Pheasant* within hearing, she will answer in a Note as loud as your own, provided it be not untunable, for that will spoil all.

As soon as you hear this Answer, if it be from afar, and from one single Fowl, creep nearer and nearer unto it, still calling, but not so loud, and as you approach nearer to it, so will the *Pheasant* to you, and as you alter your Note, so will she, and in all Points you must endeavour to imitate her, and in fine you will get Sight of her, either on the Ground or Pearch. Then cease your calling, and spread your Net between the *Pheasant* and your self, in the most convenient Place you can find, with all Secrecy and Silence, making one End of the Net fast to the Ground, and holding the other End by a long Line in your Hand, by which, when any Thing straineth it, you may pull the Net close together, which done, call again, and as soon as you perceive the *Pheasant* come underneath your Net, then rise up and shew your self, that by giving the *Pheasant* an affright, he may offer to mount, and so be entangled within the Net.

Now if it so fall out that you hear many Answers, and from divers Corners of the Wood, then stir not at all, but keep your Place, and as you hear them by their Sounds to come nearer and nearer unto you, so shall you in the mean time prepare your Nets ready, and  
spread



spread them conveniently about you, one Pair of Nets on the one Side, and another on the other Side, then lie close, and apply your self to the Call, till such time as you have allured them under your Nets, then stand up and shew your self, which will affright them and make them mount, whereby they will be entangled.

*The Fashion of Pheasant-Nets.*

You must make these Nets of double-twined brown Thread died blue or green, let the Mesh be reasonably large and square, almost an Inch between Knot and Knot, let the Length of it be about three Fathom, and the Breadth about seven Foot, and verge it on each Side with strong small Cord, and let the Ends be also so, that it may lie compass-wise and hollow.

Some make these Nets of a much larger Size, but then they are too cumbersome, and hardly to be ruled with one Hand, but the other are readier to pitch, and better to take, also more nimble for any Purpose you shall employ them to.

*Of driving of Pheasant-powts.*

The driving and taking young *Pheasants* in Nets is done after this manner. Having either by your Eye or Call found out an Eye of *Pheasants*, you must then (taking the Wind with you, for they will naturally run down the Wind) place your Nets cross the little Pads and Ways which you see they have made, (for they will make little Paths like Sheeps Tracks) and as near as you can, come to some special Haunts of theirs, which you shall know by the bareness of the Ground, Mutings, and loose Feathers, which you shall find there; and these Nets must be placed hollow, loose, and circular-wise, the nether Part thereof being fastned to the Ground, and the upper Side lying hollow, loose, and bending, so that when any thing rusheth into it, it may fall and entangle it, which done, you must go before where you find the Haunt, and there with your Call (if you find the Eye is scattered and separated one from the other) you must call them together.

Then



Then take your Instrument called a *Driver*, which is made of strong white Wands or Osiers set fast in a Handle, and in two or three Places twisted about and bound with other Wands, bearing the Shape of those Things Cloath-dressers usually dress their Cloath withal, I say with this Driver you must make a gentle Noise, raking upon the Boughs and Bushes round about you, which as soon as Powts do hear, they will instantly run from it a little way, and then stand and listen, keeping all close together, then give another rake, at which they will run again as before: And by thus raking, you will drive them like so many Sheep before you, which Way and whither you please, and consequently at last into your Nets.

In using your Driver there are two Things to be observed. The first is Secrecy, in concealing your self from the Sight of the *Pheasants*, for if they chance to see you, they will instantly hide themselves in Holes and Bottoms of Bushes, and will not stir from thence by any Means whatsoever, as long as any Day endureth.

The other thing to be observed, is Time and Leisure in the Work, for there is nothing obstructs this Pastime more than too much haste, for they are very fearful Creatures, and are soon startled, and when once alarm'd, their Fears will not suffer them to argue or dispute with the affrighting Object, but the very first Apprehension is sufficient to make them all fly at an Instant, without staying to behold what they are so much afraid of.

#### *Of taking Pheasants with a Lime-bush.*

Having observed their Haunts, as aforesaid, take a Bush, or single Rods, and trim them with the best and strongest Lime that can be got, let your Rods be twelve Inches, your Lime-bush must not contain above eight Twigs, being the top Branch of some Willow-Tree, with an indifferent long Handle, made sharp, either to stick into the Ground, or into Shrubs and Bushes. You may plant your Bush near the Branch of some little Tree which the *Pheasant* usually percheth on.

When you have placed your Bush or Rods, take out your Call, but remove not from your Place, lying close with-



Without Discovery. If your Call be good, and you have Skill to use it, you will quickly have all the *Pheasants* within hearing about you, and if one happen to be entangled, she will go near to entangle all the rest, either by her extraordinary fluttering, or their own Amazement and Confusion. And as they are taken by the Rods on the Ground, so you will surprise them with your Bushes, for being scared from below, they will mount to the Peach or Bushes, to see what becomes of their Fellows, and be there taken themselves.

Here note, That it is very requisite to count all your Rods, and when you have gathered up your Pheasants, see what Rods you have missing, and then conclude from the miss of them, that some Pheasants are run with them into the Bushes, and therefore it will be necessary to have a Spaniel which will fetch and carry, and one that will not break nor bruise either Flesh or Feather.

*The Season for the Use of Nets or Lime.*

The Lime is only for the Winter-season, beginning from *November*, when the Trees have shed their Leaves, (and then Lime-bushes and Branches of Trees are alike naked and of the same Complexion) and ending at *May*, at which time the Trees begin to be furnished with Leaves.

The true use of the Nets is from the beginning of *May* till the latter End of *October*.

So that there is no Time of the Year but their Breeding Time, which may not be exercised in this Pleasure, whence what Profit may arise, I shall leave to the Judgment of those who keep good Houses, and such as have good Stomachs.



*How to take PARTRIDGES several Ways,  
either by Net, Engine, Driving, or Setting.*

*Partridges* are naturally cowardly, fearful, simple, and foolish, and therefore most easily to be deceived or beguiled with any Train, Bait, Engine, or other Device whatever, whether by Enticement, Call, or Stale. It



It will be necessary in the first Place to consider their Haunts, which are not (like the *Pheasants*) certain, but various, any Covert will serve their turn, and sometimes none at all.

The Places they most delight in are in the Corn-fields, especially whilst the Corn grows, for under that Cover they shelter, ingender and breed. Neither are these Places unfrequented by them when the Corn is cut down, by reason of the Grain they find therein, especially in Wheat-stubble, and the Height thereof they delight in, being to them as a Covert or a Shelter. Now when the Wheat-stubble is much trodden by Men or Beasts, then they betake themselves to the Barley-stubble, provided it be fresh and untrodden, and they will in the Furrows amongst the Clots, Brambles, and long Grass, hide both themselves and Covies, which are sometimes twenty in Number, sometimes five and twenty: Nay, I have heard of thirty in a Covie.

Now after the Winter Season is come, and that these Stubble-fields are ploughed up, or over soiled with Cattle, then do these *Partridges* resort in the up-land Meadows, and do lodge in the dead Grass or Fog under Hedges, amongst Mole-hills, or under the Roots of Trees: Sometimes they resort to Copses and Underwoods, especially if any Corn-fields are near adjacent, or where grows Broom, Brakes, Fern, or any Covert whatsoever.

In the Harvest-time, when every Field is full of Men and Cattle, then you shall find them in the Day-time in the Fallow-fields which are next adjoyning to the Corn-fields, where they lie lurking till the Evening, and then feed among the Shocks or Sheaves of Corn, and so they do likewise early in the Morning.

When you know their Haunts, according to the Scituation of the Country and Season of the Year, your next Care must be to find them out in their Haunts, which is done several Ways. Some do it by the Eye only, and this Art can never be taught, but learned by frequent Experience, distinguishing thereby the Colour of of the *Partridge* from that of the Earth, and how and in what Manner they lodge and couch together; for which Purpose you may come near enough to them,  
for



for they are a very lazy Bird, and so unwilling to take the Wing, that you may even set your Foot upon them before they will stir, provided you do not stand and gaze on them, but be in continual Motion, otherwise they will spring up and be gone.

There is another Way to discover them, and that is by going to their Haunts very early in the Morning, or at the close of the Evening, which is called the *Juck-ing-time*, and there listening for the calling of the Cock *Partridge*, which will be very loud and earnest, and after some few Calls the Hen will answer, and by this Means they meet together, which you shall know by their rejoicing and chattering one with another, upon the hearing of which take your Range about them, drawing nearer to the Place you heard them *juck* in, then cast your Eye towards the Furrows of the Land, and there you will soon find where the Covie lies, and so take them as your Fancy shall lead you.

The best, safest, and easiest Way for finding of *Partridges*, is by the Call, having first learned the true and natural Notes of the *Partridge*, knowing how to tune every Note in its proper Key, applying them to their due Time and Seasons.

Being perfect herein, either Mornings or Evenings, (all other Times being improper) go to their Haunts, and having convey'd your self into some secret Place where you may see and not be seen, listen a while if you can hear the *Partridges* call, if you do, answer them again in the same Notes, and as they change or double their Notes, so must you in like manner: Thus continue doing till they draw nearer unto you. Having them in your view, lay your self on your Back, and lie as if you were dead without Motion, by which Means you may count their whole Number.

Having attained to the Knowledge of discovering them where they lie, the next Thing will be a ready Way how to catch them.

#### *Of taking Partridges with Nets.*

The Nets wherewith you ensnare *Partridges* must be every Way like your *pheasants* Nets, both for Length and Breadth,



Breadth, only the Mesh must be smaller, being made of the same Thread, and died of the same Colour.

Having found out the Covie, draw forth your Nets, and taking a large Circumference, walk a good round Pace with a careless Eye, rather from than towards the *Partridges*, till you have trimmed your Nets, and made them ready for the Purpose, which done, you must draw in your Circumference less and less, till you come within the Length of your Net, then pricking down a Stick about three Foot in Length, fasten one End of the Line of your Net, and make it fast in the Earth as you walk about, (for you must make no Stop nor Stay) then, letting the Net slip out of your Hands, spread it open as you go, and so carry and lay it all over the *partridges*.

But if they should lie straggling, so that you cannot cover them all with one Net, then you must draw forth another, and do with that as you did with the former, doing so with a third, if Occasion require, having so done, rush in upon them, who affrighted, will flie up, and so be entangled in the Nets.

*How to take Partridges with Bird-Lime.*

Take of the fairest and largest Wheat straws you can get, and cut them off between Knot and Knot, and lime them with the strongest Lime. Then go to the Haunts of *Partridges*, and call; if you are answered, then prick at some Distance from you, your Lime-straws in many cross Rows and Ranks cross the Lands and Furrows, taking in two or three Lands at least, then lie close and call again, not ceasing till you have drawn them towards you, so that they be intercepted by the Way by your limed Straws, which they shall no sooner touch, but they will be ensnared, and by reason they all run together like a Brood of Chickens, they will so besmear and daub one another, that very few of them will escape.

This Way of taking *Partridges* is only to be used in Stubble fields from *August* till *Christmas*. But if you will take them in Woods, Pastures, or Meadows, then you must lime Rods, as was before expressed for the *Pheasant*,



*fant*, and stick them in the Ground after the same manner.

*How to drive Partridges.*

The Driving of *Partridges* is more delightful than any other Way of taking them: The manner of it is thus.

Make an Engine in the Form and Fashion of a Horse, cut out of Canvas, and stuff it with Straw, or such light Matter; with this artificial Horse and your Nets you must go to the Haunts of *Partridges*, and having found out the Covie, and pitch'd your Nets below, you must go above, and taking the Advantage of the Wind, you must drive downward: Let your Nets be pitch'd sloop-wise and hovering. Then, having your Face covered with something that is green, or of a dark blue, you must, putting the Engine before you, stalk towards the *Partridges* with a slow Pace, raising them on their Feet, but not their Wings, and then they will run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a By-way, or contrary to your Purpose, then cross them with your Engine, and by so facing, they will run into that Track you would have them: Thus by a gentle slow Pace you may make them run and go which Way you will, and at last drive them into your Net, and so dispose of them at your Pleasure.

*How to take Partridges with a Setting-Dog.*

There is no Art of taking *Partridges* so excellent and pleasant as by the Help of a Setting-Dog; wherefore, before we proceed to the Sport we shall give you an Account what this Setting-Dog is.

You are to understand then, that a Setting-Dog is a certain lusty Land-Spaniel, taught by Nature to hunt the *Partridge* more than any Chace whatever, running the Fields over with such Alacrity and Nimbleness, as if there was no Limit to his Fury and Desire, and yet by Art under such excellent Command, that in the very height of his Career by a Hem or Sound of his Master's Voice he shall stand, gaze about him, look in his Master's Face, and observe his Directions, whether to proceed, stand still, or retire: Nay, when he is even  
just



just upon his Prey, that he may even take it up in his Mouth, yet his Obedience is so framed by Art, that presently he shall either stand still, or fall down flat on his Belly, without daring either to make any Noise or Motion till his Master comes to him, and then he will proceed in all Things to follow his Directions.

Having a Dog thus qualified by Art and Nature, take him with you where *Partridges* do haunt, there cast off your Dog, and by some Word of Encouragement, with which he is acquainted, engage him to range, but never too far from you, and see that he beat his Ground justly and even, without casting about, or flying now here, now there, which the Mettle of some will do, if not corrected and reprov'd. And therefore when you perceive this Fault, you must presently call him in with a Hem, and so check him that he dare not do the like again for that Day, so he will range afterwards with more Temperance, ever and anon looking in his Master's Face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did well or ill.

If in your Dogs ranging you perceive him to stop on the sudden, or stand still, you must then make in to him (for without doubt he hath set the *Partridge*) and as soon as you come to him, command him to go nearer him, but if he goes not, but either lies still or stands shaking of his Tail, as who would say, Here they are under my Nose, and withal now and then looks back, then cease from urging him further, and take your Circumference, walking fast with a careless Eye, looking straight before the Nose of the Dog, and thereby see how the Covy lie, whether close or stragling.

Then commanding the Dog to lie still, draw forth your Net, and prick one End to the Ground, and spread your Net all open, and so cover as many of the *Partridges* as you can, which done, make in with a Noise, and spring up the *Partridges*, which shall no sooner rise, but they will be entangled in the Net. And if you shall let go the old Cock and Hen, it will not only be an act like a *Gentleman*, but a Means to increase your Pastime.





*How to take* RAILS, QUAILS, MORE-  
POOTS, &c.

FROM what is contain'd in the foregoing Chapters, you may collect a Method how to take other Fowl, as *Rails, Quails, Morepoots, &c.* all which are very good Flights for *Hawks*.

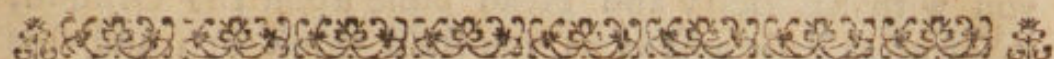
Their Haunts are much alike with those of the *Partridges*, only the *Quail* loves most the Wheat-fields, the *Moorpoot* most the Heath and Forest-grounds, and the *Rails* love the long high Grats where they may lie obscure.

The Way of finding them is like that of the *Partridge* by the Eye, the Ear, and Haunt; but the chief Way of all to find them out is the Call or Pipe, to which they listen with such Earnestness, that you can no sooner imitate their Notes, but they will answer them, and will pursue the Call with such greediness, that they will play and skip about you, nay run over you, especially the *Quail*.

The Notes of the Male and Female differ very much, and therefore you must have them both at your Command, and when you hear the Male call, you must answer in the Females Note, and when the Female calls, you must answer in the Males Note, and thus you will not fail to have them both come to you, who will listen while the Net is cast over them.

The Way of taking these Birds is the same with that of the *Partridge*, and they may be taken with Nets or Lime, either Bush or Rod, or Engine, which you must stalk with, or by the Setting-Dog, which I shall treat of in the next Chapter.





*How to Elect and Train a SETTING-DOG  
from a Whelp, till he come to Perfection.*

THE Dog which you elect for Setting must have a perfect and good Scent, and be naturally addicted to the hunting of Feathers, and this Dog may be either Land-Spaniel, Water-Spaniel, or Mungrel of them both, either the shallow-flewed Hound, Tumbler, Lurcher, or small Bastard Mastiff. But there is none better than the Land-Spaniel, being of a good and nimble Size, rather small than gross, and of a courageous Mettle, which tho' you cannot discern being young, yet you may very well know from a right Breed, which have been known to be strong lusty and nimble Rangers, of active Feet, wanton Tails and busy Nostrils, whose Tail was without weariness, their Search without changeableness, and whom no Delight did transport beyond Fear or Obedience.

When you have made Choice of your Dog, begin to instruct him about four Months old, or six Months at the uttermost.

The first Thing that you shall teach your Dog, is to make him loving and familiar with you, knowing you from any other Person, and following you where-ever you go. To effect this better, let him receive his Food as near as you can from no other Hand but your own, and when you correct him to keep him in awe, do it rather with Words than Blows.

When you have so instructed your Dog that he will follow none but your self, and can distinguish your Frown from your Smile, and smooth Words from rough, you must then teach him to couch and lie down close to the Ground, first, by laying him often on the Ground, and crying, *Lie close*. When he hath done any Thing to your Mind and Pleasure, you must then reward him with a Piece of Bread, if otherwise, chastize him with Words, but few Blows.



After this you must teach him to come creeping unto you with his Belly and Head close upon the Ground, as far or as little a Way as you shall think fit; and this you may do, by saying, *Come nearer, come nearer*, or the like, and at first, till he understand your Meaning, by shewing him a Piece of Bread, or some other Food to entice him to you. And this observe in his creeping to you, if he offer to raise his Body or Head, you must not only thrust the rising Part down, but threaten him with your angry Voice; which if he seem to slight, then add a sharp jerk or two with a Whipcord-lash.

You must often renew his Lessons, till he be very perfect, still encouraging him when he does well.

If you walk abroad with him, and he take a fancy to range, even when he is most busy, speak to him, and in the Height of his Pastime make him fall upon his Belly and lie close, and after that make him come creeping to you.

After this teach him to lead in a String or Line, and to follow you close at your Heels without trouble or straining of his Collar.

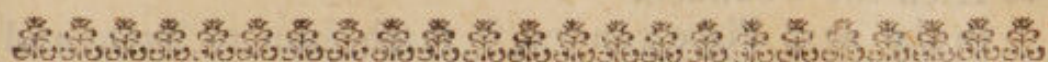
By that Time he hath learned the Things aforesaid, I conceive the Dog may be a twelve-month old, at which time the Season of the Year being fit, take him into the Field and permit him to range, but still in obedience to your Command. But if through wantonness he chance to babble or open without Cause, you must then correct him sharply, either with a Whip-cord-lash, or biting him hard at the Roots of his Ears.

Having brought him to good Temper and just obedience, then, as soon as you see him come upon the Haunt of any *Partridge* (which you shall know by his greater Eagerness in Hunting, as also by a kind of whimpering and whining in his Voice, being very desirous to open, but not daring) you shall speak to him, bidding him take heed, or the like: But if notwithstanding he either rush in and spring the *Partridge*, or opens, and so the *Partridge* escapeth, you must then correct him severely, and cast him off again, and let him hunt in some Haunt where you know a Covy lies, and see whether he hath mended his Fault: and if you catch any with your Nets, give him the Heads, Necks, and Pinions for his future Encouragement.

Many



Many more Observations there are, which are too numerous here to recite ; wherefore I shall desist, and give you an Account of a Water-Dog, and so finish this present Discourse.



*How to train a WATER-DOG, and the use thereof.*

I Shall begin with the best Proportion of a *Water-Dog*, and first of his Colour. Altho' some do attribute much to the Colour, yet Experience lets us know they are uncertain Observations.

To proceed then, your Dog may be of any Colour and yet Excellent ; but chuse him of Hair long and curled, not loose and shagged : His Head must be round and curled, his Ears broad and hanging, his Eye full, lively and quick, his Nose very short, his Lip Hound-like, his Chaps with a full Set of strong Teeth, his Neck thick and short, his Breast sharp, his Shoulders broad, his Fore-legs straight, his Chin square, his Buttocks round, his Belly gaunt, his Thighs brawny, &c.

For the training this Dog, you cannot begin too soon with him ; and therefore as soon as he can lap, you must teach him to lie down, not daring to stir from that Posture without Leave. Observe in his first teaching to let him eat nothing till he deserve it ; and let him have no more Teachers, Feeders, Cherishers, or Correctors but one ; and do not alter that Word you first use in his Information, for the Dog takes Notice of the Sound, not the Language.

When you have acquainted him with the Word suitable to his Lesson, you must then teach him to know the Word of Reprehension, which at first should not be used without a Jerk. You must also use Words of cherishing, to give him Encouragement when he does well : And in all these Words you must be constant, and let them be attended with spitting in his Mouth, or cherishing of the Hand. There is also a Word of Advice, instructing him when he does amiss.

Having made him understand these several Words, you must next teach him to lead in a String or Collar or-



derly, not running too forward, nor hanging backward. After this you must teach him to come close at your Heels without leading; for he must not range by any Means, unless it be to beat Fowl from their Covert or to fetch the wounded.

In the next Place you must teach him to fetch and carry any thing you throw out of your Hands. And first try him with the Glove, shaking it over his Head, and making him snap at it; and sometimes let him hold it in his Mouth, and strive to pull it from him; and at last throw it a little way, and let him worry it on the Ground; and so by degrees make him bring it you, where-ever you throw it. From the Glove you must teach him to fetch Cudgels, Bags, Nets, &c.

If you use him to carry dead Fowl, it will not be amiss; for by that Means he will never tear or bruise what Fowl you shoot.

Having perfected this Lesson, drop something behind you, which the Dog doth not see; and being gone a little way from it, send him back to seek it, by saying, *Back, I have lost*. If he seem amazed, point with your Finger, urging him to seek out, and leave him not till he hath done it. Then drop something at a greater distance, and make him find out that too, till you have brought him to go back a Mile.

Now you may train him up for your Gun, making him stalk after you step by step, or else couch and lie close till you have shot.

Many more necessary Rules there are, which for brevity sake I must omit.

The last use of the Water-Dog is in moulting time, when wild Fowl cast their Feathers, and are unable to fly, which is between Summer and Autumn: At this time bring your Dog to their Coverts, and hunt them out into the Stream, and there will your Nets surprize them, driving them into them; for at this time Sheep will not drive more easily. And tho' some may object, that this sickly Time is unseasonable; yet if they consider what excellent Food these Fowl will prove when cramm'd, the taking of them may be very excusable. I have eaten of them after they have been fed a while with Livers of Beast, Whey, Curds, Barly, Paste, scalded



calded Bran, and such like; they have proved exceeding fat, and have tasted not so fishy as they do by their natural feeding, but exceeding sweet, and deserve to be preferred before any Fowl whatsoever.



*How to take, preserve, and keep all Sorts of Singing-Birds, that are commonly known in England. Giving also an Account of their Nature, Breeding, Feeding, Diseases of the same, with their Remedies.*

IN the preceding Discourse I have given you a summary Account of the several Ways and Artifices which are used to take either Land-fowl, or Fowl properly belonging to the Water. Upon second Thoughts I look upon this third Part of the *Gentleman's Recreation*, called a *Treatise of Fowling* imperfect, if I add not now what I omitted before; a small Essay as to the taking, preserving, and keeping all Sorts of Singing-Birds commonly known in these his Majesty's three Kingdoms. They are thus called.

|                      |                  |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|------------------|
| The Nightingal,      | The Starling,    | The Gold-finch,  |
| The Black-bird,      | The Tit-lark,    | The Green-finch, |
| The Wood-lark,       | The Bull-finch,  | The Wren,        |
| The Linnæet,         | The Canary-bird, | The Red-start,   |
| The Chaff-finch,     | The Thristle,    | The Hedge-Spar-  |
| The Rob. Red-breast, | The Sky-Lark,    | row.             |

Lastly, their Diseases and Cures.





### Of the NIGHTINGALE.

ACCORDING to the Judgment of most Men, the *Nightingale* carries the Bell from all other Singing Birds, opening her charming Mouth not only sweetly, but with much variety of pleasant Notes: It is but a small Bird, yet hath a loud Voice; which made the Poet call her—*Vox, & prætereā nihil*. They are so well known, a Description of them would be needless; and are not only esteemed of here, but in *Italy* and other Parts.

They appear to us at the latter End of *March*, or Beginning of *April*, and very few know where they inhabit all the Winter; some think they sleep all that Season.

She makes her Nest commonly about two Foot above Ground, either in thick Quick-set-hedges, or in Beds of Nettles where old Quick-set hath been thrown together. She hatcheth her young ones about the Beginning of *May*, and naturally delights to frequent cool Places, where small Brooks are garnished with pleasant Groves, and Quick-set-hedges are not far distant.

That *Nightingale* which in my Opinion is the best to keep, is he that is the earliest Bird of the Spring; for he will sing the better, having more Time to hear the old one sing than those that are hatched later.

The young *Nightingales* must be taken out of their Nests when they are indifferently well-fledg'd in a Mediocrity; for if well feathered, they will become sullen; and if too little, they are so tender, the cold will kill them.

For their Meat give them lean Beef, Sheep's Heart, or Bullocks-Heart, taking away first the fat Skin that covereth it, and take away the Sinews; after this soak the like Quantity of white Bread in Water, and squeeze out some of the Water; then mince it small, then feed them with a Stick, taking upon the Point thereof the Quantity of a Grey-Pea, and give every one of them three or four Gobbets in an Hour, as long as they shall endure to be in the Nest; when they are able to fly  
out



out of the Nest, then put them into a Cage with several Pearches for to sit upon, and line them with some green Bays, for they are very subject to the Cramp at first; and at the bottom of the Cage put in some Moss or Hay, as well for other Birds as the *Nightingale*; it is safe to line their Cages against Winter, or keep them in some warm Place. When they are first Caged, continue for a while to put some of their Meat by them, mingled with Ants, which will induce them to feed themselves.

In the Summer you must feed them every Day with fresh Meat, otherwise it will quickly grow stale or stink. When they begin to moult, give them half an Egg hard boild, and half a Sheep's Heart mingled with Saffron and Water. Here note, Duck-eggs will kill them; you may give them sometimes red Worms, Caterpillars, and Hog-lice, Meal-worms; make them familiar, suffering them to take them out of your Hand.

The Way of taking old and young is thus: For the Young, observe where the Cock sings; and if he sing long, the Hen is not far from that Place, who oftentimes betrays her Off-spring by being too careful; for when you come near her Nest, she will *Sweet* and *Cur*: If notwithstanding this, you cannot find her Nest, stick a Meal-worm or two upon a Thorn, and lying down or standing, observe which Way it is carried by the old one, and drawing near, you will hear the young ones when she feeds them. When you have found out the Nest, touch not the young; for if you do, they will not tarry in the Nest.

The way to take *Branchers*, by others called *Puffers*, (because when thoroughly fledg'd, the old ones push them out of the Nest) I say you must take them after this Manner: When you have found where they are, which you shall know by their *Curring* and *Sweeting*; for if you call true, they will answer you immediately: having your Tackle all ready, scrape, in the Ditch or Bank-side, the Earth about three Quarters of a Yard square, that it may look fresh; then take a Bird-trap, or Net-trap, which you must make after this Fashion.



*How to make a Net-Trap for Nightingales.*

Take a Net made of green Silk or Thread, about the compass of a Yard, made after the Fashion of a Shove-net for Fishes; then get some large Wyre, and bending it round, join both Ends, which you must put into a short Stick about an Inch and an half long; then must you have a Piece of Iron with two Cheeks and a Hole on each Side, through which you must put some fine Whip-cord three or four times double, that so it may hold the Piece of Wood the better, into which the Ends of the Wyre are put, and with a Button on each Side of the Iron, twist the Whip-cord, that so the Net may play the quicker: You must fasten the Net to the Wyre as you do a Shove-net to the Hoop; then get a Board of the compass of your Wyre, and join your two Cheeks of Iron at the Handle of your Board; and then make a Hole in the middle of your Board; and put a Piece of Stick about two Inches long, and a Hole at the Top of your Stick, which you must have a Peg to put in with two Wyres, an Inch and half long, to stick your Meal-worm upon; then tye a String in the middle of the Top of your Net, drawing the Net up, having an Eye at the End of the Handle to put your Thread through, pull it till it stands upright, then pull it through the Hole of the Stick that stands in the middle of your Board, and put a Peg in the Hole, and that will hold the String that the Net cannot fall down; you must put Worms upon the Wyres, before you put it into the Hole, and set it as gently as you can, that it may fall with the first touch of the *Nightingale*: When you have your Net and Worm ready, having first scraped the Place, then put some Ants into your Trap-cage, and upon your Board put some Worms upon Thorns, and set them at the Bottom of your Trap-cage, little Holes being made for the same Purpose to stick in the Ends of your Thorns: Then plant your Trap near to the Place where you heard them call, either in the Ditch, or by the Bank-side, or corner of a Hedge, and then walk away; you may set what Number of Trap-cages you think convenient.

Do



Do what is here proposed, and you need not doubt the having of your Desires satisfied.

Having taken your *Nightingales*, (the Time is in *July* or *August*) tie the Ends of their Wings with some brown Thread, that so they may be disenabled to hurt themselves by beating their tender Bodies against the Top and Wyres of the Cage.

Let the Cage be covered above half with green Bays, and for four or five Days let them be very little disturbed by Company ; but withal forget not to feed them half a Dozen times a Day with Sheep's-Heart and Egg shred very fine, and mingle red Ants therewith, and a few red Earth-worms would not do amiss.

Here Note, that no *Nightingale* at first taking will eat any other Food than what is living, as Worms, Ants, Flies, or Caterpillars ; which through Sullenness if he will not eat, then take him out, and upon the Point of a Stick (first opening his Bill) give him four or five Gobbets one after another ; then turn him into the Cage, strowing the Bottom thereof with Egg and minced Sheep's-Heart mingled with some Pismires. These *Nightingales* that are taken at this Time of the Year, will not sing till the middle of *October*, and then they will hold in Song till the middle of *June* : But the *Nightingales* that are taken from the first of *April* to the twentieth, are the best Birds for Song in the whole Universe ; and these are taken with Trap-cages or Trap-nets, as the Branchers aforesaid, in *June*, *July*, and *August*. Here observe, that Nestlings and Branchers (except they have an old Bird to sing over them) have not the true Song for the first 12 Months. When you have so tamed them that they begin to *Curr* and *Sweet* with chearfulness, and record softly to themselves, it is a certain Sign that they eat, and then you need not trouble your self with feeding them ; but if they sing before they feed, they commonly prove most excellent Birds : Those Birds that are long a feeding, and make no *Curring* nor *Sweeting*, are not worth the keeping. If you have a Bird that will flutter and bolt up his Head in the Night against the top of the Cage, keep him not, for he is not only good for nothing, but his bad Example will teach the best of your Birds to do the like.

Now



Now to the intent you may not keep Hens instead of Cocks, and so not only be at uselefs Charge, but be frustrated of your Expectation, you shall distinguish their Sexes by these Observations. The Cock, in the Judgment of some, is both longer and bigger: Others say, the Cock hath a greater Eye, a longer Bill, and a Tail more reddish; others pretend to know them by the Pinion of the Wing, and Feathers on the Head. These Rules I look not upon as infallible, having found them contrary to Truth by my own Experience: Now to undeceive you, take these true experimental Observations. First, take Notice, that if any of your Nestlings (before they can feed themselves) do Record a little to themselves, and in their Recording you perceive their Throats to wag, you need not doubt that they are Cocks; but when they come to feed themselves, the Hen will Record as well as the Cock; therefore mark them when young, for it is very difficult to distinguish afterwards.

*Branchers*, whether Cocks or Hens (when taken and do feed themselves) will Record; but the Cock does it much longer, louder and oftner.

The best Sort of *Nightingales* frequent Highways, Orchards, and sing close by Houses: These when taken will feed soonest, being more acquainted with the Company of People; and after their feeding will grow familiar, and sing speedily. Observe not to untie too soon the Wings of your *Nightingale*; for if he be not very familiar and tame when he is untied, he will be apt to beat himself against the Cage, and so spoil himself.

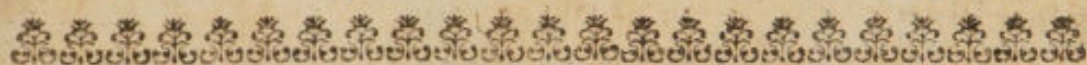
Now as to the Diseases and Cures, observe this, that at the latter End of *August* they grow very fat, either abroad or in the Cage: When it begins to abate when they do not sing, it is a dangerous Sign; wherefore to remedy this, keep them very warm, giving them Saffron in their Meat or Water: When you perceive the growth of their Fat, purge them thrice a Week for a Month, either with a Worm which is found in *Pigeon-houses*, or with a speckled Spider, which you may find plentifully about Vines, Currants, or Goose-berry-bushes in *August*, and at no time else. If they are Melancholy,



ly, put into their Drinking-pot some Liquorish, with a little white Sugar-candy, giving them to feed on Sheep's-heart shred small, some Meal-worms, and Eggs mingled with Pismires. It is strange that some of these Birds, when fat, will fast three Weeks, which I have known; but it is better when they eat.

*Nightingales* kept in a Cage two or three Years, are subject to the Gout: For their Cure, take fresh Butter and anoint their Feet four or five Days, and they will be well again. Here note, that for want of keeping them clean, their Feet are clog'd, and then their Claws will rot off, and are subject to Gout and Cramp, and will take no delight in themselves; to prevent these Mischiefs, put dry Sand into the Bottom of their Cages.

They are likewise troubled with Aposthumes and Breakings-out about their Eyes and Neb; for which, use Capon's grease. And thus much of the Diseases of the *Nightingale*.



### Of the CANARY-BIRD.

THOUGH many of these Birds are lately brought from *Germany*, and therefore are called by the Name of that Country, yet undoubtedly their Original proceeds from the *Canary Islands*. They are in Colour much like our *Green-birds*, but differ much in their Song and Nature; and, in this, they differ from all Birds: For, as others are subject to be fat, the Cocks of these never are, by reason of the greatness of their Mettle, and their lavish Singing; either of these will not suffer him to keep hardly Flesh on his Back.

The best of them are shaped long, standing strait and boldly.

Before you buy either these *German* or *Canary-Birds*, hear them sing, and then you will know how to please your Ear or Fancy, either with sweet Song, lavish Note, or long Song, which is best, having most Variety of Notes.



Notes. Some like those that *whisk* and *chew* like unto a *Tit-Lark*; others are for those that begin like a *Sky-Lark*, and so continue their Song with a long, yet sweet Note; a third Sort are for those that begin their Song with the *Sky-Lark*, and then run upon the Notes of the *Nightingale*, which is very pleasant if he does it well: The last is for a loud Note and lavish, regarding no more in it than a Noise.

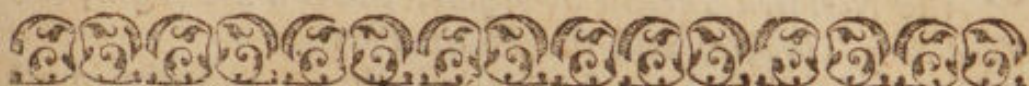
If you would know, whether your *Canary-Bird* be in Health, before you Purchase him, take him out of the Store-cage, and put him into a clean Cage alone; where, if he stands boldly without crouching, without shrinking Feathers, and his Eyes looking brisk and chearfully; these are good Signs of a healthy Bird: But now observe, if he bolts his Tail like a *Nightingale* after he hath dunged, it shews he is not well; though he seem lively for the present, there is some Distemper near attending: Likewise if he either dung very thin and watry, or of a slimy white, and no blackness in it; these are dangerous Signs of Death approaching.

These Birds are subject to many Diseases, as *Imposthumes* which afflict their Head, and are of a yellow Colour, causing a great Heaviness, and withal a falling from the Perch, and Death ensuing, if this Malady be not speedily cured. The most approved Cure is to make an Ointment of fresh Butter and Capon's-grease melted together, and anoint therewith the Bird's *Imposthume* three or four Days together: If it become soft, open it gently, and let out the Matter; then anoint the Place with some of the same Ointment, and this will immediately cure him; during the Cure, give him Figs, and Liquorish, and white Sugar-candy in his Water.

*Canary-Birds* above three Years old are called *Runts*; at two Years old they are called *Eriffs*; and those of the first Year are called *Branchers*; when they are new flown and cannot feed themselves, they are called *Pushers*; and those that are brought up by Hand, *Nestlings*. Now since there are but few *Canary-Birds* which breed in *England*, it being so great a trouble to look after them, I shall here insert nothing concerning the ordering when they



they intend or begin to build ; what Things are necessary for them when they begin to breed ; how to order them when they have young ones ; or how to breed the young ones when taken out of the Nest : Those who intend to be informed of every Thing hereunto belonging , may easily be instructed by applying themselves to several *Germans* in and about the City, who make it their Business to breed *Canary-Birds* after the best (*German*) Fashion.



### Of the BLACK BIRD.

AS some do esteem the *Nightingale* to be the best Singing-Bird in the World, so in my Opinion the *Black Bird* is the worst ; yet they are as frequently kept as their betters, and are in great Estimation amongst the Vulgar ; for no other Reason that I know, than for the loudness and coarseness of their Song, as they are Bo-rish in their Speech, and have little but Rusticity in their Conditions. To be short, he is better to be eaten than kept, and is much sweeter to the Palate when dead, than to the Ear when living.

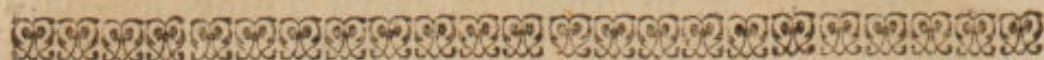
She builds her Nest upon old Stumps of Trees by Ditch-sides, or in thick Hedges. As they begin betimes, that is, in the Beginning of *March*, (when many times the Woods are full of Snow) so they breed often, that is, three or four times a Year, according as they lose their Nest.

The young *Black Birds* are brought up almost with any Meat whatsoever ; but above all, they love Ground-worms, Sheep's heart, hard Eggs, and white Bread and Milk mixt together.

This Bird sings somewhat more than three Months in the Year ; his Note, as I said, is harsh, therefore to add a Value to him, let him be taught to whistle ;  
yet



yet put Song and Whistle together, in my Judgment it is fitter for a large Inn than a Lady's Chamber.



### Of the THROSTLE.

OF *Throstles* there be five Kinds; the *Mistle-Throstle*, the *Northern Throstle* or *Felfare*, the *Wind-Throstle*, the *Wood-Song-Throstle*, and the *Heath-Throstle*.

The first is the largest of all the Five, and the most beautiful: It feeds, for the most Part, on the Berries of *Mistleto*: And since that they are so good against the Falling-sickness and Convulsions; these *Throstles*, when dried and pulverized, and drank in the Water of *Mistleto*, or *Black-Cherry-Water*, are much more effectual against those two Distempers. He sings but little, and therefore though the young ones are easy to be brought up, being hardy, yet he is not worth the keeping; for his Notes are rambling and confused, yet not lavish neither.

The second is the *Felfare*, who comes into *England* before *Michaelmas*, and goes away about the beginning of *March*. In hard Weather they feed on Hips and Haws; but when it is indifferently warm, there being neither Frost nor Snow on the Ground, they feed on young Grass and Worms.

They breed upon certain Rocks near the *Scottish* Shore three or four times a Year, and are there in very great Numbers: They are not so fit for the Cage as the Spit, having a most lamentable untun'd chattering Tone: In Frost and Snow they are very Fat, and then are most delicate Food; but being killed in open Weather, they are so bitter that they are not worth the eating.

Thirdly, The *Wind-Throstle*, (or *Whindle*) which travels with the *Felfare* out of the North, is a smaller Bird, with a dark Red under his Wing. He breeds in Woods and Shaws as *Song-Throstles* use to do, and hath an indiffer-



different Song, exceeding the two former; but yet they are fitter for the Pot or Spit, than for a Cage or Avery.

The Fourth is the *Wood-Song-Throstle*, and sings most incomparably, both lavishly, and with Variety of Notes: To add to his Estimation, he sings at least nine of the twelve Months in the Year.

They build about the same Time, Place, and Manner as the *Black-Bird* does: Her Policy in the building of her Nest is much to be admired, since the Composure cannot be mended by the Art of Man: Besides, the curious building, she leaves a little Hole in the Bottom of her Nest, as I conceive, to let out the Water, if a violent Shower should come, that so her Eggs or young ones may not be drowned.

They go very soon to Nest, if the Weather favour them, and breed three times a Year, that is, in *March*, or *April*, *May* and *June*; but the first Birds usually prove the best.

Take them in the Nest, when they are fourteen Days old, and keep them warm and clean, not suffering them to sit on their Dung, but so contrive it, that they dung over the Nest. Feed them with raw Meat and some Bread chopped together with bruised Hemp-seed, wetting your Bread before you mingle it with the Meat.

Being thoroughly fledg'd, put them into a Cage where they may have room enough, with two or three Perches, and some Moss at the Bottom of the Cage, to keep them clean; for otherwise they will be troubled with the Cramp, and for want of delighting in themselves their Singing will be spoil'd.

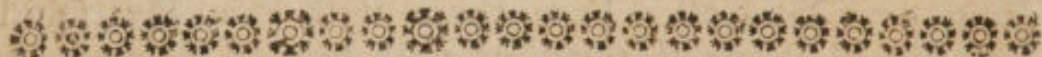
Bread and Hempseed is as good Food for them as can be given: And be mindful of furnishing them at least twice a Week with fresh Water, that they may bath and prune themselves therein, otherwise they will not thrive.

The fifth and last is the *Heath-Throstle*, which is the least we have in *England*, having a dark Breast. Some are of Opinion, that this Bird exceeds the *Song-Throstle*, having better Notes, and neater Plume.



The Hen builds by the Heath-side in a Furn-bush or Stump of an old Haw-thorn, and makes not Shaws and Woods her Haunt as other *Throstles* do. She begins not to breed till the middle of *April*, and breeds but twice in a Year; and if kept clean and well fed, will sing three Parts in four of the whole Year. Their Manner of Breeding is in like-sort as the former.

To know the Cock from the Hen, according to old Country-Judgment, is to chuse the top Bird of the Nest, which commonly is most fledg'd. Others think that to be the Cock which hath the largest Eye, and most Speckles on his Breast. Others chuse the Cock by the Pinion on his Wing, it hath a very dark black goes a-cross it; but above all chuse him thus: If his Gullet be white, with black Streaks on each Side, his Spots on his Breast large and black, having his Head of a light shining Brown, with black Streaks under each Eye, and upon the Pinion of the Wing; these are the best Marks that ever I observed.



### Of the ROBIN-RED-BREAST.

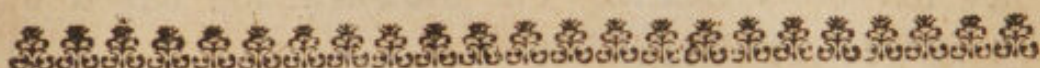
IT is the Opinion of some, that this little King of Birds, for Sweetness of Note, comes not much short of the *Nightingale*. It is a very tender Bird, and therefore must have its Cage lined. They breed very early in the Spring, and commonly thrice a Year.

When the Young are about ten Days old, take them from the old ones, and keep them in a little Bower-Basket: If they tarry long in the Nest, they will be fullen, and therefore more difficultly brought up: You must feed them as you feed the *Nightingale* in all respects: Finding them grow strong, put them into a Cage, put Moss in the Bottom thereof, and let them stand warm.

The



The Way of taking a *Robin-Red-Breast* is so easy and common, that every Body knows how to take him in a Pit-fall, but with a Trap-cage and a Meal-worm you may take half a Score in a Day: Hearing them sing, keep those Birds which most delight you. If you take any without hearing them sing, thus you shall know whether he be Cock or Hen, if a Cock, his Breast will be of a darker red, and his red will go farther up upon the Head than the Hens.



### Of the W R E N.

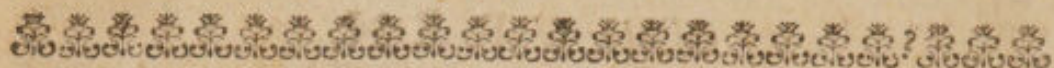
THIS Bird in my Opinion is a pretty sweet dapper Songster, being of a Nature chearful; as he is pleasant to the Ear, so he is to the Eye, and when he sings cocks up his Tail, and throws out his Notes with so much Alacrity and Pleasure, that I know not any Bird of its bigness more delights the Sense of Hearing.

This Bird builds twice a Year, about the latter End of *April*, in Shrubs where Ivy grows thick, and sometimes in old Hovels and Barns. They lay a numerous Quantity of Eggs, and I can assure you I have seen a Nest containing two and twenty; herein are two things greatly to be wondred at; first, that so small a Bird should cover such a great Quantity of Eggs; Secondly, when they have hatched, to feed them all, and not to miss one Bird, and in the dark also.

Their second Time of Breeding is in the Middle of *June*; of either Breed, what you intend to keep must be taken out of the Nest at thirteen or fourteen Days old. Let their Food be *Sheep's-Heart* and *Egg* minced very small, or *Calves* or *Heifers-Heart*, but be sure to clear them of the Fat and Sinews, which must be a general Rule to be observed for all Meat-Birds. Feed them in the Nest every Day very often, but a little at a



time; let the Instrument you feed them with be a Stick, and when you observe them to pick it off of their own accord, then cage them, and putting Meat to them in a little Pan, and about the Sides of the Cage, to entice them to eat, however, have a Care to feed them too, lest they neglect themselves and die. When they can feed themselves very well, give them once in three Days a Spider or two. You may teach them to whistle Tunes if you so desire it, for they are easily taught, being a Bird that's very docible. Here note, if they be fed with Paste, they will live longer than if they fed upon Hearts. The brownest and largest of the young *Wrens* are the Cocks.



### Of the WOOD-LARK.

SOME prefer the *Wood-Lark* before the *Nightingale*, but it is of this Bird as all others, some are more excellent in length and sweetness of Song.

This Bird breeds the soonest of any we have by reason of his extraordinary mettlesomeness: And therefore if they are not taken in the Beginning of *February* at least, they grow so rank that they will prove good for nothing.

The Places this Bird most delights in are gravelly Grounds, and Hills lying towards the Orient, and in Oat-stubs. Their building is in your Layers-Grounds, where the Grass is rank and ruffet, making their Nests of Bennet-Grass, or dead Grass of the Field, under some large Tuffet, to shelter them from the Injury of the Weather.

This Bird hath very excellent pleasant Notes, with great Variety, insomuch that I have observed some have had almost thirty several Notes, which if they sing lavish, is a most ravishing Melody or Harmony, if the *Nightingale* join in Consort.



These Birds are never bred from the Nests as ever I could hear, I have several times attempted it, but to no Purpose, for notwithstanding my greatest Care, they died in a Week, either of the Cramp or Scowring.

The times of the Year to take them are *June, July, August*, and then they are called young *Branchers*, having not yet moulted. They are taken likewise at the latter End of *September*, but having then moulted, the young and old are not distinguishable.

Lastly, they are taken from the Beginning of *January* to the latter End of *February*, at which Time they are all coupled and returned to their Breeding Places.

The Way to take them in *June, July, and August*, is with an Hobby after this Manner; get out in a dewy Morning, and go to the Sides of some Hills which lie to the rising of the Sun, where they most usually frequent, and having sprung them, observe where they fall, then surround them twice or thrice with your Hobby on your Fist, causing him to hover when you draw near, by which Means they will lie still till you clap a Net over them, which you carry on the Point of a Stick.

If three or four go together, take a like one made for *Partridges*, when you go with a Setting-Dog, only the Mesh must be smaller, that is, a *Lark-Mesh*, and then your Hobby to the *Lark*, is like a Setting-Dog to *Partridges*, and with your Net at one Draught you may take the whole Flock.

The *Wood-Lark* that is taken in *June, July, and August*, will sing presently, but will not last long, by reason of their moulting. That which is taken in *January* and *February* will sing in five or six Days, or sooner, and these are the best, being taken in full Stomach, and are more perfect in their Song than those taken at other Seasons.

If in the Cage you find him grow poor at the Beginning of the Spring, give him every two or three Days a Turf of three Leav'd-grass, (as is used to the *Sky-Lark*) and boil him a Sheep's-Heart, and mince it



small, mingling it among his Bread, Egg, and Hemp-Seed, which will cause him to thrive extraordinary.

If he be troubled with Lice, ( a Distemper he is commonly afflicted withal ) take him out of the Cage, and smoke him with Tobacco, give him fresh Gravel, and set him in a hot Place where the Sun shines, and this will cure him if he have Strength to bask in the Sand.

If you will have him sing lavish, feed him with Sheep's-Heart, Egg, Bread and Hemp-Seed mixt together, and put into his Water a little Liquorish, white Sugar-candy, and Saffron ; let this be done once a Week.

Upon the first taking of your *Wood-Lark*, thus must you do, you must put into your Cage two Pans, one for minc'd Meat, and another for Oat-meal and whole Hemp-Seed. Then having boil'd an Egg hard, take the crumbs of white Bread, the like Quantity of Hemp-Seed pounded in a Mortar, and mingle your Bread and it with your Egg minc'd very small, and give it him. Let there be at the Bottom of the Cage fine red Gravel, and let it be shifted every Week at farthest ; for he delights to bask in the Sand, which will not be convenient if foul'd with his Dung. Let the Pearch of the Cage be lin'd with green Bays, or which is better, make a Pearch of a Mat, and least they should not find the Pan so soon as they should do, to prevent Famine, strew upon the Sand some Oat-meal and Hemp-Seed.

How to know the Cock is thus, first, the largeness and length of his Call : Secondly, his tall walking : Thirdly, at Evenings, the doubling of his Note, which Artists call *Cudelling* ; but if you hear him sing strong, you cannot be deceived.

Here note, that if a Bird sings not, that is taken in *February* and *January*, within one Month after, you may conclude him not worth the keeping, or else is an Hen infallibly.



The *Wood-Lark* as it is naturally endowed with incomparable Notes, so it is a tender Bird, and difficult to be kept, but if rightly ordered, and well look'd to, will be a most delightful Songster to its Master, growing better and better every Year to the very last.

These Birds are very subject to the Cramp, Giddiness in the Head, and to Louziness. The best Remedy to prevent the Cramp, is to shift the Cage often with fresh Gravel, otherwise the Dung will clog to the Feet, which causeth the Cramp. The Giddiness of the Head proceedeth from feeding upon much Hemp-seed; perceiving this Distemper, give him some Gentles, (the common Bait for Fishermen) Hog-Lice, Emets and their Eggs, with Liquorish, all put into Water, will serve in their stead, and will cure immediately. Louziness (which causeth Leanness in this Bird) is cured, as I said before, by smoking Tobacco.



*Of the SKY-LARK: The several Ways how to take them; and when taken, how to order them.*

There is great Difference between one *Sky-Lark* and another, for one may not be worth Two-pence, when another shall be worth two Pounds.

This Bird is very hardy, and will live upon any Food in a Manner, so that he have but once a Week a Turf of three Leav'd-grass. As the *Wood-Lark* hath young ones in March, the *Sky-Lark* hath rarely any till the middle of May. They commonly build in Corn, or thick high Grass-Meadows, and seldom have more than four: Take them at a fortnight old, and at first give them minced Sheep's Heart with chopt hard Egg mingled, when they can feed alone, give them Bread, Hemp-seed, and Oat-meal; let the Bread be mingled with Egg, and the Hemp-seed bruised: Let them have



Sand in the Bottom of their Cage ; Pearches therein are to no Purpose.

As the *Wood-Lark* is taken with Net and Hobby, so may the *Sky Lark* be taken also. They are taken likewise in dark Nights with a Trammel ; this Net is above six and thirty Yards long, and six Yards over, run through with six Ribs of Pack-thread, which Ribs at the Ends are put upon two Poles sixteen Foot long, made taper at each End, and so is carried between two Men half a Yard from the Ground ; every six Steps touching the Ground, to cause the Birds to fly up, otherwise you may carry the Net over them, without disturbing them ; hearing them fly against the Net, clap it down, and they are safe under it. This is a very murdering Net, taking all Sorts of Birds that it comes near, as *Partridges*, *Quails*, *Woodcocks*, *Snipes*, *Felkars*, and what not, almost in every dark Night.

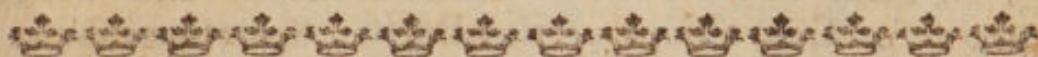
The next Way of taking them is with a Pair of Day-nets and a Glass, which is incomparable Pastime in a Frosty Morning. These Nets are commonly seven Foot deep, and fifteen long, knit with your *French Mesh*, and very fine Thread. These Nets take all Sorts of small Birds that come within their Compass, as *Bunting-Larks*, and *Linnets* in abundance.

These *Larks* are also taken by a Low-bell, with a great Light carried in a Tub both by one Man, and the Net by another, this Bell and Light so amazeth them, that they lie as dead, and stir not till the Net overcast them. By this Bell are all Sorts of Fowls and Birds taken, as *Partridge* and *Pheasant*, and if the Bell be loowed, or very deep, *Duck*, *Millard*, *Woodcock*, and *Snipe* may be taken.

The last Way of taking *Larks* is in a great Snow by taking an hundred or two hundred Yards of Pack-thread, fastning at every six Inches a Noose made with Horse-hair, two Hairs are sufficient. Now since I have already described this Way of taking *Larks*, I shall desist, and only inform you that those *Larks* you intend to preserve for Singing must be taken in *October* or *November* ; Chuse the straitest, largest, and loftiest Bird,  
and



and he that hath most white on his Tail, for these are the Marks of the Cock. Observe in this Bird as in all others, that you give no salt Meat nor Bread season'd with Salt.



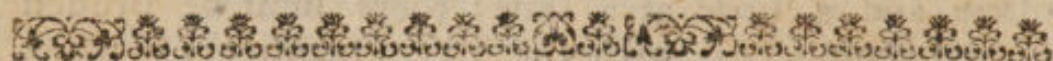
### Of the LINNET.

THEIR Nests are usually in Thorn-bushes and Furz-bushes, and some of the hotter Sort of them will breed four times a Year. The young ones may be taken at four Days old, if you intend to teach them to whistle, or learn the Song of other Birds, for being so young, they know not the Tune of the old Bird. Being so young, keep them very warm, and feed them often, and a little at a time; there must be bruised soaked Rape-seeds, with the like Quantity of white Bread, of which there must be fresh made every Day to prevent scowring, which will make them scour to death, let not their Meat be too dry, for fear of being Vent-burnt. If you intend they shall whistle, do you whistle to them in the time of feeding, being more apt to learn before they can crack hard Seeds. Whatever Bird you intend your *Linnet* shall learn his Notes of, hang him under it, and he will perfectly imitate him, nay, so docible this Bird is, as I have been credibly informed, that some of them have been taught to speak. To know the Cock from the Hen, must not always be discovered by their Breasts; but the Cock is best known by the brownness of his Back and the white in his Wing; that is to say, take your young *Linnet* when the Wing-feathers are grown, and stretch out his Wing, holding his Body fast with the other Hand, and then observe the White upon the fourth, fifth, and sixth Feather, if it cast a glistering White, and the



the White goes close to the Quill, this is a sure Sign of a Cock.

Many are the Diseases of this Bird, as the Ptifick, known by his Panting, staring Feathers, lean Breast, and spilling his Seeds up and down the Cage; and this Disease happens for want of Water, or for want of green Meat in the Spring: He is troubled also with Strains or Convulsions of the Breast: Sometimes he is afflicted with Hoarsness in his Voice, being overstrain'd in Singing; he is sometimes Melancholy, at other times afflicted with Scowring, of which there are three Sorts, the first is thin and with a black or white Substance in the middle, not very dangerous; the second is between a black and white, clammy and sticking, this is bad, but the third and last is most mortal, which is the white clammy Scowring: The several Cures I shall not here set down for brevity sake, but refer you to the Care of the Bird-Merchant.



*Of the* GOLD-FINCH, *or* CHRISTMAS-FOOL, *so called in* Norfolk.

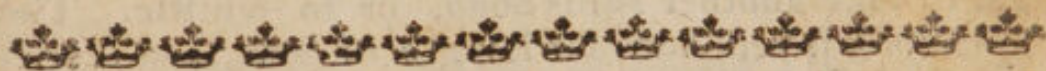
THEY are taken in great plenty about *Michaelmas*, and will soon become tame. The Beauty of this Bird's severally coloured Feathers is not much taken Notice of, because they are so common among us, but they have been so noted and valued beyond Sea, that they have been transported in great Quantities for great Rarities.

They breed commonly in Apple-trees and Plum-trees thrice a Year. You must take the young ones with the Nest at ten Days old, and feed them after this Manner: Take some of the best Hemp-seed, pound it, sift it, and mix it with the like Quantity of white Bread, with some Flower of Canary-seed, and taking



up the Quantity of a white Pea upon a small Stick, feed them there with three or four Bits at a time, making fresh every Day. You must keep these Birds very warm till they can feed themselves, for their Nature is very tender.

For the Purgation of this Bird, as well as all others which feed on Hemp-feed, take the Seeds of Melons, Succory, and Mercury, which is a principal Herb for the *Linnet*, but the best for the *Gold-finch* are Lettice and Plantain, and nothing can be more wholesome for him than Wall or Loom-earth, and some fine Sand, and a Lump or two of Sugar put always into his Cage.



### Of the TIT-LARK.

THIS Bird is very short in his Song, and no Variety in it, yet some fancy him for his *Whisking*, *Tur-ring*, and *Chewing*. He commonly appears at that time of the Year that the *Nightingale* does, which is the Beginning of *April*, and leaves us at the Beginning of *September*: They are fed, when taken, as the *Nightingale*; you must cram him at first, for he will not feed himself, by reason he always feeds on live Meat in the Field, for which Cause he is unacquainted with the Meat we offer him, when he comes to feed of himself he will eat what the *Wood-Lark* eats, or almost any other Meat.

This Bird breeds about the latter End of *April*, or Beginning of *May*, and builds her Nest on the Ground by some Pond-side or Ditch-side, and feeds her young with Caterpillars or Flies. They are easily brought up being hardy, and are not subject to Colds or Cramps, as other Birds are, but live long if preserved with Care. If you breed up this Bird young and cleanly, you may please your self with his Song; all that I can say of it is, *Short and Sweet*.

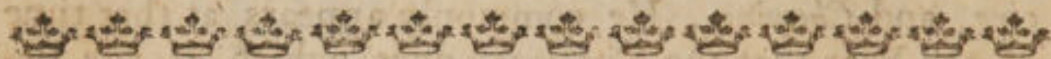




*Of the* CHAF-FINCH.

There is no Scarcity of this Bird, and in my Mind fitter for the Spit than a Cage, having but one short plain Song, yet for that he is admired by some, and kept very charily.

They build their Nests in Hedges and Trees of all Sorts, and have young ones twice or thrice a Year, they are seldom bred up from the Nest, because they are not apt to take another Birds Song, or to whistle. The *Essex-Finch* is best both for Length of Song, and Variety, concluding it with several Notes very prettily. He is very little subject to any Disease, only he is inclinable to be very lousy, if he be not sprinkled with a little Wine twice or thrice a Month.



*Of the* STARLING.

This Bird is generally kept by all Sorts of People above any other Bird for whistling, but their greatest Fault is, they have them too fledg'd out of the Nest, and that makes them retain commonly so much of their own harsh Notes, therefore those who do intend to have them Excellent, and avoid their own squeaking Notes, must take them from the old ones at the End of three or four Days, and thus you must do to all Birds you would learn to whistle, or speak, or learn another Birds Song by hanging under him.





Of the RED-START.

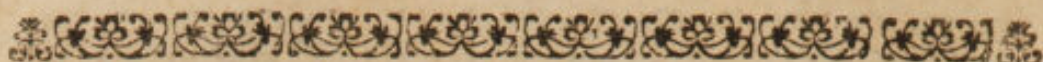
THIS Bird is a Fore-runner of the *Nightingale*, and is of a very sullen dogged Temper in a Cage, but abroad is very chearful, and hath a very pleasant Kind of whistling Song.

The Cock is fair and beautifully coloured, and is delightful to the Eye. They breed thrice a Year, the latter End of *April*, in *May*, and towards the latter End of *June*.

They build usually in Holes of hollow Trees, or under House-Eaves: She is the choicest Bird I know of her building; for when she is about her Nest, if she perceives any to look on, she forsakes it, and if she have young ones and you do the like, she will either starve them, or break their Necks over the Nest. Now tho' the old ones be thus dogged, yet if you bring up their young, their Nature will alter, and become very tame.

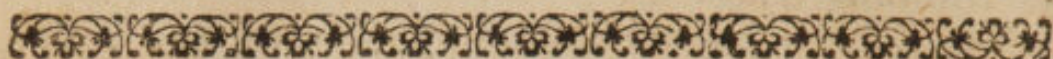
You must take them out of the Nest about ten Days old, if they stay longer, they will learn somewhat of the old one's sullen Temper. You must feed them with Sheep's-heart and Eggs chopped and mixt together, about the Quantity of three white Peas, upon the End of a Stick, when they open their Mouths; when they will thus feed, put them into a Cage with Meat about it and a Pan of Meat therein, and though he feed himself, yet it will be very sparingly for four or five Days, wherefore you must now and then feed him your self. Keep him warm in the Winter, and he will sing as well in the Night as the Day.





*Of the BULL-FINCH.*

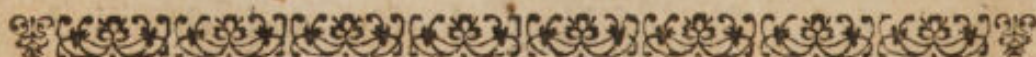
**T**HE *Bull-Finch* hath no Song of his own, nor Whistle neither, but is very apt to learn any thing almost, if taught by the Mouth.



*Of the GREEN-FINCH.*

**T**HIS Bird is not worth keeping for his Song, but for his Colour, and being a hardy heavy Bird to ring the Bells.

They breed very fillily by the High-way-side, and early before the Hedges have Leaves upon them, which causes every one to see their Nests at first, so that seldom their first Nests come to any thing. They breed three times a Year, and the young ones are very hardy Birds to be brought up. You may feed them with white Bread and Rape bruised and soaked together: He is apter to take the Whistle than another Birds Song. All that can be said of him, he is a very dull Bird, and will never kill himself either by Singing or Whistling.



*Of the HEDGE-SPARROW.*

**T**HIS is not so despicable a Bird as some would have it; for if you will mind its Song, you will find very delightful Notes, and sings early in the Spring with great Variety. Old or young become tame very quickly, and will sing, in a short time, after they are taken,  
so



so that you take them at the latter End of *January*, or Beginning of *February*: They will feed almost on any thing you can give them.

They commonly build in a *White-thorn*, or private Hedge, laying *Eggs* much different from other Birds, being of a very fine blue Colour. This Bird is very tractable, and will take any Birds Song almost if taken young out of the Nest. I shall only speak a few Experiments of others, and deliver some Observations of my own concerning the Length of Birds Lives, and which are most proper for Whistling, and so shall end this Treatise.

First, As to the Length of Birds Lives: Among *Nightingales* some live but one Year, some three, some five, some eight, and some twelve, singing better and better for the first seven or eight Years, and after that decline by little and little: They must have careful Keepers that can preserve their Lives to the fifth Year; Experience informs us, where one lives to that Age, an Hundred die.

The *Wood-Lark* seldom lives in a Cage above six Years, and hardly five.

The *Robin-red-breast* rarely lives above seven Years, for he is a tender Bird, and much subject to the Falling-sickness, Cramp, and Oppression of the Stomach.

The *Sky-Lark*, as he is a hardy Bird, so he is long liv'd also. All Sorts of Seed-Birds live longer than any soft-beak'd Birds, especially the *Canary* and *Linnet*. I have known a *Canary* Bird live and sing within a Year of Twenty, in like manner the *Linnet*.

So much as to the Lives of Singing-Birds, let us now consider which are most fit for Whistling.

In the first Place, I look upon the *Starling* to be the best, and never heard better than at the *Grey-hound* in *St. Mary-Ax*, taught and sold by the ingenious Master of that House. But since I have spoken of the *Starling* and *Bull-Finch* already, I shall insist no farther.

The *Black Bird* hath a kind of rude Whistle, and if young taken out of the Nest, is very apt to learn.

The *Robin-red-breast* is a most incomparable Bird for the Whistle, and to speak also. A *Robin* is a hot-met-Bird, and therefore he must not be in the hearing  
of



of another, wherefore if you breed two, let them be separated into several Rooms, that they may not hear, and so consequently spoil each other.

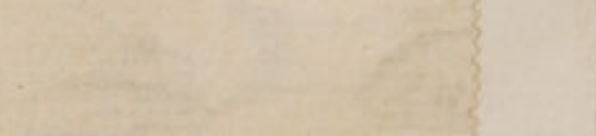
The *Canary Bird* will learn to whistle any thing almost, if taken young out of the Nest, otherwise not, for being a very hot-mettled Bird, he will run upon his own Song do what you can.

The *Linnet* will learn any Tune almost, if not too long, and too full of Variety. Learn him one Tune first, then another, keeping him dark and still, out of the Noise of other Birds.

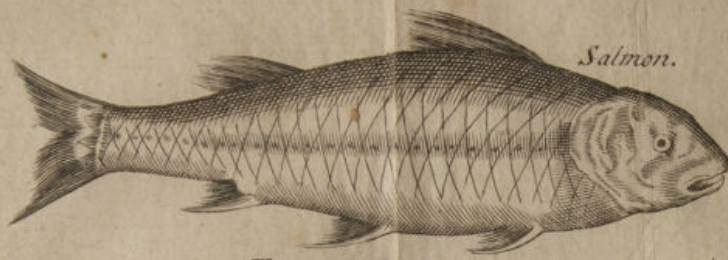
Take this for a general Rule for all Birds, That the younger they be, the better they will prove, and answer your Expectation for all your Trouble and Pains in bringing up and keeping them.











*Salmon.*



*Barbel.*



*Trout.*



*Tench.*



*Carp.*



*Perch.*



*Roach.*



*Loach.*



*Dace.*



*Bream.*



*Eel.*



*Pike.*



*Grayling.*



*Gudgeon.*





THE  
*Gentleman's Recreation,*  
 FOR THAT  
 Noble and Delightful Art  
 OF  
 ANGLING.

*The Introduction.*



ANGLING is an excellent Art, which, as it pleads Antiquity, so the Knowledge thereof is with much Difficulty to be obtained; and indeed it bears some Similitude to Poetry in this, that, as it is said, *Poeta nascitur, non fit*; so ought the *Piscator*, or Fisherman, to have a natural Inclination unto the Art of Angling, or his Knowledge therein will be always dull and imperfect; not but that it may be much heightned by Practice and Experience.

X

Now,



Now, he that intends to be his Crafts-master in this harmless Pastime or Recreation, must not only diligently search and enquire into the Mysteries and Depths of this Art, but must also be furnished, as aforesaid, with a natural Propensity thereunto, attended with Hope and Patience: And having gotten, by Observation and Practice, a competent Knowledge, or having conquered the Difficulties of Angling, it will then not only prove pleasant, but profitable, and be, like Virtue, a Reward to it self.

Now, that I may farther commend this ingenious Profession, be pleased to take notice of the Antiquity thereof, some saying it is as ancient as *Deucalion's* Flood: Some attribute it to the Invention of one *Belus*, the first Author of virtuous Recreations: Others say, that *Seth* left the Knowledge of Angling to his Posterity, ingraven on brazen Pillars, with the first Rudiments of the Mathematicks, and other useful Arts; by which Means they were preserved from perishing in the universal Deluge.

Divers are the Opinions of Men concerning the Antiquity of this Art; let it suffice, that certainly it is older than *Christ's* Incarnation; for both *Job* and the Prophet *Amos* make mention of Fish-hooks; and consequently there must be Anglers then in those Days.

The next Thing that offers it self in the Commendation of this Art, is the Benefit of Contemplation which is acquired thereby, which is a Thing (according to the Opinion of some learned cloister'd Men) to be preferred before Action; because, say they, it makes us Mortals to come the nearer to the Creator, by way of Imitation; for he is all Contemplation of his own infinite Power, Goodness, &c.

But waving this, I cannot let slip the Expression of an ingenious Foreigner, who said, *That Rivers, and the Inhabitants of the watry Element, were made for wise Men to contemplate, and Fools to pass by without Consideration.* Modesty will not permit me to rank my self in the Number of the first, and I shall endeavour to clear my self from the Scandal of the last, by giving you a short Account of Rivers, and their watry Inhabitants.

I shall



I shall first discourse of Rivers; one whereof I have read of, situate in *Epirus*, which hath a strange double and contrary Property; the one is, that it will extinguish any Torch that is lighted; and the other is, to light a Torch never lighted before.

The River *Silarus* in a few Hours will (as Report saith) convert a Rod into Stone. And I my self know a Lough in *Ireland*, that in some Years will convert Wood into Stone, of which are made the best Hones. *Cambden* makes mention of a Well near *Kerby* in *Cumberland*, that ebbs and flows several Times every Day.

The same Author makes mention of the River *Mole* in *Surrey*, which, running several Miles under Ground, being opposed by Hills, at last breaks out again so far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast (as the *Spaniards* of the River *Ama*) that they feed several Flocks of Sheep on a green Bridge. There is such another green Bridge in *Wales*, the River running a great Way under Ground, and there disemboguing it self into the Sea. Some thereabout report, that they have put a living Goose into the Hole where the Water falls, and she hath swam out at the other End, but with no Feathers on her Back.

Mr. *Thomas May*, in his History of the Reign of King *Henry II.* relates two strange Things from *Gricaldus Cambrensis*, of certain Wells in *Ireland*. His Words are these :

*A Well there is in Munster to be seen,  
Within whose Waters whosoe'er had been  
Once drench'd, his Hair freight takes an hoary Dye.*

*Another Fountain of quite contrary  
Effect to that, in Ulster springs; for there  
Those that have washed once, how old soe'er,  
Shall never after have an hoary Hair.*

Another Thing, though against Nature, yet for the Strangeness of it I cannot chuse but relate, and that is, of a certain River near *Harwood* in *Bedfordshire*, which in the Year of our Lord 1399, (a little before the Civil Wars between the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster* burst forth) of a sudden stood still, and divided it self afunder, so that Men might pass three Miles together



on Foot down the Midst of the Channel, leaving the Waters like a Wall behind them. *Speed* in his Description. *Bedford*.

I shall conclude with two of the strangest Rivers that ever were heard of. The first is a River called *Eleusina*, which is so merrily disposed (that if you will believe a Man of no less Authority than *Aristotle*) that it will dance to a Fiddle, bubbling at the Noise of Musick, and will grow very muddy; but as soon as the Musick ceaseth, it ceaseth its Motion, returning to its former Calmness and Clearness. The other is as wonderful, and (if you will believe *Josephus*, that learned Jew) it is a River in *Judea*, which runs very swiftly all the six Days of the Week, but resteth on the Seventh, which is the *Jewish Sabbath*.

And now a Word or two concerning Fish. *Pliny* saith, that Nature's great and wonderful Power is more demonstrated in the Sea than on the Land; and this may appear by those numerous and various Creatures which inhabit in and about that Element, which will appear more at large, if you will read the History written either by *Rondeletius*, *Gesner*, *Johnstonus*, or *Aldrovandus*. The Number and the various Shapes of these Fishes are not more strange than their different Natures, Inclinations, and Actions. Give me Leave to speak a little hereof.

There is a Fish called the *Cuttle-fish*, which will cast a long Gut out of her Throat, with which she angles: For lying obscurely in the Mud, she permits small Fish to nibble at it, and by that Means draws them near her by little and little, till coming within her Reach, she leaps upon them and devours them: Hence she is called the *Sea-Angler*.

The *Hermit* is a Fish, that, when she grows old, will seek out a dead Fish's Shell, fit for her Purpose, and there dwell secluded from all Company, studying nothing more than how to defend herself against the Injuries of Wind and Weather.

The *Sargus* is a Fish for which (as *Du-Bartas* expresseth it more fully) that when he cannot find Change of Food, he will get ashore, and will eat a Goat.



*Goes courting She-Goats on the grassy Shore,  
Horning their Husbands that had Horns before.*

Whereas it is reported that the *Mullet* is so chaste, that when she is deprived of her Mate, she will follow him to the Shore, and die.

The *Torpedo*, or *Cramp-fish*, is a Fish of so baneful and poisonous a Nature, that all other Fish that come within her Reach are immediately stupified and without Motion, so that they easily become her Prey; nay, she will so suddenly convey her Poison up the Rod and Line of the Angler, when she feels her self entangled, that his Hands and Arms immediately losing their Strength, become nummed and senseless.

The *Scolopendra* hath as rare and strange a Way of defending her self from the Angler's Subtilty, as any Fish whatever, if we may credit the Relation of *Du-Bartas*, whose Words are these :

*But if the Scolopendra have suck'd in  
The sowre sweet Morsel of the barbed Pin,  
She hath as rare a Trick to rid her from it;  
For instantly she all her Guts will vomit;  
And having clear'd them from the Danger, then,  
She fair and softly sups them in again,  
So that not one of them within her Womb,  
Changeth his Office or his wonted Room.*

The *Remora* is a Fish of so strange and secret a Property (and for that Reason is often used for a Metaphor) that as the same *Du-Bartas* saith,

*Let all the Winds in one Wind gather them,  
And (seconded with Neptune's strongest Stream)  
Let all at once blow all their stiffest Gales,  
Aftern a Galley under all her Sails;  
Let her be holpen with a hundred Oars,  
Each lively handled with five lusty Rowers;  
The Remora fixing her feeble Horn  
Into the Tempest-beaten Vessel's Stern,  
Stays her Tone still.*



In the Year of our Lord 1180, near *Orford* in *Suffolk*, there was a Fish taken in the perfect Shape of a Man; he was kept by *Bartholomew de Glanvile* in the Castle of *Orford* above half a Year; but at length, not being carefully looked to, he stole to the Sea, and was never seen after. He never spake, but would eat any Meat that was given him, especially raw Fish, when he had squeezed out the Juice: He was often had to Church, but never shewed any Sign of Adoration.

Let what is already spoken of Fish suffice, since it will not only be impertinent to enlarge farther, but impossible here to give an Account of the Natures of all Fish: I shall therefore refer you to such Authors who have made it their Business to write large Volumes.

Before I put an End to this Introduction, permit me to insert something in the Praise of *Fishermen* and *Fishing*.

*A short Encomium, or somewhat in Praise of Fishermen and Fishing.*

**I**T is very remarkable, that amongst the Twelve Holy Apostles there were four of them Fishermen, whom our Saviour elected and inspired to preach the Gospel. And the Reason that some give for this Choice is, that he knew and found the Hearts of such Men naturally more fitted for Contemplation and Quietness, having Spirits mild, sweet, and peaceable.

Besides, our Saviour seems to have a more than common Respect for their Occupation, for two Reasons. First, he never reproved these for their Profession, as he did others, viz. the Scribes and Money-changers. Next, he dignified these poor Fishermen with the Priority of Nomination in the Catalogue of his Twelve Apostles. Nay, that which is more observable is this, that our Saviour took only three of these poor Fishermen with him, when he ascended the Mount, to bear him Company at his Transfiguration.

Now,



Now, as to the Lawfulness of Fishing, I think none can speak against it, since our Saviour himself commanded St. Peter to fish, to pay *Cæsar* his Tribute.

And as the Ancients have highly applauded and approved of this ingenious Exercise, several of the Heroes of old, in their Height of their Glory, having exercised themselves herein : So several of our eminent late Divines have done the like ; as Dr. *Whitaker*, Learned *Perkins*, Dr. *Nowel* Dean of St. Paul's, London, and the incomparable Sir *Henry Wotton* Provost of *Eaton* College, who was a great Lover of Angling, and would frequently say thereof, that it was, after his Study, a Rest to his Mind, a Chearer to his Spirits, a Diverter of Sadness, a Calmer of unquiet Thoughts, a Moderator of Passions, a Procurer of Contentedness ; and that it begot Habits of Peace, and Patience in those that profess and practise it. And thus I conclude the Praise of *Angling*, tho' much more might be spoken thereof.

*How to improve Fish-Ponds, and the Fish therein contain'd.*

**B**Efore I shall lay down such Observations and Instructions, which with much Pains and Cost I have collected, to render a Fisherman compleat in that delightful Exercise of taking Fish : I shall give an Account of Ponds, and how they may in the best Manner be improved.

*Imprimis*, Consider the Scituation of your Pond, and the Nature of those Currents which run into it. In the next Place, observe whether it be a Breeder, or not ; if it be a Breeder, Experience will instruct you never to expect any large *Carps* from such Ponds, for the Greatness of the Number of the Spawn will overstock the Pond ; therefore, for large *Carps*, a Store-Pond is ever accounted the best.

Now, to make a Breeding-Pond become a Store-Pond, when you cannot make a Store-Pond become a Breeding-Pond, thus you must do. When you sue your Pond, consider what Quantity of *Carps* it will maintain ; then put in all Milsters, or all Spawners, by which Means in



a little Time, you will have Carps that are both large and Fat beyond your Expectation. By putting in but one Sex of them, there is an Impossibility of encreasing of them ; but of the *Roach*, it will notwithstanding multiply abundantly : Therefore it is needful, and altogether necessary for such who keep Breeding Ponds, to sue them once in three Years, for Fear of the Increase of *Roaches*, tho' none were ever put in, which may seem very strange, if the Truth thereof could not be made manifest ; as thus, there are several Ponds frequented by Wild-ducks, which usually come at Night to feed with the Tame ones there abiding : Now those Wild-ducks bring these *Roaches* with them, for their feeding amongst Weeds in Rivers.

Besides, the Spawn of *Roaches* will hang about their Feet and Feathers, which is washed off by the Water of those Ponds they are accustomed to haunt, by which Means in a few Years they become so numerous, though you your self did not put one into the Breeding-pond, for which Cause you find your *Carps* so lean, and almost hunger-starved.

By the Way, give me leave to insert this true Story. A Gentleman not far from the City of *London*, had a large Pond of about four Acres of Ground, a Gentleman standing by at the suing thereof, and seeing not only a great Quantity of Fish, but the best grown that ever he saw, he advised him to put in two or three Hundred of Stores of *Carp*, about three or four Years Growth, out of a Pond that was overstocked, and to put Sixty of those he had taken out, which accordingly he saw done, fancying to see stately *Carps* at the next Suing.

After the Expiration of four Years, this Gentleman was advised to sue his Pond, to see what Monsters four Years Addition to their Growth would produce, for those sixty *Carps* were from Eye to Fork, from fifteen Inches to eighteen Inches when he put them in : Now having sued his Pond, he found almost the whole Number of his *Carps* ; but they were in such a lean Condition, that he did not know them ; for they were Monsters in Nature, their Heads being bigger than their whole Bodies, and almost as heavy, and this happened, it seems, by his own Folly, by putting in but twenty *Roaches* ; and when  
the



the Pond was fued, there were Bushels of small *Roaches*, and these *Roaches* eat up all the sweet Food from the *Carps*; for *Roaches* are like Sheep to great Cattle, which eat up and devour all the sweet Feed, and what affords the greatest Nutriment. This Gentleman was very much frustrated of his Expectation; and the Fish-monger which came from *London* to buy a Penny-worth, as soon as he perceived the Monsters, he mounted his Horse, and rid as if the Devil drove him, not so much as bidding the Gentleman farewell. Here is to be noted, that Ponds which will not breed one *Carp*, *Roaches* in one Year will multiply by Thousands; therefore you must be careful every Year to view your Pond, and observe if any such Fry appears, lest when you come to sue your Pond, you be deceived in your Expectation.

*How to make Carps grow to an extraordinary Bigness in a Pond.*

PERceiving about the Month of *April* that your Pond begins to grow low in Water, then with an Iron-Rake, rake all the Sides of your Pond where the Water is fallen away; then sow some Hay-seeds, and rake it well; by this Means at the latter End of Summer there will be a great Growth of Grass, which when Winter comes, and the Pond being raised by Rain to the Top, will overflow all that Grass; and then the *Carps* having Water to carry them to the Feed, will fill themselves, and in a short Time become as fat as Hogs that are kept up for that Purpose. Do this every Summer till you sue your Pond, and you will find no River *Carp* to surpass them, either in Fatness or Sweetness.

*General Observations to be understood by all such who desire to attain to the compleat and perfect Art of Angling.*

BY no Means fish in light and dazling Apparel, but let your cloathing be of a dark dusky Colour.

Wheresoever you use to angle (for the Angler hath his peculiar Haunt) cast in once in four or five Days Corn  
boiled



boiled soft; if for *Carp* and *Tench*, oftner; also you may cast in Garbage, Livers of Beasts, Worms chopt in Pieces, or Grains steeped in Blood, and dried. This will attract Fish unto the Place; and to keep them together as you fish, throw in half a handful of Grains of ground Malt. This must be done in still Water, but in a Stream you must cast your Grains above your Hook, and not about it, for as they float from your Hook, so will they draw the Fish after them.

If you will bait a Stream, get some Tin-Boxes made full of Holes, no bigger than just fit for a Worm to creep through; then fill these Boxes with them, and having fastened a Plummet to sink them, cast them into the Stream with a String fastened thereto, that you may draw them forth when you please; by the smallness of the Holes aforesaid, the Worms can crawl out but very leisurely, and as they crawl, the Fish will resort about them.

If you would bait for *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Umber*, and the like, in a Stream, then take some Blood, and therewith incorporate fine Clay, Barley, and Malt ground, adding thereto some Water, make all in a Paste with Gum of Ivy; then form it in Cakes, and cast them into the Stream. Some will knead or stick Worms therein fast by the Head. If you find your Bait take no Effect in the attracting of the Fish, you may then conclude some *Pike* or *Pearch* lurketh thereabout to seize his Prey, for fear of which the Fish dare not venture thereabout: You must therefore remove these Obstructions of your Sport, by taking your Trowl; and let your Bait be either Brandlings or Lob-worms; or you may use Gentles or Minnows, which they will greedily snap at.

Keep your Rod neither too dry nor too moist, lest the one make it brittle, and the other rotten. If it be very foultry dry Weather, wet your Rod a little before you angle, and having struck a good Fish, keep your Rod bent, and that will hinder him from running to the End of the Line, by which Means he will either break his Hold, or the Hook.

If you would know what Bait the Fish loves best at the Time of your fishing, having taken one, slit his Gill, and take out his Stomach and open it without bruising, and there you will find what he last fed on, and had a Fancy

te,



to, by which Means you may bait your Hook accordingly.

When you fish, shelter your self under some Bush or Tree, or stand so far from the Brink of the River, that you can only discern your Float, for Fish are timorous, and are affrighted at the least Sight or Motion. The best Way of Angling with the Fly is down the River, and not up, as you will find by Experience.

You never need make above half a Dozen Trials in one Place, either with Fly or Ground-Bait, when you Angle for Trout ; for by that time he will either offer or take, or refuse the Bait, and not stir at all.

If you will have Fish bite eagerly and freely, and without Suspicion, you must present them with such Baits as naturally they are inclined to, and in such manner as they are accustomed to receive them.

If you use Pastes for Baits, you must add Flax or Wool, mix a little Butter therewith, and that will preserve the Paste from washing off your Hook.

The Eyes of such Fishes as you kill, are most excellent Baits on the Hook for almost any Sort of Fish.

Lastly, make not this, or any other Recreation, your daily Practice, lest your immoderate Exercise therein bring a Plague upon you rather than a Pleasure.

### *Astrological Elections for Angling in General.*

IF, as the wise Man saith, (and I think there is none that dare question his Authority) that *There is a proper Time and Season for every Action under the Sun* ; I hope it will not be offensive nor impertinent to shew what Time and Seasons the intelligent Angler ought to make choice of, that may answer his Expectation. For my own Part, I have so often experimented the Truth of these Rules, that, by my good Will, I would never Angle but at an elected Time : The ingenious will not despise them, and for others they were not intended : And they are these.

*If you would Neptune's scaly Subjects get,  
Night's horned Queen in the Midheaven set :*    ♀

*Thence*



Thence let her on the Paphian Goddess shine  
 I th' West, and greet her with a friendly Trine.  
 Be sure you always fortify the East,  
 And let the Maiden Star possess the West.  
 Howe'er, let some Aquatick Sign ascend,  
 And let all Pow'r his happy Lord attend.  
 Then see the setting Constellation be  
 Afflicted by some hateful Enemy,  
 At least his Lord, the sixth with Strength defend,  
 Let active Pow'r his Radiant Lord attend:  
 Then may you boldly venture to the Flood,  
 And take from thence what Fishes you see good.

Q

S M X

3

---

*What Provision is to be made for Angling Tools.*

**T**HE Time of providing Stocks is in the Winter-Solstice, when the Trees have shed their Leaves, and the Sap is in the Roots: For after *January* it ascends again into the Trunk and Branches, at which Time it is improper to gather Stocks or Tops.

Let your Stocks be taper-grown, and your Tops the best Rush-ground Shoots you can get, not knotty, but proportionable and slender, otherwise they will neither cast nor strike well, and by reason of their Unpliability, your Line will be much endanger'd.

Having gathered your Stocks and Tops all in one Season, and as strait as you can, bathe them, saving the Tops, over a gentle Fire, and use them not till fully seasoned, till about a Year and four Months: They are better if kept two Years.

Now, to preserve these Stocks or Tops from rotting, or Worm-eating, rub them over thrice a Year with Sallet or Linseed Oil; sweet Butter will serve, if never salted, and with any of these you must chafe well your Rods: If bored, pour in either of the Oils, and let them bathe therein Twenty-four Hours, then pour it out again; and this will preserve your Tops and Stocks from Injury.

How to joyn the Stock or Top together, or how to make all Sorts of Rods for Fly, Ground, or otherwise, with what Length are best for several Sorts of Fishing, I need



need not here relate, since, without putting your self to the Trouble, you may purchase them of such as sell them at no dear Rates.

---

*How to make a Line after the best Manner.*

**L**ET your Hair be round, and twist it even; for that strengthens the Line; and let your Hair, as near as you can, be of an equal Bigness: then lay them in Water for a quarter of an Hour, by which means you will find which of the Hairs do shrink, then twist them over again.

Some intermingle Silk in the twisting, but I cannot approve of it; but a Line of all Silk is not amiss, also a Line made of the smallest Lute-string is very good, but that it will soon rot by the Water.

The best Colour for Lines is the Sorrel, White, and Grey; the two last for clear Waters, and the first for muddy Rivers: Neither is the pale watry Green to be contemned, which Colour you may make after this manner.

Take a Pint of strong Ale, half a Pound of Soot, a small Quantity of the Juice of Walnut-leaves, with the like Quantity of Allum; put these into a Pipkin, and boil them together about half an Hour: Having so done, take it off the Fire, and when it is cold, put in your Hair. Or thus:

Take a Bottle of Allum Water, somewhat more than a Handful of Marigold Flowers, boil them till a Yellow Scum arise; then take half a Pound of Green Copperas, with as much Verdegrease, and beat them together to a fine Powder: Put these, with the Hair, into the Allum Water, and let it lye ten Hours or more, then take the Hair out, and let it dry.

In the making your Line, leave a *Bough* at both Ends, the one to put it to, and take it from the Rod, the other to hang your lowest Link upon, to which your Hook is fastened; and so you may change your Hook as often as you please.



*Of the Hook, Flote, and other Things worth the Observation.*

**Y**Our Hook ought to be long in the Shank, somewhat round in its Circumference, the Point standing even and streight ; and let the bending be in the Shank.

Use strong, but small Silk, in the setting on of your Hook, laying the Hair on the inside of your Hook : For if it be on the outside, the Silk will fret, and cut it asunder.

As for the Flotes, there are divers Ways of making them : Some use your *Muscovy* Duck-Quills, which are the best for still Waters ; but for strong Streams, take good sound Cork without Flaws or Holes, and bore it through with a hot Iron ; then put into it a Quill of a fit Proportion ; then pare your Cork into a pyramidal Form, of what bigness you think fit ; after this grind it smooth.

To plum your Ground, you must carry with you a Musquet-bullet with a Hole made through it, or any other sort of Plummets ; tying this to a strong Twist, hang it on your Hook, and so you will find the depth of the Water.

And that you may not incommode your Tackle, it will be very requisite to make several Partitions in pieces of Parchment sewed together, by which each Utensil may have a Place by it self.

In any wise forget not to carry a little Whetstone with you to sharpen your Hooks, if you find them blunt and dull.

I need not advise you how to carry your Bob and Palmer, or put you in mind of having several Boxes of divers Sizes for your Hooks, Corks, Silk, Thread, Lead, Flies, *etc.* or admonish you not to forget your Linnen and Woollen Bags for all sorts of Baits, but let me forewarn you not to have a Paunder that is heavy, for it can never be light enough : Those which are made of Osiers I think are the best.

Lastly,



Lastly, Forget not to carry with you a small Pole with a Loop at the end thereof, to which you may fasten a small Net to land great Fish withal.

There is another Way much better, and that is by the Landing-hook, which hath a Skrew at the end of it to skrew it into the Socket of a Pole; to which Socket may be fitted also two other Hooks, the one to pull out Wood, and the other sharp, to cut away Weeds.

---

*Of Flies Natural and Artificial, and how to use them.*

**N***atural Flies* are innumerable, there being as many kinds as there are different sorts of Fruits; to avoid Prolixity, I shall only name some of them, viz. the *Dun-fly*, the *Stone* or *May-fly*, the *Red-fly*, the *Moor-fly*, the *Tawny-fly*, the *Shell-fly*, the *Cloudy* or *Blackish-fly*, the *Flag-fly*, the *Vine-fly*; also *Caterpillars*, *Canker-flies*, and *Bear-flies*, with Thousands more which frequent Meadows and Rivers, for the Contemplation of all, but particularly the Recreation of Anglers.

These come in sooner or later, according to the Season of the Year, that is, sooner or later, according the forwardness or backwardness of the Spring; for Flies being bred of Putrefaction, commence their Being according as the Heat doth further their seminal Virtue unto Animation.

I cannot prescribe you Rules to know when each Fly cometh in, and is most grateful to every sort of Fish; and therefore I shall leave the Knowledge hereof to your own Observation.

Moreover, there are several Sorts of Flies, according to the several Natures of divers Soils and Rivers, or Diversity of Plants; yet some there are common to all, altho' but few.

All Flies are very good in their Seasons for such Fish as rise at the Fly, but some more peculiarly good, as being better beloved by some sort of Fish.



Fish generally rise at these Flies most eagerly when most sort of Flies resort to the Water-side, hanging in a manner in Clusters on Trees and Bushes, delighting themselves to skip thence, and play upon the Water, and then do the Fish shew their Craft in catching them.

To the intent you may the better know what kind of Fly the Fish then most covet, observe thus to do ; coming in the Morning to the River-side, beat the Bushes with your Rod, and take up what Variety you may of all sorts of Flies, and try them all, by which means you will quickly know which are in greatest Estimation among them. Not but that they will change their Fly sometimes, but then it is when they have glutted themselves therewith for five or six Days together, which is commonly upon the going out of that Fly : For Fish never covet that Fly more than when there is greatest Plenty, contemning them at their first coming in.

There are two Ways to fish with these natural Flies ; either on the Surface of the Water, or a little underneath it. Now when you Angle for *Chevin*, *Roach* or *Dace*, with the natural Fly, move it not swiftly when you see the Fish make at it, but rather let it glide spontaneously towards it with the Stream. If it be in a still and flow Water, draw the Fly slowly side-ways by him, that will make him eager in Pursuit of it ; whereas, if you should move it swiftly, they will not follow it, being a lazy Fish, and slow of Motion. These Fish delight to shew themselves in a Sun-shiny-Day almost on the very Surface of the Water, by which means you pick and chuse.

The *Artificial Fly* is seldom used but in blustering Weather, when by the Winds the Waters are so troubled, that the Natural Fly cannot be seen, nor rest upon them.

There are (according to the Opinion of Mr. *Walton*, a very ingenious Man, and an excellent Angler) twelve Sorts of Artificial Flies to Angle with on the top of the Water, of which these are the principal.

The first is (to use his own Words (the *Dun-fly*, in *March*, made of dun Wool, and the Feathers of a Partridge's Wing.

The second is a *Dun-fly* too, and made of black Wool, and the Feathers of a black Drake ; the Body made of the first, and the Wings of the latter.

The



The third is the *Stone-fly*, in *April*; the Body is made with black Wooll, made yellow under the Wings and Tail.

The fourth is the *Ruddy-fly*, in the beginning of *May*; the Body being made of red Wooll, and bound about with black Silk, with the Feathers of a red Capon, which hang dangling on his Sides next his Tail.

The fifth is the *Yellow or Greenish Fly*, in *June*; the Body is made with black Wooll, with a yellow List on either Side, and the Wings taken off the Wings of a Buzzard, bound with black braked Hemp.

The sixth is the *Moorish fly*; the Body made of dusky Wooll, and the Wings made of the blackish Mail of the Drake.

The seventh is the *Tawny-fly*, good until the middle of *June*; the Body made of tawny Wooll, the Wings made contrary one against another, of the whitish Mail of the white Drake.

The eighth is the *Wasp-fly*, in *July*; the Body made of black Wooll, lapt about with yellow Silk, the Wings made with Drake-feathers.

The ninth is the *Shell-fly*, good in the middle of *July*; the Body made of greenish Wooll, lapt about with the Herle of a Peacock's Tail, and the Wings made of Buzzards Wings.

The tenth and last is the *Drake-fly*, good in *August*; the Body made of black Wooll, lapt about with black Silk, his Wings of the Mail of the black Drake with a black Head.

And then having named two more, he concludes wittily, *Thus have you a Jury of Flies, likely to betray and condemn all the Trouts in the River.*

'This in my Opinion seems a tedious and difficult Way. I should rather think it better to find the Fly proper for every Season, and that which the Fish all that time most eagerly covet, and make one as like it as possible you may, in Colour, Shape, and Proportion; and for your better Imitation, lay the natural Fly before you.

There are several Ways of making these artificial Flies, which I shall forbear here to relate, thinking it more proper to leave it to the Ingenuity of every particular Person, which will be very much help'd by seeing and observing the Artist's Method in their Composition.



The best Observations I can collect for artificial Fly-fishing, are these :

*First*, Observe to fish in a River somewhat disturbed by Rain, or a cloudy Day, when the Waters are moved by a gentle Breeze : The South Wind is best, the West indifferent, but the East is stark naught. But as to this I give not much Credit ; for let the Sky be cloudy, and the Season not too cold, I'll bid Defiance to any Wind that blows not too hard. If it blows high, yet not so high but that you may conveniently guide your Tackle, they will rise in plain Deeps, where you shall kill the best Fish : But if the Wind be small, then is the best Angling in swift Streams ; and be sure to keep your Fly in continual Motion.

*Secondly*, Keep as far from the Water side as you can, whether you fish with a Fly or Worm ; and fish down the Stream, having the Sun on your Back, not suffering your Line to touch the Water but your Fly only. Here note, that the light Fly makes most Sport in a dark Night, and the darkest, or least Fly, in a clear Day.

*Thirdly*, In clear Rivers ever Angle with a small Fly with slender Wings ; but in such as are muddied by Rain, use a Fly that is larger bodied than ordinary.

*Fourthly*, When the Water beginneth to clear after Rain, and becomes brownish, then use a Red or Orange Fly ; if the Day be clear, a light-coloured Fly, and a dark Fly for dark Waters ; if the Water be of a wheyish Complexion, then use a black or brown Fly. I will not say these Directions or Rules are without Exceptions.

*Fifthly*, Let your Line for Fly-fishing be twice as long as your Rod, unless the River be cumbred with Wood.

*Sixthly*, For every Sort of Fly, have several of the same differing in Colour, to suit with the different Complexions of several Waters and Weathers.

*Seventhly*, You must have a nimble Eye, and an active Hand, to strike presently with the rising of the Fish, or else he will be apt to spew out the Hook, finding his Mistake.

*Eighthly*, Let your Fly fall first into the Water ; for if your Line fall first, it scares the Fish, and therefore you must draw again, and cast.

*Ninthly*, When you Angle in flow Rivers, or still Places, with your Artificial Fly, cast it over cross the River, and  
let



let it sink a little in the Water, and draw it gently back again, so as you raise no Circles, nor break the Water; and let the Fly float gently with the Current, and hereby you will find excellent Sport.

*Lastly*, Take Notice that your Salmon-flies must be made with their Wings standing one behind the other, whether two or four. He delights in the finest gawdiest Colours you can chuse, in the Wings chiefly, which must be long, and so must the Tail.

---

### *Of Ground Angling.*

**I**F you fish under the Water for a *Trout*, it must be without a Float, only with a Plumb of Lead, or a Bullet, which is better, because it will rowl on the Ground. And this Way of Fishing is very good in cold Weather when the Fish swim very low: You must place this Bullet about nine Inches from the baited Hook; your top must be very gentle, that the Fish may more easily run away with the Bait, and not be scared with the Stiffness of the Rod. You must not strike as soon as you feel the Fish bite, but slack your Line a little, that he may the better swallow the Bait and Hook. When you strike, do it gently, for the least matter does it.

Let your Tackle be fine and slender, for that is better than your big and strong Lines, which serve only to fright the Fish.

You will find it a better way of Angling to do it without Float or Lead, only making use of a Garden-worm, drawing it up and down the Stream; by which you will take more *Trouts* than any other Way, especially if it be in a clear Day. The Morning and Evening are the chiefest Seasons for the Ground Line for *Trout*: But if the Day prove cloudy, or the Water muddy, you may Angle at Ground all the Day.



## Of Night-angling.

**G**reat Fish (especially *Trouts*) are like Bucks, wary and circumspect in their Self-Preservation, and know the Season most fit for them to feed without Danger; and that is the Night, as they suppose, thinking then that they most securely range abroad.

In your Night-angling take two great Garden-worms of an equal Length, and place them on your Hook; then cast them a good Distance, and draw them to you again, upon the Superficies of the Water, not suffering them to sink; to which End you must not use a Plummet. You may easily hear the Fish rise, and therefore give him some Time to swallow your Bait, then strike him gently. If he will not take it at the Top, sink your Bait, by adding some Lead, and order your self as at a Day-angling on the Ground.

I have frequently experienced it, that the best *Trouts* bite in the Night, rising most commonly in the still Deeps, but not usually in the Streams.

Instead of these Garden-worms you may use a black Snail, or a Piece of Velvet in its Likeness: This is a most excellent Night-bait for a *Trout*, and nothing like the black Snail for a *Chub* in the Morning early.

You may bait your Hook with a *Minnow* for a *Trout* thus: Put your Hook through the Point of his lower Chap; and draw it through; then put your Hook in at his Mouth, and bring the Point to his Tail; then draw your Line streight, and it will bring him into a round Compass: But be sure you so order his Mouth that the Water get not in.



*What Times are seasonable, and what unseasonable,  
to Angle in.*

**C**alm and clear Weather is very good to angle in ; but cool cloudy Weather in Summer is best ; but it must not be so boisterously windy as that you cannot guide your Tackle. The cooler the Weather is in hottest Months, the better it is : And if a sudden violent Shower hath disturbed and muddled the River, then is your Time to angle in the Stream at the Ground with a red Worm.

Likewise a little before the Fish spawn is a very good Time for Angling ; for then, their Bellies being full, they come into sandy Fords, and there rub their Bellies to loosen them, at which Time they will bite very freely.

If you intend to fish for *Carp* and *Tench*, you must commence your Sport early in the Morning, fishing from Sun-rising till eight of the Clock, and from four in the Afternoon till Night ; and in hot Months until it be very late.

In the Heat of Summer *Carp* will shew themselves on the very Rim of the Water ; at which Time, if you fish with a Lob-worm as you do with a Fly natural, you have excellent Sport, especially if it be among Reeds.

In *March*, *April*, *September*, and all the Winter, (in which Season Fish swim deep very near the Ground) I say, in those Months it is best fishing in a clear, serene, warm Day, for then they bite fastest : But all the Summer-time, Mornings, Evenings, and cool cloudy Weather are the best Times for Angling.

Here note, that by Experience you will find that Fish rise best at the Fly after a Shower of Rain that hath only beaten the Gnats and Flies into the River without muddying them. The proper Months and Times of the Day for the Fly are *March*, *April*, *May*, and the Beginning of *June* ; in which Months let your Times be in the Morning about nine, and between three and four in the

Y 3

After-



Afternoon. A warm Evening is very seasonable, if the Gnats play much.

After a clear Moon-shiny Night, if the Day succeeding prove cloudy, it is a very good Time for Angling; for, having abstained from Food all the Night, (for they will not stir for Fear in bright Nights) the next Day they become hungry and eager, and the Gloominess of the Day makes them bite boldly.

At the Opening of Sluices or Mill-dams go along with the Course of the Water, and you will find *Trouts* and other Fish will then come out to seek for what Food the Water brings down with it.

Having shewn you what Seasons are most proper and profitable to angle in, I will demonstrate to you such as are not.

And *First*, In the Extremity of Heat, when the Earth is parched with Drought, there is little Sport to be obtained, especially in muddy or clear shallow Rivers.

*Secondly*, In the Winter or Spring-time, when there happeneth any hoary Frost, then will not the Fish bite kindly all that Day, unless it be in the Evening, and if that prove serene and pleasant: But it is not convenient to fish at any Time when the Wind bloweth so high that you cannot manage your Tools to Advantage.

*Thirdly*, Sheep shearing Time is an Enemy to the Angler, for then the Fish glut themselves with what is wash'd off the Sheep, and will scarcely bite till that Season be over. Likewise sharp East and North nipping Winds do very much prejudice the Angler's Recreation: Neither is it good to fish immediately after Spawning-time; for at that Time their Appetite is much abated.

It is a very strange Thing to consider the natural Instinct in Fish, in foreknowing the Approach of a Shower of Rain; for I have tried, that upon the Rise of a Cloud that threatned a sudden Shower, they would not bite; from which Observation I have often saved my self from being wet to the Skin.

*Lastly*, If the preceding Night prove dark and cloudy, the succeeding Day will prove ineffectual for fishing, unless for small Fish; for at such Times the great ones prey abroad for the lesser, who, by Instinct knowing the Danger,



ger, hide themselves till the Morning ; and having fasted all Night, become then very hungry, whilst the great ones having gorged themselves, lie absconded all the Day long.

The next Thing we shall insist on, is the Way of taking several Sorts of Fish (as they are alphabetically set down) with several proper Baits according to the best of Experiences.

### *Of the BARBEL.*

**T**HE *Barbel* is so called by Reason of the Barb which is under his Nose or Chaps. He is a Leather-mouth'd Fish, that is, such a one as will not break his Hold when hook'd ; but will frequently break, if big, both Rod and Line.

They swim together in great Shoals, and are at worst in *April*, though not very good at any Time.

The Places where he loves most to resort, are where Weeds grow, or in a gravelly rising Ground, wherein he will dig and root like a Hog with his Nose : Not but that he frequents the strongest Swifts of Water sometimes, as deep Bridges or Wears, where he will so settle himself among the Piles and hollow Places, or amongst Moss or Weeds, that let the Water be never so swift, he will remain immoveable. This is his Custom in the Summer-time ; after which Times he retires into deep Waters, and there helps the Female to dig a Hole in the Sand, for her to hide her Spawn from being devoured by other Fish.

This Fish is of a delicate Cast and handsome Shape, with small Scales placed after a most curious Manner ; and as his Shape is curious, so is his Palate, for he will not eat any Thing but what is clean ; and therefore if you intend to make any Sport with him, your Bait must be very well scowred. The best for him is a Lob-worm, at which he will bite boldly, if you bait your Ground the Night before with big Worms cut in Pieces. For him you can never bait your Ground too much, nor can you fish for him too early or too late.



Gentles are also a very good Bait for him, if green ; and so is Cheese, made tough by keeping it in a wet Linnen Bag a Day or two : This Cheese, steeped in clarify'd Honey, and the Ground where you intend to fish baited therewith, will give you an Opportunity to catch Store enough of *Barbels*, if there be any thereabout. You may do well to bait your Hook with Cheese that is soft, and Sheep's Tallow, wrought into a Paste : But there is no Bait like the well-scowred Lob-worm, or Cheese steeped in Honey an Hour or two.

When you fish for this *Barbel*, let your Rod and Line be both long and strong ; on your Line let there be a running Plummet, that is, a Bullet with a Hole thro' the middle ; let a Knot or little Bit of Lead be placed a Foot or more above your Hook, to keep your Bullet from falling down on it : So your Worm will lie at the Bottom, where they always bite ; and when he takes your Bait the Plummet will lie, and not check the Fish ; and you may know by the Bending of the Top of your Rod when he bites, and likewise feel him with your Hand make a strong Snatch ; then strike, and you rarely fail, if you play him well, and tire him ; for as he is very subtle, so he is extraordinary strong and dogged to be dealt withal, and will so struggle, that if you manage him not dextrously, he will break your Line.

His best Time of biting is about Nine of the Clock, and the chiefest Time of fishing for him is at the latter End of *May, June, July*, and the Beginning of *August*.

### Of the BREAM.

**T**HERE are two Sorts of *Breams*, the one a fresh, and the other a salt-water Fish, yet neither differ much in Shape, Nature, or Taste.

I shall only speak of the fresh-water *Bream*, which at full Growth is a large and stately Fish, and breeds either in Ponds or Rivers ; but chiefly delights in the former, which, if he likes, he will not only grow exceeding fat, but



but will fill the Pond with his Issue, even to the Starving of the other Fish.

As for his Shape, it is very broad, and thick-scaled very excellently, with a forked Tail; his Eyes are large, but he hath a little sucking Mouth, disproportionate to his Body.

The Flesh of this Fish is accounted more pleasant than wholesome by some: But as for my Part, I am of the Judgment of the *French*, who have a great Estimation for it; and if you will but taste his Belly or Head, you will say it is most excellent Food.

The *Bream* spawneth in *June*, or the Beginning of *July*, and is easily taken; for after one or two gentle Turns he will fall upon his Side, and so you may draw him to Land with Ease. The best Time of Angling for him, is from *St. James-tide* till *Bartholomew-tide*; for having had all the Summer's Food, they are exceeding fat.

The *Bream* is a great Lover of red Worms, especially such as are to be found at the Root of a great Dock, and lie wrapt up in a round Clue; also he loves Paste, Flag-worms, Wasps, green Flies, Butter-flies, and a Grass-hopper with his Legs cut off.

The Way of taking *Breams* is thus: First bait the Ground (where you know they resort) with a convenient Quantity of sweet ground Barley Malt, boiled but a little while, and strained when it is cold: Go with it to the Place about Nine of the Clock at Night; then take your Malt, and squeezing it between your Hands, throw it into the River, and it will sink. If the Stream run hard, cast in your squeezed Balls a little above the Place you intend to angle in. Having thus baited your Ground, in the Morning bait your Hook with the greatest red Worm you can get; you may find them in Gardens, or Chalky Commons, after a Shower of Rain; of which you must store your self before-hand, keeping them a Month at least in dry Moss, changing the Moss every three Days. Having baited your Hook so that the Worm may crawl to and fro, for the better inticing the Fish to bite without Suspicion, observe where your Fish play most, and stay longest, which commonly is in the broadest, deepest, and stillest Part of the River, generally in  
deep



deep and still black Waters ; then plumb your Ground, and fish within half a Inch of it ; for although you shall see some *Breams* play on the Top of the Water, yet these are but the Centinels for them beneath.

You may have three or four Rods out at a Time, stuck in the Bank Side, and let them be long, the Floats Swan or Goose Quills, which must be sunk with Lead, the Tops bearing above Water about half an Inch. Let your Rods be cast in one above the other, about a Yard and half distant ; and then withdraw your self from the Bank so far, that you can perceive nothing but the Top of the Float ; and when you perceive it sink, then creep to the Water Side, and give it as much Line as you can : If it be a *Carp* or *Bream*, they will run to the other Side ; then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a Bent a little while, but do not pull, for then you spoil all ; but you must first tire them before you can land them, being very shy. Of the two, the *Carp* is the worst, being more brisk and strong.

Here take Notice by the Way, if *Pike* or *Pearch* be thereabout, it will be but a Folly to think of killing *Carp* or *Bream* ; and therefore you must remove those Obstacles, by fishing them out at first. And to the Intent you may know whether there be those Fish of Prey thereabout, take a small *Bleak* or *Gudgeon*, and bait it, setting it alive among your Rods, two Foot deep from your Float, with a little red Worm at the Point of your Hook ; if a *Pike* be there, he will certainly snap at it.

### Of the BLEAK.

THE *Bleak* is an eager Fish, and is caught with all Sorts of Worms bred on Trees or Plants, also with Flies, Paste, Sheep's Blood, &c. you may angle for them with half a score Hooks at once, if you can fasten them all on. Also in an Evening the *Bleak* will take the natural or artificial Fly.

If it be a warm clear Day, there is no Bait so good for a *Bleak* as a small Fly at the Top of the Water, which they



they will take at any Time of the Day, but especially in the Evening: There is no Fish that yields better Sport for a young Angler than this, for they are so eager that they will leap out of the Water at the Bait.

If the Day be cold and cloudy, Gentles or Cadice are best, about two Foot under Water.

This same *Bleak* by some is called a fresh-water Sprat, or River Swallow, by Reason of his continual Motion.

Some would have him called *Bleak* from the whitish Colour and that is only under his Belly, for his Back is of a pleasant Sea-green.

There is another Way of taking *Bleaks*, by whipping them in a Boat, or on a Bank Side, in swift Water, in a Summer's Evening, with a Hazle Top, about five or six Foot long, and a Line twice the Length of the Rod; but the best Way is with a Drabble, that is, tye eight or ten small Hooks along a Line, two Inches above one another, the biggest Hook the lowermost, by which you may sometimes take a better Fish, and bait them with Gentles, Flies, or small red Worms, by which Means you may take half a dozen, or more, at one Time.

### Of the BULL-HEAD, or MILLER's THUMB.

**T**HE *Bull-Head* is a Fish which hath a broad Head and wide Mouth, with two broad Fins near his Eyes, and two Fins under his Belly: Instead of his Teeth his rough Lips assist them in nibbing at the Bait. He hath Fins also on his Back, and one below the Vent; and his Tail is round, his Body being all over covered with whitish, blackish, and brownish Spots.

They begin to spawn about *April*, and are full of Spawn all the Summer Season. The *Bull-Head's* common Habitation is in Holes, or among Stones in clear Water in Summer; but in the Winter he takes up his Quarters with the *Eel* in the Mud: So doth the *Loach* and *Min-*

*now*;



*now* ; or we cannot guess otherwise where their Winter-abode should be.

He is easily taken in the Summer, for he is lazy and simple. You may see him in hot Weather lie sunning himself on a flat Stone or gravelly Ground, at which Time you may put your Hook (which must be baited with a small Worm) very near the Mouth, at which he seldom refuseth to bite, so that the veriest bungling Angler may take him.

He is an excellent Fish for Taste, but of so ill a Shape, that many Women care not for dressing him, he so much resembles a Toad.

### Of the CHEVIN.

**T**HE *Chevin* spawneth in *March*, and is a very strong (yet unactive) Fish, yielding in a very little Time after he is struck. The larger he is, the quieter he is taken.

As for his Food, he loveth all Sorts of Worms and Flies, also Cheese, Grain, black Worms, flitting their Bellies that the white may appear: He loveth to have his Bait large, and Variety of Baits at one Hook. He delights very much in the Pith that grows in the Bone of an Ox's Back, of which you must be careful in taking off the tough outward Skin, without breaking the tender inward Skin.

Early in the Morning angle for your *Chevin* with Snails; but chuse some other Bait for him in the Heat of the Day, for then he will not bite at them. In the Afternoon fish for him at Ground or Fly. There is no Fly he loveth better than a great Moth, with a great Head, whose Body is yellow, with whitish Wings, which is to be found commonly in Gardens about the Evening. He will not stick sometimes to snap a *Lamprey*.



## Of the CHAR.

I Could never read, nor hear, that the *Char* was taken any where but in a Mere in *Lancashire*, called *Winander-Mere*, the largest, according to Report, that is in the Kingdom of *England*, being ten Miles in length, and as smooth as a Bowling-green at the Bottom.

This *Char* is spotted like a *Trout*, and its Dimension seldom exceeds seventeen Inches, or a Foot and half. This Fish is delicate Food, having scarce a Bone but what is on the Back. Now since the Place is so remote from *London* where these *Chars* are taken, I shall forbear to trouble our City-Angler with Rules and Directions how to Angle for him, and pass to such Fish as are frequently found in every River here near adjacent.

## Of the C H U B.

THIS Fish hath several Appellations; for he is called a *Chub*, a *Chavender* by the *French*, by some a *Villian*, by others a *Cheven*. As for my part, call him what you please, I like him not for these Reasons: First, he is full of small forked Bones dispersed every where throughout his Body; next, he eats very waterish; and lastly, this Fish is unfirm, and, in my Opinion, in a manner tasteless.

Of all Fish he is the best to enter a young Angler, for he is very easily taken: However, give me leave to prescribe you some more Rules than what I have already shewn in the Angling for the *Cheven*, which is the same with the *Chub* or *Chavender*.

You must find out some Hole, where you shall have Twenty, or more of them together, in a hot Day, floating almost on the very Surface of the Water: Let your Rod be long and strong, and your Line not above a Yard or two long, very strong, and an indifferent large Hook; then bait your Hook with a Grasshopper, bob your  
Grasshopper



Grashopper up and down on the top of the Water, and if there be any Chub near he will rise ; but so abscond your self that you may not be seen, for he is a very fearful Fish, and therefore the least Shadow will make him sink to the bottom of the Water, yet he will rise again suddenly : This is called Bobbing.

Having baited your Hook, drop it gently some two Foot before that *Chub* you have elected by your Eye to be the best and fairest, and he will instantly bite greedily thereat, and be held so fast by reason of his Leather Mouth, that he can seldom break his Hold : And therefore you may do well to give him Play enough, and so tire him ; otherwise you may endanger your Line.

If you cannot find a Grashopper, then bait your Hook with any kind of Fly or Worm, as I said before, as Dors, Beetles, Bobs, Cod, or Case worms.

When you fish for the *Chub* with a Fly, Grashopper, or Beetle, it must be at the Top of the Water ; if with other Baits, underneath.

In *March* and *April* Angle for your *Chub* with Worms ; in *May*, *June* and *July*, with Flies, Snails, or Cherries. Where note, he will rarely refuse a Grashopper on the Top of a swift Stream, nor at the Bottom, the young humble Bee. In *August*, *September*, &c. make use of a Paste made of Parmisan, or *Holland* Cheese, pounded with Saffron in a Mortar, adding thereunto a little Butter. Others make a Paste of Cheese and Turpentine for the Winter Season, at which Time the *Chub* is in his Prime ; for then his forked Bones are either lost, or converted into a Gristle ; and he is excellent Meat baked.

In hot Weather Angle for him in the Middle of the Water, or near the Top thereof ; but in cold Weather fish for him near the Bottom.

To finish all other Discourse of this *Chub*, *Cheven*, or *Chavender*, I shall only say that his Spawn is excellent ; and if he be large, the Head, when the Throat is well wash'd, is the best Part of the Fish.



## Of the C A R P.

**I**T is confest by all, that the Carp is the Queen of all Fresh-water Fish, being not only a good, but subtil Fish, and living longest of all Fish (excepting the *Eel*) out of his proper Element. Those that die soonest are *Herrings*, for Salt-water ; and for Fresh-water, *Trouts*.

*Carps* are observed to breed several Months in one Year ; and for this Reason you shall hardly ever take either Male or Female without Melt or Spawn. They breed ever more naturally in Ponds than in running Water : In the latter very seldom or never ; and where they breed, they breed innumera- bly.

He that intends to Angle for a *Carp*, must arm himself with a world of Patience, by reason of the extraordinary Subtilty and Policy of that Fish : They always chuse to lye in the deepest Places, either of Ponds or Rivers, where is but a small running Stream. Next, you are to observe, that the *Carp* will seldom bite in cold Weather ; and in hot Weather, you cannot be too early, or too late, at your Sport ; and if he bite, you need not fear his Hold, for he is one of those Leather-mouth'd Fish, who have their Teeth in their Throat.

When you Angle for the *Carp*, your Rod and Line must be strong ; and because he is so very wary, it is good to intice him by baiting the Ground with coarse Paste : In *March* he seldom refuseth the red Worm, the *Cadice* in *June*, nor the Grasshopper in *July*, *August*, and *September*.

The *Carp* takes delight in Worms or sweet Pastes, of which there are great Variety ; the best are made up of Honey and Sugar, and ought to be thrown into your Water some Hours before you intend to Angle ; or if you throw in your Paste, made into small Pellets, two or three Days before, it will not be the worse, especially if you throw in also Chickens-Guts, Garbage, or Blood incorporated with Bran, or Cow-Dung.

You may make your Paste in this manner : Take a convenient Quantity of Bean-flour, or any other Flour, and mingle it with the Flesh of a Cat cut small ; make up this Composition with Honey, and then beat them altogether



ther in a Mortar so long, till they are so tough, as to hang upon a Hook without washing off. For the better effecting thereof, mingle therewith some whitish Wooll; and if you would keep it all the Year, add thereunto some Virgins-wax and clarified Honey.

If you fish with Gentles, anoint them with Honey, and put them on your Hook, with a Piece of Scarlet dipt in the like. This is the most approved Way to deceive and captivate the subtil *Carp*. Honey, and Crums of White Bread mixt together, is a very good Paste for a *Carp*.

*An approved Way how to take Carp in a muddy Pond.*  
Vide Chap. of the Tench.

### Of the DACE and DARE.

THE *Dace*, *Dare* and *Roach*, are much of a kind, both in manner of Feeding, Cunning, Goodness, and commonly in Size.

The *Dace* or *Dare* will bite at any Fly, but especially at the *Stone cadice-fly*, or *May-fly*, the latter end of *April*, and the beginning, or most part of *May*, is a most excellent Bait, floating on the Top of the Water; which you may gather great Quantities of from the Reeds and Sedge by the Water-side, or from Hawthorn Bushes, which grow near the Bank of a shallow Gravel-stream, on which they very much delight to hang: Also at *Ant-flies*, of which the blackish is the best, which are found in Mole-hills about the Months of *June*, *July*, *August* and *September*. The Way of preserving them for your Use is, to put them alive into a Glass-bottle, having first laid therein some of the moist Earth from whence you gather'd them, with some of the Roots of the Grass of the said Hillock: Having laid your *Ant-flies* in gently without prejudicing their Wings, lay a Clod of Earth over it: Thus you may keep them a Month, if you bruise them not. If you would keep them longer, put them into a large Rundlet, having first wash'd the inside with Water and Honey: Having thus kept them three Months, they are as incomparable Bait in any Stream and clear Water, either for



*Dace*, *Dare*, or *Roach*, and are good also for a *Chavender*, Fishing within a Handful from the Bottom.

The best time for making use of the *Ant-fly*, is when they swarm, and that is generally about the latter end of *July*, and beginning of *August*: They will cover a Tree, or Bush, with their Multitude, and then if you make use of them, you may load your self with *Roach*, or *Dace*, in a small time.

In a warm Day he rarely refuseth a Fly at the Top of the Water: But remember, that when you fish under Water for him, it is best to be within an Handful, or something more, of the Ground.

If you would fish for *Dace* or *Dare*, in Winter, then about *Alhallontide*, where-ever you see Heath, or sandy Ground, ploughing up, follow the Plough, and you will find a white Worm with a red Head, as big as the Top of a Man's little Finger. You may know where most of them are, by the Number of Crows and Rooks, which sit on the ploughed Land. The Worm is very soft, and is by some termed a Grub, which is nothing but the Spawn of a Beetle. Gather what Quantity you think fit, and put them into a Vessel with some of the Earth, from whence they were taken, and you may keep them all the Winter.

Lastly, the young Brood of Wasps and Bees, having their Heads dipt in Blood, are an excellent Bait for *Dace* or *Dare*.

### Of the E E L.

I Shall not trouble you with variety of Discourses concerning the Being of an *Eel*, whether they breed by some Generation, or Corruption, as Worms, or by certain glutinous Dew-drops, which falling in *May* or *June*, on the Banks of some Ponds or Rivers, are by the Heat of the Sun turned into *Eels*: And these are by some called *Yelvets*, of which I have seen Cakes made, and have eaten thereof when fried, with much Satisfaction: I say, waving away all Discourses of this Nature, I shall only

Z

tell



tell you, that some have differenced *Eels* into four Sorts chiefly : Namely, the Silver *Eel*, a greenish *Eel*, (which is called a *Creg*) a blackish *Eel*, with a broad flat Head ; and lastly, an *Eel* with reddish Fins.

I shall only speak of the first, which is the Silver *Eel*. This *Eel* is generally believed to have its Being from Generation, but not by Spawning ; but the young coming from the Female alive, and not bigger than a small Needle.

This *Eel* may be caught with several Sorts of Baits, but principally with powder'd Beef. A Garden-worm, or Lob, or a *Minnow*, or Hen's-gut, or Garbage of Fish, is a very good Bait : But some prefer a *Pride*, which others call a *Lamprey*, beyond any yet named.

As *Eels* abscond themselves in Winter, taking up their constant Residence in the Mud, without stirring out for six Months; so in the Summer they take no Delight to be abroad in the Day, and therefore the most proper Time to take them is in the Night, with any of those Baits aforesaid, fastning your Line to the Bank-side, with your Laying-hooks in the Water. Or you may throw in a Line with good Store of Hooks baited, and plumb'd with a Float, to discover where the Line lyeth, that in the Morning you may take it up with your Drag-hook.

There is another Way of taking *Eels*, and that is by *Sniggling*. This *Sniggling* is nothing else but taking in the Day-time a strong Line and Hook baited with a Lob, or Garden-worm, and making such Holes and Places where the *Eels* use to abscond themselves in the Day-time near Wears, Mills, or Flood-gates, and gently, by the help of a Stick, putting your Bait into such Holes where you imagine *Eels* are : And if there be any, you shall be sure to have a Bite ; but then have a care you pull not too hard, lest you spoil all. Here note, that the Top of your Stick must be cleft, wherein you must put a strong Hook, but of a narrow Compass ; which Stick must guide the Bait into the Hole where the *Eel* is, by which means, if your Tackling hold, you may get as large *Eels* as any are in the River, Mill-pond, or Flood gate, &c. And as this Way of Fishing is called *Sniggling*, so it is called *Broggling* for *Eels*.



*Bobbing for Eels* is done after another Manner: That is, Take very large Lobs, scower them well, and with a Needle run some strong twisted Silk through them from End to End; take so many as that you may wrap them about a Board a Dozen times at least, then tye them fast with the two Ends of the Silk, that they may hang in so many Hanks; then fasten all to a strong Cord, and about a Handful and a half above the Worms, fasten a Plumb of three Quarters of a Pound in Weight, and fasten your Cord to a strong Pole: Having so done, fish in muddy Water, and you will feel the *Eels* tug lustily at them. When you think they have swallowed them as far as they can, gently draw up your Line, till you have brought your *Eels* to the Top of the Water, and then bring them ashore as fast as you can. The Gentleman (and an experienc'd Angler) from whom I received this Instruction, told me, he hath taken six or seven large *Eels* at a time this very Way.

There is another way also for taking of *Eels*, (though it be somewhat laborious, and for that reason is best to be made use of in cold Weather) and that is by an Instrument called an *Eel-spear*: It is made for the most part with three Forks, or Teeth, jagged on the sides; but those are better that have four. This you are to strike into the Mud at the Bottom of the River; and if you chance to light where they lye, you need not fear taking them if your Instrument be good.

If you would take very large *Eels* indeed, bait your Night-hooks with small *Roaches*, and let the Hooks lye in the Mouth of the Fish.

### Of the FLOUNDER.

I Shall not go about to tell you the Nature of a *Flounder*, or give you his Description, since he is a Fish so well known to every one.

In *April, May, June* and *July*, you may fish for the *Flounder* all Day long, either in a swift Stream, or in  
 Z 2 the



the still Deep, but best in the Stream. Your most proper Baits are all sorts of red Worms, Wasps, and Gentles.

---

### Of the GRAILINGS.

**W**hen you angle for the *Grailing*, you must head your Hook upon the Shank with a very slender narrow Plate of Lead, and let it be slenderest at the Bent of the Hook, that the Bait, which must be a large Grasshopper, may with more Facility come over it: At the Point let there be a Cad Bait, and keep the Bait in continual Motion; and forget not to pull off the Grasshopper's Wings which are uppermost.

In the Months of *March* and *April* there is an excellent Bait for the *Grailing*, which is called a *Tag-tail*: This Worm is of a pale Flesh Colour, with a yellow Tag on his Tail, somewhat less than half an Inch long, which is to be found in Marled Grounds and Meadows in fair Weather, but not to be seen in cold Weather, or after a Shower of Rain.

---

### Of the GUDGEON.

**T**HE *Gudgeon*, though small, is a Fish of so pleasant a Taste, that in my Opinion it is very little inferior to the *Smelt*. I need not describe him, he is so well known.

He spawns three or four Times in the Summer Season. His Feeding is much like the *Barbel's*, in sharp Streams and on Gravel, slighting all manner of Flies. He is easily taken with a small red Worm, fishing near the Ground.

This Fish is Leather-mouthed, and will not easily be lost off the Hook when struck. You may fish for him with Float, your Hook being on the Ground; or by Hand, with a running Line on the Ground, without Cork or Float.

Wasps,



Wasps, Gentles, and Cad-bits are good Baits for the *Gudgeon*, but the small red Worm the best; you may fish for them with two or three Hooks at once, and find very pleasant Sport where they rise any thing large. When you angle for them, stir up the Sand or Gravel with a long Pole, which will make them gather to that Place, and bite faster, and with more Eagernefs.

---

### Of the GUINIAD.

I Cannot say much of this Fish, only that it is excellent Food; and therefore I shall conclude my Discourse of the *Guiniad* with a very strange Observation; and that is, this Fish is not found any where but in a large Water, called *Pemble-Mere*: But that which is most remarkable is this, that the River which runs by *Chester* hath its Head or Fountain in *Merionethshire*, and in its Course runs thro' this *Pemble-Mere*, which abounds as much with *Guiniads*, as the River *Dee* doth with *Salmon*, of each both affording great Plenty; and yet it was never known that any *Salmon* was ever caught in the *Mere*, nor never any *Guiniads* taken in the River.

*When Dee that in his Course fain in her Lap would lie,  
Commixion with her Store, his Stream she doth deny,  
By his Complexion prov'd, as he thro' her doth glide,  
Her Wealth again from his she likewise doth divide:  
Those white Fish that in her do wondrously abound,  
Are never seen in him; nor are his Salmons found  
At any Time in her; but as she him disdains,  
So he again from her as wilfully abstains.*

Drayton's Polyolb. Song 9.



## Of the LOACH.

**T**HE *Loach*, though a small yet dainty Fish: His Breeding and Feeding is in little and clear swift Brooks or Rivulets; here and in sharp Streams Gravel is his usual Food. He is small and slender, seldom exceeding three Inches in Length: He is bearded like a *Barbel*, having two Fins at his Sides, four at his Belly, and only one at his Tail, and is freckled with many black or brown Spots.

This *Loach* is commonly full of Spawn, which is, with the Flesh, a very grateful Food to weak Stomachs, affording great Nourishment. He is to be taken with a very small Worm, near the Ground, for he delights to be near the Gravel, and therefore is seldom seen on the Top of the Water.

## Of the MINNOW.

**T**HE *Minnow* is a Fish without Scales, and one of the least of the watry Inhabitants; but for the Excellency of Meat, he may (in my Opinion) be compared to any Fish of greatest Value and largest Size; and little things should not be despised. The Spawners are usually full of Spawn all the Summer long, for they breed often as it is but necessary, being both Prey and Baits to other Fish. They come into the Rivers generally about *March* and *April*, and there continue till the cold Weather drive them into their Winter Quarters again.

Of Colour this Fish is greenish, or wavy sky-colour'd; his Belly is very white, but his Back is blackish. This Fish will bite sharply at a small Worm; and if you will trouble your self to catch enough of them you may make an excellent Tansy of them, cutting off their Heads and Tails, and frying them in Eggs, sawcing them with Butter, Sugar, and Verjuice.

Anglers



Anglers use to find him oftener than they would; deep Places he seldom frequents. It is a Fish no way curious of his Feeding. For any Bait pleaseth him if he can but swallow it; he will strain hard for what he cannot gorge. The chiefest Food he loveth is a small red Worm, Wasps, or Cad Baits.

---

### Of the P O P E, or R U F F.

**T**HIS Fish, with a double Name is small, and seldom grows bigger than a *Gudgeon*; in Shape he is not unlike a *Pearch*, but esteemed better Food, being of Taste as pleasant and delightful as any Fish whatever.

The *Ruff* frequents the deepest running Places in a Gravel River, the exact Bottom of which being found by plumbing, and your Hooks being baited with small red or brandling Worms, (for I would have you fish with two or three) you will have incomparable Sport as long as you desire.

The *Ruff* makes excellent Sport with an unexperienced Angler, for he is a greedy Biter; and they are in great Shoals together, where the Water is deep, smooth, and calm. If you would catch a good round Quantity, bait your Ground with Earth, and angle for them with a small red Worm.

---

### Of the P I K E.

**T**HE *Pike* is a very long-liv'd Creature, and if we may credit Sir *Francis Bacon*, or *Gesner* that famous Brutologist, he out-lives all other Fish, which is Pity, he being as absolute a Tyrant of the fresh Waters, as the *Salmon* is the King thereof.

The larger the *Pike*, the coarser the Food, the smaller being ever best; contrary to the Nature of *Eels*, which improve their Goodness by their Bulk and Age.



He is a melancholick Fish, because he never swims in Shoals, but rests himself alone; and he is as bold as any Fish whatever, if we may believe report, which informs us, a *Pike* hath been known to fight with an Otter for a *Carp* he had taken, and was carrying out of the Water. Another bit a Mule by the Lip, as he was drinking, and stuck thereunto so fast, that by that Means the Owner of the Mule took him. Another bit a Maid by the Foot as she was washing. He will frequently devour his own kind unnaturally; from whence, I suppose, he may obtain the Name of a *Fresh-water Wolf*.

As the *Pike* is in Nature like the Hawk, a Bird of Prey, so he is like her in Generation, neither of them breeding but once a Year; and when the *Pike* spawns, it is between *February* and *March*. The best *Pikes* are found in Rivers, the worst in Meres or Ponds.

His common Food is either Pickerel-weed, Frogs or what Fish he can procure. This Pickerel-weed, some say, both feeds and breeds them.

There are two Ways of fishing for the *Pike*; first by the Ledger, secondly by the Walking-bait.

The Ledger-bait is fixed in one certain Place, whilst the Angler may be absent; and this must be a living Bait, either Fish or Frog. Of Fish, the best are, a *Dace*, *Roach*, or *Pearch*: For Frogs, the yellowest are the best. How to keep them alive on your Hook, your own Ingenuity will inform you.

When you intend to use the the Ledger-bait, if it be a Fish, stick your Hook through his upper Lip, and then fastening it to a strong Line, at least twelve or fourteen Yards in Length, tie the other End of the Line either to some Stake in the Ground, or to some Bough of a Tree, near the *Pike*'s usual Haunt, or where you think it is like he may come. Then wind your Line on a forked Stick, (big enough to keep the Bait from drawing it under Water) all about half a Yard, or somewhat more; and your Stick having a small Cleft at the End, fasten your Line therein; but so, that when the *Pike* comes, he may easily draw it forth, and have Line enough to go to his hold and pouch.



If your Bait be a Frog, put the Arming-wire in at his Mouth, and out at his Gills; and then with a fine Needle and Silk sew the upper part of his Leg with one Stich only to your Arming-wire, or tie his Leg above the upper Joint to the Wire; but as gently as you can, lest you hurt him.

I have seen excellent Sport with living Baits tied about the Bodies of two or three Couple of Ducks, driven over a Place where Store of *Pikes* have frequented. I have observed the *Pike* to strike so violently at the living Bait, that being hung, he hath drawn the Duck clear under Water. The like may be done with such Baits tied to Bladders, suffering them to float down the River, whilst you mind your Sport walking on its Bank.

The next Way of Angling for a *Pike* is with a *Trawl*, with a Winch to wind it up withal. As this Fish is very strong, so must your Tackle; and your Rod must not be very slender at Top, where must be placed a Ring for your Line to run through. Your Line must be Silk two Yards and a quarter next the Hook, which must be double, and strongly armed with a Wire about seven Inches: The rest of your Line may be strong Shoe-makers-thread. Upon the Shank of the Hook fasten some smooth Lead; and having placed your Hook in the Mouth of a *Minnow*, *Dace*, or *Roach*, with your Lead sink your Bait with his Head downward. Having so done, cast your Bait up and down: If you feel him at the Hook, give him length enough to run away with the Bait, and pouch it; which when you think he hath done, strike him with a smart Jerk, and so continue your Sport with him as long as you shall think fit. Take likewise this next Direction from a Friend that speaks not much different.

When you intend to Trawl, you may make choice either of *Roach*, *Dace*, *Bleak*, or *Gudgeon* to bait withal, (but for my own Part I always prefer the *Gudgeon*) which you must do thus: Put your Arming-wire in at the Mouth, and thrusting it along by the Back, bring it out again at the Tail, and there fasten it with a Thread, having your Reel in your Hand, and your Line fastened to your Hook, through a Ring, at the Top of your Rod, cast your Bait into some likely Place, and move it up and down in the Water as you walk gently by the River-



**River-side :** When you have a Bite (which you may easily feel, for he will give a good Tug) be sure to give him Line enough. You may let him lye almost a Quarter of an Hour before you strike ; and then have a care you do it not too fiercely, lest you endanger your Tackle, and lose the Fish to boot.

If you fish at Snap, you must give him leave to run a little, then strike, striking the contrary way to which he runneth. For this way of Angling, a Spring Hook is best ; and your Tackle must be much stronger than that for the Trawl, because you must strike with greater force.

Here note, that a large Bait more invites the *Pike* to bite, but the lesser takes him more infallibly, either at Snap or Trawl.

If you fish with a dead Bait for a *Pike*, this is a most excellent Bait : Take a *Minnow*, Frog that is yellow, *Dace*, or *Roach*, and having dissolved Gum of Ivy in Oil of Spike, anoint your Bait therewith, and cast it where *Pikes* frequent. Having lain a little while at Bottom, draw it to the Top, and so up the Stream, and you will quickly perceive a *Pike* follow it with much eagerness.

A *Pike* will bite all Baits, excepting the Fly, and bites best about Three in the Afternoon, in clear Water, with a gentle Gale, from the middle of Summer, to the latter end of *Autumn* ; he then bites best in still Places, or a gentle Stream : But in Winter he bites all the Day long. In the latter end, and beginning of the Spring, he bites most eagerly early in the Morning, and late in the Evening.

### Of the P E A R C H.

**T**HE *Pearch* is a Fish that is Hook-back'd, somewhat like a Hog, and armed with stiff Gristles, and his Sides with dry thick Scales. He is a bold Biter, which appears, by his daring to adventure on one of his own Kind, with more Courage than the *Pike* by much.

Some say there are two Sorts of *Pearches*, the one salt Water, and the other fresh : The first hath but one Fin on



on his Back, the latter two, which is more than most Fishes have.

He spawns but once a Year, and that is in *February* or *March*, and seldom grows longer than two Foot. His best time of biting is when the Spring is far spent, at which time you may take at one Standing all that are in one Hole, be they never so many.

His Baits are a *Minnow*, or little Frog ; but a Worm called a *Brandling* is best, if well scowred. When he bites give him Time enough, and that can hardly be too much.

The *Pearch* biteth well all the Day long in cool cloudy Weather ; but chiefly from Eight in the Morning till Ten, and from Three till about Six.

You may angle for him with Lob-worms, well scowred, Bobs, Oak-worms, Gentles, Colwort-worms, *Minnows*, Dors, Wasps, and Cad-baits.

He will not bite at all the Seasons of the Year, especially in Winter, for then he is very abstemious ; yet if it be warm he will bite then in the midst of the Day ; for in Winter all Fish bite best about the Heat of the Day.

If you rove for a *Pearch* with a *Minnow*, (which of all Baits yields the most delightful Recreation to the Angler) it must be alive, sticking your Hook through his upper Lip, or back Fin, and letting him swim about mid-water, or somewhat lower : for which Purpose you must have an indifferent large Cork, with a Quill on your Line.

I always make use of a good strong Silk Line, and a good Hook arm'd with Wire, so that if a *Pike* do come, I may be provided for him, and have by this Means taken several. I use also to carry a Tin-pot of about two Quarts, or three Pints, in which to keep my *Minnows*, or *Gudgeons*, alive : The Lid of the Pot is full of little Holes, so that I can give them fresh Water without opening it ; which ought to be about every quarter of an Hour, lest they die.

If you take a small Casting-net with you, you may at a Cast or two take Baits enough to serve you all Day without farther Trouble.

When you fish with a Frog, you must fasten the Hook through the Skin of his Leg, towards the upper Part thereof.



The *Pearch* is none of the Leather-mouth'd sort of Fishes ; and therefore when he bites, give him time enough to pouch his Bait, lest when you think all sure, his Hold break out, and you lose your Fish and your Patience too.

The best Place to fish for *Pearches* is in the turning of the Water, or Eddying in a good Gravel Scower, where you will not fail of them, and Ruffs before spoke of.

He that will take a *Pearch*, must first take Notice that this Fish feeds well, and bites freely. Let the Angler over Night bait his Ground with Lob-worms chopt in Pieces ; and in the Morning let him come to the Place, where he must plumb his Ground, then gage his Line, and bait his Hook with a red knotted Worm, or a *Minnow*, which is better in my Opinion : The Hook must be put in at the Back of the *Minnow*, betwixt the Fish and the Skin, that the *Minnow* may swim up and down alive, being buoyed up with a Cork or Quill, that the *Minnow* may have liberty to swim a Foot off the Ground. Let these Directions be carefully observed and followed, and the Angler need not fear the Frustration of his Expectations.

### Of the R U D.

**T**HE *Rud* hath a forked Tail, and is small of Size : Some say he is bred of the *Roach* and *Bream*, and is found in Ponds ; in some they are in a manner innumerable.

There is little less Difference between the *Rud* and *Roach*, than there is between the *Herring* and *Pilchard*, their Shape being much alike, only differing in Bulk or Bigness. Since the *Rud* is but a Bastard *Roach*, I shall speak no more of him, but Discourse of the genuine *Roach* only.



## Of the R O A C H.

**T**HE *Roach* is not looked on as any delicate Fish at all; if there be any thing prizeable, it is his Spawn.

The *Roach* is a very filly Fish, being every whit as simple as the *Carp* is crafty. They are more to be esteemed which are found in Rivers than in Ponds, although those that breed in the latter are of a much larger Size; yet the *Thames*, below Bridge, abounds with very large fat *Roach*, such as I may confidently affirm, exceed in Magnitude all others either in Ponds or Rivers.

The *Roach* is a Leather-mouth'd Fish, having his Teeth (as I said before) in his Throat, as all Leather-mouth'd Fish have.

In *April* the Cads, or Worms, are proper Baits to angle for *Roaches*; in Summer fish for them with small white Snails, or Flies: But note, they must be under Water, for he will not bite at the Top. Or, take a *May-fly*, and with a Plumb sink it where you imagine *Roaches* lye, whether in deep Water, or near the Posts and Piles either of Bridge or Wear: Having so done, do not hastily, but gently, pull your Fly up, and you will see the *Roach* (if any there) pursue, and take it near the Rim of the Water, lest by Flight it should escape.

In Autumn you may fish for them with Paste, only made of the Crums of fine white Bread, moulded with a little Water, and the Labour of your Hands, into a tough Paste, coloured not very deep with red Lead, with which you may mix a little fine Cotton, or Lint, and a little Butter; these last will make it hold on, and not wash off your Hook, with which you must fish with much Circumspection, or you lose your Bait. In like manner in Winter you may angle for *Roach* with Paste; but Gentles are then the better Bait.

Take these next Observations experimentally tried by some of us, viz. There is another excellent Bait, either for Winter or Summer, and that is this: Take an Handful of well-dried Malt, and put it into a Dish of Water, and then having grubbed and washed it betwixt your Hands, till it be clean and free from Husks, put that

\*

Water



Water from it, and having put it into a little fresh Water, set it over a gentle Fire, and let it boil till it be pretty soft; then pour the Water from it, and with a sharp Knife, turning the sprout End of the Corn upward, take off the back Part of the Husk with the Point of your Knife, leaving a kind of inward Husk on the Corn, or else you spoil all: Then cut off a little of the sprout End, that the white may appear, and also a very little of the other End for the Hook to enter. When you make use of this Bait, cast now and then a little of it into the Water; and then, if your Hook be small and good, you will find it an excellent Bait either for *Roach* or *Dace*.

Another good Bait is the young Brood of Wasps or Bees, if you dip their Heads in Blood. So is the thick Blood of a Sheep, being half dried on a Trencher, and then cut into such small Pieces as will best fit your Hook: A little Salt will keep it from turning black, and make it the better.

Or you may take a Handful or two of the largest and best Wheat you can get, boil it in a little Milk till it be soft, then fry it gently with Honey and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in Milk.

The *Roach* Spawns about the Middle of May; and the general Baits by which he is caught are these: Small white Snails, Bobs, Cad-baits, Sheeps blood, all sorts of Worms, Gnats, Wasps, Paste, and Cherries.

The Way of fishing for *Roach* at *London-bridge* is after this manner: In the Months of *June* and *July*, there is great resort of those Fish to that Place, where those that make a Trade of it take a strong Cord, at the End whereof is fastened a three Pound Weight; a Foot above the Lead they fasten a Pack-thread of twelve Foot long to the Cord, and unto the Pack-thread, at convenient Distances, they add a Dozen strong Links of Hair, with *Roach*-hooks at them, baited with a white Snail, or Perriwinckle: Then holding the Cord in their Hands, the biting of the Fish draweth the Pack-thread, and the Pack-thread the Cord, which admonisheth them what to do: Whereby sometimes they draw up half a Dozen, sometimes less, but commonly two or three at one Draught.



## Of the STICKLEBAG.

THIS Fish is small, prickly, and without Scales, and not worth the Consideration, but that he is an excellent Bait for *Trouts*, especially if his Tail on the Hook be turned round, at which a *Trout* will bite more eagerly than at *Penk*, *Roach*, or *Minnow*. The *Loach* is every whit as good a Bait as the *Sticklebag*, provided you place either aright on the Hook. To the intent you may do it, take this Observation: The nimble turning of the *Penk*, *Minnow*, *Loach*, *Sticklebag*, is the Perfection of that sort of Fishing. That you may attain thereunto, note, that you must put your Hook into the Mouth of any the afore-said Baits, and out at his Tail, tying him fast with white Thread a little above it, in such manner that he may turn: After this sew up his Mouth, and your Design is accomplished. This way of Baiting is very tempting for large *Trouts*, and seldom fails the Angler's Expectation. This Fish in some Places is called a *Banstickle*.

## Of the SALMON.

THE *Salmon* evermore breed in Rivers that are not brackish, yet discharge themselves into the Sea, and Spawn commonly in *August*, which become *Samlets* in the Spring following. The Melter and Spawner having both performed their natural Duty, they then betake themselves to the Sea. I have known that when they have been obstructed in their Passage, they have grown so impatient, that, clapping their Tails to their Mouths, with a sudden Spring they have leapt clear over a Wear, or any other Obstacle which stood in their Way: Some having leapt short, have been taken by that Means. If they are so obstructed that they cannot find their Way to the Sea, they become sick, lean, and pine away, and die in two Years. If they Spawn in the mean time, from thence proceeds a small *Salmon*, called a *Skegger*, which will never grow great. It is the Sea that makes them grow big;  
but



but it is the fresh Rivers that makes them grow fat ; and so much the farther they are from the Sea up in the River, the fatter they grow, and the better their Food.

From a *Samlet* (which is but little bigger than a *Minnow*) he grows to be a *Salmon*, in as short time as a Gossin will grow to be a Goose.

A *Salmon* biteth best at Three of the Clock in the Afternoon, in the Months of *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, if the Water be clear, and some little Breeze of Wind stirring, especially if the Wind bloweth against the Stream, and near the Sea.

Where note, that he hath not his constant Residence, like a *Trout*, but removes often, coveting to be as near the Spring-head as he may, swimming generally in the deepest and broadest Parts of the River near the Ground ; and he is caught like a *Trout*, with Worm, Fly, or *Minnow*. The Garden-worm is an excellent Bait for the *Salmon*, if it be well scowred, and kept in Moss about twenty Days, after which time those Worms will be very clear, tough and lively.

There is a Way of Fishing for *Salmon* with a Ring of Wire on the Top of the Rod, through which the Line may run to what length is thought convenient, having a Wheel also near the Hand.

I have been told that there is no Bait more attractive of and eagerly pursued by the *Salmon*, and most other Fish, than Lob-worms, scented with the Oil of Ivy-berries, or the Oil of Polypodies of the Oak mixt with Turpentine ; nay, *Assa Fœtida* they say is incomparably good.

The Artificial Fly is a good Bait for a *Salmon* ; but you must then use a Trowl as for the *Pike*, he being a strong Fish. As the *Salmon* is a large Fish, so must your Flies be larger than for any other, with Wings and Tails very long.

You shall observe, when you strike him, that he will plunge and bounce, but doth not usually endeavour to run to the length of the Line, as the *Trout* will do ; and therefore there is less Danger of breaking your Line.

If you will angle for *Salmon* at Ground, then take three or four Garden-worms well scowred, and put them on  
your







Goose-egg, and throw it into a Pond within the Circumference of your Casting-net ; and between whiles throw in some Grains ; and when you think the Fish have found out the Baiting-place, then come in the close of the Evening (having baited very early in the Morning) and cast your Net over the baited Place : then take a long Pole with a large Fork made for the Purpose, and stir all about the Net ; for the *Carps* and *Tench* are stuck up beyond their Eyes in Mud, and stand exactly upon their Heads : Let the Net lye near half an Hour, still stirring with your Pole, if the Place be not too deep : When you have covered the Fish, you may go into the Pond, and take them out with your Hands ; but if the Water be deep, when you find the *Carps* begin to stir, (for they cannot stand long on their Heads in the Mud) then lift up the Crown of your Net bolt upright with a long Staff, that so the Fish may play into the Tuck of the Net.

Here note, that should you draw up your Net suddenly after you have cast it in, it is an hundred Pound to a Penny, whether you should take one *Carp*, or *Tench* ; but letting the Net lye, the Mud will choak them, if they remove not out of it.

Now here I cannot omit a very pleasant Story in my Opinion : A Gentleman having special *Carps* in his Pond, but not knowing how to take one of them, unless it were by Chance with Hook and Line ; I desired him that we might taste of his *Carps*, and modestly told him, a Brace of them would serve our Turns : He answered, I might freely have, if I knew how to catch them. Hereupon I prepared some Ingredient, and having baited a convenient Place very early in the Morning, at the dusk of the Evening we came with a Casting-net, and at the first Throw covered a great quantity of Fish, as hereafter will appear ; but not one seem'd to stir a jot under the Net, being all stuck into the Mud. Hereupon the Gentleman fell a laughing heartily, saying, *Sir, if I had no other Provision to trust to but what Fish you shall catch this Night, I believe I should go supperless to Bed.* Hearing him say so, I desired that he would have a little Patience, for the Fish were asleep, and I was at yet loath to disturb them ; but half an Hour hence, if he would stay



so long, I should make bold to awake them with a witness: So the Gentleman having smoaked a Pipe of Tobacco, a *Carp* began to play in the Net; and after this, in a very little Time, a great many more began to dance and skip: Whereupon, I lifted up the Crown, that they might play in the Tuck; and when I thought they were all got out of the Mud, I began to draw, and at one Draught drew up in the Net seventy odd *Carps*, great and small, to the Admiration and great Satisfaction of the Owner, and the rest of the Company, having, in all their Life-time, not seen the like before.

The *Tench* hath but small Scales, (and they smooth) yet very large Fins, with a red Circle about his Eyes, and a little Barb hanging at each Corner of his Mouth.

The Slime of a *Tench* is very medicinal to wounded Fishes; and therefore he is commonly called the *Fishes Physician*.

The *Pike* is so sensible of his Virtue, that he will not injure the *Tench*, though he will seize on any other Fish of his Size that comes in his Way: And when the *Pike* is sick or hurt, he applies himself to the *Tench*, and finds Cure, by rubbing himself against him.

The *Tench* hath a greater Love for Ponds than clear Rivers, and delights himself amongst Weeds, and loves to feed in very foul Water; and yet his Food is nourishing and pleasant.

The Time of Angling for him is early and late, both Morning, and Evening, in the Months of *June*, *July*, and *August*, or all Night in the still Parts of the River.

He is a great Lover of large red Worms, and will bite most eagerly at them, if you first dip them in Tar. The *Tench* loves also all Sorts of Paste, made up with strong-scented Oils, or with Tar; or a Paste made of brown Bread and Honey. He will bite also at a Cad-worm, a Lob-worm, a Flag-worm, green Gentle, Cad-bait, Marsh-worm, or soft boiled Bread Grain.



## Of the TORCOTH.

THE *Torcoth* is a Fish having a red Belly, but of what Estimation I know not ; for that, let the *Welchmen* speak, who best know him : For, as I have heard, he is only to be found in the Pool *Linperis* in *Carnarvanshire*. I only name him, that you may know there is such a Fish.

---

## Of the TROUT.

IT is observed, that the *Trout* comes in and goes out of Season with the Stag and Buck, and spawns about *October* and *November* : Which is the more to be wonder'd at, because most other Fish spawn in warm Weather, when the Sun by his Heat hath adapted the Earth and Water, making them fit for Generation.

All the Winter the *Trout* is sick, lean, and unwholsome, and you shall frequently then find him louzy. These Trout-Lice are a small Worm, with a big Head, sticking close to his Sides, and sucking Moisture from him that gave them being ; and he is not freed from them till the Spring or the Beginning of Summer, at which Time his Strength increaseth ; and then he deserteth the still deep Waters, and betakes himself to gravelly Ground ; against which he never leaves rubbing, till he hath cleansed himself of his Louziness ; and then he delights to be in the sharp Streams, and such as are swift, where he will lie in wait for *Minnows* and *May-flies* ; at the latter End of which Month he is in his Prime, being better and fatter in that Month, especially at the latter End thereof, than in any other throughout the whole Year.

There are several Sorts of *Trouts* highly prizeable ; as the *Fordidge Trout*, the *Amerly-Trout*, the *Bull-Trout* in *Northumberland*, with many more, which I shall forbear to mention, but only tell you what is generally observ'd ; that is, that the red and yellow *Trouts* are the best ; and as to the Sex, the Female is the best, having a less Head,  
and



and deeper Body than the Male. By their Hog Back you shall know that they are in Season, with the like Note for all other Fish.

The *Trout* is usually caught with a Worm, Minnow, or Fly natural or artificial. There are several Sorts of Worms, which are Baits for the Angler, the Earth-worm, the Dung-worm, the Maggot, or Gentle; but for the *Trout*, the Lob-worm and Brandling are the best, or Squirrel-tail, having a red Head, streak'd down the Back, and a broad Tail. The Brandling is found commonly in an old Dunghill, Cow-dung, Hogs-dung, or Tanners-bark. Here note, that whatever Worms you fish withal are the better for keeping; which must be in an Earthen Pot with Moss, which you must change often in Summer, that is, once in three or four Days, and in twice as long Time in Winter.

When you fish for a *Trout* by Hand on the Ground, take a Lob-worm, and clap your Hook into him a little above the middle, and out again a little below the same; then draw your Worm above the Arming of your Hook, making your first Entrance at the Tail End, that the Point of the Hook may come out at the Head End.

When you fish with a *Minnow*, take the whitest and middle-sized, for those are the best, and place him so on your Hook, that he may turn round when he is drawn against the Stream.

The best Instructions for putting the *Minnow* on the Hook, which I can lay down, are these: Put your Hook in at his Mouth, and out at his Gill, drawing it through about three Inches; then put the Hook again into his Mouth, and let the Point and Beard come out at his Tail; then the Hook and his Tail you must tie about with a fine white Thread; and let the Body of the *Minnow* be almost streight on the Hook: Then try against the Stream whether it will turn; where note, it cannot turn too fast. If you want a *Minnow*, a small *Loach* or *Sticklebag* will serve the Turn: If none of these can be gotten, you may in their Season have an Artificial one, made of Cloath, by one that is living, which I have found to be every whit as good a Bait as what are natural.

If you fish with a Natural or Artificial Fly, then follow such Directions as I have already prescribed in a foregoing



Chapter, which particularly discourses of Flies Natural and Artificial.

---

Of the UMBER.

IT is the Opinion of some, that the *Umber* and *Grailing* differ only in Names; and are of a *Trout* Kind, but seldom grow to the Bigness of a *Trout*, I having never seen nor heard any exceed the Length of eighteen Inches.

He frequents such Rivers as the *Trouts* do, and is taken with the same Baits, especially the Fly; and, being a simple Fish, is more bold than the *Trout* is.

In the Winter he absconds himself, but after *April* he appears abroad, and is very gamefome and pleasant. He is very tender-mouth'd, and therefore quickly lost after he is struck. For what more may be said, I refer you to the Chapter of the *Grailing*.

THUS have I given you an Alphabetical and Summary Account of the Nature of Fish, and the several Ways to take them, according to ancient and modern Experience: I shall only give you a short Discovery of their Haunts: And so I shall conclude this Treatise.

Next to the Art of taking Fish, the Knowledge of their Haunts and proper Places to find them in, according to their Kinds, is rightly to be considered: For not knowing what Rivers or what Parts of them are fittest for your Baits, or what Baits best suit with each River, and the Fish therein contained, you only angle at Adventure, and instead of reaping Satisfaction, you only lose your Pains and your Labour.

Wherefore, in the first Place you are to understand, that Fishes change Places with the Season. Some in the Summer keep always near the Top or Rim of the Water; others are continually at the Bottom. For the first you may angle with a Float or Fly; the latter are to be found at the Arches of Bridges, Mill-ponds, Wears, Flood-gates, &c. In Winter all Fish in general fly into deep Waters.

The



The *Barbel*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Ruff* delight in sandy gravelly Ground. The deepest Part of the River, and the Shadows of Trees are equally grateful.

The *Bream*, *Pike*, and *Chub* chuse a Clay ouzy Ground. The *Bream* delights most in the midst of a River whose Stream is not too rapid, but gently gliding: The *Pike* is for still Waters, full of Fry; and that he may the better and securer seize his Prey, he frequently absconds himself amongst Water-docks, under Bushes or Bull-rushes.

*Carp*, *Tench*, and *Eel* frequent still Waters, and what are foul and muddy. *Eels* lie lurking under Roots or Stones: The *Carp* is for the deepest Place of the Water; and where there are green Weeds the *Carp* and *Tench* delight most of all.

*Pearch* delight in gentle Streams not too deep, yet they must not be shallow; and a hollow Bank is their chiefest Refuge.

*Gudgeons* love sandy Ground in gentle Streams, they affect small Rivers above the large, or small Brooks, and bite best in the Spring till they spawn.

The *Salmon* delights most in Rivers which ebb and flow, are large, and have a swift Current; in such Rivers are the greatest Plenty. If the Rivers are rocky or weedy, so much the better.

*Shad*, *Thwait*, *Plaice*, and *Flounder* have the greatest Love for Salt or brackish Waters, which ebb and flow.

The *Umber* affects Marly Clay Grounds, clear and swift Streams: But they must then be far from the Sea, for they seldom come near it.

There are many more Rules to be observed, which generally hold good, but I will not conclude them infallible, since I have found some of them (well credited) very false; wherefore let every Man's Experience be his Guide in the Knowledge of the Nature of Rivers, and the Fish their Inhabitants. And therefore it will be very requisite for him that would be compleat in the Art of Angling, diligently to observe whatever River or Water he fisheth in, whether it be muddy, slimy, stony, gravelly, swift, or of a slow Motion. And as he must have a competent Knowledge in the Rivers, Ponds, or all fishable Waters he is acquainted with; so must he know the Nature of each Fish, and what Baits are most proper for every kind, or



shall never attain to the Reputation of a good experienced Angler.

I shall conclude this Treatise with the experimental Observations of an ingenious Gentleman, who hath practised the Art of Fishing many Years; and therefore the more fit to give Directions for the right Use of the Angle.

---

*Experimental Observations, and useful Directions for the right Use of the Angle; and is a true and brief Epitome of the whole Art and Mystery of the Fishing Recreation.*

None certainly is so ignorant to address himself to the River for Recreation, but he will be mindful to carry necessary Tackle with him: Being compleatly furnished therewith, let him in the first Place consult Sun, Wind, Moon, Stars, and change of Air; for without observing Times and Seasons, his Tackle, tho' never so good, will prove ineffectual.

Wherefore observe, if the Sun be obscured with Clouds, and his Face hidden from your Eyes, then set forth your Ground-baits, and use your brightest Flies. If the Sun shine out gloriously, then use the darkest of your Flies. Here note,

*If that the Wind be in the South,  
It blows the Fly in the Trout's Mouth.*

If the Weather be warm, it is no matter in what Point of the Compass the Wind lyeth, so that it blow not too high; the same Observation holds good at Night as well as Day. If the Sun shine bright, the Moon prove clear, or the Stars glitter, there is but little Sport to be expected.

Gentlemen, I write to you that have more than common Experience in the Art of Angling, and therefore I hope you would not expect that I should here inform you how to prosecute the little Recreation of the *Thames*, how to catch *Bleak*, *Dace*, &c. since there is hardly any young Beginner that is ignorant thereof: Wherefore omitting such trifling Discourse, I shall fall upon that  
which



which is somewhat more material ; and first, how to take *Eels*. When the Angler stays a Night or two, let him take five or six Lines (or what Number he thinks fit) each of them about sixteen Yards long, and at every two Yards long make a Noose to hang on a Hook armed either to double Thread, or Silk-twist, for it is better than Wire. His Hooks must be baited with *Millers-thumbs*, *Loaches*, *Minnows* or *Gudgeons* : To every Noose there must be a Line baited, and all the Lines must lye cross the River in the deepest Place, either with Stones or pegged lying in the Bottom ; you must watch all Night, or rise as soon as ever it is break of Day (or else you will lose divers that were hung) and draw up the Lines, on each of which I have known two or three *Eels* or *Grigs*.

Every one that delights in Fly-fishing, ought to learn the Way of making two Sorts of Artificial Flies, the Palmer ribbed with Silver or Gold, and the *May-fly*, both which are the Grounds of all Flies.

In the making of the Palmer-fly he must arm his Line on the inside of the Hook ; then with a Pair of Scissars let him cut so much of the brown of a Mallard's Feathers as he shall think sufficient to make the Wings ; then let him lay the outermost part of the Feather next the Hook, and the point of the Feather towards the Shank of the Hook ; let him whip it three or four times about the Hook with the same Silk he armed the Hook, then make his Silk fast : Then let him take the Hackle of the Neck of a Cock or a Capon (but a Plover's Top is best) and let him take off the one side of the Feather ; and then he must take the Hackle-filk, or Gold or Silver Thread ; and let him make all these fast at the bent of the Hook, working them up to the Wings ; every bout shifting his Fingers, and making a stop, then the Gold will fall right, and let him make fast : Then work up the Hackle to the same Place, and make it fast : After this let him take the Hook betwixt his Finger and Thumb in the left Hand with Needle or Pin, and part the Wings in twain ; then with the Arming-filk (having fastned all hitherto) let him whip it about as it falleth cross between the Wings, and with his Thumb he must turn the point of the Feather towards the bent of the  
\* Hook



Hook, then let him work it three or four times about the Shank, so fasten it, and view the Proportion for other Flies.

If he makes the Grounds of Hogs-wooll, sandy, black, or white, or Bears-wooll, or of a red Bullock two Years old, he must work these Grounds on a waxed Silk, and must arm and set on the Wings as aforesaid.

The Body of the *May-fly* must be wrought with some of these Grounds which will be admirably well when ribbed with black Hair. The *Oak-fly* he must make with Orange-Tawny and Black, for the Body ; and the brown of the Mallard's Feathers for the Wings.

The next thing to be observed, is the Floating for Scale-fish in Pond, or River : First, take Notice that the Feed brings the Fish together, as the Sheep to the Pen ; and there is no better in all Angling for Feed, than Blood and Grains ; though Paste is good, yet inferior to these.

Next, let him observe to plumb his Ground, Angling with fine Tackle, as single Hair for half the Line next the Hook, round and small plumb according to his Float. There is a small red Worm with a yellow tip on his Tail, which is an excellent Bait for this sort of Fish, or any other. Other special Baits are these : Brandlings, Gentles, Paste or Cadice (otherwise called Cock-bait.) They lie in gravelly Husk under the Stones in the River.

There is a Way of Trowing for *Pike* with an Hazle Rod of Twelve Foot long, with a Ring of Wire on the Top of the Rod for the Line to run through : Within two Foot of the Bottom of the Rod, there is a Hole made to put in a Wind to turn with a Barrel, to gather up the Line and loose it at Pleasure : This is the best manner of Trowing.

There is another Way to take more *Pikes* either in Meer, Pond, or River, than any Trowler with his Rod can do, which is done after this manner.

Take a forked Stick with a Line of twelve Yards long wound upon it ; at the upper End have about a Yard, either to tye a Bunch of Flags, or a Bladder to buoy up the Fish, and to carry it from the Ground. The Bait must be a live Fish, either *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Roach*, or small *Trout* : The forked Stick must have a Slit in the one side of the Fork



Fork to put in the Line, that he may set his live Fish to swim at a Gage, that when a *Pike* taketh the Bait, he may have the full Liberty of the Line for his Feed. He may turn these loose either in Pond or River, in the Pond with the Wind all Day long ; the more the better : At Night let him set some small Weight that he may stay the Buoy till the Fish taketh it.

For the River he must turn all loose with the Stream ; the Hooks must be double, the Shanks must be somewhat shorter than ordinary ; for the shorter the Hook is off the Shank, without doubt it will less hurt the Fish : And it must be armed with small Wire well softened ; but certainly a Hook armed with twisted Silk is better.

If you arm your Hook with Wire, the Needle must be made with an Eye ; then must he take one of those living Baits, and with one of his Needles enter within a Straw's breadth of the Gill of the Fish, so pull the Needle betwixt the Skin and the Fish, then pull the Needle out at the hindmost Fin, and draw the Arming through the Fish, until the Hook come to lye close to the Fish's Body : Having so done, let him put off in Meere or Pond with the Wind ; in the River with the Stream : The more that he pulls off in the Meere or Pond, he is the likelier to have the greater Pastime.

There is a Time when *Pikes* go a Frogging in Ditches, and in the River to Sun them, as in *May*, *June*, and *July* ; at these times you shall hardly miss one in twenty ; and thus must the Angler deal with them. Let him take a Line of seven or eight Foot, and let him arm a large Hook of the largest Size that is made, and arm it to his Line ; let him lead the Shank of his Hook neatly, of such a Weight that he may guide the Hook at his Pleasure. He may strike the *Pike* that he sees with the bare Hook when he pleases. This Line and Hook doth far exceed Snaring.

In the taking of a *Carp* either in Pond or River, if the Angler intends to add Profit to his Pleasure, he must take a Peck of Ale Grains, and a good Quantity of any Blood, and mix the Grains together, with which let him bait the Ground wherein he intends to angle. This Feed will wonderfully attract the Scale-fish, as *Carp*, *Tench*,  
*Roach*,



*Roach, Dace, and Bream.* In the Morning early let him prosecute his Pastime, plumbing his Ground, and Angling for a *Carp* with a strong Line : The Bait must be either Paste, or a knotted red Worm ; by this Means he shall find Sport enough.

In the taking of a *Trout* with Ground-baits thus must the Angler do : In the first Place he must have a neat taper Rod, light before, with a tender Hazle Top. He may Angle with a single Hair of five lengths, one tied to the other for the Bottom of the Line, and a Line of three-hair'd Links for the upper Part ; and so if he have Room enough, he may take the largest *Trout* that swims in the River. He that angles with a Line made of three-hair'd Links at the Bottom, and more at the Top, may take *Trouts* ; but he that angles with one Hair, shall take five *Trouts* to the other's one : For this Fish is very quick-fighted ; therefore the Angler, both Day and Night, must keep out of Sight. He must angle with the Point of his Rod down the Stream.

He must begin to angle in *March* with the Ground-baits all Day long : but if it prove clear and bright, he must take the Morning and Evening, or else his Labour will be in vain.

He that angles with Ground-baits, must fit his Tackle to his Rod, and begin at the upper End of the Stream, carrying his Line with an upright Hand, feeling the Plummet running on the Ground some ten Inches from the Hook, plumbing his Line according to the swiftness of the Stream that he angles in, for one Plummet will not serve for all Streams.

For his Bait, let him take the red knotted Worm, which is very good where Brandlings are not to be had. The *Minnow* (or as some call it a *Penk*) is a singular Bait for a *Trout*, for he will come as boldly at it as a Mastiff-Dog at a Bear. It will be advantageous to him in his angling to use a Line made of three Silks and three Hairs twisted for the uppermost Part of the Line, and two Silks and two Hairs twisted for the Bottom, next the Hook, with a Swivel nigh to the Middle of his Line, with an indifferent large Hook. Let him bait his Hook with a *Minnow*, putting the Hook through the lowermost Part of his Mouth, so draw the Hook through ; then  
put



put the Hook in at the Mouth again, and let the Point of the Hook come out at the hindmost Fin ; then let him draw his Line, and the *Minnow's* Mouth will close, that no Water will get into his Belly. As I said before, he must angle with the Point of his Rod down the Stream, drawing the *Minnow* up the Stream, by little and little, nigh the Top of the Water : The *Trout* seeing the Bait will come most fiercely at it ; but the Angler must not then presently strike : This is a true Way without Lead ; for many times they will come to the Lead, and forsake the *Minnow*.

The next Direction is how to angle with a Fly for a *Trout*. In the first Place let the Angler fit himself with a Hazle of one Piece, or two set conveniently together, light and pliable. The lower Part of his Line, next the Fly, must be of three or four-hair'd Links ; but if he can attain (as aforesaid) to angle with a single Hair, he shall meet with more Profit and Pleasure.

Before he begin to angle, having the Wind on his Back, let him try how far he can cast his Line, or at what length his Fly, and let him be careful that the Fly fall first on the Water ; for if any of the Line light upon the Water, he had better to have stood still than to have thrown at all. He must always cast down the Stream, with the Wind behind, and the Sun before him ; it is a great Advantage to have either Sun or Moon before him.

*March* is the Month for him to begin to angle with the Fly ; but if the Weather prove windy or cloudy, there are several sort of Palmers that are good at that Time : The first is a black Palmer ribbed with Silver : The second a black Palmer with an Orange tawny Body : Thirdly, a Palmer, whose Body is all black : Lastly, there is a red Palmer ribbed with Gold, and a red Hackle mixed with Orange Cruel. These Flies serve all the Year long, Morning and Evening, whether windy or cloudy Weather. But if the Air prove serene, he may then imitate the Hawthorn-fly, which is all black and very small, and the smaller the better.

In *May* let him take the *May Fly* and imitate that, which is made several Ways : Some make them with a shammy



shammy Body; 'tis best with black Hair: Others make them with sandy Hogs-wooll, ribbed with black Silk, and winged with a *Malla d's* Feather several Ways, according to the Humour of the Angler. Another called the *Oak Fly*, is made of Orange-coloured Cruel, and black, with a brown Wing. Lastly, there is another Fly, the Body whereof is made of the strain of a Peacock's Feather, which is very good in a bright Day. These several Sorts of Flies will serve the whole Year, observing the Times and Seasons.

Here note, that the lightest Flies are for cloudy and dark Weather; the darkest for bright and light, and the rest for indifferent Seasons, for which his own Judgment, Discretion, and Experience, must guide him. Of late Days the Hogs-wooll of several Colours, the Wooll of a red Heifer, and Bears-wooll, are made use of, which make good Grounds, and excellent Pastime.

The *Natural-fly* is a sure Way of Angling to augment the Angler's Recreation. Now how to find them, take Notice that the *May-fly* is to be found playing at the River-side, especially against the Rain.

The *Oak-fly* is to be found on the But of an Oak, or an Ash, from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*: It is a brownish Fly, and stands always with his Head towards the Root of the Tree, very easy to be found.

The *Black-fly* is to be found on every Haw-thorn-bush, after the Buds are come forth.

Now with these Flies he must use such a Rod as to angle with the Ground-bait: The Line must not be so long as the Rod.

Let the Angler withdraw his Fly as he shall find it most convenient and advantageous in his Angling. When he comes to deep Water (whose Motion is but slow) let him make his Line about two Yards long, and drop his Fly behind a Bush, and he shall find incomparable Sport.

The way to make the best Paste, is to take a convenient Quantity of fresh Butter, as much Sheeps-suet that is fresh, a sufficient Quantity of the strongest Cheese can be gotten, with the Pith of an old stale white Loaf: Let all these be beaten in a Mortar till they come to a perfect Paste; and when the Angler intends to spend some Time

in



in Angling, let him put hereof the Quantity of a green Pea upon his Hook, and let him observe what pleasant Effects it will produce.

### An Angling SONG.

*C*ome lay by all Cares, and hang up all Sorrow,  
Let's Angle to Day, and ne'er think of to Morrow;  
And by the Brook-side as we Angle along,  
We'll chear up our selves with our Sport and a Song.

Sometimes on the Grass our selves we will lay,  
And see how the watery Citizens play:  
Sometimes with a Fly stand under a Tree,  
And chuse out what Fish our Captives shall be.

Thus void of all Care, we're more happy than they  
That sit upon Thrones, and Kingdoms do sway;  
For Scepters and Crowns Disquiet still bring,  
But the Man that's content is more blest than a King.





---

# The HUNTER.

---

## CHAP. I.

*Of Hunting-Horses in General, their Excellency and the Necessity and Benefit of the Art of Keeping.*

I Shall omit to speak in Praise of *Hunting* in General, since I would avoid (as much as might be) Repetitions, and that it is already done at the beginning of the foregoing Book, with more *Address* than I am Master of. But since that *Author* hath spoken nothing of the *Hunting-Horse*, which is a principal *Instrument* of the excellent *Recreation*, I desire leave to speak a *Word* in his behalf. In behalf, I say, of this noble Creature, to whom all that are followers of *Hunting* are oblig'd : Since it is by his *Strength* and *Vigour* that we gratify at Ease our Eyes and Ears with all the Pleasures that *Hunting* affords ; and without whose Assistance, a great Part of us cou'd enjoy it a little more than in Imagination.

But 'tis not to us only, that are *Huntsmen*, but to all *Mankind*, that the *Hunter* is, (or may be) serviceable. Has our *Prince*, our *Country*, occasion for our Service in the Field ? On what *Horse* can we venture our Lives more securely than on the *Hunter* ? His *Readiness* to obey the *Hand* and *Heel*, equal him to the *manag'd Horse*. He being us'd to gallop on all sorts of *Grounds*, as well steep Places, as deep Earths, has so steel'd his *Courage*, that he declines no *Military Service* you can put him on. Are there *Ambuscado's* to be laid, *Discoveries* to be made, speedy  
and



and long *Marches* to be performed ; or any other *Service*, wherein *Strength of Body*, *Purity of Wind*, or *Swiftness*, are requir'd ? The *General* may in any of these Cases relye on the *Hunter*, with as much Confidence, as on the *Horse* that is dress'd in the *Manage*.

In Times of Peace he is equally useful, not only for Pleasure, but also for Necessity and Profit. How diverting to the Eyes is a beautiful Horse after a Pack of Dogs ? And with how much Ease to our Bodies, and Delight to our Minds, are we carried up to them ; with so much Vigour and Pride to be discern'd in his Countenance, as if he emulated the Hounds in their Speed, and was desirous to excel them, in his Obedience to their common Lord.

How necessary is the Hunter beyond all other Horses, if his Master's urgent Affairs (where either Life or Fortune are in hazard,) exact the Performance of a long Journey in a short time ? If his Master, in hopes of Advantage, has match'd him against any other Horse ; how ready and willing is he, to perform the utmost that Nature is capable of, or his Master can reasonably expect from him ? And having Art joined to his natural Abilities, will not only excel all other Horses, but accomplish Things beyond his Master's Hopes or Expectations ; for without its Assistance in Dieting and Exercise, no Horse can follow the Hounds, or indeed undergo any other extream Labour, without hazarding the melting his Grease, the breaking of his Wind, or foundering him either in Feet or Body : All which are Consequences of immoderate Labour, and Ignorance in this Art.

That I may therefore give you some Light into its Mysteries, I shall first direct you how to breed such Horses that may be for Training ; or else instruct you how otherwise to procure them. Secondly, how to know by Shapes, Marks, and other Tokens, what Horse may be most convenient for your Purpose. Thirdly, how to diet him so, that he may perform all things within his Power, without Danger. Lastly, what manner of Exercise is most conducive to this Design : And on these Heads I intend to enlarge in my following Discourse.

But before I enter upon my Subject proposed, I think it necessary to answer four Objections, that may



be made against this Art of Dieting and Training Horses, that I may remove all Prejudice from the Minds of those, who think they may have Reason to oppose it; and that I may vindicate (with Truth) this Art, and clear it from all Aspersions.

The first Objection I shall mention is made by *de Grey* in his Epistle to the Reader, (Edit. 4th) where under the Umbrage of his Love to Horses, and in pity of the Hardships they undergo in Hunting, he extreamly inveighs against it, as the Source of all their Miseries. But that I may not be taxed of Prevarication by my Reader, for his Satisfaction, I shall set down his Words, which are these.

*If the Nobility and Gentry of this our Isle of Great Britain, did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horsemanship were, and how much they are esteemed and admired who are the true Professors thereof, they would labour more than they now do, to breed and to have good Horses; but it much troubled me to see, how little esteem Gentlemen have thereof. Some Horses they have, though not for Manage, yet for Hunting: But what manner of Hunting? Fox-Hunting forsooth, or Harriers, which be as fleet as pretty Greyhounds, wherewith they do so much overstrain the Strength of these poor Horses, (forcing them over deep Fallows, tough Clays, and wet and rough Sands,) that albeit those Horses be strong and able, yet are they so toil'd out therewith, as that when they come home at Night, they would pity the Heart of him that loveth an Horse, to see him so bemired, blooded, spurred, lamentably spent, and tired out; whereas if such Horses had been ridden to the Great Saddle and Cannon, they would infinitely have delighted all Men that should have beheld them.*

To this I answer, that for my own part I am not very fond of Fox-hunting; but I can see no Reason why Persons of Honour should not gratify their Fancies with this Recreation, since from the beginning Horses were made for the Service of Man; and doubtless for their Recreation, as well as necessary Uses. And I am very confident, that if Horses be trained, dieted, and ridden according to Art, there will be left no Ground for this Objection. For by good Feeding, Fatness would be prevented; and by airing, and due Exercise, the Horse's Wind would be so improved, that no moderate Labour would



would hurt him; nay, though a Horse by immoderate riding, were reduced to such Tragical Exigencies, as *de Grey* mentions, yet by the Assistance of Art, Nature may be in twenty four Hours space so relieved, that all those dangerous Symptoms shall be removed, and all the natural Faculties act as formerly.

Now, as to the last part of this Argument, I appeal to all the greatest Masters of Academies here, or in Foreign Parts; whether in the Manage, the Spurs are not as much used (not to say more) as in Hunting; and the Duke of *Newcastle* in his *Methodo Nouvelle* in oct. p. 85. says, *il n'y a point d' Exercise si violent pour les Chevaux que celui de manège*; that is, there is no Exercise so violent for Horses as the Mannage; so that you see Hunting is not the only violent Exercise: And *Salamon de la Brove* goes further in his *Cavalarise Frangoise*, telling us that managed Horses should sometime be used to the Chase, since hunting assists his Wind, and brings him to a civil Acquaintance with other Horses: Inferring from thence, that hunting procures to an Horse two Benefits, viz. Speed and Strength; and reforms in him two Vices, Salvageness, and Restiveness.

Secondly, there are others, that though they may approve of keeping their Horses clean, yet are not reconciled to hunting; but being either Admirers of coursing, or else keeping Horses only for the benefit of their Health, and the taking the Air, will not be perswaded, but that they can bring their Horses to the same Perfection without hunting, as with it.

To Answer the first of these, I mean Coursers; I affirm, 'tis impossible to attain the End of this Art by that means: For being obliged, in search of their Game, to toil their Horses all Day, over deep Fallows, in a Foot pace only, they are likelier to bring their Horses to Weariness than Perfection.

And the same Answer may serve the others likewise; for riding a Horse up and down the Field after nothing, brings a Weariness and Dislike to an Horse in his Exercise, through his Ignorance of the time, when his Labour shall cease; whither, or to what end he is so laboured. Whereas on the contrary, an Horse naturally takes Delight in following the Dogs, and seems pleased



with their Musick, as is evident by his pricking up his Ears, gazing on them, and pressing to gallop towards them, whenever he hears them in full Cry, (though at a Distance.) Nay further, I have been Master of a Stone-Horse, that so entirely loved the Hounds, that when at any time (through Eagerness of Sport and Desire to save the Hare from being eaten) I have rid in amongst the Dogs, he would so carefully avoid treading on them, that he has more than once hazarded my Limbs (by making a false Step) to save theirs. From hence I infer, that doubtless Horses extreamly delight in hunting, and consequently, that it is a fit Exercise for them.

Thirdly, Others object, that whatsoever Pleasure there may be in Hunting, they had rather deny themselves that Satisfaction, than hazard the laming their Horses, which, (as they are told) few, or no Hunters escape.

That Hunters are sometimes lame, I do not deny: But cannot allow, that it proceeds always from this Exercise. For 'tis the Indiscretion of the Riders, in overstraining their Horses at Leaps, and by that Means sometimes clapping them on the Back-sinews, catching in their Shoes, and such like, and not the Sport, that is the Cause of Lameness. But on the contrary, I will undertake to shew any Man twenty other Horses lame (which never belonged to Hunting) for one Hunter. There are several other Reasons besides hunting to be given for Lameness; as for Instance, much Travel (though but moderate, if Care be wanting) will produce Wind-galls, and Splints, which are the fore runners of Lameness. Want of Exercise will straiten the Hoofs, and dry up the Sinews: And too much Negligence in Travel occasions Surbating, Foundring, and Graveling. Horses on the Road oftentimes stumble, and now and then fall, and so become lame. Nay, a Slip, or an Over-reach, are as incident to the Pad, as to the Hunter. And to conclude, the Horse that is dressed, is more liable to a Strain in the Back, and Fillets, than the Hunter, by means of his short Turns: so that you may perceive that Lameness is Epidemical, and therefore no more to be objected against Hunting-Horses, than the rest of that Species.

Fourthly,



Fourthly, Some again are Enemies to this Art of dieting Horses in particular: Affirming, that such exact Diet makes them tender, sickly, and takes them off their Stomach: And that the Charges are not only great, but likewise unnecessary.

To the first Part of this Objection, I answer, that an Horse is so far from being made tender, or losing his Appetite, by such extream and several Feedings, if he have proportionate Exercise, that it rather innures him to Hardship. For much Labour (if not too violent) either in Man or Beast, instead of weakning the Stomach, and causing Sicknes, does rather advance the Appetite and preserve his Health; and it may be observed, that it doth oftner heighten than decay the Stomach. In like manner moderate Airings purify his Wind, and both together render him healthy, and fit for Service.

As to the several sorts of Food, we shall prove in the sequel, that every part of it is both nourishing, and natural to all Horses Constitutions: So that consequently, 'tis not only allowable, but necessary: And to prove this needs no more, than to ride an ordinary Horse drawn clean, a Day's hunting, or three Heats, and a Course, against the best of those Horses, which are kept by such Persons who think that half a Peck a Day, and fetching his Water at the next Spring is Horsemanship sufficient; and they will find by keeping and Exercise, the ordinary Horse will become long-winded, and stick at Mark; when the other that is Foul-fed, and Fat, will soon give out for want of Wind; or otherwise, if he be hardy, will die under the Spur; whereas if the untrained Horse had been rightly ordered, he would have worsted twenty such Horses.

Now, to the Charges of keeping, Fifty Shillings a Year, disbursed for Bread, besides Hay, Straw, Corn, and Physick, which all Horses of Value must be allowed) is all that will be requisite to keep an Horse in as good State for ordinary Hunting, as any Horse whatsoever. Lastly, by being skilful in the Art of keeping, this Advantage will insue, that no Distemper relating either to the Head or Body can conceal themselves from his Keeper's Knowledge, whose Skill will inform him, how to put a



stop to them, before they have made any considerable Advances to the Horse's Prejudice. And he that grudges so small an Expence on so noble and useful a Creature as an Horse is, deserves never to come on the Back of one.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Of Breeding, the Choice of a Stallion, and Mares, with some general Remarks on Marks and Colours.*

**S**INCE Creation and Generation preceded the Art of Riding, and that the first thing which is of course to be treated of, is the Choice of an Horse fit for this Exercise of Hunting; I shall speak something cursorily of the Art of Breeding, before I treat of the Hunter ready for Service. To them therefore that have Grounds convenient for Breed, I shall direct this part of my Discourse, and lay them down some few Rules that may be serviceable to them, though I shall be as brief as possible, and refer them to *Markham, de Gray, Morgan, Almond, and Farring Compeated*, (which is collected from the forementioned Authors, *Markham* and *de Gray*) all which have treated of the Art of Breeding more at large.

First therefore I would advise you to buy either an *Arabian Horse* (if you can procure him,) a *Spaniard*, a *Turk*, or a *Barb*, for your Stallion, that is well shaped, of a good Colour to beautify your Race, and well marked, to agree with most Mens Opinions; though otherwise they are not so significative as Mr. *Blundevile*, and his *Italian Author Frederigo Griffone*, would have us believe.

To begin with the *Arabian*; Merchants, and other Gentlemen that have travell'd those Parts, report, that the right *Arabians* are valued at an incredible, as well as an intolerable Rate; being prized at Five Hundred, others say at One, Two, and Three Thousand pounds an Horse; that the *Arabs* are as careful of keeping the Genealogies



nealogies of their Horses, as Princes in keeping their Pedigrees; that they keep them with Medals; and that each Son's Portion is usually two Suits of Arms, two Semiters, and one of these Horses. The *Arabs* boast, that they will ride fourscore Miles a Day, without drawing Bitt; which has been performed by several of our *English* Horses. But much more was atchieved by a Highwayman's Horse, who having taken a Booty, on the same Day rode him from *London* to *York*, being one hundred and fifty Miles. Notwithstanding their great Value, and the Difficulty in bringing them over from *Scanderoon* to *England* by Sea; yet by the Care, and at the Charge of some Breeders in the North, the *Arabian* Horse is no Stranger to those Parts; where Persons who have the Curiosity, may (as I presume) at this Day see some of the Race, if not a true *Arabian* Stallion.

The *Spanish* Horse (according to the Duke of *Newcastle*) is the noblest Horse in the World, and the most beautiful that can be; no Horse is so curiously shaped all over from Head to Croup, and he is absolutely the best Stallion in the World, whether you design your Breed for the Manage, the War, the Pad, Hunting, or for Running Horse. But as he is excellent, so he wants not for Price, Three or Four Hundred Pistols, being a common Rate for a *Spanish* Horse. Several have been sold for Seven Hundred, Eight Hundred, and a Thousand Pistols a-piece; and one particular Horse, called *el Bravo*, that was sent to the Arch-Duke *Leopold*, was held worth as much as a Mannour of a Thousand Crowns a Year. The best *Spanish* Horses are bred in *Andalusia*, and particularly at *Cardova*, where the King has many Studds of Mares, and so have several of the *Spanish* Nobility and Gentry. Now, besides the great Price at first, the Charges of the Journey from *Spain* to *England* will be very considerable: For first, he must travel from *Andalusia* to *Bilbo*, or *St. Sebastian*, the nearest Port to *England*, and is at least Four Hundred Miles: And in that hot Country you cannot with safety travel your Horse above twenty Miles a Day; then there is the Expence of your Groom and Farrier, besides the Casualty of Lameness, Sickness, and Death: so that though he do prove an extraordinary



good Horse, by that time he arrives at your own Home, he will likewise be an extraordinary dear one.

The *Turk* is little inferior to the *Spanish* Horse in Beauty, but somewhat odd-shap'd, his Head being somewhat like that of a Camel: He hath excellent Eyes, a thin Neck, excellently risen, and somewhat large of Body: His Croup is like that of a Mule; his Legs not so underlimbed as those of the *Barb*, but very finewy, good Pasterns, and good Hoofs: They never amble, but trot very well; and are accounted at this present better Stallions for Gallopers than *Barbs*, as (when I come to speak of them) I shall shew.

Some Merchants affirm, that there cannot be a more noble and diverting Sight to a Lover of Horses, than to walk into the Pastures near *Constantinople*, about Soiling time, where he may see many hundred gallant Horses rethred, and every Horse has his Attendant or Keeper, with his little Tent (placed near him) to lie in, that he may look to him, and take care to shift him to fresh Grass, as Occasion requires.

The Price of a *Turk* is commonly One Hundred, or One Hundred and Fifty Pounds a Horse, and when bought 'tis difficult to get a Pass; the *Grand Signior* being so very strict, that he seldom (but upon extraordinary Occasions) permits any of his Horses to be exported his Dominions. But if (when obtained) you travel by Land, without a *Turk* or two for your Convoy, you will be sure to have them seized on by the Way. Then, as in the former, so here, you will find the same Difficulties of a long Journey, for you must come through *Germany*, (which is a long Way) and the same Charges attending it, I mean your Groom and Farrier, who must be careful that they entrust no Persons whatsoever with the care of him, but themselves, especially shoeing of him: For 'tis the common Practice beyond Sea, (as well as here) where they discover a fine Horse, to hire a Farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a Stallion.

But some People chuse to buy Horses at *Smyrna* in *Anatolia*, and from thence, and likewise from *Constantinople*, transport them to *England* by Sea; which, if the  
Wind



Wind serve right, arrive in *England* in a Month, though generally the Merchants make their Voyages little less than a Quarter of a Year.

The *Barb* is little inferior to any of the former in Beauty, only he is accounted by our modern Breeders too slender and Lady-like to breed on: And therefore in the North, at this Instant, they prefer the *Spanish* Horse and *Turk* before him. He is so lazy and negligent in his Walk, that he will stumble on Carpet-Ground. His Trot is like that of a Cow, his Gallop low, and with much Ease to himself. But he is for the most part finewy and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a Course, if he be not over-weighted.

The Mountain-*Barbs* are accounted the best, because they are the strongest and largest. They belong to the *Allarbes*, who value them as much themselves, as they are prized by any other Nations, and therefore they will not part with them to any Persons, except to the Prince of the Band to which they belong; who can at any time at his pleasure command them for his own Use. But for the other more ordinary Sort, they are to be met with pretty common in the Hands of several of our Nobility and Gentry; or if you send into *Languedoc* and *Province* in *France*, they may be there bought for forty or fifty Pistols a Horse. Or if you will send into *Barbary*, you may have one for thirty Pounds, or thereabout. But here too the Charges and Journey will be great; for though from *Tunis* to *Marseilles* in *France* be no great Voyage, yet from *Marseilles* to *Calais* by Land, measures the length of all *France*, and from thence they are shipped for *England*.

The next thing of course to be treated of is the Choice of your Mares, and the fittest Mare to Breed out of, according to the Duke of *Newcastle's* Opinion, is one that has been bred of an *English* Mare, and a Stallion of these Races; but if such a Mare be not to be got, then make Choice of a right bred *English* Mare by Sire and Dam, that is well fore handed, well underlaid and stroug put together in General; and in particular, ~~see that she~~ have a lean Head, wide Nostrils, open Chaul, a big Weasand, and the Windpipe strait and loose, and chuse her about  
five



five or six Years old, and be sure that the Stallion be not too old.

Now, for the Food of the Stallion, I would have you keep him as high as possible for four or five Months, before the time of Covering, with old clean Oats, and split Beans, well hull'd; to which you may add, if you please, Bread, (such as in this Book shall be hereafter directed) and now and then, for Variety, you may give him a Handful of clean Wheat, or Oats wash'd in strong Ale; but as for Bay-salt, and Anniseeds, which Mr. *Morgan*, in his Perfection of Horsemanship, advises should be scatter'd amongst his Provender, I hold them superfluous whilst the Horse is in Health; but be sure let him have plenty of good old sweet Hay, well cleansed from Dust, and good Wheat Straw to lye on; and let him be watered twice every Day at some fair running Spring, or else a clear standing Pond-water, (where the other is not to be had) near some Meadow or level Piece of Ground, where you may gallop him after he hath drunk. When you have brought him to the Water, do not suffer him to drink his Fill at the first, but after he has taken his first Draught, gallop and scope him up and down a little to warm it, and then bring him to the Water again, and let him drink what he please, and after that gallop him as you did before, never leaving the Water till you find he will drink no more. By this means you will prevent raw Crudities, which the coldness of the Water would produce to the detriment of the Stomach, if you had permitted him to drink his Fill at first; whereas you allowing him his Fill (tho' by degrees) at last, you keep his Body from drying too fast. And this I take to be much better for your Horse, than (according to the forecited *Morgan*) to incourage his Water with Whitewine, to qualify the cold Quality thereof: For Nature it self is the best Directress for the Expulsion of her Enemies, especially in Brutes, where usually she can command the Appetite: And therefore I esteem his own natural Heat, for warming his Water, to be better than that which proceeds from any other. Now, as to *Morgan's* Direction of Sweating him every Day early in the Morning, which he says will not only perfect Digestion, and exhaust the Moisture from his Seed, but also strengthen and cleanse his Blood

and



and Body from all raw and imperfect Humours; I am of Opinion 'twill both dry up the radical Moisture too fast, and likewise, instead of heightning his Pride and Lust, (which he alledges,) weaken him too much. Other Rules might be given as to the ordering them after Water, and the Hours of Feeding, with the Quantity, &c. but these will be fitter to be handled in another Place, and therefore no more of them here.

Now when your Stallion is in Lust, and the time for Covering is come, which is best to be in *May*, that the Foals may fall in *April* following, otherwise they will have little or no Grass, if they should be put together (according to *Markham's* Opinion) in the middle of *March*, tho' he holds that one Foal falling in *March* is worth two falling in *May*, "because (saith he) he possesseth, as it "were two Winters in a Year, and is thereby so hardened, "that nothing can almost after impair him. The time, I say, being come to put your Stallion and Mares together, pull off his hinder Shoes, and lead him the Place where the Stud of Mares are, which you intend for Covering, which Place ought to be close, well fenc'd, and in it a little Hut for a Man to lye in, and a larger Shed with a Manger to feed your Stallion with Bread and Corn, during his Abode with the Mares, and shelter him in the heat of the Day, and in rainy Weather; and this Close ought to be of sufficient largeness to keep your Mares for two Months.

Before you pull off his Bridle, let him cover a Mare or two in Hand, then turn him loose amongst them, and put all your Mares to him, as well those which are with Foal, as those which are not, for there is no Danger in it; and by that means they will all be serv'd in their height of Lust, and according to the Intention of Nature. When your Stallion has cover'd them once, he tries them all over again, and those which will admit him, he serves; and when his Business is finish'd, he beats the Pale, and attempts to be at Liberty; which, when your Man finds (who is Night and Day to observe them, and to take care that no other Mares are put to your Horse, and to give you an Account, which take the Horse, and which not, &c.) let him be taken up, and let him be well kept as before; only you may at the first give him a good  
Mash



Mash or two to help to restore Nature, for you will find him nothing but Skin and Bones, and his Mane and Tail will rot off. Be sure give him never above ten or twelve Mares in a Season, at most; otherwise you will scarce recover him against the next Year's Covering-time.

When your Stallion is past this Use, then buy another; but be sure never make use of a Horse of your own Breed, for by so doing, the best kind would in time degenerate: but you cannot do better (the Duke of *Newcastle* says) than to let your own Mares, be covered by their Sire, for (according to his own Words and Opinion) there is no Incest in Horses: And by this means they are nearer one degree to the Purity and Head of the Fountain, from which they are deriv'd, since a fine Horse got them, and the same fine Horse covers them again.

Now, though the Duke of *Newcastle* affirms this to be the true Way for covering Mares, alledging, that Nature is wiser than Art in the Act of Generation, and that by this way, of a Dozen Mares he dare affirm that two shall not fail: Yet it may not correspond with the Interest of some private Gentlemen, who turn Breeders for Profit as well as Pleasure; for a good Stallion bearing such an extraordinary Rate, and they having but one, have reason to be cautious, to avoid, as much as can be, all hazardous Experiments; which (with Submission to the Duke's Judgment) this in some Cases may prove. For first, there have been Horses of great Spirit, that have killed themselves through excess of Lust, being left to range at their Liberty; and those that have been confined to an Inclosure, and a select Number of Mares, have yet in one Week's space so weaken'd Nature, that not above half the Mares have held. Secondly, some Mares are of so hot a Constitution of Nature, and their Lust so violent, that if they are permitted to run long with the Horse, after they have conceived, will (if they be high in Flesh, and lusty) desire the Horse again, which generally hazards the Loss of the Embrio they go with.

To prevent therefore these Inconveniencies, I shall lay you down another Method (as briefly as may be,) which is called covering in Hand, and the Way is this, viz. when you have brought both your Horse and Mare to a proper Condition for Breed by Art and good Feeding,  
then



then set some ordinary Ston'd-Nag by her for a Day or two to woo her, and by that she will be so prone to Lust, that she will readily receive your Stallion; which you should present to her either early in the Morning, or late in an Evening, for a Day or two together, and let him cover in Hand once, or twice if you please, at each time, observing always to give the Horse the Advantage of Ground, and that you have some one ready with a Bucket of cold Water to throw on the Mare's Shape, immediately on the dismounting of the Horse, which will make her retain the Seed received the better, especially if you get on her Back, and trot her about a Quarter of an Hour's space; but in any case have a care of heating or straining her: And it will not be amiss, if after every such Act you let them fast two Hours, and then give each of them a warm Mash; and 'tis odds but this way your Mares may be as well served as the other, and yet your Stallion will last you much longer.

I shall say no more as to the keeping the Mares during the Time of their being with Foal, nor of their foaling; only this, that if you take care to House them all the Winter, and to keep them well, their Colts will prove the better. When they are foaled let them run with their Dams till *Martinmas*s, then wean them, and keep them in a convenient House with a low Rack and Manger on purpose; litter them well, and feed them with good Hay, and Oats and Wheat-bran mixed, which will make them drink and belly well. The first Year you may put them all together, but afterwards they must be separated, the Stone-Colts from the Fillies; and if you have choice of Horses, you may put Yearings together, two Years old together, and so three Years old together, for their better Satisfaction and Agreement; as little Children best agree together.

In a warm fair Day you may grant them Liberty to run and scope in some inclosed Court or Back-side, but be sure to take Care to put them up again carefully, that they be not hurt. When Summer is come, and there is plenty of Grass, put them out in some dry Ground, that hath convenient watering, and so let them run till *Martinmas*s again: Then House them as before, and order them in all points as older Horses till they are full five Years old;



then take them up for good and all, and let your Groom back them if he has Skill, or else some skilful Rider. You may if you please just break your Fillies at two Years, and a half old, and let them be covered at three; and by that Means they will be so tame and gentle, as not to injure themselves or their Foals. But in case of Sicknes, or any accidental Calamity, as Lameness, &c. you must then commit them to the Farrier's Care.

The Reason why I propose the housing of them every Winter, with dry feeding and lodging, is, that they may be the liker their Sire in Beauty and Shape. For the primary Cause of the Fineness of Shape and Beauty in Horses, is Heat, and dry Feeding. And this is proved from the several Races we have already mentioned, viz. The *Spanish* Horse, *Barb* and *Turkish* Horse, all which Countries are under an hot Climate, and by consequence afford little Grass: Therefore in our more moderate and cold Countries we are to assist Nature by Art, and to supply the want of Heat by warm Housing, and dry Feeding. This is easily made evident by Example. For take two Colts begot by the same Sire, on Mares of equal Beauty, and House the one every Winter, and feed him as directed, and expose the other, till they are four Years old, and fit to be backed; and you shall find the former like his Sire in all respects, and the other fitter for the Cart than Hunting, as being a dull, heavy, flabby, scarce animated Clod; and all this proceeds from the Humidity of the Air and Earth. From hence you may infer, that 'tis not only Generation, but as I may term it, Education, that makes a compleat Horse; and such yours will be, if you order them according to the former Directions; for you may with ease break the Colt that is by such good Management made gentle, and half backed to your Hand.

But I have dwelt longer on this Subject than I intended, my Business being chiefly to inform the Groom (not the Master) what belonged to his Office; and therefore I will wander no further from my purpose, but leave it to the Rider to follow his own Method in rendering Colts fit for his Master's Service: Whilst I give some few Directions to those Gentlemen who will not bestow either Trouble or Charges on Breeding, or, have the Will but not the

Conve-



Convenience to do it, how to elect an Horse for his Exercise.

The Way for a Gentleman to furnish himself with an Horse, that may be worth training for hunting, is either to enquire out some noted Breeder (of which there are many in the North) or else to go to some famous Fair, as *Malton* and *Ripping Fairs* in *Yorkshire*, the former held on the 23d Day of *September* yearly, and the latter on *May-Day*: Or to *Richmond* in the same Shire, (which, as I am informed, does now of late Years exceed both the fore-mentioned, being scituated in the middle of the most celebrated part of the breeding Country;) its Fairs are held in *Easter-week*, and at *Roode-tyde*. *Northampton* has several Fairs in the Year likewise, as on the 13th Day of *April*, the 8th of *September*, 17th of *November*, with several others. There are several Fairs, as *Lenton Fair* in *Nottinghamshire*, *Pankridge Fair* in *Staffordshire*, &c. which for brevity's sake I omit. At any of these Places he may make Choice of a Horse, which as near as can be ought to have these following Shapes, viz.

His Head ought to be lean, large, and long; his Chaul thin, and open; his Ears small, and pricked, or if they be somewhat long, provided they stand upright like those of a Fox, it is usually a sign of Mettle and Toughness. His Forehead long and broad, not flat, and as we term it, Mare-faced, but rising in the midst like that of a Hare, the Feather being placed above the top of his Eye, the contrary being thought by some to betoken Blindness. His Eyes full, large, and bright; his Nostrils wide, and red within, for an open Nostril betokens a good Wind; his Mouth large, deep in the Wykes and hairy; his Thropple, Wealand, or Windpipe big, loose, and streight when he is reined in by the Bridle; for if, when he bridles, it bends in like a Bow (which is called cock throppled) it very much hinders the passage of his Wind. His Head must be set on to his Neck, that there must be a space felt between his Neck and his Chaul; for to be Bull-necked is uncomely to Sight, and prejudicial to the Horse's Wind, as aforefaid. His Crest should be firm, thin, and will risen; his Neck long and straight, yet not loose, and pliant, which the Northern Men term  
Withy



Withy cragged; his Breast strong and broad, his Chest deep, his Chine short, his Body large, and close shut up to the Huckle bone; his Ribs round like a Barrel, his Belly being hid within them; his Fillets large, his Buttocks rather oval than broad, being well let down to the Gascoins; his Cambrels upright, and not bending, which is called by some sickle-houghed, though some hold it a Sign of Toughness and Speed: His Legs clean, flat, and straight: His Joints short, well knit, and upright, especially betwixt the Patterns and the Hoofs, having but little hair on his Fetlocks: his Hoofs black, strong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat. And lastly, his Mane and Tail should be long and thin, rather than thick, which is counted by some a Mark of Dulness.

As to the Colour and Marks, I rather incline to believe them grateful to the Eye, than any infallible Indexes of Goodness; for as the Goodness or Badness of a Man does not consist in his Complexion, but in his inward Virtues, so neither do Colour or Marks certainly demonstrate the Goodness or Badness of a Horse, because his Qualifications proceed from his inward Disposition. But yet I wholly dissent from the Opinion of Mr. *Morgan*, p. 31. who holds, "that Colour and Marks are no more affurance of a good Horse, than the having a Feather in a Man's Hat does prove him a good Man or a bad;" inferring that inherent Colours are of no greater Eminency or Value, than those external ones are which may be taken or laid aside at a Man's own Will and Pleasure.

Now I say, that although Marks and Colour do not absolutely give Testimony unto us of a Horse's Goodness, yet they as well as his Shape do intimate to us in some part his Disposition and Qualities. For Nature not being defective, frames every part of the same Matter whereof the whole is formed, and therefore the *Fetus* being formed of the copulative Seed of its Sire and Dam, does from them derive as well the accidental as the more essential Qualities of its Temperament and Composition. And for this Reason Hair it self may oftentimes receive the Variation of its colour from the different temperature of the Subject out of which it is produced: And to confirm this, I dare pass my Word, that wherever you shall meet with



an Horse that hath no White about him, especially in his Fore-head, though he be otherwise of the best reputed Colours, as Bay, Black, Sorrel, &c. That Horse I dare affirm to be of a dogged and sullen Disposition; especially if he have a small pink Eye, and a narrow Face, with a Nose bending like a Hawk's Bill.

But yet I am not positive, that Horses even of the most celebrated Colours, and Marks answerable, do always prove the best; because I have seen those Horses worsted by others, whose Marks and Colour have been esteemed the worst; as bright Sorrel and Mouse black with bald Faces, and all the Legs white above the Knee. But I rather attribute the cause thereof to the Ignorance of the Rider, that had the training of those best marked Horses, than to any defect in Nature; for Nature is no Counterfeit, as Art often, is to make a thing shew to the Eye, contrary to what it is in reality. And therefore as I would not have Men put too great Confidence in Marks and Colours; so I would not have them esteemed of so lightly, as the former Comparison of Mr. *Morgan* would make them; for it is a constant and inseparable Quality for Horses to produce Hair, which is given them by Nature as a Tegument and Defence against the Cold: And if it be shaved off, galled, or any ways else removed or taken away, yet it will grow again; but a Feather may be put to, or taken from a Man's Hat at his pleasure.

Therefore since Colour seemeth to set forth the Beauty of an Horse, you may for Ornament sake, and to please your Eye, make choice of an Horse that is, either a Brown-bay, Dapple-bay, Black, Sad-Chestnut with flaxen Main and Tail, so that they have either a white Star, Blaze, or Snip with a white Foot; Dapple-Grey, or White Lyard with Black Muzzle, Eye, and Ear. Any of these are reputed by most Men to give a Grace to Shape, though in themselves they are no perfect Signs of Goodness.

But for his internal Endowments, they are more material, and therefore take care that he by Nature be of a Gentle Disposition, to his Keeper tractable and docile, free from those ill Qualities of biting, striking, Restiveness, lying down in the Water, starting, running away with his Rider, plunging, leaping, &c. Not but that most, if not all these ill Habits may be rectified by Art; For Experi-



ence has shewn us, that Horses which have not been of such a perfect Natural Composition, as might be desired, have yet been tempered by Art, and have not only been reclaimed from their vicious Habits, but have been likewise brought to great Performance in Heats, as well as Hunting, as I could instance in several, if it were necessary

And therefore since Art was invented to perfect Nature; if (notwithstanding your Care) you have met with a Horse subject to any of these ill Qualities aforesaid, you must search into the Causes of it, which Art will help you to discover and remove: And then the Cause being taken away the Effect will cease. So that probably, contrary to most People's Opinions, a Vicious Horse, by good Management and Government may be brought to excel an Horse that has a better Reputation and Fame in the Judgment of the generality of Horsemen.

### CHAP. III.

*Of the Age a Hunter should be of before he be put to Hunting; of the Stable and Groom, and of the Horse's first taking up from Grass, in order to his further Dieting.*

**H**AVING gotten a Horse, answerable either to the former Descriptions, or your own Satisfaction at least, I am to suppose, that by a skilful Rider he is already grounded in the Fundamentals of this Art, by being taught such Obedience, as that he will readily answer to the Horseman's Helps and Corrections both of the Bridle, the Hand, the Voice, the Calf of the Leg, and the Spur; that he can tell how to take his Way forward, and hath gained a true Temper of Mouth, and a right Placing of his Head, and that he hath learned to stop and turn readily; for without these Things are perfectly taught, and as it were laid for a Foundation, he can never proceed effectually.

I had Thoughts of enlarging upon this particular Subject, but I find my Discourse is like to swell beyond its Bounds, so that I am forced to omit it; and therefore I shall



shall refer you to the Directions and Prudence of your Rider, and only tell you, that it is convenient your Horse should be five Years old, and well wayed before you begin to hunt him. For though it be a general Custom amongst noted Horse-Men to train their Horses up to Hunting at four Years old, and some sooner, yet at that Age his Joints not being full knit, nor he come to his best Strength and Courage, he is disabled from performing any matter of Speed and Toughness: And indeed being put to sore Labour and Toil so young, he runs a very great hazard of Strains, and the putting out of Splents, Spavins, Curbs, and Windgalls, besides the daunting of his Spirit, and abating his natural Courage; insomuch that he will become Melancholy, Stiff, and Rheumatick, and have all the Distempers of old Age, when it might be expected he should be in his Prime.

Your Horse then being full five, you may, if you please, put him to Grass from the middle of *May* to *Bartholomew-tide*, or at least from the middle of Summer to that time; for then the Season being so violent hot, it will not be convenient to work him: Where, whilst he is sporting himself at Liberty in his Pasture, we will, if you please, take care to provide a good Stable for his Reception at his taking up, and a good Groom to look after him; both which are more essentially necessary to the Hunter, than to other Horses, which require not that exact Care in keeping.

First then, as to the Stable, I could wish every Gentleman would be careful to situate it in a good Air, and upon hard, dry, and firm Ground, that in the Winter the Horse may go and come clean in and out: And if possible let it be seated on an Ascent, that the Urine, foul Water, or any wet, may be conveyed away by Trenches, or Sinks cut out for that purpose. Be sure to suffer no Hen-houses, Hog-sties, or Houses of Ease, or any other filthy Smells to be near it; for Hen dung or Feathers swallowed, oftentimes prove mortal, and the ill Air of a Jakes as often is the Cause of Blindness; likewise the very smell of Swine will frequently breed the Farcy, and no Animal whatsoever more delights in Cleanliness, or is more offended at unwholesome Savours than the Horse.



Let your Stable be built of Brick rather than Stone, since the latter is subject to sweating in wet Weather; which Dampness and Moisture is the Original of Rheums and Catarrhs. Let your Wall be of a good convenient Thickness, as about eighteen or twenty Inches thick, both for Safety and Warmth in Winter, and to keep the Sun from annoying him in Summer, which would hinder Concoction. You may (if you please) make Windows both on the East and the North sides, that you may have the benefit of the Air during Summer from the North, and of the the Morning Sun during Winter from the East. And I would advise you to glaze your Windows, and make them with Sashes, to let in the Air at pleasure, and to keep out Poultry, for the Reasons afórerécited; and likewise to make close Wooden Shutters, that during the middle time of the Day the Stable may be dark, which will cause him to take his Rest as well in the Day as the Night. Let your Floor (I mean that part on which he is always to stand, or lie down on) be made of Oaken Planks, and not pitched, for 'tis easier and warmer for the Horse to lie on Boards than Stones: Be sure to lay them level, for if they are laid higher before than behind (as they generally are in Inns and Horse-courfers Stables, that their Horses may appear to more advantage in stature) his hinder Legs will swell, and he can never lie at ease, because his hinder Parts will be still slipping down. Lay your Plank crossway, and not at length; and underneath them sink a good Trench, which receiving the Urine through holes bored on purpose in the Planks, may convey it into some common Receptacle. Let the Ground behind him be raised even with the Planks, that he may continually stand on a Level. Let the Floor behind him be pitcht with small Pebble; and be sure let that part of your Stable where the the Rack stands be well wainscotted. I would have two Rings placed at each side of his Stall, for his Halter to run through, which must have a light wooden Logger at the bottom of it, to poise it perpendicularly, but not so heavy as to tire the Horse, or to hinder him from eating. Instead of a fixt Manger, I would have you have a Locker, or Drawer made in the Wainscote Partition, for him to eat his Corn out of, which you may take in or out to cleanse at pleasure. And



whereas some may object the Narrowness of the Room, you may remedy that at your pleasure, by allowing it to be the larger: Though considering the small Quantity of Provender, you are to put in at a time (as you see hereafter) you need not make it very large. I would not advise you to make any Rack, but instead thereof (according to the *Italian* fashion) to give your Horse his Hay on the Ground, upon the Litter; or else you may (if you please) nail some Boards in the form of a Trough, in which you may put his Hay, and the Boards will prevent him from trampling and spoiling it.

Some possibly may object, that this way of feeding him may spoil his Crest, and that the blowing upon his Hay will soon make it nauseous to his Palat. For the spoiling his Crest, it rather strengthens it, and makes it firm, whereas, on the contrary, to lift up his Head high to the Rack will make him withy-cragged: But the way forementioned he will feed as he lies, which will be for his Ease and Satisfaction. As to the quantity of his Hay, you are to give it him in such small Proportions (though the oftner) that it may be eaten before his Breath can in the least have tainted it. But the chief Reason why I advise you to this way is this, because the receiving his Hay down upon the Ground, will help to cleanse his Head from any Rheum or Dose, which he may have gotten by Negligence and Over-exercise, and induce him by sneezing to throw out all manner of watry Humours that may annoy his Head. If your Stable will allow, you may build several Partitions of Boards, and at the Head towards the Manger, let them be advanced to that height, that one Horse may not molest or smell to another, and so divide the whole into as many equal Stalls or Stalls as it will admit of, allowing to each Room enough to turn about in, and lie down at Pleasure. You may make one of your Stalls close, which may serve for your Groom to lie in, in case of a Match, Sickness, &c. And where he may burn Candle, without the Horse's discerning of it. Behind the Horses I would have a Rank of Presses made with Peggs in them to hang up Saddles, Bridles, Housing Cloaths, &c. as likewise Shelves to place your Curry-combs, Brushes, Dusting cloaths, Ointments, Waters, or any other Necessaries upon.



Now, that you may not cumber your Stable with Oatbins, I think it necessary to tell you, that the best way is to make use of the Invention of Mr. Farmer of *Tusmore* of *Oxfordshire*, which is done (according as it is described by the ingenious Dr. Plot, in his *Natural History of Oxfordshire*) ‘ by letting the Oats down from a Loft above, ‘ out of a Vessel like the Hopper of a Mill, whence they ‘ fall into a square Pipe let into the Wall, of about four ‘ inches Diagonal, which comes down into a Cupboard ‘ also set into the Wall, but with its end so near the ‘ bottom, that there shall never be above a Gallon, or ‘ other desirable quantity in the Cupboard at a time, ‘ which being taken away and given to the Horses, another Gallon presently succeeds; so that in the lower ‘ part of the Stable, where the Horses stand, there is not ‘ one Inch of Room taken up for the whole Provision of ‘ Oats; which Contrivance hath also this further Convenience, that by this Motion the Oats are kept constantly sweet, (the taking away one Gallon moving the ‘ whole Mass above) which laid up any otherwise in great ‘ Quantities, grow frequently musty.

Now I would have you have two made, the one for the Oats, the other for your split Beans, and both let into your Range of Presses; the Partitions may easily be made over Head to separate your Oats from the Beans. Or if you like not this way, you may convert it into an Hay-loft, or Chambers for your Grooms, which you fancy; but whatever you make choice of, let the Floor over be ceil’d, that no Dust from above fall upon your Horses. But if you have the Convenience of a Rick-yard, so that you keep your Hay abroad, it is the Opinion of some known Horsemen, that to take it out of the Rick by little and little, as you have Occasion to use it, makes it spend much better than it would otherwise do out of the Hay-Tallet.

As to the rest of its Perquisites, a Dung-Yard, Pump, a Conduit, are necessary; and if you can have that Convenience, some Pond or running River near Hand. But be sure, never let the front of your Stable be without Litter, that by frequent practice your Horse may learn to empty his Bladder when he is come from Airing, which



which will be both healthful for your Horse, and profitable for your Land.

Having thus laid down a Model for a Stable, my next Business is to tell the Groom his Duty ; I mean not those which appertain to all Servants, such as are Obedience, Fidelity, Patience, Diligence, &c. but those more essentially belonging to this Office. First then he must love his Horse in the next Degree to his Master, and to endeavour by fair Usage to require a reciprocal Love from him again, and an exact Obedience, which if he know how to pay it to his Master, he will the better be able to teach it his Horse ; and both the one and the other are to be obtained by fair Means, rather than by Passion and Outrage. For those who are so irrational themselves, as not to be able to command their own Passions, are not fit to undertake the reclaiming of an Horse, (who by Nature is an irrational Creature) from his.

He must then put in practice that Patience, which I would have him Master of at all times, and by that and fair Means he shall attain his end. For nothing is more tractable than a Horse, if you make use of Kindness to win him. Next, Neatness is requisite in a Groom, to keep his Stable clean swept and, in Order ; his Saddles, Housing-Cloaths, Stirrups, Leathers, and Girths, clean, and above all his Horse clean dressed and rubbed. Diligence in the last Place is requisite in a daily Practice of his Duty, and in observing any the smallest Alteration, whether casual or accidental, either in his Countenance, as Symptoms of Sicknes, or in his Limbs and Gate, Lameness, or in his Appetite, as forsaking his Meat, and immediately upon any such discovery to seek out for Remedy. This is the Substance of a Groom's Duty in General, and which I shall treat of more at large as Occasion shall offer it self.

In the mean time since *Bartholomew-tide* is now come, and the Pride and Strength of the Grass nipped by the severe Frosts and cold Dews which accompany this Season, so that the Nourishment thereof turneth into raw Crudities, and the Coldness of the Night (which is an Enemy to the Horse) abates as much Flesh and Lust as he getteth in the Day, we will now take him up from Grass whilst his Coat lies smooth and sleek,



Having brought him home, let your Groom for that Night let him up in some secure and spacious House, where he may evacuate his Body, and so be brought to warmer keeping by Degrees; the next Day stable him. But though it be held as a general Rule amongst the generality of Grooms, not to cloath or dress their Horses till two or three Days after their stabling, I can find no Reason but Custom to perswade one to it; but it being little conducive either to the Advantage or Prejudice of the Horse, I shall leave it to their own Fancies: But as to the giving of Wheat-straw, to take up his Belly (a Custom used by Grooms generally at the Horses's first housing) I am utterly averse from it. For the Nature of a Horse being hot and dry, if he should feed on Straw, which is so likewise, it would straighten his Guts, and cause an Inflammation of the Liver, and by that means distemper the Blood; and besides it would make his body so costive, that it would cause a Retention of Nature, and make him dung with great pain and difficulty; whereas full feeding would expel the Excrements, according to the true Intention and Inclination of Nature. Therefore let moderate Airing, warm cloathing, good old Hay, and old Corn, supply the Place of Wheat-straw.

To begin then methodically, that your Groom may not be to seek in any part of his Duty, I shall acquaint him, that his first Business is, after he hath brought his Horse into the Stable, in the Morning to Water him, and then to rub over his Body with a hard Wisp a little moistened, and then with a Woollen Cloath; then to cleanse his Sheath with his wet Hand from all the Dust it had contracted during his Running, and to wash his running, and to wash his Yard either with White-wine, or Water. Then he may trim him according to the manner that other Horses are trimmed, except the inside of his Ears, which (though some still continue that Fashion) ought not to be meddled with, for fear of making him catch cold.

When this is done, let him have him to the Farrier, and there get a Set of Shoes answerable to the shape of his Foot, and not to pare his Foot that it may fit his Shoe, as too many Farriers do, not only in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, but here likewise. Be sure let his Feet  
be



be well opened betwixt the Quarters and the Thrush, to prevent Hoof binding: And let them be opened straight, and not side-ways, for by that Means in two or Three Shoerings, his Heels (which are the Strength of his Feet) will be cut quite away. Pare his Foot as hollow as you can, and then the Shoe will not press upon it. The Shoes must come near to the Heel, yet not be set so close as to bruise it; nor yet so open as to catch in his Shoes, if at any time he happen to over reach; and so hazard the pulling them off, the breaking of the Hoof, or the bruising of his Heel. The Webbs of his Shoes must be neither too broad nor too narrow, but of a middle size, about the breadth of an Inch, with sloped Spunges, and even with his Foot; for though it would be for the Advantage of the travelling Horse's Heel, to have the Shoe sit a litter wider than the Hoof, on both Sides, that the Shoe might bear his Weight, and not his Foot touch the Ground; yet the Hunter being often forced to Gallop on rotten spungy Earth, to have them large, would hazard laming, and pulling off his Shoes, as hath been shown before.

There is an Old Proverb, before behind, and behind before; that is, in the fore Feet the Veins lie behind, and in the hinder Feet they lie before. Therefore let the Farrier take care that he prick him not, but leave a space at the Heel of the Fore feet, and a space between the Nails at the Toe. When your Shoe is set on according to this Direction, you will find a great deal of his Hoof left to be cut off at his Toe. When that is cut off, and his Feet smoothed with a File, you will find him to stand so firm, and his Feet will be so strong, that he will tread as boldly on Stones as on Carpet-ground.

By that time he is shod, I presume 'twill be time to Water him, therefore take him to the River, and let him, after he has drank, stand some time in the Water, which will close up the holes (according to the Opinion of some Horsemen) which the driving of the Nails made. Then have him gently home, and having tied him up to the Rack, rub him all over Body and Legs with dry Straw; then stop his Feet with Cow-dung, sift him a Quarter of a Peck of clean old Oats, and give them to him; then litter him, and leave him a sufficient quantity of old Hay to serve him all Night, and so leave him till the next Morning.



## C H A P. IV.

*How to order the Hunter for the first Fortnight.*

**I** Presume by this your Horse will have evacuated all his Grasse, and his Shoes will be so well settled to his Feet, that he may be fit to be rid abroad to Air without danger of furbating. Therefore 'tis now necessary that I begin in a more particular Manner to direct our unexperienced Groom how he ought to proceed to order his Horse according to Art.

First, then you are to visit your Horse early in the Morning, to wit, by Five a-Clock, if in Summer, or Six, if in Winter, and having put up his Litter under his Stall, and made clean your Stable, you shall feel his Ribs, his Chaul and his Flank, for those are the chief Signs by which you must learn to judge of the good or evil state of your Horse's Body, as I shall now shew you.

Lay your Hands on the lower part of his short Ribs, near the Flank, and if you feel his Fat to be exceeding Soft and Tender, and to yield as it were under your Hand, then you may be confident it is unsound, and that the least violent Labour or Travel will dissolve it: Which being dissolved, e'er it be hardened by good Diet, if it be not then removed by scouring, the Fat or Grease belonging to the outward Parts of the Body will fall down into his Heels, and so cause Goutiness and Swelling. I need not trouble you with the outward Signs of this Distemper, they are evident to the Eye: But though every Groom can inform you when a Horse is said to have the Grease fallen in his Heels, yet may be he cannot instruct you in the Cause why Travel disperseth it for a Time, and when the Horse is cold it returns with more Violence than before. The Reason therefore is this: The Grease which by indiscreet Exercise, and Negligence in keeping is melted and fallen into his Legs, standing still in the Stable, cools and congeals, and so unites it self with other ill Humours, which flow to the affected Part, so that they stop the natural



tural Circulation of the Blood, and cause Inflammations and Swellings as aforesaid: But Travel producing Warmth in his Limbs, thaws as it were the congealed Humours, and disperses them throughout the Body in general, till Rest gives them Opportunity to unite and settle again. Now though most Grooms are of the Opinion that this Distemper is not to be prevented by Care or Caution, that when it has once seized a Horse it remains incurable; yet they are mistaken in both, for by Art it may be prevented, and by Art cured: Although the Cure is so difficult to be wrought, that a Groom cannot be too careful to prevent it.

As for the inward Grease which is in his Stomach, Bag, and Guts, if when once melted it be not removed by Art, Medicine, and good Feeding, it putrifies, and breeds those mortal Diseases which inevitably destroy the Horse, though it be half a Year, or three quarters of a Year after. And this is generally the Source of most Fevers, Surfeits, Consumptions, &c. and such other Distempers which carry off infinite Numbers of Horses, for want of the Farrier's Knowledge in the first Causes of the Distemper: Which to prevent, shall follow the ensuing Directions.

After by feeling on his Ribs you have found his Fat soft and unsound, you shall feel his Chaul, and if you find any fleshy Substance, or great round Kernels or Knots, you may be assured, that, as his outward Fat is unsound, so inwardly he is full of Glut and purfive, by means of gross and tough Humours cleaving to the hollow Places of the Lungs, stopping so his Windpipe, that his Wind cannot find free passage, nor his Body be capable of much Labour. Therefore the chief End and Intention of Art is, by good sound Food, to enseat and harden his Fat, and by moderate Exercise, warm Cloathing, and gentle Physick, to cleanse away his inward Glut, that his Wind, and other Parts being freed from all Grossness, his Courage and Activity in any Labour or Service may appear to be more than redoubled.

The same Observations you must make from his Flank, which you will find always to correspond with the Ribs and Chaul, for till he is drawn clean, it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is seamed, you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by these three Observation



vations of the Ribs, Flank, and Chaps, you may, at any time, pass an indifferent Judgment of your Horse's being in a good Condition or a bad.

When you have made these Remarks, you shall fift your Horse a Handful or two (and no more) of good old sound Oats, and give them to him to preserve his Stomach from cold Humours that might oppress it by drinking fasting, and likewise to make him drink the better. When he hath eaten them, pull off his Collar, and rub his Head, Face, Ears, and Nape of the Neck, with a clean Rubbing-Cloth made of Hemp, for 'tis soveraign for the Head, and dissolveth all gross and filthy Humours. Then take a small Snaffle, and wash it in fair Water, and put it on his Head, drawing the Reins through the Headstall, to prevent his slipping it over his Head, and so tie him up to the Rack, and dress him thus.

First, in your right Hand, take a Curry-comb suitable to your Horse's Skin, as if your Horse's Coat be short and smooth, then must the Curry-comb be blunt; but if long and rough, then must the Teeth be long and sharp, standing with your Face opposite to the Horse's, hold the left Cheek of the Headstall in your left Hand, and Curry him with a good Hand from the Root of his Ears, all along his Neck to his Shoulders: Then go over all his Body with a more moderate Hand, then Curry his Buttocks down to the hinder Cambrel with a hard Hand again: Then change your Hand, and laying your right Arm over his Back joyn your right Side to his left, and so Curry him gently from the Top of his Withers, to the lower Part of his Shoulder, every now and then fetching your Stroke over the left side of his Breast, and so Curry him down to the Knee, but no farther: Then Curry him all under his Belly, near his Fore-bowels; and, in a Word, all over very well, his Legs under the Knees and Cambrels only excepted: And as you dress the left Side, so must you the right likewise.

Now by the Way take Notice, whether your Horse keeps a riggling up and down, biting the Rack-staffs, and now and then offering to snap at you, or lifting up his Leg to strike at you, when you are Currying him: If he do, 'tis an apparent Sign of his Displeasure, by reason of the sharpness of the Comb, and therefore you must file  
the



the Teeth thereof more blunt : But if you perceive that he plays these or such like Tricks through Wantonness, and the Pleasure he takes in the Friction, then you shall ever now and then correct him with your Whip gently for his Waggishness.

This Currying is only to raise the Dust, and therefore after you have thus curried him, you must take either a Horse-Tail (nail'd to a Handle) or a clean Dusting-Cloth of Cotton, and with it strike off the loose Dust rais'd by your Curry-Comb. Then dress him all over with the *French* Brush, both Head, Body, and Legs, to the very Fetlocks, observing always to cleanse the Brush from the Filth it gathers from the bottom of the Hair, by rubbing it on the Curry-Comb. Then dust him the second time. Then with your Hand wet in Water rub his Body all over, and as near as you can, leave no loose Hairs behind you : And with your wet Hands pick and cleanse his Eyes; Ears, Nostrils, Sheath, Cods, and Tuel, and so rub him till he be as dry as at first. Then take an Hair-patch, and rub his Body all over, but especially his Fore-bowels under his Belly, his Flank, and between his hinder Thighs. Lastly, wipe him over with a fine white Linnen Rubber.

When you have thus dress'd him, take a large Saddle-Cloth (made on purpose,) that may reach down to the Spurring place, and lap it about his Body ; then clap on his Saddle, and throw a Cloth over him for fear of catching Cold. Then take two Ropes of Straw twisted extream hard together, and with them rub and chafe his Legs from the Knees and Cambrels downwards to the Ground, picking his Fetlock-joints with your Hands from Dust, Filth and Scabs. Then take another Hair-patch, kept on purpose for his Legs, for you must have two) and with it rub and dress his Legs also.

Now by the Way let me give you this necessary Caution ; be sure whilst you are dressing your Horse let him not stand naked, his Body being expos'd to the Penetration of the Air, whilst you are telling a *Banbury* Story to some Comrades, that accidentally come into the Stable, as I have seen some Grooms, that would stand lolling over their Horses, when they were uncloath'd, and trifle away their Time by listening to some idle Discourse ; but  
when



when you have stripp'd him, fall to your Business roundly, without any Intermiffion, till you have faddled him, and thrown his Cloth over him.

And the Reason why I advife you to throw a Cloth over him, whilst you are dressing his Legs, is this ; that although 'tis a general Rule amongst Grooms, that an Horse cannot take cold whilst he is Dressing, yet is that Saying to be understood only of his Body, not of his Legs ; for the rubbing of his Legs will not prevent catching Cold in his Body.

When this is done, you shall with an Iron Picker pick his Feet clean, (that the stopping of his Feet may not be the means of his taking up Stones in them) comb down his Mane and Tail with a wet Mane-comb, then spirt some Beer into his Mouth, and so draw him out of the Stable.

Being mounted, rake or walk him to some running River, or fresh clear Spring, distant a Mile or two from your Stable, (which will refine his Mouth which he may have lost, during his Summer's Running, and will likewise settle his Body upon his Rake) and there let him drink about half his Draught at first, to prevent raw Crudities arising in his Stomach. After he hath drunk, bring him calmly out of the Water, and so ride him gently for a while ; for nothing is more unbeseeming a Horseman, than to thrust his Horse into a swift Gallop, as soon as he comes out of the Water, for these three Causes. First, it not only hazards the breaking of his Wind, but assuredly endangers the incording, or bursting of him. Secondly, it begets in him an ill Habit of running away, as soon as he hath done drinking. Lastly, the foresight he hath of such violent Exercise, makes him oftentimes refuse to quench his Thirst : And therefore (as I said) first walk him a little Way, and then put him into a gentle Gallop for five or six Score, then give him Wind : And after he hath been rak'd a pretty Space, then shew him the Water again, and let him drink what he pleases, and then gallop him again ; and thus do till he will drink no more, but be sure to observe always that you gallop him not so much as either to chafe, or sweat him.



Now by the way observe, that in his galloping after Water (after the first Week's enfeaming,) if sometimes you give him a watering Course sharply, or twelve or twenty Score, (as you find your Horse,) it will quicken his Spirits, and cause him to gallop more pleasantly, and teach him to manage his Limbs more nimbly, and to stretch forth his Body largely.

When your Horse hath done drinking, then rake him to the Top of the next Hill, (if there be any near your Watering-place) for there in the Morning the Air is purest, or else to some such Place, as he may gain best Advantage both of Sun and Air, and ther Air him a Foot Pace an Hour, or so long as you (in your Discretion) shall think sufficient for the State of his Body, and then ride him home.

During the time of your Horse's Airing, you will easily perceive several Marks of your Horse's Satisfaction, and the Pleasure which he takes in this Exercise: For he will gape, yawn, and as it were shrug his Body. If he offer to stand still, to dung, or startle, which his Airing will provoke, be sure give him leave, as likewise to stare about, neigh, or listen after any Noise.

Now Airing brings several Advantages to the Horse. First, it purifies the Blood, (if the Air be clean and pure) it purges the Body from many gross and suffocating Humours, and so hardens and enfeams the Horse's Fat, that it is not near so liable to be dissolved by ordinary Exercise. Secondly, it teaches him how to let his Wind rake equally, and keep time with the other Actions or Motions of his Body. Thirdly, it sharpens the Appetite, and provokes the Stomach (which is of great Advantage both to Hunters and Gallopers, who are apt to lose their Stomach through Excess or Want of Exercise: For the Sharpness of the Air will drive the Horse's natural Heat from the exterior to the interior Parts, which Heat by furthering Concoction creates an Appetite. Lastly, it increases Lust and Courage in him, provided he be not too early aired.

But whereas Mr. Markham, in his *Way to get Wealth*, quar. p. 44. Directs, if your Horse be very Fat to Air him before Sun-rise, and after Sun-setting; and that the Author of the *Gentleman's Jockey*, oct. p. 14. says, that no-  
thing



thing is more wholesome than early and late Airings; I think the contrary may be made out from Experience. For in this Art, all things that any ways hinder the Strength and Vigour of Nature, are to be avoided; now, that Extremity of Cold, and being out early and late do so, is evidently seen by Horses that run abroad all Winter, which however hardily bred, and kept with best Care and Fodder, yet cannot by any means be advanced to so good case in Winter, as an indifferent Pasture will raise them to in Summer. And this holding true of the Nocturnal Colds, must needs be verified in some proportionate Measure of the Morning and Evening Dews, and that peircing Cold which is observed to be more intense at the opening and close of the Day, than any part of the Night. Besides that, the Dews and moist Rimes do as much Injury to a Horse, as the sharpest Colds or Frosts: Since (as I have found by Experience, a Horse any ways inclinable to Catarrhs, Rheums, or any other cold Distempers, is apt to have the Humours augmented, and the Disease most sensibly increased by these early and late Airings.

But if he be not had forth to Air till the Sun be risen (as you must cast to have him drest, and ready to lead forth against that time) his Spirits will be cheared and comforted by that universal Comforter of all living Creatures; and indeed all Horses naturally desire to enjoy the Sun's warmth, as you may observe by those Horses which lie out all Night, who as soon as the Sun is risen, will repair to those Places where they may have the most Benefit of the Beams, and by them be in part relieved from the Coldness of the foregoing Night. And besides the Benefit of the Sun, the Air will be so mild and temperate, as it will rather invigorate than prey upon his Spirits, and more increase his Strength than impair it.

Neither, though we disallow of early and late Airings, need we be at a loss to bring down our Horse's Fat, and from being purfivè, and too high in Flesh, to reduce him to Cleanness, and a more moderate state of Body: For if you do but observe this one Rule of keeping a Fat Horse so much longer out at a time both Morning and Evening, you will undoubtedly obtain your end by such long Air-



ing, joined with true sound Heats, which you may expect indeed, but will never find from those that are shorter, how early and late soever; for this Method joined with good Feeding, is the best Prescription can be given in this Case, and 'tis from the length of your Airings only that you must hope to bring your Horse to a perfect Wind, and true Courage. And therefore a Horse that is high in Flesh, is a fitter Subject to work on than one that is low, because he is better able to endure Labour, whereas the other must of Necessity be so favoured in training, to improve his Strength and Flesh, that he is in Danger (without he be under the Care of a very skilful Keeper) of proving thick winded for want of true Exercise in Training.

When you are returned from Airing, and are dismounted, lead your Horse on the Straw, which (as I told you before) should always lie before the Stable-door; and there by whistling and stirring up the Litter under his Belly will provoke him to stale, which a little Practice will bring him to, and is advantageous for the Horse's Health, and the keeping of your Stable clean; then lead him into his Stall (which ought likewise to be well littered) and having tied up his Head to the empty Rack, take off his Saddle, rub his Body and Legs all over with the Fresh-brush, then with the Hair-patch, and last of all with the Woollen-cloath.

Then you shall cloath him with a Linen Cloath next to his Body, and over that a Canvas Cloath, and both made so fit as to cover his Breast, and to come pretty low down to his Legs, which is the *Turkish* way of Cloathing, who are the most curious People (says the Duke of Newcastle) in keeping their Horses, and esteem them the most of any Nation. Over the forementioned put a Body-Cloath of six, or eight Straps, which is better than a Sircingle, and Pad stuf with Wisps, because this keeps his Belly in shape, and is not so subject to hurt him.

Now these Cloaths will be sufficient for him at his first stabling, because being inured to the cool Air, he will not be so apt to take cold, the Weather likewise at that Season being indifferently warm; but when sharp Weather approaches, and that you find his Hair rise



about his outward Parts that are uncloathed, as Neck, Gascoins, &c. then add another Cloath, which ought to be of Woollen; and for any Horse bred under this Climate, and kept only for ordinary Hunting, this is Cloathing sufficient.

Now, the Design of Cloathings is only, by their Help, joined to the Warmth of the Stable, and the Litter (which must always lie under the Horse) to keep his Body in such a moderate natural Heat, as shall be sufficient to assist Nature, that skilful Physician, in expelling her Enemies, by dissolving those raw and gross Humours which are subject to annoy the Horse, and which would very much prejudice him if they were not removed; which warm Cloathing does in a great Measure, by dispersing them into the outward Parts, and expelling them by sweating as he sleeps and lies down, which will be a means to purge his Body, and keep it clean from Glut and and redundant Humours.

But yet (as in all things the Golden Mean is best) there is a Mean to be observed too here: For as too few Cloaths will not assist Nature sufficiently in the Expulsion of her Enemies, so too many will force her too much, and cause Weakness in your Horse by too violent Sweatings. Therefore you must have a care of following the Example of some ignorant Grooms, who because they have acquired a false Reputation by living in some Nobleman's or Gentleman's Service, that are noted Sportsmen, think they are able to give Laws to all their Fraternity, and therefore without any Reason heap Multiplicity of Cloaths on the Horse, as if they mean to bury him in Woollen. You must know, that both the Temperature of the Weather, and the State of his Body are to be observed, and that all Horses are not to be cloathed alike: Your fine skined Horse, as the *Barb*, *Turk*, *Spanish* Horse, &c. require more Cloaths than our *English* common Horses, that are bred in a colder Climate, and have naturally thicker Skins, and a longer Coat. But that you may not err, I have told you already how you are to cloath your Horse, and therefore shall only add this one General Rule, that a rough Coat shews want of Cloaths, and a smooth Coat Cloathing sufficient: Ever observing, that by his Countenance, his Dung, and other outward Chara-



Characters (which I shall by and by give you more at large) you perceive your Horse to be in Health, and yet notwithstanding your Horse's Coat still itares, you must add more Cloaths till it lie; as on the other Hand, if it will lie with the Assistance of a single Linen Cloath, it is sufficient.

But if when he has been in keeping some time, you perceive him apt to sweat in the Night, 'tis a Sign that he is over fed, and wants Exercise: But if he sweat at his first coming from Grass, you must know that there is Cause rather to encrease, than diminish the Cloaths I have allotted at his first Housing; for it proceeds from the foul Humours which oppress Nature, and when by Exercise they are evacuated, Nature will cease working, and he will continue in a temperate State of Body all the Year after.

When he is cloathed up, pick his Feet clean with an Iron Picker, and wash his Hoofs clean with a Sponge dipt in fair Water, and then dry them with a Straw or a Linnen Cloath, and if there be Occasion, and that you find your Horse's Legs dirty, you may bathe them likewise, only you must be sure to rub them dry before you go out of your Stable, then leave him on his Snaffle for an Hour or more, which will assist his Appetite.

When an Hour is expired, you shall come to him again, and having tuck'd an handful of Hay, and dusted it, you shall let your Horse tease it out of your Hand till he hath eaten it; then pull off his Bridle, and having rubbed his Head and Neck clean, with the Hempen-cloath, as before, pull his Ears, and stop his Nostrils to make him snore, which will help to bring away the moist Humours which oppress his Brain, and then put on his Collar, and give him a Quarter of Oats clean drest in a Sieve, having first made his Locker or Manger clean with a Wisp of Straw, and a Cloath.

Whilst he is eating his Corn, you shall sweep out your Stable, and see that all things are neat about him, and turning up his Cloaths, you shall rub his Fillets, Buttocks, and Gascoins over with the Hair-patch, and after that with a Woollen Cloath; then spread a clean Flannel Fillet Cloath over his Fillets and Buttocks (which will make his Coat lie smooth) and turn down his



Houſing Cloaths upon it. Then anoint his Hoofs round from the Cronet to the Toe with this Ointment, &c.

Take four Ounces of Venice Turpentine, three Ounces of Bees-wax, two Ounces of the beſt Roſin, one Pound of Dogs-Greaſe, half a Pint of Train Oil. Melt all theſe Ingredients (except the Turpentine) together; being melted, remove them from the Fire, and then put in the Turpentine, and keep it ſtirring, till all be well incorporated; then put it in a Gally-pot, and when it is cold cover it cloſe from Duſt, and reſerve it for Uſe.

After this pick his Feet with an Iron Picker, and ſtop them with Cow-dung; and by this time your Horſe (if he be not a very ſlow Feeder) will have eaten his Oats, which if you find he does with a good Stomach, ſift him another Quart, and throw them to him, and ſo feed him by little and little, whiſt he eats with an Appetite; but if he fumbles with his Corn, then give him no more at that time.

And this I think a better Direction, than to preſcribe a ſet Quantity of Provender, as all Authors I have yet met with have done. For without doubt no certain Quantity of Meat can be allotted for all Sorts of Horſes, any more than for all ſorts of Men; and therefore proportion the Quantity to the Horſe's Appetite: But be ſure at all times give him his full Feeding, for that will keep his Body in better State and Temper, and increaſe his Strength and Vigour. Whereas, on the contrary, to keep your Horſe always ſharp ſet, is the ready way to procure a Surfeit, if at any time he can come at his Fill of Provender, according to the common Proverb, Two hungry Meals makes the third a Glutton. But though you perceive he gather Fleſh too faſt upon ſuch home Feeding, yet be ſure not to ſtint him for it, but only increaſe his Labour, and that will aſſiſt both his Strength and Wind.

When theſe things are done, you ſhall duſt a pretty Quantity of Hay, and throw it down to him on his Litter, after you have taken it up under him; and then ſhutting up the Windows and Stable-door, leave him till one a Clock in the Afternoon; at which time you ſhall come to him, and having rubbed over his Head, Neck, Fillets, Buttocks, and Legs, as before, with the Hair-patch and Woollen Cloath, you ſhall feed him as before,  
and



and then leave him till the time of his Evening-watering, (which should be about three of the Clock in Winter, and four in Summer) and then having put back his foul Litter, and swept away that and his Dung, you shall dress and saddle him as before, and mounting him, you shall rake him to the Water, and after drinking and galloping, you shall Air him along by the River side, till you think it time to go Home; then order him in all Points, as to rubbing, feeding, stopping his Feet, &c. as you did in the Morning; and having fed him at six a Clock, be sure feed him again about nine; and having littered him well, and thrown him Hay enough to serve him for all Night, you shall leave him till the next Morning. And as you have spent this Day, so you must order him in all respects, for a Fortnight together, and by that time his Flesh will be so hardned, and his Wind so improved; his Mouth will be so quickened, and his Gallop brought to so good a Stroke, that he will be fit to be put to moderate Hunting.

Now during this Fortnight's keeping you are to make several Observations, as to the Nature and Disposition of your Horse, Temper of his Body, the Course of his Digestion, &c. and order him accordingly. As first, if he be of a churlish Disposition, you must reclaim him by Severity; if of a loving Temper, you must win him by Kindness. Secondly, you must observe whether he be a foul Feeder, or of a nice Stomach; if he be quick at his Meat, and retain a good Stomach, then four times of full Feeding, in a Day and a Night's space, is sufficient; but if he be a slender Feeder, and slow at his Meat, then you must give but a little at once, and often, as about every two Hours, for fresh Meat will draw on his Appetite; and you must always leave a little Meat in his Locker for him to eat at his own leisure betwixt times of his Feeding; and when at any time you find any left, you shall sweep it away, and give him fresh, and expose that to the Sun and Air, which will prevent Mustiness and reduce it to its first Sweetness, before it was blown upon.

Now, as to the manner of Feeding, you may sharpen his Stomach by Change of Meat, as giving one Meal clean Cats, another Oats and split-Beans, and (when you



have brought him to eat Bread) you may give him another Meal of Bread, always observing to give him oftneſt that which he likes beſt; or if you pleaſe, you may give him both Corn and Bread at the ſame time, provided you give him that laſt which he eats beſt, and which has the beſt Digefſion.

'Tis obſerved of ſome Horſes, that they are of ſo hot a Conſtitution, that without they may drink at every Bit, they cannot eat, and thoſe Horſes uſually carry no Belly; in this caſe therefore you muſt let a Pail of Water ſtand continually before them, or at leaſt offer them Water at Noon, beſides what they fetch abroad at their ordinary times.

Next you are to obſerve the Nature of his Digefſion, that is, whether he retains his Food long, which is the Sign of a bad Digefſion; or whether Nature does expel the Dung more frequently; which if he do, and that his Dung be looſe and bright, 'tis a Sign of a good Habit of Body; but if he dung hard, and ſeldom, then on the contrary 'tis a Sign of a dry Body; and therefore to remedy this, you ſhall once in a Day give him a handful or two of Oats, well waſhed in good ſtrong Ale, for this will looſen his Body, and keep it moiſt, and you will find it alſo good for his Wind, notwithstanding the Opinion of ſome to the contrary.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Second Fortnight's Diet, and of his firſt Hunting, and what Chafes are moſt proper to Train him.*

**B**Y that time you have ſpent this Fortnight, according to the foregoing Rules, your Horſe will be in a pretty good State of Body; for the groſs Humours will be dried in his Body, and his Fleſh will begin to be harden'd which you will perceive (as I told you at firſt) by his Chaul, his ſhort Ribs, and his Flank; for the Kernels under his Chaps will not feel ſo groſs as at firſt they did, his fleſh on his ſhort Ribs will not feel ſo ſoft and looſe,



loose, nor the thin part of his Flank so thick as at his first Housing; so that now you may without hazard adventure to hunt him moderately.

But before I proceed, I think it necessary to clear one Point, which I have heard much discussed amongst Horsemen, which is, what sort of Chase is most proper for the training of a young Horse? Some being of one Opinion, some of another. For some would have a Horse, which is designed either for a Buck-hunter or Fox-hunter, used from the Beginning to the Chase which they are designed for. Others think those Chases too violent for a young Horse, and therefore chuse to train him after Harriers; and of this Opinion I must own my self to be, since Experience has fully shewn me the Advantages of the one, and the Inconveniencies of the other. Now to prove this Assertion, let us take a slight View of the several Chases which are commonly used by our Nobility and Gentry, where the Horse is made a Companion and Member of the Sport, and they are these; the Stag, Buck, Hind, Fox, Otter and Hare.

As for the three first here mentioned, as there is not much Difference in the hunting of them, so the Inconveniencies from each Chase are in a manner the same also. For which soever you hunt, 'tis either in Covert, or at Force. Now if Deer be hunted in a Park, they usually chuse the most woody Parts of it, as a Refuge from the Pursuits of their Enemies, which is both unpleasant to the Rider, and troublesome to the Horse to follow the Dogs through the thick Bushes; and besides, usually the Ground in Parks is full of Mole-banks, Trenches, &c. which is dangerous for a young Horse to gallop on, till he has attained to some Perfection in his Stroke. But if they be turned out of the Park, and be hunted at Force, you will find, that as soon as you have unharboured or roused them, they will immediately make out endways before the Hounds five or six, nay sometimes ten Miles, they following in full Cry so swiftly, that a Horse must be compelled to run up and down Hill without any Intermision; leaping Hedge, Ditch and Dale, nay often crossing Rivers, to the great Danger of the Rider, as well as of the Horse. So that in my Opinion 'tis altogether improper to a put young Horse to such violent Labour



at the first, till by Practice and Degrees he hath been made acquainted with hard Service.

Now, besides the Swiftneſs and Violence of this Chase, and the Danger of cracking his Wind, and burſting his Belly ; besides the ſtraining of his Limbs by ſuch deſperate Riding, and the creating in a young Horſe a Loathſomneſs to his Labour, by undergoing ſuch violent and unuſal Service ; the Seasons for theſe Chases beginning about Midſummer, and ending about Holy-rood-tide, which is that part of the Year in which the Sun's Heat is exceſſive, and ſo ſcorches the Earth, that a violent Chase would hazard the melting his Greafe, and the Weight of the Rider, by Reason of the Hardneſs of the Ground, would occaſion Foundring, Splents, and Windgalls, inſomuch, that in ſhort time the Horſe would prove altogether uſeleſs.

But here I cannot but deſire to be rightly underſtood, ſince though I object againſt theſe Chases as improper for young Horſes, yet I do not mean that Horſes ſhould be excluded this Recreation ; but I would have thoſe which are imployed herein, to be Horſes of ſtayed Years, and by long Practice and Experience have been rightly trained to Hunting : ‘ Young Horſes (as the Duke of New-  
‘ caſtle ſays) being as ſubject to Diſeaſes as young Chil-  
‘ dren, and therefore he adviſes any Man that would buy  
‘ a Horſe for Uſe in his ordinary Occaſions, as for Jour-  
‘ neys, Hawking, or Hunting, never to buy a Horſe  
‘ until the Mark be out of his Mouth, and if he be ſound  
‘ of Wind, Limb, and Sight, he will laſt you eight or  
‘ nine Years with good keeping, and never fail you ; and  
‘ therefore (pursues he) I am always ready to buy for ſuch  
‘ purpoſes an old Nag of ſome Huntsman or Falconer,  
‘ that is ſound, and that is the uſeful Nag, for he gal-  
‘ lops on all Grounds, leaps over Hedges and Ditches ;  
‘ and this will not fail you in your Journey, nor any  
‘ where, and is the only Nag of uſe for Pleaſure or Jour-  
‘ ney’. Thus far the Duke : And if it may be permit-  
ted to add to his Advice, I would have them ſtrait bodied,  
clean timbred Nags, ſuch as may be light, nimble, and  
of middle Stature, for thoſe Horſes are not near ſo ſubject  
to Lameneſs as thoſe of Bulk and Strength, the Cauſes  
whereof have been already declared.



The next Chase proposed was that of the Fox, which although it be a Recreation much in Use, and highly applauded by the generality of the Nobility and Gentry; yet with Submission to their Judgment, I never could find that Pleasure in it which has been represented to me by some of its Admirers: And I am sure it is inconvenient for the training of a young Horse, since it is swift without Respite, and of long Continuance, both which, as I have already shewed, are distasteful to him; but the greatest Inconvenience that happens to a Horse in this Case is this; that when a Fox is unkennelled, he seldom or never betakes himself to a Champaign Country, but remains in the strongest Coverts and in the thickest Woods; so that a Horse can but seldom enjoy the Pleasure of accompanying the Hounds, without hazarding being stubbed, or other as dangerous Accidents. The fittest Horses for this Chase are Horses of great Strength and Ability, since this Chase begins at *Christmas*, which is the worst time of Riding, and ends at our *Lady-Day*, when the Ground is best for it.

The next Chase to be spoken of is the Otters, which although it may seem delightful to some, yet I cannot by any means think it convenient for a Horse: For he that will truly pursue this amphibious Sport, must often swim his Horse, to the equal Hazard, both of the Rider and the Horse.

But to conclude with the last, and the best of Chases, and that is the Hare. It is in my Opinion the most pleasant and delightful Chase of any whatsoever, and the most beneficial for training a young Horse. It is swift, and of some Indurance like that of the Fox, but far more pleasant to the Horse, because Hares commonly run the Champaign Country; and the Scent not being so hot as the Foxes, the Dogs are oftner at default, and by that means the Horse has many Sobbs, whereby he recovers Wind, and regains new Strength. This Chase begins at *Michaelmas*, and lasts till the End of *February*.

Now the best Dogs to bring your Horse to Perfection of Wind and Speed, are your fleet Northern Hounds; for they, by means of their hard running, will draw him up to that extraordinary Speed, that he will not have time to loiter, and by continual Practice will be so inured



nured and habituated to the Violence of their Speed, that in short time he will be able to ride on all sorts of Ground, and be at such Command upon the Hand, that he will strike at what rate you please, and three quarters Speed will be less troublesome to him than a *Canterbury* Gallop.

I have often thought this one of the Reasons why your Northern Breeders for the generality excel those of the South; since certainly the Speed of their Hounds contributes much to the Excellence of their Horses, and makes them endure a four Mile Course without Sobbs, which some Horsemen call Whole-running: But of this more in another Place.

The time being now come that he may be hunted, you shall order him on his Days of Rest in all Points as to his Dressing, Hours of Feeding, Watering, &c. as in the first Fortnight afore-directed; only since his Labour is now to be increased you must endeavour to increase his Strength and Courage likewise; and this will be effected by adding to his Oats a third part of clean old Beans spelted on a Mill, and as an Over-plus to allow him Bread made after this Manner.

Take four Pecks of clean old Beans, and two Pecks of Wheat, and grind them together, and sift the Meal through a Meal Sieve of an indifferent Fineness, and knead it with warm Water and good store of Barm, and let it lie an Hour or more to swell, for by that means the Bread will be the lighter, and have the easier and quicker Digestion; after which being with a Brake, or any other way exceedingly well kneaded, make it up into great Household Peck-loaves, which will be a means to avoid Crust, and prevent its drying too soon; bake them thoroughly, and let them stand a good while in the Oven to soke, then draw them, and turning the Bottoms upwards, let them stand to cool.

When your Bread is a Day old, you may venture to feed your Horse with it, having first chipt away the Crust; and sometimes giving him Bread, sometimes Oats, and now and then Oats and spelted Beans, according as you find his Stomach; you need not fear but such Feeding will bring him into as good Condition as you need desire for ordinary Hunting.

When



When your Bread is prepared, and your first Fort-night expired, you must then pitch upon a Day for his going abroad after the Dogs, and the Day before you Hunt, you must always order him after this manner. In the Morning proceed in your usual Method as before, only observe that Day to give him no Beans, because they are hard of Digestion, but give most of Bread if you can draw him on to eat it, because it is more nourishing than Oats; and after your Evening Watering, which ought to be somewhat earlier than at other times, give him only a little Hay out of your Hand, and no more till the next Day that he returns from Hunting: And to prevent his eating his Litter, or any thing else but what you give him, you shall instead of a Muzzle put on a Cavezone joined to a Headstall of a Bridle, being lined with double Leather for fear of hurting him, and tying it so straight as to hinder his Eating; and this will prevent Sicknes in your Horse, which is incident to some Horses when their Muzzle is set on, notwithstanding the Invention of the Lattice-window, now-a-days so much in Use; but this way your Horse's Nostrils are fully at Liberty, and he will never prove sick. But as to his Corn, give him his Meals, both after his Watering, and at nine a Clock, at which time be sure to litter him very well, that he may the better take his Rest, and leave him for that Night.

The next Morning come to him very early, as about four a Clock, and having dressed a Quarter of a Peck of Oats very clean, put them into his Locker, and pour into it a Quart of good strong Ale, and after having mixt the Oats and Ale very well, give him them to eat, whilst you put back his Dung and foul Litter, and make clean his Stable; but if he will not eat wash'd Oats, then give him dry; but be sure put no Beans to them. When he has done eating, Bridle him, and tie him up to the Ring, and dress him. When he is dressed, Saddle him; then throw his Cloath over him, and let him stand till the Hounds are ready to go forth. But be sure not to draw your Saddle Girts straight till you are ready to mount, lest by that means he become sick. But generally old Horses are so crafty, that when an ignorant Groom goes to girt them up hard, they will stretch out  
their



their Bodies to such a Bigness by holding their Wind (on purpose to gain ease after they are girt) that 'twill appear difficult to girt them; but afterwards they let go their Wind, and their Bodies fall again.

When the Hounds are unkennelled (which should not be till Sun-rising) go into the Field along with them, and rake your Horse up and down gently till a Hare be started; always observing to let him smell to other Horses Dung, (if he be desirous of it) which will provoke him to empty himself, and let him stand still when he does so. And if you meet with any dead Fog, Rushes, or such like, ride him upon them, and by whistling provoke him to empty his Bladder.

When the Hare is started, you are to follow the Hounds as the other Hunters do, but to consider that this being the first time of your Horse's hunting, he is not so well versed in the different sorts of Grounds, as to know how to gallop smoothly, and with Ease on them; and therefore you are not to put him as yet to above half his Speed, that he may learn to carry a staid Body, and to manage his Legs both upon Fallows, and Greenswarth. Neither are you to gallop him often, nor any long time together, for fear of discouraging him, and breeding in him a dislike to this Exercise; but observing to cross the Fields still to your best Advantage, you shall make into the Hounds at every default, and still keep your Horse (as much as these Rules will allow you) within the Cry of the Dogs, that he may be used to their Cry; and you will find that in a very short time he will take such Delight and Pleasure in their Musick, that he will be desirous to follow them more eagerly.

Now, if at any time the Chase be led over any Carpet Ground, or sandy High-way, on which your Horse may lay out his Body smoothly, you may there gallop him for a quarter or half a Mile, to teach him to lay out his Body, and to gather up his Legs, to enlarge and shorten his Stroke, according to the different Earths he gallops on, as if on Green-swarth, Meadow, Moor, Heath, &c. then to stoop and run more on the Shoulders; if amongst Mole-hills, or over high Ridges and Furrows, then to gallop more roundly, and in less Compass, or according to the vulgar Phrase two up and two down, that  
thereby



thereby he may strike his Furrow clear, and avoid setting his Fore-feet in the Bottom of it, and by that means fall over; but by this way of galloping, though he should happen to set his Feet in a Furrow, yet carrying his Body so round and resting on the Hand in his Gallop, would prevent his falling; and to this Perfection nothing but Use, and such moderate Exercise can bring him.

According to these Rules you may spend your Time in Hunting, till about three a Clock in the Afternoon, at which time you shall have him home in a Foot Pace as you came out in the Morning, and be sure that he be cool before you bring him out of the Field; and as you are going home, consider with your self, whether or no he hath sweat a little, (for you must not sweat him much the first time) but if not, then gallop him gently on some skelping Earth, till he sweat at the Roots of his Ears, a little on his Neck, and in his Flank, but it must be done of his own voluntary Motion, without the Compulsion of Whip and Spur: And then when he is cool as aforesaid, have him home and Stable him, and besure avoid walking him in Hand to cool him, for fear he cool too fast, or washing him for fear of causing an Obstruction of the natural Course of the Humours, (which are thought by some Horsemen to abound most in Winter) and by that means cause an Inflammation in his Legs, which is the Parent of the Scratches.

When you set him up in his Stall (which must be well littered against his coming home) tye up his Head to the Ring with the Bridle, and then rub him well with dry Straw all over, both Head, Neck, Fore-bowels, Belly, Flank, Buttocks and Legs; and afterwards rub his Body over with a dry Cloath till there be not a wet Hair left about him, then take off his Saddle, and rub the Place where the Saddle stood dry likewise, and so cloath him with his ordinary Cloaths with all Speed, for fear lest he take cold; and if you think him too hot, throw a spare Cloath over him, to prevent his cooling too fast, which you may abate when you please, and so let him stand on his Snaffle two Hours or more, stirring him with your Whip now and then in his Stall, to keep his Legs and Joints from growing stiff.

When



When that time is expired, and you think he may be throughout cold, then come to him, and having drawn his Bridle, rubbed his Head and picked his Feet from Dirt and Gravel which he may have gathered abroad, put on his Collar, and sift him a Quart, or three Pints of Oats, and mix with them a handful of clean dusted Hempseed, and give them to him; but give him not above the Quantity prescribed, for fear of taking away his Stomach, which will be very much weakned through the Heat of his Body, and want of Water. Then remove the spare Cloath (if you have not done it before) for fear of keeping him hot too long, and when he has eaten his Corn, throw a pretty Quantity of Hay clean dusted, on his Litter, and let him rest two or three Hours, or thereabouts.

Whilst you are absent from him, you shall prepare him a good Mash, made of half a Peck of Malt well ground, and Water that is boiling hot, observing to put no more Water than your Malt will sweeten, and your Horse will drink, and then stir them together with a Rudder, or Stick, and then cover it over with Cloath, till the Water has extracted the Strength of the Malt, which will be evident to your Taste and Touch, for 'twill be almost as sweet as Honey, and feel ropy like Birdlime; then when it is cold, that you can scarce perceive it to smoak, offer it to your Horse, but not before, lest the Steam ascend into his Nostrils, and thereby offend him with its Scent; and when he has drunk the Water, let him if he please eat the Malt also. But if he refuse to drink, yet you must give him no other Water that Night, but by placing it in one Corner at the Head of his Stall, in such manner that he may not throw it down, (which you may effect by nailing a Spar a cross before the Bucket) let it stand by him all Night, that he may drink at his Pleasure.

Now you will find this Mash, or (as some call it) Horse-Caudle, very beneficial to your Horse on several Accounts; for it will comfort his Stomach, and keep his Body in due temperate Heat after his Day's Hunting; it will cleanse and bring away all manner of Grease and gross Humours, which have been dissolved by this Day's Labour and the Fume of the Malt-grains, after he has drunk the  
Water,



Water, will disperse watry Humours, which might otherwise annoy his Head, and is allowed by all Horsemen to be very advantageous on that Account.

When he has eaten his Mash, then strip him of his Cloaths, and run him over with your Curry-comb, *French* Brush, Hair-Patch, and Woollen Cloath, and cloath him up again, and then cleanse his Legs as well as his Body of all Dirt and Filth, which may annoy them, as you have been directed in Dressing; then remove him into another Stall (that you may not wet his Litter) and bathe his Legs all over from the Knees with warm Beef-broth, or, which is better, with a quart of warm Urine, in which four Ounces of Salt-Peter hath been dissolved: Then rub his Legs dry as when you came in from Water, set him into his Stall, and give him a good Home-feeding of Oats, or Bread, (which he likes best) or both, and having shook good store of Litter under him, that he may rest the better, and thrown him Hay enough for all Night on it, shut up your Stable close, and leave him to his Rest till Morning,

The next Morning come to him betwixt six and seven a Clock, for that is time enough, because the Morning's Rest is as pleasant and refreshing to the Horse as it is to a Man, for then the Meat being concocted, the Sleep is more sweet, and the Brain is at that time more thin and pure. If he be laid, disturb him not, but stay till he rises of his own accord, (and to know this, you ought to have a private Peep-hole) but if he be risen, then go to him, and the first thing you must do is to put back his Dung from his Litter, and to observe what Colour it is of: Observe whether it be greasy, and shining outwardly, and break it with your Feet, that you may see whether it be so inwardly; for if it be greasy and foul either within or without, (which you may know by its outward shining, and by Spots like Soap, which will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown Colour, and harder than it was, it is a Sign that your former Day's Hunting was beneficial to him, by dissolving part of the inward Glut which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt, you must increase his Labour but a little. But if you perceive no such Symptoms, but that his Dung appears bright, and rather soft than hard, without

\*

Grease,



Grease, and in a Word that it holds the same pale yellow Colour it did before you hunted him, then 'tis a Sign that a Day's Hunting made no Dissolution, but that his Body remains in the same State still, and therefore the next Day's Hunting you may almost double his Labour.

When you have made these Remarks from his Dung, you shall then proceed to order him as in his Days of Rest, that is to say, you shall give him a handful or two of Oats before Water; then Dress, Water, Air, Feed, &c. as in the first Fortnight.

Now as to his Feeding, you must remember the way I have already shewed, of changing his Food; as giving him one while Bread, another Oats, a third time Oats and Beans, which you find he likes best; observing always, that Variety will sharpen his Appetite. But Bread being his chief Food, as being more nourishing and strong than the others, you must feed him oftenest with it.

And as in the first Fortnight I directed you to observe his Digestion, whether it were quick or slow, so likewise must you do now that he begins to eat Bread. If you find him quick, and that he retains his Bread but a little while, then (as I have already directed) you shall only slightly chip your Bread; but if he be slow, and retains it long, cut away all the Crust, and give it to some other Horse, and feed your Hunter only with the Crum; for that being light of Digestion soon converts to Chyle and Excrements, but the Crust being slow, of Digestion, requires by Reason of its Hardness longer time before it be concocted.

The next Day after he has rested, you shall hunt him again as you did the first Day, observing from the Remarks you have made, to hunt him more or less, according as you find the Temper and Constitution of your Horse; and when you are returned home, observe to put in Practice the same Rules which you have just now read; and thus hunt your Horse three times a Week for a Fortnight together, observing to give him his full Feeding, and no other Scowrings, but Mashies, and Hempseed, which is equal in its Vertue to the former, and only carries off superfluous Humor in the Dung.

And



And here, before I conclude this Chapter, I cannot but take Notice of the Abuse of Scowrings, and my own Ignorance, being led away by the Perswasions and my mistaken Opinion of other Mens Skill, who because they could talk of giving a Scowring, (though Experience has since taught me, that they never knew the Operation of them, nay, nor the Disposition of the Horses which they kept) I thought most eminent and skilful Horse-Doctors; but indeed I found to my cost, that my Ignorance led me into the same Mistake with those Men that take Physick by way of prevention, and by that means render their Bodies more liable to Diseases, their Pores being so much opened by Physick. In like manner, I found that though I bought Horses of sound and strong Constitutions, yet by following the false Rules and Practices of others, I quickly brought them to weak Habits of Body; and by continually using them to unnecessary Physick, to be tender, and apt to take Cold and Surfeits on every small Occasion: Which taught me to know, that as KitchenPhysick is best for a Man, (unless he languish under some more than ordinary Distemper; so natural and true sound Feeding is best for a Horse, it strengthening his Constitution, and keeping his Body in good Temper; for a Horse that is full-fed with good natural Diet is not subject to Costiveness; and from hence I infer, that a Horse which is sound, and in Health, and of a strong Constitution, needs little Physick more than good wholesome Meat, and his Fill of it, provided you order him as he ought to be when he is come from Hunting.

But as Horses, no more than Men, are free from Distempers, and by Reason of Abuses and unkind Masters, are rather more liable to them, it being become a Proverb, (as many Diseases as a Horse); so when at any time they happen, Recourse must be had to Physick; and as it is good in its true Use, so I shall in the subsequent Part of my Discourse set down when, and what manner of Scowrings are useful, and how they are to be applied with Skill and Safety; of which in its proper Place.



## C H A P. VI.

*Of the Horse's Third Fortnight's Keeping, and first thorough Sweating.*

**B**Y this time your Horse will be drawn so clean, his Flesh will be so incased, and his Wind so improved, that he will be able to ride a Chase of three or four Miles, without much blowing or sweating; and you will find by his Chaul and Flank, as well as his Ribs, that he is in an indifferent good State of Body, and therefore this next Fortnight you must increase his Labour, by which means you will come to a true Knowledge of what he is able to do, and whether or no he will ever be fit for Plates, or a Match.

When your Horse is fet over Night, and fed early in the Morning, (as in the last Fortnight's Preparation for Hunting was directed) then go into the Field with him, and when your Horse is empty, as he will be by that time you have started your Game, you shall follow the Dogs at a good round Rate, as at Half-speed, and so continue till you have killed or lost your first Hare. This will so rack your Horse's Mind, and by this time he will have so emptied himself, that he will be fit to be rid the next Chase briskly: which, as soon as begun, you shall follow the Dogs at three quarter Speed, as near to them as is consistent with the Discretion of a good Horseman, and a true Huntsman; but be sure as yet not to strain him.

During this Day's Riding you shall observe your Horse's Sweat under his Saddle and Fore-bowels; if it appear white like Froth or Soap-suds, 'tis a Sign of inward Glut and Foulness, and that your Day's Sport was fully sufficient, and therefore you shall have him home, and order him as before you are directed. But if your Sport has been so indifferent, as not to sweat your Horse thoroughly, then you shall make a Train-scent of four Miles long, or thereabout, and laying on your fleetest Dogs,



Dogs, ride it briskly, and then having first cooled him in the Field, ride him home and use him as aforesaid.

Now, that I may not leave you in Ignorance what a Train-scent is, I shall acquaint you that it has its Name, as I suppose, from the Manner of it viz. the trailing or dragging of a dead Cat or Fox (and in Case of Necessity a Red-herring) three or four Miles, (according to the Will of the Rider, or the Directions given him) and then laying the Dogs on the Scent.

But this Caveat let me give all Huntsmen, to keep about two or three Couple of the fleetest Hounds you can possibly procure for this purpose only. For although I have seen skilful Sportsmen use their Harriers in this Case for their Diversion; yet I would perswade them not to use them to it often; for it will teach them to lie off the Line, and fling so wide, that they will never be worth any thing.

When you unbridle your Horse, give him, instead of Hempseed and Oats, a handsome Quantity of Rye-bread, (to which end I would advise you to bake a Peck Loaf for this purpose) which being cold and moist will assist in cooling his Body after his Labour, and prevent Coughs, to which you will find him addicted; then give him Hay, and afterwards a Mash, and then order him in all Points as formerly.

The next Morning, if you perceive by his Dung that his Body is distempered, and he is hard and bound, then take some Crums of your Rye-Bread, and work it with as much sweet fresh Butter as will make it into Paste, and then making it into Balls about the Bigness of a large Wall-nut, give him five or six of them in the Morning fasting; and then setting on your Saddle, upon his Cloath, mount him, and gallop him gently in some adjoining Grass-Plat, or Close, till he begin to sweat under his Ears, then lead him into the Stable, and let him be well rubbed, and throwing a spare Cloath over him, and good store of fresh Litter under him, let him stand two Hours on the Bridle; then give him a Quantity of Rye-bread, then throw him some Hay to chew upon, and after that get him another warm Mash, and then feed him with Bread and Corn as much as he will, and be sure to allow him what Hay he will eat. The



next Day water him abroad, and order him as in his Days of Rest.

The Day following hunt him again, but by no means so severely as you did the time before, till the Afternoon, but then ride him after the Dogs briskly, and if that does not make him sweat throughly, make another Train Scent, and follow the Dogs three quarters Speed, that he may sweat heartily. When you have a little cooled him, have him home, and upon his first Entrance into the Stable, give him two or three Balls as big as Wallnuts, of this most excellent Scowring, *viz.*

Take Butter four Ounces, Lenitive Electuary two Ounces, Gromwel, Broom and Parsley Seeds, of each one Ounce, Anniseeds, Liquorish, and Cream of Tartar, of each half an Ounce, Jallop an Ounce; make the Seeds into Powder, and stir them into a PASTE, with the Electuary and the Butter; knead it well, and keep it close in a Pot for use.

As soon as you have given your Horse these Balls, rub him dry, then dress him, and cloath him up warm, and let him stand two or three Hours on the Snaffle; then give him two or three Handfuls of Rye-Bread, and order him as you did before, as to Hay, Provender, Mash, &c. and so leave him till the Morning.

Then come to him, and first observe his Dung whether it keep the true Colour, or whether it appear dark, or black, or red and high coloured; next, whether it be loose and thin, or hard and dry. If it be of the right Colour, I mean pale Yellow, 'tis a Sign of Health, Strength and Cleanness; if it be dark, or black, then 'tis a Sign there is Grease, and other ill Humours stirred up, which are not yet evacuated: If it be red and high coloured, then 'tis a Token that his Blood is feverish and distempered through inward Heat: If it be loose and thin, 'tis a Sign of Weakness, but if hard and dry, it shews the Horse to be hot inwardly, or else that he is a foul Feeder: But if his Dung carry a Medium betwixt hard and soft, and smell strong, 'tis a Sign of Health and Vigour.

When these Observations have been taken Notice of concerning his Dung, then you shall feed, dress, water, &c. as in his former Days of Rest; observing always to  
give



give variety, and his Belly full of Corn and Bread. The next have him abroad in the Field again, but by no means put him to any Labour, farther than to rake him from Hill to Hill after the Dogs, to keep him within Sound of their Cry; for the design of this Day's Exercise is only to keep him in Breath, and get him an Appetite. Observe as you ride, that you let him stand still to dung; and look back on it that you may draw Inferences from the Faces. When the Day is well nigh spent bring him home without the least Sweat, and order him as at other times, only observe to give no Scowrings, nor Rye Bread. You may, if you please, water your Horse this Day, both at your going into the Field, and at your coming Home, observing to gallop after it, to warm the Water in his Belly. The next is a Day of Rest.

In the same manner, in every respect as you have spent this Week, you must spend the next likewise, without Alteration in any Point; and by that time assure yourself that your Horse will be drawn clean enough for any ordinary Hunting; so that afterward observing to hunt your Horse moderately twice or thrice a Week, according to your own Pleasure, and the Constitution of your Horse's Body, you need not question but to have him in as good State and Strength as you would desire, without danger of his Wind, Eye-sight, Feet, or Body.

Now when you have thus, according to Art, drawn your Horse clean, you will perceive those Signs which I told you of, verified; for his Flesh, on his short Ribs and Buttocks, will be as hard as a Board, his Flank will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double Skin, and Chaps so clean from Fat, Glut, or Kernels, that you may hide your Fists in them; and above all, his Exercise will give plain Demonstration of the Truth of this Art, for he will run three or four Miles three quarters speed without sweating, or scarce blowing: I say, when this is perfected, you must avoid all Scowrings after Hunting, (because Nature has nothing to work on) but Rye Bread and a Mash, except your Horse be now and then troubled with some little Poze in the Head; and then you shall bruise a little Mustard seed in a fine Linen Rag, and steep it in a Quart of strong Ale for three or four Hours, and then



untying the Rag, mix the Mustard-seed and the Ale with a quarter of a Peck of Oats, and give it your Horse.

Lastly, when your Horse is drawn clean, you must beware that he grows not foul again through want of either Airing, or Hunting, or any other Negligence, lest by that means you procure to your self and your Horse double Pains and Labour, and no Thanks from your Master.

*Of making a Hunting-Match, its Advantages and Disadvantages.*

Since many Persons of Honour delight in good Horses, both for Hunters as well as Galloppers, it may not be improper to speak a Word in this Place concerning the Advantages or Disadvantages which happen in making of Hunting-Matches; since he that proceeds cautiously, and upon true Grounds, in matching his Horse, is already in a great measure sure of gaining the Prize, at least, if the Proverb be true, that a *Match well made is half won.*

The first thing to be consider'd by him that designs to match his Horse, for his own Advantage, and his Horse's Credit, is this; that he do not flatter himself in the Opinion of his Horse, by fancying that he is swifter than the Wind, when he is but a slow Gallopper; and that he is whole-running, (that is, will run four Miles without a Sob at the height of his Speed) when he is not able to run a Mile.

And the Ground of this Error I suppose arises from a Gentleman's being mistaken in the Speed of his Hounds, who for want of Trial against other Dogs that have been really fleet, has suppos'd his own to be swift, when in reality they were but of middle Speed; and because his Horse (when trained) was able to follow them all Day, and at any Hour to command them upon deep as well as light Earths, has therefore falsely concluded him to be swift as the best; but upon Trial against a Horse that has been rightly train'd after Hounds that were truly fleet,  
has



has to his Cost bought his Experience, and been convinced of his Error.

Therefore I would perswade all Lovers of Hunters to get two or three Couple of try'd Hounds, and once or twice a Week to follow after them a Train-scent ; and when he is able to top them on all sorts of Earth, and to endure Heats and Colds stoutly, then he may the better relie on his Speed and Toughness.

That Horse which is able to ride a Hare-chase of five or six Miles briskly, and with good Courage, till his Body be as it were bath'd in Sweat ; and then upon the Death of the Hare, in a nipping frosty Morning, can endure to stand still, till the Sweat be frozen on his Back, so that the Cold may pierce him as well as the Heat ; and then even in that Extremity of Cold to ride another Chase, as briskly, and with as much Courage, as he did the former : That Horse which can thus endure Heats and Colds oftneft is of most Value among Sports-men. And indeed 'tis not every Horse that is able to endure such extraordinary Toil ; and I my self have seen very brave Horses to the Eye, that have rid the first Chases to Admiration, that when the Cold has struck to them, and they began to grow stiff, have flagg'd the second, and given quite out the third Heat.

Therefore, to make a Judgment of the Goodness of your own Horse, observe him after the Death of the first Hare, if the Chase has been any thing brisk : If when he is cold, he shrinks up his Body, and draws his Legs up together, 'tis an infallible Token of want of Courage ; and the same you may collect from the slackning of his Girths after the first Chase, and from the setting of his Teeth, and the dulness of his Countenance ; all which are true Marks of Faintness and Tying : And therefore there is no Reliance on such a Horse, in case of a Wager.

But if on the contrary, you are Master of a Horse (not only in your own Judgment, but in the Opinion of knowing Horsemen) that is approv'd for Speed and Toughness, and you are desirous to match him, or otherwise to run for a Plate ; I will, to the best of my Power, tell you the Advantages that are to be gain'd in Matching.



But before I enter upon the Subject propos'd, I think it convenient to tell you the Way our Ancestors had of making their Matches, and our modern Way of deciding Wagers. First then, the old Way of Tryal was by running so many Train-Scents after Hounds, as was agreed on between the Parties concern'd, and a Bell-Course, this being found not so uncertain, and more durable than Hare-hunting, and the Advantage consisted in having the Trains led on Earth most suitable to the Nature of the Horses. Now others chuse to hunt the Hare till such an Hour prefix'd, and then to run these Wild-goose Chase, which, because it is not known to all Huntsmen, I shall explain the Use and Manner of it.

The Wild-goose Chase received its Name from the manner of the Flight which is made by Wild-geese, which is generally one after another: So the two Horses, after the running of Twelvescore Yards, had Liberty, which Horse soever could get the Leading, to ride what Ground he pleas'd; the hindmost Horse being bound to follow him, within a certain Distance agreed on by Articles, or else to be whipt up by the Triers or Judges which rode by, and which ever Horse could Distance, the other won the Match.

But this Chase was found by Experience so inhuman, and so destructive to good Horses, especially when two good Horses were match'd; for neither being able to Distance the other, till ready both to sink under their Riders through Weakness, often times the Match was fain to be drawn, and left undecided, though both the Horses were quite spoiled.

This brought them to run Train-Scents, which afterwards was chang'd to three Heats, and a straight Course; and that the Lovers of Hunting-Horses might be encouraged to keep good ones, Plates have been erected in many Places of this Land, purposely for Hunters, and of some their Articles exclude all others (namely Galloppers) from Running.

But whether you design to match your Horse against any one Horse in particular, or to put him in for a Plate, where he must run against all that come in general; yet 'tis necessary that you know the Nature and Disposition of your Horse, before you venture any Wager on his Head; that



that is to say, whether he be hot and fiery, or cool and temperate in Riding, whether he be very swift, but not hard at Bottom, or slow, but yet sure, and one that will stick at Mark ; on what sort of Earths he most delights to gallop on, whether to climb or run down Hills, or else to skelp on a Flat ; whether to run on deep, or light Grounds ; whether on Rack-ways, or Carpet-ground ; whether among Mole-hills, or on Meadow-ground ; whether he be well winded, or thick winded ; so that tho' he will answer a Spur, and mend upon Lapping, yet he must have Ease by Sobbs. All these things must be known, to the end that you may draw those Advantages from them which may be offered in matching ; as this for Example.

If your Horse be hot and fiery, 'tis odds but he is fleet withal, for generally those Horses are so, and delight to run upon light and hard Flats ; and must be held hard by the Rider, that he may have time to recover Wind by Sobbs, or else his Fury will choak him. But whereas it is the general Opinion, that nothing that is violent can be lasting ; and therefore, that it is impossible that such hot mettled Horses can be tough and hard at Bottom, this I conceive may be but a popular Error ; for I have sometimes seen by Art those two Qualities reconciled, at least so far, as to make the most fiery Horse manageable, and to endure both Whip and Spur ; and then, tho' he should not prove at Bottom so truly tough as the craving Drudge, yet by his Rider's Management, his Speed shall answer it in all Points, and serve in its stead : But to return to my Subject.

The best way to match such a Horse, is to agree to run Train-scents, and the fewer the better for you, before you come to the Course : Also in these Train-Scents the shorter you make your Distance the better : And above all things be sure agree to have the leading of the first Train ; and then making choice of such Grounds as your Horse may best shew his Speed, and the fleetest Dogs you can procure, give your Hounds as much Law before you, as your Triers will allow, and then making a loose, try to win the Match with a Wind ; but if you fail in this Attempt, then bear your Horse, and save him for the Course.

But



But if your Horse be slow, yet well-winded, and a true spurr'd Nag, then the more Train-Scents you run before you come to run the straight Course, the better: Observing here too, to gain the leading of the first Train, which, in this Case, you must lead it upon such deep Earths that it may not end near any light Ground. For this is the Rule received among Horsemen, that the next Train is to begin where the last ends, and the last Train is to be ended at the Starting place of the Course. Therefore observe to end your last on deep Earths as well as the first.

In the next place have a care of making a Match of a sudden, and in Drink, for fear lest you repent when you are sober. Neither make a Match against a Horse which you do not know, without first consulting some skilful or trusty Friend, on whose Judgment and Honesty you can safely rely, and who is able to give a good Account of your Adversary's Horse's Speed, and his manner of Riding; and if you find him any ways correspondent to your own in Speed or Goodness, be not too peremptory to venture, but upon some reasonable Probabilities of Winning: For 'tis neither Brags nor Fancy that will make your Horse run one jot the better, or your Adversary's the worse: And remember this, that there is no Horse so good, but there may be another as good; and then if you proceed on good Grounds, and true Judgment, you may be the bolder to go on, and stand to your Match, notwithstanding the Opinion of other Men may be against you.

One material Advice I had like to have forgot, and that is this; be sure at no time give Advantage of Weight, for you will find the Inconvenience of it at the latter end of the Day: For tho' a Horse feel it not when he is fresh, yet it will sink him very much when he grows weak: A Horse Length lost by odds of Weight in the first Train, may prove a Distance in the straight Course at last; for the Weight is the same every Heat, tho his Strength be not.

But if, on the other side, you gain any Advantage of Weight, article that the Horseman shall ride so much Weight as you are agreed on, besides the Saddle; for by this means the Rider (if he be not Weight of himself) must



must carry the dead Weight somewhere about him, which will be troublesome to the Rider as well as the Horse, and the more to the latter, since 'tis more remote from his Back, than if it were in the Saddle, and by Consequence will more disorder his Stroke, if the Rider incline to either side, than if it were nearer the Center ; as you may see by a Pair of Scales, where, if the Pin be not placed exactly in the midst of the Beam, the longest Part (as being most distant from the Center) will be the heaviest.

Now, as to the time that you take for dieting, that must be according to the Nature of your Horse, and the present State of Body he is in ; for tho' he may be clean enough for ordinary Hunting, yet he may be far distant from that perfect State of Body that is required in a Match, and to keep him in such strict Diet all the Season, (except on such extraordinary Occasions) would be an unnecessary Expence.

As to your Horse's Disposition for Running, you must know it by Use and Observation, for in this Point Horses very much differ, for some run best when they are high in Case, others when they are in middle Condition of Flesh, and some again when they appear to the Eye poor, and low in Flesh ; therefore, according to your Horse's Nature, and the Time required to bring him into his best State, you must order your Day for the Trial of your Match to be.

But if you design to put him in for some Hunting Plate ; there neither the Choice of your Ground, the Weight, nor the Horses you are to run against, are at your Disposal, but you must take them as you find them ; only the time for bringing your Horse into a good Condition, is at your own Discretion, since you may begin as soon or as late as you please to keep him in strict Diet, the Time for all Plates being usually fixt, and annually the same.



## C H A P. IX.

*Of the ordering the Hunter for a Match or a Plate.*

**W**Hen you have either match'd your Horse, or entertained Thoughts of putting him in for a Plate, you must consider that you ought to reserve a Month at the least, to draw his Body perfectly clean, and to refine his Wind to that degree of Perfection which Art is capable of attaining to.

First then, you must take an exact View of the State of his Body, both outwardly and inwardly ; as whether he be low or high in Flesh, or whether he be dull and heavy when abroad, and this occasioned through too much hard riding, or through some Grease that by Hunting has been dissolved, but for want of a Scowring has not been removed.

If he appear sluggish and melancholy from either of these Causes, then give him half an Ounce of *Diapente* in a Pint of good old *Mallaga* Sack, which will both cleanse his Body, and revive his Spirits : And then for the first Week you shall feed him continually with Bread, Oats and split Beans, giving him sometimes the one, and sometimes the other, according as he likes, always leaving some in his Locker to eat at his own Leisure when you are absent ; and when you return at your Hours of Feeding, to take away what is left, and to give him fresh, till you have made him wanton and playful. To which end you shall observe, that though you ride him every Day, Morning and Evening, on Airing, and every other Day on Hunting, yet you are not to sweat him, or put him to any violent Labour, the Design this Week being to keep him in Wind and Breath, and to prevent Purfiveness.

But you are to observe, that both your Oats, Beans and Bread, are to be now ordered after another manner than you did before : For first, you must dry your Oats well in the Sun, then put them into a clean Bag, and beat them soundly with a Flail or Cudgel, till you think they are hulled ; then take them out of the Bag, and winnow them clean both from Hulls and Dust, and so give them  
to



to your Horse as you have Occasion. Your Beans in like manner must be separated from the Hulls, which are apt to breed Glut, and must either be thrown away, or given amongst Chaff to some more ordinary Horse. And for your Bread, whereas before you only chipt it, now you must cut the Crust clean away, and dispose of it as you please; for 'tis hard of Digestion, and will be apt to heat and dry his Body. And now, that you are to put him into stricter keeping, you are to make a finer sort of Bread than before, as thus;

Take two Pecks of Beans, and two of Wheat, and grind them together, but not too fine, to prevent too much Bran being in the Bread; and dress one Peck of the Meal through a fine Range, and knead it up with new Ale Barm, and the Whites of a Dozen new laid Eggs, and so bake it in a Loaf by it self, and the rest dress through a Boulter, and knead it only with Ale and Barm; and use it in all other Points as the former: Now the Peck Loaf is to be given your Horse when you set him, and the other at ordinary times.

This Bread assists Nature as much in increasing the Strength, Courage, and Wind of your Horse, provided you add thereto (as I have always told you) true Labour, as any Bread whatsoever; nay, even as either of *M. de Grey's* Sorts of Bread, which he mentions in his *Compleat Horseman*, 4to, p. 232. *Ed.* 4th, especially his last, which he says is better Bread, and a greater Cooler, and which he prescribes to make thus:

‘ Take Wheat-meal one Peck, Rye-meal, Beans and  
 ‘ Oat meal, all ground very small, of each half a Peck,  
 ‘ Anniseeds and Liquorish, of each one Ounce, white Su-  
 ‘ gar Candy four Ounces, all in fine Powder, the Yolks  
 ‘ and Whites of twenty Eggs well beaten, and so much  
 ‘ white Wine as will knead it into a Paste; make this in-  
 ‘ to great Loaves, bake them well, and after they be two  
 ‘ or three Days old, let him eat of this Bread, but chip  
 ‘ away the Outside.

Now, the Reason why I have cited this is, because I have heard several (who would be thought knowing Horsemen) applaud this very Bread beyond any other to be met with in any Book; though, for my Part, I can find nothing excellent in the whole Composition.

For



For first, Oat-meal, though it be strong, yet it is a dry Grain, hard of Digestion, and a great Drier up of the Blood. The Wheat is of a drying Quality likewise, though it be light ; for the Anniseed and Liquorish, they are not only Physical, but hot also ; so that the Body becomes over heated, and thereby costive. And yet these People will not be perswaded, but these Drugs will make him long-winded ; possibly they might assist him in Neighing, as some Men say it doth Songsters in vocal Musick, wherein there is no Exercise of the Body used ; but where bodily Strength is required, I am apt to believe it more prejudicial than profitable.

But here some will object, that there is Rye and Beans, both which are moistning ; especially the Rye, which is both cold and moist, and is the very Reason *de Grey* himself gives why he put Rye into his latter Bread, because (says he) Rye is a Loosener and a Cooler, and therefore it will make the Horse more soluble.

I have already said, that if his Body have Feeding proportionate to his Labour, the Horse will continue in a right State of Health. Yet since he is hot by Nature ; and Labour might increase his natural Heat, and render him costive, therefore I have all along prescribed him Rye-bread alone, as Physical. But here let the Horse be in what Condition soever, whether bound in his Body or laxative, yet Rye, being a part of your Bread, your Horse must continually feed thereon, which has this undeniable Disadvantage, that if he be loose in his Body, this Bread (to use *de Grey's* own Words) will make him more soluble.

And now, whilst I am discoursing of Horse-bread, I cannot but condemn another Curiosity in some Feeders, who think, by dressing their Meal to the utmost Degree of Fineness, they do Wonders, and that such pure Food must, of Necessity, bring him to the greatest Perfection imaginable, both of Body and Wind.

But in this Point I think they are deceived, for the Meal being dressed so very fine, nothing remains but the Quintessence of it ; which, though it be lightened by Barm and White of Eggs, yet, when it is above a Day old, 'twill begin to harden (as may be observed by Manchet) and especially if Oat-meal be in it, by reason of its  
drying



drying Quality, whereby it will not be so easy of Digestion as it would be otherwise, if it had no Bran in it ; and, by Consequence, will be more apt to oppress his Stomach, if he be heated, before it be thoroughly digested, and so breed raw Crudities, and an Inflammation of the Blood, and by that Means hazard a Surfeit, than which nothing can be of worse Consequence to a Horse that is matched.

And therefore 'tis that I advise that your Horse-bread should only be made of Wheat and Beans, and that it not should not be dressed too fine nor too coarse, but so as that there may be neither so much Bran left as to annoy the Blood, nor so little as to make your Bread too close and solid ; but you may leave some on purpose to scowre the Maw, and further your Horse's Digestion. And thus much by way of Digression.

Having spoken to the first Condition of Horses which we proposed, viz. Melancholly, and low in Flesh, we are now to speak of those which are brisk and lively ; which if your Horse be so, that when you lead him out of the Stable, he will leap and play about you, then you must not only avoid giving him the Scowring last mentioned, of Sack and Diapente, but any other whatsoever : For there being no foul Humours, or any superfluous Matter left in his Body for the Physick to work on, it will prey upon the Strength of his Body, and by that Means weaken it, which it must be your utmost Endeavour to preserve by full Feeding and sound Labour, which will necessarily produce a perfect Wind, which is the Support of Strength, for when his Wind once fails, his Strength avails nothing.

As to the Manner of it, if your Horse be engaged in a Hunting-match, you shall sweat him twice this Week, but not by hunting him after the Hare, as formerly, but by Train-scents, since the former, on this Occasion, may prove deceitful ; for though the Hounds be very swift, yet the Scent being cold, the Dogs will often be at Fault, and, by that Means, the Horse will have many Sobs, so that when he comes to run Train-scents in earnest, your Horse will look for Ease, his Wind being not so perfect as in Art it ought to be.



Therefore lead your Train-scents with a dead Cat over such Grounds as you are likely to run on, and best agrees with your Horse's Humour ; and, be sure make Choice of the fleetest Hounds you can get, and then your Horse will be kept up to the Heighth of his Speed.

As to the Number of Train-scents that you are to ride at a time, that you must order according to your Match, or (which is better) according to your Horse's Strength and Ability for performing his Heats ; for if you labour him beyond his Strength, 'twill take him off his Speed, weaken his Limbs, and daunt his Spirit. If you give him too little Exercise, it will give Opportunity for Purfiveness and ill Humours, as Glut, &c. to increase in him, and gain in him a Habit of Laziness, that when he comes to be put to Labour, above his usual Rate, he will grow restiff, and settle like a Jade, either of which will redound to your Discredit ; and therefore it must be from your own Knowledge in the State of his Body, and not from any general Directions in writing that you must steer your Course.

Only this Direction may be given you, that if you are to run eight Train-scents and straight Course, more or less, you are to put him to such severe Labour not above twice in your Month's whole keeping ; and if it be in the first Fortnight, 'twill be the better, for then he will have a compleat Fortnight to recover his Strength again ; and for his Labour in his last Fortnight, let it be proportionate to his Strength and Wind, as sometimes half his Task, and then three Parts of it. Only observe, that the last Tryal you make in the first Fortnight be a Train-scent more than your Match, for, by that Means you will find what he is able to do. And for the Proportion of his Exercise, twice a Week (as I have already said) is sufficient to keep him in Breath, and yet will not diminish or injure his Vigour.

But if your Hunting-match be to run fewer Train-scents, then you may put him to his whole Task the oftner, according as you find him in Condition ; only observe, that you are not to strain him for ten Days, at least, before he ride his Match, that he may be led into the Field in perfect Strength and Vigour.



If you intend him for a Plate, let him take his Heats according to this Direction, only let it be on the Place, that he may be acquainted with the Ground; and as for the Hounds, you may omit them, as not being ty'd to to their Speed, but that of your Adversaries Horses. But as to your Number of Heats, let them be according to what the Articles exact; only observe, that as to the Sharpness of them, they must be regulated according to the Temper of his Strength, and the Purity of his Wind. And when you heat him, provide some Horses upon the Course to run at him, which will quicken his Spirits, and encourage him, when he finds he can command them at his Pleasure. And here too the same Rule must be observed, not to give your Horse a bloody Heat for ten Days or a Fortnight before the Plate be to be run for: And let his last Heat which you give him before the Day of Tryal be in all his Cloaths, and just skelp it over; which will make him run the next time much more vigorously, when he shall be stript naked, and feel the cold Air pierce him.

But now that I am speaking of sweating, it may be expected that I should lay down some Rules how to order a Horse that is in keeping for a Match in frosty Weather, or, in case he be an old strained Horse, so that you dare not Heat him in hard Weather, for fear of laming him afresh.

In these Cases some Horsemen have practised sweating their Horse in the House, by laying on him multiplicity of Cloaths, being first made hot at the Fire; which is the most unnatural way of sweating a Horse that can be, since 'tis provoked by Heat arising from the outward Parts, and is too violent, the Extremity of the Heat joined to the Weight of the Cloaths, not only weakning, but almost smothering him.

The next Way in use is, to give him his Heat abroad, as I just now mentioned in his Cloaths; but this is not so natural and kindly as without his Cloaths, since here too the Heat is augmented from without, and consequently abates his Strength the more, and yet doth not altogether so well improve his Wind.

Therefore, if either you have a Horse that has been strained, or otherwise the Weather be unseasonable, find



out some dead Jog, or sandy Way, though of but half a Mile's Length, and there breath your Horse till he sweat as you would have him. I remember to have heard of a Gentleman having matched his Horse for a very considerable Sum, and the Weather proving hard, took this Course to keep his Horse in Breath; he caused Straw and foul Litter to be spread all along round an adjoining Close, and every Morning his Servants shook it up and turned it, to keep it hollow and soft, and then his Horse was had forth to gallop on it after his Water, and by this Means, kept his Horse in tolerable Wind.

Now, during this Month, both on his Resting-Days, and after his Sweats on Heating-Days, you are to observe the same Rules which you were taught in the first Week of your third Fortnight's keeping, only you are to omit all Scowrings but Rye-bread and Mash, since your Horse, being in so perfect a State of Body, has no need of any; only if you think there may be any Occasion, and that your Horse prove thirsty, about eight or nine a Clock at Night, you may give him this Julep to cool him, and quench his Thirst.

Take Barly-Water two Quarts, of Syrup of Violets three Ounces, of Syrup of Lemons two Ounces, mix them together, and give them to your Horse to drink; if he refuse, fasten it from falling as you did the Mash, and so let it stand by him all Night.

During the last Fortnight you must not only dry your Oats, and hull them by heating, but likewise take half a Strike of Oats, and wash them in the Whites of a dozen or twenty Eggs, and stirring them therein, let them soak all Night; then the next Morning take them and spread them abroad in the Sun, till they be as dry as at first, and so give them to your Horse, and, when they are spent, prepare more in the same Manner. This Food is light of Digestion, and very sovereign for his Wind.

His Beans must be ordered as before, only give them not so frequently, if he will eat his Oats without them; and, for his Bread this Fortnight, let it be three parts Wheat to one of Beans, and let it be ordered as before directed. And likewise, if you find him inclined to Costiveness, forget not to relieve Nature by giving him Oats washed



in two or three Whites of Eggs and Ale beat together; for that, as I have told you already, will cool his Body, and keep it moist.

During the last Week omit giving him a Mash, only give the Barley-water as before; but as to Hay, let him have as much as he will eat (which will not be much, if he have his fill of better Food) till a Day before he is to ride his Match, but then you must hold your Hand, that he may have time to digest that which he has eaten, and then, and not before, you may muzzle him with your Cavezone; and be sure that Day, and so till the Morning he is led out, to feed him as much as possible, for such a Day's Labour will require something to maintain Strength. Therefore in the Morning, an Hour before you are to lead out, give him a Toast or two of white Bread steep'd in Sack, which will revive his Spirits, and so lead him into the Field.

But if you are to run for a Plate, which usually is not till Three a Clock in the Afternoon, then by all Means have him out early in the Morning to air, that he may empty his Body, and when he is come in from airing, feed him with Toasts in Sack; for you must consider, that as too much Fulness will endanger his Wind, so too long Fasting will cause Faintness. When he has eaten what you think fit to give him, put on his Cavezone; and then having chaf'd his Legs soundly with Piece-grease and Brandy warmed together, or Train-oil, (which ought likewise to be used daily at Noon for a Week before the Match, or longer, if you see Cause,) shake up his Litter, and shutting up your Stable close, and preventing any Noise to be made near him, leave him to his Rest till the Hour come that he is to go into the Field.

As to pleatting his Main and Tail, shooing him with Plates, pitching his Saddle and Girths, and the like Preparations, they are things which every Groom can instruct you in, and therefore I shall not trouble you with Rules concerning them; but, in lieu thereof, shall add some farther Directions how to judge of the State of your Horse's Body, and, if you find any thing amiss therein, how to redress it.



## C H A P. IX.

*Of the Means to judge of your Horse's State of Body, and of curing all Casualties that may happen after Matching.*

**T**HERE are several Observations to be made by you during your dieting your Horse, which if you miscarry in, may be the Loss of your Match, or your Share in the Plate. Therefore, that you may know how to proceed regularly in this Art, I shall endeavour to sum them up.

First then, you are to observe his Chaul, his Ribs, and his Flank, according to the Rules formerly laid down; for if he be clean within, he will also be clean there; but yet he may feel clean there, when he is not clean within; and therefore those Grooms are very conceited, who, upon their first View of a Horse, and handling of his Flank, pronounce him to be in a true State of Body; for gentle airing, warm Cloathing, scanty Feeding, may disperse the gross Fat and Glut, and drive it from the outward Parts, so that he may appear clean, when, in Reality, he is not so; and therefore you are only a competent Judge, who know how he was cleansed.

Therefore you are to observe, first, whether in all Points you have proceeded according to Art in his Training; as, whether he performs his Heats with Vigour and true Courage; whether he have been all along home-fed; whether you have not suffered Purfiveness to increase by too little Labour, or abated his Flesh and Strength by too much. These things are the very Grounds of Keeping, and therefore ought to be scann'd and considered with Judgment.

Next you are to observe his Manner of Feeding, as, whether he holds his Appetite or no, and observe what sort of Food he likes best, and of that give him ofteneft; and in case his Stomach abate, keep him out longer Morning and Night at his Airings.

In like Manner you must observe his Dung, which, tho' it be as fallacious oftentimes as a sick Man's Water, it being liable to Alteration on the change of Diet, or being influenc'd



influenc'd by the Air, yet being clean and in Health it will usually be a pale yellow Colour, and be voided in round Pellets; but if it be loose and soft, it is an infallible Sign of Weakness, and therefore must by good Feeding be remedied as soon as possible. But if it be hard and dry, so that he cannot dung but with difficulty and straining, then you must endeavour to relieve Nature, but not with Scowrings, which would weaken too much, but rather chuse to give him this Clyster, which will both cool and refresh him.

Take a Quart of Whey, of Syrup of Violets, and Pulp of Cassia, of each four Ounces, and of Manna half an Ounce; this will purge him gently, and is most excellent to cool his Bowels.

The next thing to be considered is Lameness, which, if it proceed from old Strains, you must make use of this Ointment, which I have several times experimented with good Success.

Take fresh Butter, Oyl of Bays, Dialthea and Turpentine, of each two Ounces, mix and boil them together on a soft Fire, and when they are well incorporated, as hot as the Horse can suffer it, anoint the Horse twice a Day, and give him Exercise, by airing him abroad Morning and Evening a foot Pace, and you will find it a certain Remedy for any Strain in the Shoulder, Clap on the back Sinews, or any Grief whatsoever that proceeds from Strains.

But if you only fear Lameness from old Strains, then you must be careful that your Exercise be moderate, and always when you come in from Water, and his Legs are rubbed dry, anoint them with such Ointments as are accounted good for the Limbs, as Linseed, Train, Sheep's-foot, Neat's-foot, Nerve-oil, and the like; all which may be used on his Days of Rest, but on his Heating Days Urine and Salt-peter. Some Horsemen make use of Brandy and Sallet-oil mix'd, and bathe his Legs, and afterwards heat it in with an hot Iron, and commend it as the best thing for the Limbs of an old stiff Horse.

But if your Horse, thro' Negligence, or any Casualty, happen to have the Grease fall into his Heels, you must endeavour to remove it by a good sound Heat, and a Scouring after it, and apply to his Legs this Poultes.



Take of Honey a Pound, of Turpentine, common Gum, Meal of Linseed, and the Meal of Fenugreek, of each four Ounces, and the Powder of Bay-berries well search'd three Ounces ; mix and boil all these well together, then take it off, and then put to it a Pint of white Wine, then boil it again till it be very thick ; and with this, as hot as the Horse can suffer it, lap his Legs about Plaister-wise, and renew it only once in three Days, and it will certainly bring his Legs within Compass.

If your Horse's Feet be bad, either furbated or foured, then instead of Cow-dung, you may stop them with blue Clay and Vinegar tempered together, and on his Heating Days at Night stop them with Grey-Soap, and keep it in with a Piece of an old Shoe-sole.

If your Horse be troubled with any Dose in his Head give him Mustard-seed among his Provender, but if it be a worse Cold, which you will perceive by his Rattling, then give him this Lambitive or Electuary.

Take of Honey and Treacle, each half a Pound, having mixt these together, add to them Powder of Cummin-seed, Liquorish, Bay-berries, Anniseeds, each an Ounce ; mix all these together, and put them to the Honey and Treacle, which will make it of a thick Consistence. If your Horse hath a Cold, instead of his Oats before Water, give him the Quantity of a Walnut of this Lambitive on the top of a Stick, or in a Spoon, and let him lick it off ; and the same do after Airing, when first you come in, and you will find the Advantage of it.

These, at present, are all the Inconveniencies that I can call to mind, which are liable to Hunters or Gallopers in their keeping ; and if through Inadvertency, or want of Memory, I should have omitted any, yet from these Grounds you may form your Remedies for any common Accident or Distemper ; and now that we draw near to the Match-day, and to the End of our Discourse, we will only discuss some few Rules relating to the Tryal of the Hunting-Match, I mean Rules to be observed in Riding, and so conclude.



## C H A P X.

*Of riding a Hunting-Match, or Heats for a Plate, and the Advantages belonging to each.*

I Have endeavoured to shew the Necessity and the Manner of Training and Dieting Horses, but this alone is not sufficient to the winning of either Match or Plate, without a knowing and an honest Rider, and a skilful Judge or Trier be join'd thereto; but since no Man is fitter to ride the Horse, than he that has the training of him, I shall lay down some general Rules how to ride to the best Advantage, either a Hunting-Match, or three Heats and a Course for a Plate.

The first Requisite in a Rider, next to Faithfulness in his Trust, is to have a good close Seat, his Knees being held firm to his Saddle Skirts, his Toes turned inward, and his Spurs outward from the Horse's Sides, his left Hand governing his Horse's Mouth, and his right commanding his Whip; observing, during all the Trial throughout, to sit firm in his Saddle, without waving, or standing up in his Stirrups, which very much incommodates the Horse, notwithstanding the conceited Opinion of some Jockeys that it is a becoming Seat.

When you spur your Horse, strike him not hard with the Calves of your Legs, as if you would beat the Wind out of his Body, but just turn your Toes outwards, and bring the Spurs quick to his Sides; and such a sharp Stroke will be more serviceable to the quickning of your Horse, and sooner draw Blood. Be sure not to spur your Horse but when there is Occasion, and avoid spurring him under the Fore-Bowels, between his Shoulders, and his Girths near the Heart (which is the tenderest Place) till the last Extremity.

When you whip your Horse, let it be over the Shoulder on the near Side, except upon hard running, and when you are at all, then be sure with a strong Jirk to strike your Horse in the Flank, for there the Skin is tenderest, and most sensible of the Lash.



Observe, when you whip or spur your Horse, and that you are certain he is at the Top of his Speed, if then he clap his Ears in his Pole, or whisk his Tail, be sure that you bear him hard, and give him as much Comfort as ever you can, by sawing his Snaffle to and fro in his Mouth, and by that means forcing him to open his Mouth, which will comfort him, and give him Wind.

If there be any high Wind stirring when you ride, observe if it be in your Face, to let your Adversary lead, and to hold hard behind him till you see your Opportunity of giving a Loose; yet you must observe to ride so close to him, that his Horse may break the Wind from yours, and that you, by stooping low in your Seat, may Shelter yourself under him, which will assist the Strength of your Horse. But if the Wind be in your Back, ride exactly behind him, that your Horse may alone enjoy the Benefit of the Wind, by being, as it were, blown forward, and by breaking it from him as much as you can possible.

Next observe what Ground your Horse delights to run best on, bearing your Horse (as much as your Adversary will give you leave) on Level Carpet-Ground, because your Horse naturally will be desirous to spend himself more freely thereon. But on deep Earths, &c. give him more Liberty, because he will naturally favour himself thereupon. Be sure, if you are to run up Hill, to favour your Horse, and bear him, for fear of running him out of Wind; but down Hill (if your Horse's Feet and Shoulders will endure it, and you dare venture your own Neck) always give him a Loose.

Only take this for a general Rule, that if you find your Horse to have the Heels of the other, that then you be careful to preserve his Speed till the last Train-Scent, if you are not to run a straight Course; but if so, then till the Course, and so to husband it then too, that you may be able to make a Push for it at the last Post.

Next you are to observe your Opposite's Horse, and if he be fiery, then to run just behind, or just Cheek by Jowl, and with your Whip make as much Noise as you can, that you may force him on faster than his Rider would have him, and by that means spend him the sooner.



sooner. Or else keep just before him, upon such a slow Gallop, that he may either over-reach, or by treading on your Horse's Heels (if he will not take the leading) endanger falling over.

Observe on what Ground the contrary Horse runs worst, and on that Earth be sure to give a loose, that your Adversary's, being forced to follow, may hazard stumbling, or clapping on the back Sinews.

Observe likewise in your Riding the several Helps and Corrections of the Hand, the Whip, and the Spur, and when, and how often he makes use of them; and when you perceive that his Horse begins to be blown by any of the former Symptoms, as whisking his Tail, clapping down his Ears, holding out his Nose like a Pig, &c. you may then take it for granted that he is at the Top of what he can do; therefore in this Case observe how your own rides, and if he run chearfully and strongly without spurring, then be sure keep your Adversary to the same Speed without giving him Ease, and by that means you will quickly bring him to give out, or else Distance him.

Observe at the End of every Train-Scent what Condition the other Horse is in; and how he holds out in his Labour; which you may be able to give a Judgment of by his Looks, the working of his Flank, and the slackness of his Girths. For if he look dull, 'tis a Sign his Spirits fail him; if his Flanks beat much, 'tis a Token that his Wind begins to fail him, and then of necessity his Strength must too. If his Wind fail him, then his Body will grow thin, and appear tuck'd up, which will make his Girths appear slack to the Eye. And therefore take this for a Rule, that there is no greater Sign of Weakness than this which I have last mentioned; so that if your Adversary's Horse want girting after the first Scent, provided he were close girt at his first starting, you need not much despair of winning your Wager.

When each Train-Scent is ended (and so likewise after every Heat for a Plate) you must have dry Straw, and dry Cloaths, both Linen and Woollen, which have been steeped in Urine and Salt petre a Day or two, and then dried in the Sun; and likewise one or two of each which have been so steeped, must be brought wet into the Field; and after the Train is ended, you must have



two or three Helpers ; and after your Groom has with a Knife of Heat (as the Duke of *Newcastle* calls it) which is an old Piece of a Sword-Blade, scrap'd off all the Sweat from your Horse's Neck, Body, &c. you must see that they first with Straw, and then with their dry Cloaths rub him dry all over, whilst others are employed about his Legs ; and as soon as they are rubb'd dry, then chafe them with your wet Cloaths, and never give over till you are called by the Judges to start again. This will keep his Joints pliant and nimble, and prevent any Inflammation which might arise from any old Strain.

The next thing to be consider'd is the Judges, or Triers Office, which is to see that all things are ordered according to the Articles, which to that End ought to be publickly read before the Horses start.

Next, that each Trier, on whose Side the Train is to be led, according to the Articles, give Directions for its Leading, according to the Advice of the Rider, or his Knowledge of the Nature and Disposition of that Horse on whose Side he is chose.

Next, that each Trier be so advantageously mounted, as to ride up behind the Horses, (but not upon them) all Day ; and to observe that the contrary Horse ride his true Ground, and observe the Articles in every Particular, or else not to permit him to proceed.

Next, that after each Train-Scent be ended, each Trier look to that Horse against whom he is chosen, and observe that he be no ways reliev'd but with rubbing, except Liberty on both Sides be given to the contrary.

Next, as soon as the time which is allow'd for rubbing be expir'd, which is generally half an Hour, they shall command them to mount, and if either Rider refuse, it may be lawful for the other to start without him, and having beat him the Distance agreed on, the Wager is to be adjudg'd on his Side.

Next, the Triers shall keep off all other Horses from crossing the Riders, or leading them ; only they themselves may be allow'd to Instruct the Riders by Word of Mouth how to ride, whether slow, or fast, according to the Advantages he perceives may be gain'd by his Directions.

Lastly,



Lastly, if there be any Weight agreed on, they shall see that both Horses bring their true Weight to the Starting-Place, and carry it to the End of the Train, on Penalty of losing the Wager.

The same Rules are to be observ'd (especially this last) by those Gentlemen which are chosen to be Judges at a Race for a Plate; only they usually stay in the Stand, that they may the better see which Horse wins the Heat.

Now for running for a Plate, there are not so many Observations to be made, nor more Directions requir'd than what have been already mention'd; only this, that if you know your Horse to be tough at Bottom, and that he will stick at Mark, to ride him each Heat according to the best of his Performance, and avoid as much as possible either riding at any particular Horse, or staying for any, but to ride each Heat throughout with the best Speed you can.

But if you have a very fiery Horse to manage, or one that is hard-mouth'd, and difficult to be held, then start behind the rest of the Horses with all the Coolness and Gentleness imaginable; and when you find your Horse to begin to ride at some Command, then put up to the other Horses, and if you find they ride at their Ease, and are hard held, then endeavour to draw them on faster; but if you find their Wind begin to rake hot, and that they want a Sob, if your own Horse be in Wind, and you have a Loose in your Hand, keep them up to their Speed, till you come within three quarters of a Mile of the End of the Heat; and then give a Loose, and push for it, and leave to Fortune and your Horse's Goodness the Event of your Success.

Many more Rules there are which may not occur at present to my Memory, and others which I purposely omit; but these may serve the honest Jockey, and for the others which relate to foul Play, as crossing, hanging on the Posts, leaning on the other Horseman, yoking, &c. I desire not to instruct any one in them, and could wish that they might never be made use of, but be wholly relinquish'd by all honest Horsemen.

Lastly, when either your Hunting-Match, or your Trial for the Plate is ended, as soon as you have rubb'd your Horse dry, you shall cloath him up, and ride him Home,



Home, where the first thing you give him shall be this Drink to comfort him.

Take a Pint and Half of sweet Milk, and put three Yolks of Eggs beaten into it; then make it lukewarm, and put in three Pennyworth of Saffron, and three Spoonfuls of Sallet Oil, and give it him in a Horn.

When this is done, dress him slightly over with your Curry-Comb, Brush, and Woollen-Cloth; and then bathe the Place where the Saddle stood with warm Sack to prevent Warbles, and wash the Spurring-places with Piss and Salt, and then afterwards anoint them with Turpentine and Powder of Jet mix'd together; and be sure let the Stable be very well littered; and then cloath him up with all Speed, and so let him stand for two Hours. Then feed him with Rye-Bread, after that with a very good Mash: Then give him his Belly-full of Hay, and what Corn and Bread he will eat. Then bathe his Legs well with Urine and Saltpetre; leave him Corn in his Locker, and so let him rest till the next Morning; at which time order him as before directed in his Days of Rest.

Thus I have imparted to the Publick what my own Experience has taught me, relating to this Part of Horsemanship. I desire no Person to relye on it farther than they shall find it advantageous upon Practice and Trial. If others more skilful would be as free to communicate their Observations on this Subject, this profitable Part of Knowledge might then perhaps be improv'd to Perfection. The giving a Specimen was all that is here designed. If the Reader finds any Errors, he is desired either to pardon or amend them. To those that either know no better, or want other Helps, this possibly may prove no unwelcome Piece of Service.

**T H E**



---

T H E  
A P P E N D I X  
T O T H E  
H U N T E R.

**A**S there has been already Directions given in the Hunter, for the Make and Use of a Scowring, which, for Efficacy and Goodness far excels all that I ever yet saw in Print, fully answering its designed Title, which no other Book I ever yet read of would do, notwithstanding the Encomiums given them by their Authors, as you shall be Judge by one Example given you (out of many) which are the Words in the Introduction of the *Gentleman's Jockey*; as, first, it tells you that Slipper Sauce Scowrings, which are stuf't with poisonous Ingredients, cannot chuse but bring forth Infirmary; but wholesome Scowrings that are composed of beneficial and nourishing Simples, neither occasion Sickness nor any manner of Infirmary, but bring away Grease, and all manner of Foulness in that kind.

Then next it tells you, that no Man in a lingring Course can certainly tell which way the Grease and other Foulness will avoid; as, whether in his Ordure, which is the safest, into Sweat, which is hazardous; into his Limbs, which is mischievous, or remain and putrify in his Body, which is mortally dangerous: Now for the Scowring proposed in that Book, Page 21. The first Scowring.

Take a Pint of the best sweet Sack, and put thereto better than an Ounce of the clearest and purest Rosin,  
bruised



bruised to a very fine Dust, and brew them together exceeding much; then when the Sack and it is incorporated together, put thereto half a Pint of the best Sallet-oil, and brew them also well together: Then, lastly, Take a full Ounce and half of brown Sugar Candy, beaten to Powder, and put it in also, then mull all upon the Fire, and being Lukewarm, &c. Not to keep you too long, we will examine wherein the mighty Vertue of this Scowring consists: First, it is owned, that in the Horse's Ordure is the best Way; which is as much as to say, that gentle Purging is the best and safest to cleanse away the Grease, and other Foulness: Sack has no purging Quality, neither has Rosin; Sallet-Oil is no Purger, but, by its oliganous Quality, may cause a costive Body to void its Ordure with more Ease, but has no stimulating Quality to cause any Foulness to be voided with it, unless it lay ready in the way, so in it self unfit as well as unable, to collect and expel any Grease or Foulness, unless it lay in the way; and as for Sugar Candy, I need not contend whether it has any purging Quality, but rather, it is allowed to hinder than forward the Passage of Humours by its thickning them, which every one knows it does in all Colds and Coughs; but perhaps it will be urged, what it is that makes the Horse so sick, sweat and purge; to all which I readily answer, it is the Slipper Sauce Mixture; for whenever the Stomach receives into it what is hurtful, or what it cannot digest, it calls all its Spirits together, in order to expel its Enemy, which if Nature be stronger than the Enemy, then it expels it, if not, it kills; so that seeing the Horses never vomit (for Anatomical Reasons I could give, would time permit) the Horse has no other way to rid his Stomach of the offending Mixture but by Stool, which Stools are not the same as those caused by Purgers; for it is demonstrable by our own Natures, that those Fluxes which are occasioned by Surfeits upon our eating crude undigestible things, are not the same as those loose Stools which are caused by the Purge we take, in order to assist Nature in throwing off the offending Matter, and putting a Stop to those unnatural Fluxes, which are the Effect, and not the Cause of any offended Stomach.



As the Scowring before described in the *Hunter* is sufficient for what it was designed, as well as for any other small Infirmities, yet great Diseases require those that are stronger, but the strong ought to be avoided in lesser Distempers, or where Prevention is only intended; neither do the stronger Purges that are skillfully compounded and prepared carry the least Danger with them, as all those I have ever yet read in Authors do, which are compounded of strong churlish Ingredients, without being corrected: And that so useful a Purge might not be wanting, I have added this following Purge, which for Safety and Goodness far excels all I have ever yet seen.

*A Choice Purge.*

Take of Aloes *Succotrina*, brought to a fine Powder, four Ounces, and pour upon it half a Pint of Spring Water, wherein hath been dissolved (over a very gentle Fire) one Ounce of *Spanish* Liquorish Juice; put them in an earthen Pan, set over a very gentle Fire, continually stirring it, that the Aloes may not burn to the Bottom, continuing it on so long until about half the Water be evaporated, or so much, that these following Ingredients (being mix'd with it, may make it of a soft Consistency fit to be framed into Balls when you use it.) The Ingredients to be added are, Jalap, in Powder, half an Ounce; *Colocynthus*, in fine Powder, half an Ounce; *Rhenish* Tartar, in Powder, half an Ounce; Agarick, in Powder, half an Ounce; *Mercurius Dulcis*, half an Ounce; chymical Oil of Anniseeds, one Drachm and a half; mix them all well in a Mortar, and make a Mash; of which one Ounce, or ten Drachms, is a Dose sufficient to purge any Horse, or, at most, one Ounce and a half. I could write much in the Commendation of this purging Mash, but I need not; for its own Worth, when used, will extol it beyond all I can say, the griping and churlish Qualities of the Ingredients being blunted and taken quite away by the Liquorish and Oil of Anniseed; so that it works with all the Sweetness and Gentleness imaginable. Its Vertues: It is one of the best Horse Purges yet known, for it cures all Diseases where purging is required; not only carrying off the Seeds of most Distempers, purifying the Blood and Juices, but  
making



making the Appetite and Digestion strong and good, for, being given in the Beginning of the Farcy, prevents and cures Surfeit, Grease, and Grease fallen into the Legs, if at the same time you wash his Legs with our green Water, which shall be described anon; also goured or swelled Legs, Worms of all sorts, as Botts, Truncheons, and Maw-Worms, ordering the Horse in the time of taking as in other Purges; but this being something difficult to prepare, and not always to be had, I have therefore given you this following Purge, which is a very good one, and to be had of any Apothecary, viz. Take of the Powder of Aloes Succatrina, one Ounce; Powder of Jalap, one Dram; Powder of Colicynthis, one Drachm; *Mercurius Dulcis*, one Drachm; Cream of Tartar, one Drachm, with as much Syrup of Buckthorn as is sufficient, to make a Mash for one Dose.

*The Green Water for many Sorrances.*

Take one Ounce of Verdigrease, one Ounce and half of Roach Alum, two Ounces of Copperas, one Ounce and half of Roman Vitriol, being all in very fine Powder; put them all into a two Quart Bottle, upon which pour one Quart of the best and strongest white Wine Vinegar; which Bottle should first have some Pieces of Lead or Iron made fast about its Neck, to make it sink in a Kettle of Water; also a hard Rowl of Hay to keep the Bottom of the Bottle from touching the Bottom of the Kettle; then fit a Cork to it, having first cut three Notches along the Sides of the Cork, (as is used to be done in Vinegar Bottles to let the Vinegar out at) these Notches are for Vents, lest the Bottle should break: Then take a Kettle, and first set in the hard Rowl of Hay, then set in the Bottle upon the Hay, so that it may stand upright in the Kettle; then fill; the Kettle so full of cold Water, that about two or three Inches of the Neck of the Bottle may remain above the Water, then set the Kettle over a Fire, and so let the Kettle boil half an Hour, or so long till the Vinegar has dissolved the Powder, now and then taking the Bottle up and shaking the Powders and Vinegar together; when they are well mix'd take them from the Fire, and keep it close  
stop



stopt with a Cork for your Use ; the Way to use it is this, you must have provided an Earthen Pan, which will hold about three Gallons, the which you must fill with Chamber-Lye which is made by healthy, sound, and young People ; and the older the Chamber-Lye is, the better for your Use ; it should stand in the Pan three Weeks at the least before you use it. You ought never to be without this Pan full of stale Chamber-Lye : Then when you have any Occasion to use them for a moderate Grief, mix with one Quart of the stale Chamber-Lye, half a Pint, or more, of the above described Vinegar ; or if you would have it stronger, more of the Vinegar ; then being mixt together, either hot, or (if in Winter) cold, with a soft Rag bathe his Legs, Heels, or Part afflicted twice a Day. The Virtues of this Water. It is the best Remedy yet known to the World, for the Cure and Prevention of many great and dangerous Sorrancess subject to a Horse, as Mallender, which it cures at once or twice Dressing ; Mange dry or wet, Rat Tails, Scratches, goured or swelled Legs and Heels ; also preventing and curing the Grease fallen into the Legs and Heels ; it likewise cures the Farcy. If to these two last named Diseases you purge before, and once, twice, or thrice in the time of curing : It is a nobler cleanser and healer of all stubborn and foul Ulcers and Wounds in a Horse ; preventing the breeding of Worms, and all proud Flesh and Wounds, as well as a Repeller, or driver away of any Flux of Humours from any Part : Also Clifts and Cracks in the Heels, Pains, &c. preventing of Wind-Galls, by its repelling and strengthening Quality. The Green Water alone, without the Chamber-Lye, is the best of Remedies to cure all Fistula's, Cankers, and Galled Backs, not disposing of such Sorrancess to Rot, Fester, and grow worse, as all Greasy and Oil Medicines do.

*A speedy, safe, and certain Cure for the Farcy.*

Before I begin, I shall beg the Reader's Patience whilst I explain to him the Nature and Cause of this most dreadful Distemper ; which, like the Pox, has had innumerable Pretenders to the Cure ; but as for all I have ever yet



seen, read, or met with, both its Cause and Cure, are to all those Pretenders as unknown as the *Antipodes* were above a Thousand Years ago ; as their ignorant and unskilful Methods of Cure shew. As, First, by putting of nonsensical Compositions into the Horse's Ears, which will avail as much as a Plaister put to the Heel of a Man's Shoe will do in curing him of the Head-ach : No, all those numberless Train of Prescriptions signify no more to the Cure, than Water to the washing a Blackmoor White. Neither is there any thing that so much hinders the Cure, or is so dangerous to the Horse, as the advising and practising of Bleeding : For by Bleeding you draw all that Venom, which Nature by her Strength had thrown forth, into the Blood again ; it being allowed by all, that Bleeding draws all from without, in ; and Sweating drives all from within, out. But to be as short with the Description of the Cause of the Farcy as I can, in order to be longer on the Cure : It is an infectious Disease which cometh from Colds, Heats and Colds, Surfeits, Fevers, and sometimes from infectious Air ; all, or either of these, corrupting the Blood and Juices, which is afterwards by the strength of Nature thrown out, and are commonly divided into these Kinds ; the Button, or Knotted Farcy, the Running Farcy, the Water Farcy, and the Pocky Farcy : All which are the same, nothing else but differing in Degrees of Malignity, and acquire other Names, according to the Parts they afflict, as the Head, Legs, &c. now seeing it is a Corruption of the Blood and Juices, the Method of Cure cannot be performed without correcting and carrying off those foul Humours, in order to restore them to their pristine State, which is not to be attempted if the Farcy be too far gone, or that it has corrupted the Horse's Lungs, or any other noble Bowel ; so that the sooner that you attempt the Cure after you perceive it, or when you suspect it, the more safe and speedy will be the Cure. First then you must avoid Bleeding.

But begin his Cure by giving him a good Dose of either of those purging Mashies already described, which will mitigate the Venom, and carry off a great deal of those corrupted Humours from the Vital and Noble Parts, and  
let



let the purging be repeated twice, thrice, or four times at due Distances, and as soon as conveniently his Strength will permit ; and let him not fail to have three or four Ounces of this following Digestive Powder given him at a time, mixt in his Oats and Beans (being first wet with Beer or Ale three times a Day.)

*The Digestive Powder.*

Take Antimony in fine Powder, one Pound, of *Lignum Vitæ* Wood in Powder, half a Pound, Cinnabar of Antimony in fine Powder, three Ounces ; Powder of Liquorish four Ounces ; Powder of Elecampane, four Ounces : Aniseeds, three Ounces ; mix all these well together, being all in fine Powder, and keep it in a Bottle close stoppt for Use : It is a noble cleanser and purifier of the Blood and Juices, destroying all Corruption, and maintaining the vital Parts sound and vigorous, preventing and curing the Murren ; and does wonderfully forward and cure the Farcy ; if he at first refuse to eat it in his Oats, 'as above directed, strew over them two or three Handfuls of Bran, and he will eat them, and time will make it familiar to him ; also in the time of his Cure of the Farcy, let him drink no Water without a Quart, three Pints, or more of this following noble Farcy Diet Drink, putting it into his Pail, then adding as much cold Water as you think he will drink at a Time, and if he refuse it at first, let him be without Water till he drinks it, and a little time will bring him to take it.

*The Farcy Diet Drink.*

Take Antimony in fine Powder, two Pound ; Quick-silver, one Pound ; grind them very well in an Iron Mortar together for about three or four Hours, then boil them in a new Iron Pot, being first tied up in a Rag, with these following Ingredients tied up in a Bag, viz. Raspings of Guajacum, three Pound ; the Bark of Guajacum bruised, two Pound ; Reasens slit, one Pound and a Half ; Figs slit, one Pound ; Carraway-seeds, half a Pound ; Sweet Fennel-feed, half a Pound ; Liquorish



cut and slit, half a Pound; boil all these in eight or ten Gallons of running Water, till it comes to half, to which add three Quarts of strong Lime Water, made by quenching of six Pound of quick Lime in a sufficient quantity of Water, which let stand Twenty-four Hours to settle; then pour off the clear for Use, which is the Lime Water to be added above, which when added, keep it for your Use; the Quick-silver and Antimony may serve again several times more, viz. ten or twelve. This Farcy Drink can never enough be praised; it sweetens the Blood after an admirable manner, correcting all Corruption in the Blood and Juices, disposing all Sor-rances to a safe and speedy healing.

And, Lastly, if you perceive that any of the Knots or Swellings are ripened, you must open them with a Lancet, such as the Chirurgeons bleed with, to let out the Corruption, and then wash them with the Green Water before described, and be assured that there is no curable Farcy but with this Method will be cured; and the worst that it was ever yet tried on, never withstood it above a Fortnight, excepting only that so many Purges cannot be given in so short a time; yet the Disease will be overcome in the Fortnight, notwithstanding you must continue to purge him at convenient Distances, as his Strength will allow, and as I said before, till you think him safe and free from any lurking Humours; and if you work him through all the time of his Cure, except those Days you purge him, it will be the better.

#### *A Pectoral Drink.*

For any new Cold, Cough, or Grass Cold, this following is an admirable Pectoral Drench, which will very much assist and strengthen his Wind, purify his Blood, and make a lean Hide-bound surfeited Horse fat and lusty.

Take Raisins of the Sun stoned, one Pound; Liquorish sliced, two Ounces; Sugar-Candy, two Ounces; Treacle, one Pound; Sallet Oil, three Ounces; Horse Spice, three Ounces; two or three Heads of Garlick pounded with the Raisins; Honey, two Spoonfuls; Ale, three Quarts;



Quarts; boil it till it comes to two Quarts, and give about a Pint in the Morning, fasting one or two Hours after it, and so let it be repeated every Morning as Occasion requires; twice is enough for a Cold, and the whole will do in most of the other Cases: It is good for a Surfeit, Short-winded, Hide-bound, and to make a lean Horse to thrive; this is extraordinary good to be given to your Horse now and then, as well to preserve Health as to restore; more especially at his coming from Grass: You will do best to Air him in the time of taking it.

*A Poultes to dissolve a Swelling.*

Take of our Garden Green Orris Roots, and White Lilly Roots, of each one Ounce; Marsh Mallows, Pellitory, Penuroyal, Origan, Calamint, Rue, of each a Handful; Camomile, Melilor, and Elder Flowers, of each half a Handful; Green Aniseeds, common Fennel, and Cuminseeds, of each half an Ounce; boil them to a Mash in Water and White-Wine Vinegar, then bruise them into an even smooth Mash in a Stone Mortar, adding to them of the Meal of Lupins, and of Beans, of each one Ounce and a Half; Oil of Camomile, one Ounce and a Half; Oil of Orris, one Ounce and a half; mix them well in the Mortar, then heat them again; then apply more or less of this Poultes, according to the Part affected, being hot. I could not by any means miss of giving you the Forms of this and the ripening Poultes, by reason of their extraordinary Usefulness in all Tumours, because I never yet did meet with any tolerable Forms in any Authors I have yet seen; and since Tumours or Swellings are so frequent to Horses by Hurts and Bruises, the which, if a timely and judicious Cure be not attempted, degenerate into incurable Fistula's and cancerous Ulcers; for it is allowed by all Chirurgeons, that the safest Way to cure all Swellings (which by them are called Tumours,) except malignant ones, is by dissolving of them, if possible, which is the most successful, and which ought to be used as soon, and as much as possible; but if that cannot be done, then all possible



speed ought to be used to ripen them, for the Reasons  
afore said.

*A Poultice proper to mollify or soften, and bring to Suppuration,  
that is, ripen a Swelling when it is necessary.*

Take white Lily Roots and Marsh Mallow Roots, of  
each four Ounces ; the Leaves of common Mallows,  
Marsh Mallows, Groundsel, Violet Plants, Brank Urfin,  
of every one of these Herbs one handful ; the Meal of  
Linseed and Fenugreek-seeds, Goose Fat and Oyl of Li-  
lies, of each three Ounces.

The Roots when washed and sliced, are to be boiled  
in Water, and the Leaves being added some time after,  
the boiling is to be continued till the whole Mass be-  
comes perfectly tender and soft ; at which time having  
strained the Decoction, beat the remaining gross Sub-  
stance in a Stone Mortar, with a Wooden Pestle, to a  
Pulp, then let the Decoction and Pulp be put into a Skil-  
let, and having intermixed the Meals of Linseed and  
Fenugreek-seeds, Goose Fat, and Oil of Lilies, let 'em  
be boiled together over a gentle Fire, stirring about the  
Ingredients from time to time, till they be all sufficient-  
ly thickned ; this Poultice I was unwilling to leave out,  
because I have ever seen dangerous Consequence happen  
to Tumours or Swellings that could not be discussed, that  
is, go away of themselves, or by Means, for the want of  
such a Poultice to bring them to a speedy ripening : For,  
if a Swelling that cannot be driven away, should remain  
too long before it be ripened, it generally putrifies and  
turns to a fistulous Ulcer, or a cancerous Ulcer, which  
seldom, or very rarely admits of a Cure. These two Poul-  
tices are excellent, but I would tie none to a strict Form ;  
so that these may serve the ingenious as a Model for the  
making many others.

*An Eye-Water.*

Take a new earthen Pipkin which will hold five Pints,  
or three Quarts ; put into it of the Stone called *Lapis*  
*Calaminaris*, in a very fine Powder ; of the Powder of the  
best



best Bolarmonick, called *Venetian Bole*; and of the best white Vitriol, of each of these one Ounce and a half, boil them over a gentle Fire till it comes to a Quart, then let it settle, and pour the clear from the *Fæces*, to which Water put in of Sugar of Lead, called *Saccharum Saturni*, three Drachms; Salt of Vitriol three Drachms; Camphir dissolved in Spirit of Wine, half an Ounce; Tincture of Aloes, one Ounce; Tincture of Opium, three Drachms; Red Rose Water, one Quart; prepared Tutty, half an Ounce, mix all together and keep it in a Bottle for your Use. It is one of the best Horse Eye-Waters extant for all Diseases of the Eyes, as Pin and Web, Pearls, Clouds, Blood-shot, sore and running Eyes, salt, hot, and sharp Rheums, Ulcers, Fistula's, Bruises, Stripes; in Bruises, Fistulas, Ulcers, Stripes, it will be of double Force, if you mix with it a little Honey, with as much as you use at the time of using; also Moon-blind, strengthening the Sight to a Miracle, by only springing into the Eyes a Syringe full two or three times a Day. Concerning the extraordinary Virtue of this Water, I shall here give you one Instance out of many. A young unruly Horse being put into a Cart, in order to learn him to draw, was so unruly, that two or three could scarce govern him, so that, one of the Men, by violently whipping him over the Face, it happened that he received a most grievous Stroke from a knotted Whip-cord in the Eye, so that the Cord had quite cut through the first Coat of the Eye, so deep, that the Dent or Wound would more than bury the Whip-cord; and that Wound was all along the middle of the Sight of the Eye, which inflamed the Eye and Eye-lid to that Degree, that the Eye-lid was as big as one's Fist; and all the best Farriers judged it impossible to recover and save the Sight; the Eye-lid was bathed with a Rag dipp'd in a little hot Beer, wherein had been boiled a little Butter, and a handful of Sage Leaves, as hot as the Horse could endure, which soon brought down the Swelling, and into the Eye was injected with a Syringe, two or three Syringefuls of the abovesaid Water at a time, and that two or three times a-Day, which (by the Blessing of God) made a perfect Cure of the Eye in less than a Week, and restored the Horse to his perfect Sight as before.



*For the Worms in a Horse.*

Take Antimony in fine Powder, half a Pound, of Quick-silver, two Ounces; boil them in four Pails-full of Water till it come to three, of which mix half a Pailful with as much Water as he will drink, it first being strained, and so continue it till all is gone.

*For a Horse that is bitten by a mad Dog.*

As soon as possible, after the Horse is bitten, let all the bitten Parts be seared with a hot Iron, (with this Caution) that you fear not, nor let the hot Iron touch nor damage neither Nerve nor Tendon; neither his Eyes or any noble Member, whereby the Horse may receive any Damage from the Operation; then let a strong blistering Plaister be applied to each Part where the Iron had been, as well as all those Parts bitten, which you could not attempt to sear with the hot Iron, for the Reasons before given, viz. the hurting the Nerves, Tendons, or other noble Parts, except the Eyes and the inside of the Mouth.

*The Blistring Plaister.*

Take Burgundy Pitch, one Ounce; Ship Pitch, and common Rosin, of each of these half an Ounce; of the common *Lapis Infernalis*, or Caustick Stone) the which you may have of the Chymists for a small Matter) one Dram; Cantharides, or *Spanish Flies*, in very fine Powder, six Drachms, or one Ounce. The Manner of preparing of it is thus: Take a Pipkin, and first put in the Burgundy-Pitch, Ship-Pitch, and Rosin, and set them over a soft Fire to melt, stirring them about to incorporate them; then when it is well melted, put in the *Lapis Infernalis* in Powder, stirring it all the while, that it may equally mix: Lastly, put in by Degrees the Ounce of Cantharides, being in fine Powder, stirring it all the while, and if you perceive that the Powders make it too thick, you may, at your Discretion, add a little of the rankest Oil you can get, but you must be sure you do not let it boil after the *Spanish Flies* are in, nor to remain long on the Fire, for that would spoil the Virtue; so about a Minute or two after the Powder



der of the *Spanish* Flies is all stirred in, take it off the Fire, and keep it for your Use ; and when you use it, spread it pretty thick upon Leather, and apply it to the Part, and let it remain on ten or twelve Hours. Then when you dress it, cut all the Blisters that are not broken, and wipe them clean, then apply to the Parts this following Plaister.

*The Plaister that is to be applied to the Parts when the blistering Plaister is removed.*

Take four Heads of Garlick, one Ounce of *Venice* Treacle, half an Ounce of *Venice* Turpentine, half an Ounce of the Filings of Pewter, and one Drachm of the Powder of *Spanish* Flies, and half an Ounce of Honey, and two Drachms of Verdigrease in Powder, pound all these together in a Mortar ; when you use it, spread it on Leather and apply it, binding it on, by reason that it is not very apt to stick : But when the Bite is on a part that the Plaister cannot conveniently be bound on, then you must let the Leather be something broader than what you design for the Plaister, in order that the Margin may be spread with *Burgundy* Pitch ; then put the Plaister in the middle of the Leather, and the *Burgundy* Pitch on the Margin, will make it stick without binding. This Plaister must lie on twenty four Hours, and then taken off, and the part cleansed, and then a fresh Plaister must be renewed, keeping the Sores open as long as possible with this Plaister, in order to draw out the Venom that it get not into the Blood, which would kill the Horse : So much for putting a stop to the Venom outwardly ; now follows what is to be given inwardly in order to subdue and drive out the Venom, in case it should have gotten into the Blood, also to prevent its getting into the Blood.

*The Diet-Drink for the Bite of a mad Dog.*

Take of the Leaves of Box, the Leaves of Rue, the Leaves and Roots of Primrose, the Leaves of Sage, of each of these two handfuls, fresh Roots of the Male Piony, three quarters of a Pound, the Powder of Crabs Claws, two Ounces ; the Powder of round Birthwort Roots, two Ounces, *Venice* Treacle, three Ounces ; bruise all these things



things together in a Mortar, then put it in a great wide-mouthed Glass, such as they pickle Cucumbers in, then pour upon the Ingredients five Quarts of White *Lisbon* Wine, or for want of that of the best Cider, or strong Beer, but rather the Wine if you can, then stop the Glass slightly. *Note*, The Glass ought not to be above half full, when all is in, then let it infuse in a Kettle of hot Water, (as you are more fully taught in the Receipt for the Green Water) for the Space of twelve or fourteen Hours, then keep it for your Use. When you use it, you must strain off about a Pint, into which you must put about a Drachm of Balsam of Sulphur, and give it your Horse in a Drenching-Horn in the Morning, setting the Horse fast two Hours after, and so repeat it thrice: Then at the New and Full Moons, give him for three Mornings the same, and the same Quantity as before.





An Abridgment of  
**MANWOOD'S**  
**Forest Laws.**

And of all the  
**Acts of Parliament**  
**Made Since;**

WHICH RELATE TO  
*Hunting, Hawking, Fishing, or*  
*Fowling.*

WITH  
Precedents of Warrants for Game-  
keepers, Licences to *Hunt, Hawk, &c.*

---

---

L O N D O N:  
Printed by H. P. for N. C. 1721.



M. N. O. O. P. S.

1810

Acts of Parliament

Made since

which relate to

the

of the

Printed by W. P. for A. C. 1810



OF THE  
**Forest Laws**  
OF  
CANUTUS.

---

The Charter of the Forest of *Canutus* the *Dane*, sometime King of *England*, granted at *Winchester*, in a Parliament holden there, *Anno Domini*, 1062.

*Here begin the Constitution of King Canutus concerning the FOREST.*

These are the Constitutions, or Laws of the Forest, which I *Canutus* King, with the *Advice* of my Nobility, do Make and Establish, That both Peace and Justice be done to all the *Churches* of *England*, and that every Offender suffer according to his Quality, and the manner of his Offence.

1. **T**here shall be from henceforth four, out of the best of the Freemen, who have their accustomed Rights secure, [whom the English call Poegened] constituted



stituted in every Province of my Kingdom, to distribute Justice, together with due punishment, as to the matters of the Forest, to all my People as well English as Danish, throughout my whole Kingdom of England, which four we think fit to call the Chief Men of the Forest; [now called Verderors.]

2. There shall be under every one of these, four out of the middle sort of Men [whom the English call Lespegend, and the Danes, Young Men] placed, who shall take upon them the care and charge as well of the Vert as the Venison, [now called Regardors.]

3. But we will not by any means have such persons concern themselves in the Administration of Justice: yet such middle sort of Men, after their taking upon them the care of the Beasts of the Forest, shall be always reputed Free Men, such as the Danes call Eldermen.

4. Again, under every one of these, shall be two of the meaner sort of Men, whom the English call Tine Men; these shall take care of the Venison and Vert by Night, and undergo other servile Offices, [now called Foresters, or Keepers.]

5. Such man servant shall be free as soon as he takes his place in our Forest, and we will maintain all such at our own Charge.

6. Also every one of the Chief Men [or Verderors] shall have every year out of our Ward [which the English call Michni] two Horses, the one with a Saddle, the other without, one Sword, five Lances, one Head-piece, one Shield, and two hundred shillings of silver.

7. Every one of the middle sort of men [or Regardors] one Horse, one Lance, one Shield, and sixty shillings of silver.

8. Every



8. Every one of the meaner sort of men [or Foresters] one Lance, one Cross-bow, and fifteen shillings of silver.

9. That all of them, as well Chief Men [or Verderors] middle sort of Men [or Regardors] and meaner sort of Men [or Foresters] shall be free and quit from all Provincial Summons, and popular Pleas [which the English call Hundred Laghe] and from all Taxes concerning the Wars, or Weapons [which the English call Warscot] and from all foreign Plaints.

10. That the Causes of the middle sort of Men [or Regardors] and of the meaner sort of Men [as Foresters] and their Corrections, as well Criminal as Civil, shall be adjudged and decided by the provident wisdom and discretion of the Chief Men [or Verderors] But the Enormities of the Chief Men [or Verderors] if any such shall be, (lest any Crime should escape unpunished) we our self will cause to be punished according to our Royal Displeasure.

11. These four [Chief Men, or Verderors] shall have a Royal Power, (saving in our presence) and four times in the year the general Demonstrations of the Forest, and the forfeitures of Vert and Venison (which the English call Mechehunt) where they shall all of them hold Claim, or Challenge of any thing touching the Forest, and shall go to a threefold Judgment (which the English call Gangfordel) and thus the threefold Judgment shall be obtained; the party shall take with him five others, and he himself shall make the sixth, and so by swearing, he shall obtain a threefold Judgment, or tripple Oath. But the Purgation of Fire (or Fiery Ordale) shall be by no means admitted, unless in such cases where the naked Truth cannot otherwise be found out.

12. But



12. But a Freeman, (i. Pegen,) [so that his Crime be not inter mariota] may have an honest Man who may take an Oath for him (i. Forathe) but if he hath not, he must swear himself, and shall not be excused from swearing.

13. If a stranger or foreigner, who shall come from some place afar off, be challenged of the Forest, and the meanness of his condition be such, that he cannot procure a Pledge to his first Challenge, [which no Englishman may adjudge] then he shall undergo the King's Caption, and there he shall stay until he shall go to the Judgment of Iron and Water, i. of the Ordale: But yet if any one shall hurt such a stranger coming from a place afar off, that is an Offender, he that doth hurt him shall have his Judgment executed upon him.

14. Whosoever shall, before my Chief Men (or Verderors) of my Forest, bear false witness, and be thereof convicted, shall be incapable for ever afterwards to be a witness, or give his Testimony in any Cause, because he hath lost the benefit of the Law, and for his Crime he shall pay to the King ten shillings (which the Danes call Hall hang, or Halfe hang.)

15. Whosoever shall offer any violence to the Chief Men, (or Venderors) of my Forest, if he be free, he shall lose his liberty, and all that he hath; and if he be a Villain, his right hand shall be cut off.

16. If either of them shall offend again, in the like case, he shall be guilty of death.

17. In like manner, if any person shall contend in suit, with one of the Chief Men, (or Verderors) he shall forfeit to the King as much as he is worth (which the English call Pere and Pite) and pay to the Chief Man (or Verderor) forty shillings.

18. If



18. If any Person shall break the Peace before the middle Sort of Men (or Regardors) of the Forest, which they call Geth-brech, he shall pay to the King ten Shillings.

19. Whosoever shall strike any of the middle Sort of Men, (or Regardors of the Forest) in wrath, he shall forfeit as much, as is usually forfeited unto the King for killing a Royal Beast of the Forest.

20. If any Person shall be taken offending in the Forest, he shall suffer punishment according to the Manner and Quality of his Offence.

21. The Punishment and Forfeiture shall not be one and the same of a Freeman (whom the Danes call Elderman) and of one that is not free, of a Master and of a Servant, of one that is known, and of one that is not known; nor shall the Management of Causes, either Civil or Criminal, of the Beasts of the Forest, and of the Royal Beasts, of the Vert, and of the Venison, be one and the same: For the Crime of Hunting hath been of old reputed (and not undeservedly) amongst the greatest Offences, that could be committed in the Forest; but that of Vert is esteemed so little and trivial (except as it is a Breach of our Royal Chase) That our Constitution or Forest-Law doth scarcely take Notice of it; nevertheless he, that offends therein, is guilty of one of the Trespases of the Forest.

22. If any Freeman shall Course or Hunt a Beast of the Forest, either casually or wilfully, so that by the swiftness of the Course, the Beast doth pant, and is put out of Breath; such Freeman shall forfeit ten Shillings to the King, and if he be not a Freeman, he shall forfeit double, but if he be a Bondman, he shall lose his Skin.



23. But if the first shall kill any Beast of the Forest, he shall pay double, the second Time as much, and the third shall forfeit as much as he is worth, to the King.

24. But if any, or either of them, by Courting or Hunting, force a Royal Beast, which the English call a Staggon (or Stag) to pant, and be out of Breath, The Freeman shall lose his natural Liberty for a Year, and the other for two Years; But the Bondman shall be reckoned as an Out-law, (which the English call a Friendless Man.)

25. But if such a Royal Beast be killed by any of them, The Freeman shall lose his freedom, The other his Liberty, and the Bondman his Life.

26. My Bishops, Abbots and Barons shall not be challenged for Hunting in my Forest, except they kill Royal Beasts, and if they do, they shall make Satisfaction according to my pleasure, without knowing the certainty of the Forfeiture.

27. There are some Beasts (besides those of the Forest) which, while they keep within the Bounds and Limits of the Forest, are subject to be accounted for, when hunted, by the Laws of the Forest, viz. Wild-Goats, Hares, and Conies. And there are also a great number of Cattle, which, although they live within the Limits of the Forest, and are Subject to the charge and care of the Middle Sort of Men (or Regardors) Nevertheless cannot at all be reputed Beasts of the Forest, as Wild Horses, Buffaloes, Wild Cows, &c. As for Foxes and Wolves, they are neither reckoned as Beasts of the Forest, or of Venary, and therefore, whoever kills any of them, is out of all Danger of Forfeiture, or making any recompence, or amends for the same; Nevertheless



Nevertheless the killing them within the Limits of the Forest is a breach of the Royal Chase, and therefore the Offender shall yield a Recompence for the same, though it be but easy and gentle. But a Wild Boar, notwithstanding he is a Beast of the Forest, nevertheless he was never thought to be a Beast of Venary.

28. No Man shall touch or meddle with our Wood, or Under-wood, without License of the Chief Man (or Verderors) of our Forest, which if he do, he is guilty of the Breach of our Royal Chase.

29. But if any Person shall Cut down a Holly Tree, or any other Tree, that yieldeth Food for the Wild Beasts, besides making Satisfaction for the Breach of the Royal Chase, he shall pay twenty Shillings to the King.

30. I will that every Freeman may, as he pleaseth, have and take Venison, or Vert, upon his own Grounds, or in his own Fields, being out of my Chase, and let all Men avoid, and forbear taking my Venison, or Vert, in every place, where it is mine.

31. No Mean Man shall have, or keep any such Dogs, which the English call Greyhounds. But Free-Men may, provided the Dog's Knees be cut before one of the Chief Men, (or Verderors) of the Forest, or without cutting their Knees, provided the Dogs be removed, and kept ten Miles from the Limits of the Forest. But if the Dogs shall come any nearer to the Forest, the Master shall pay for every Mile one Shilling. But if any of the said Dogs be found within the precincts of the Forest, the Master of such Dog shall not only forfeit the said Dog, but ten Shillings in Money to the King.

32. But the little Dogs (which the Danes call Verterors, and the English Langeron) because  
it



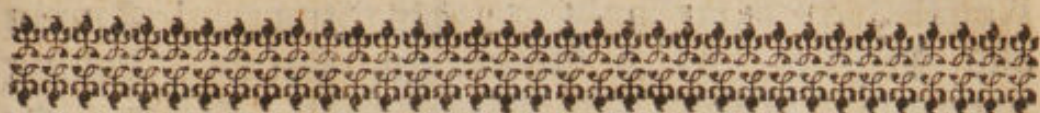
it manifestly appears, that there is no danger in them, it shall be very lawful for any Person to keep them without cutting their Knees. The same Law shall be touching such Dogs, as the English call Ramhunde.

33. But if it happen, that such sort of Dogs become mad, and run every where by the negligence of their Masters, by such means they will become unlawful, and the King shall be recompenced for such their unlawfulness, &c. But if they shall be found within the Precincts of the Forest, the Owners shall be found out, and make recompence according to the Price of a Mean Man, which according to an ancient Law, called Lex Merimorum, is two hundred Shillings.

34. If a mad Dog shall bite a wild Beast of the Forest, then the Owner of the Dog shall make recompence according to the Price of a Freeman, which is twelve Times a hundred Shillings. But if a Royal Beast shall be bitten, Then the Owner of the Dog shall be guilty of the greatest Crime.







## An Abstract

Of all the LAWS, made for  
the Preservation of the Game of  
Venary, Chase and Warren, Hawk-  
ing, Fishing and Fowling, as well  
in the King's Forests, and the Purli-  
eus thereof, as in the Chases, Pad-  
docks, Woods, Parks, Warrens,  
Fisheries, Vivaries, and Grounds  
Inclosed of any His Majesties Sub-  
jects, where Game is usually kept,  
in *ENGLAND* and *WALES*.



Of a Forest, what it is, and whereof it doth consist



Forest is a Franchise Royal, created  
by the King, and by him set apart,  
and appointed for the Generation,  
Feeding and Nourishment of wild  
Beasts of Venary and Chase, and also  
for Beasts and Fowls of Warren; not incident to  
any of his Subjects; for no Subjects can have, or  
enjoy a Forest, without special Grant from the King,



10 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest:  
under the Great Seal of England, it being Jus  
Regale, peculiar only to his Imperial Crown  
and Dignity, as a Sovereign Prince; having  
particular Laws, Privileges and Officers be-  
longing thereunto, for the preservation and con-  
tinuance thereof, and of the Vert and Venison  
therein.

2. It is a Circuit of Ground, stozed with great  
Woods, and Thickets of Covert, for the Shel-  
ter, Residence, and Safety of wild Beasts, and  
Fowls of Forest, Chase and Warren; and is al-  
so replenished with fruitful Pastures, and Lands  
for their continual Feeding and Subsistence; be-  
ing privileged to rest, and abide therein under  
the King's Protection, for his royal Pastime, Di-  
version and Pleasure.

3. A Forest is circumscrib'd, or bounded with  
irremovable and indelible Marks, Meers and  
Bounds, known, and preserved either by Matter of  
Record, or by Prescription.

4. It consists of 8 Things; viz. 1. Of Soil.  
2. Covert. 3. Laws. 4. Courts. 5. Judges. 6. Of-  
ficers. 7. Game. 8. Bounds.

Note, A Forest is not a Place privileged ge-  
nerally, for all manner of wild Beasts, or  
Fowls, but only of those that are of Forest, Chase  
and Warren; The wild Beasts of the Forest, or  
Beasts of Venary, being these five and no other,  
viz. The Hart, the Hind, the Hare, the Boar, and  
the Wolf. And although the Hart and the Hind  
are Beasts of the same Kind, or Species, yet  
nevertheless they are accounted two several Beasts,  
propter differentiam temporis in quo venati sunt,  
because they are of two several Seasons for Hunt-  
ing: The Season for Hunting the Hart being  
in the Summer, and the Time for Hunting the  
Hind beginning when the Season of the Hart  
is over.



By the Hart is understood as well a Stag, and Staggar, as every other Male-Deer of that Sort.



Of a Frank Chase, a Park, and a Free-Warren, what they are, and how they differ from each other.

A Frank, or Free Chase, is a franchise next in Degree unto a Forest, being an open Place for the keeping of Game, and in that Respect something resembling it, yet with this Difference, That a Chase hath neither the same Kinds of Game in it, nor any particular Laws belonging to the same, proper to a Chase only; For whereas the Beasts of Forest are the Hart, Hind, Hare, Boar, and Wolf, The Beasts of Chase are none of them, but other five, viz. The Buck, the Doe, the Fox, the Martrou, and the Roe; In like Manner, all Offenders in a Chase are punishable by the Common Law of this Realm, and not by the Forest-laws. Besides a Chase hath no such Officers as a Forest, viz. Verderors, Regardors (or Raungers) Foresters, and Agistors; Nor hath it any Courts of Attachments, Swainmote, or Justice-seat appertaining thereunto, all the Officers belonging to a Chase being only Keepers, as they are called in a Park, but such are termed Foresters in a Forest.

2. As a Chase is next in Degree unto a Forest, and in some Sort resembling it, so is a Park to a Chase, being in many Respects the same; for there is no diversity between them, save only that a Park is inclosed, and a Chase lies always open without Inclosure.

3. Lastly, The next Franchise, in Degree unto a Park, is the Liberty of a Free Warren; (The



12 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

Beasts and Fowls whereof are four, viz. The Hare, the Cony, the Pheasant, and the Partridge, and no other (being such as may be taken by Long-wing'd Hawks, according to Budæus) For as a Forest is the highest, and greatest in Dignity of all Franchises, so it doth surpass them all for its Extent, and Comprehensiveness, including in it a Frank Chase, a Park, and a Free Warren; for which Reason, The Beasts of Chase, and the Beasts and Fowls of Warren are as much privileged within the Forest, as the Beasts of Forest are; every Forest bring in itself a Chase, though a Chase be not a Forest, but a Part of it; and so the like may be said of a Park, and a Warren: And therefore the Hunting, Hurting or Killing any of the Beasts or Fowls of Chase, Park, or Warren, within the Limits of the Forest, is a Trespass of the Forest, only punishable by the Laws of the Forest, and not otherwise.

And because the Laws made for the Preservation and Continuance of Forests, and Purlieus thereof, and the Vert, Venison, and Fowls therein, are particularly applicable unto, and only proper for Forests, and no other Places; therefore we shall begin with a brief Account of the Laws that relate to the King's Forests only, and afterwards proceed to Discourse of such other Laws, as have been since made for Preservation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, Fishing and Fowling in the Chases, Parks, Warrens, Woods, or other Grounds, Fisheries, or Vivaries, within England and Wales, belonging to the Subject.

Of



Of the Forest-Laws in general.

IT is reported by antient Historians, That Forests have been always in this Kingdom from the first Time that the same was inhabited. And the Author of Concordantia Historiarum tells us, That Gurguntius the Son of Belyn, a King of this Island, did make certain Forests, for his pleasure in Wiltshire; and that divers other Kings have done the like, since his Time. Which Forests, the Kings of this Realm have always maintained, and preserved (with divers Privileges, and Laws appropriated thereunto as Places of Pleasure, and Delight, for their Royal Pastime, and Diversi-  
on.

And when it happened that any Offenders entred into those priviledg'd Places, and committed any Trespasse therein, they had very severe Punishments inflicted upon them, according to the Laws then in force, which were very grievous, and altogether uncertain, according to the Arbitrary and unlimited Will of the King: And thus those Laws were executed, and their Punishments continued, until about the Year 1016, when Canutus the Dane became King of this Realm; who, delighting much in Forests, did (for the better maintenance, and Preservation thereof) Establish certain Laws, or Constitutions peculiar only to Forests: By which it appears, that before his Time, all wild Beasts and Birds were only the Kings, and that no other Person might kill, or hurt them: The Kings of England having by their Prerogative Royal, a Right and Privilege in such Things as none of their Subjects could Challenge any property in; and  
such



14 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

such were then said to be the Kings, as wild Beasts, Birds, &c. in whose Lands or Woods soever they were found. Whereupon the said Canutus made a Law, That every Free-man might, at his pleasure, have and take his own Vert and Venison, or Hunt upon his own Ground, or in his own Fields, being out of the King's Chase; but that all Men should forbear to Have or Take the Kings Vert or Game in every place where his Highness should have the same.

Also it appears by the Laws of St. Edward the Confessor, That he did Confirm the said Law of Canutus, by a Sanction made in his Time, to this Effect, That it should be lawful for every one of his Subjects to Enjoy the Benefit of his own Hunting, that he could any Way have or make in his own Lands, Woods, or Fields; So that he did forbear to Hunt the King's Game in his Highness Forests, or other privileged Places, on pain of losing his Life for such Offence.

Which Laws were afterwards confirmed by William the Conqueror, as appears in the 27 Chapter of the Book, wherein his Laws were collected, and digested; and so were continued by him all his Time.

After whose Death, William Rufus his Son, in like manner continued the same Laws, during his Life.

And after his Death King Henry the first, his Brother, succeeding him to the Crown, by his Charter confirmed all the Laws of the Forest made by St. Edward the Confessor, as appears by the Book kept in the Exchequer, called Liber rubrus. cap. 1. Legum suarum: Which Laws of the Forest so continued during all the Life-Time of the said Henry the first.

After whose Decease, King Stephen by his Charter confirmed all the said Laws Privileges, and



Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest. 15  
and Customs granted by St. Edward the Confessor, and Henry the first, and continued the same during his Life.

After whose Death, King Henry the second succeeding him, did, by his General Charter, Confirm the aforesaid Laws of the Forest in many particulars, but not without great Alterations and Additions. For he doth, in and by his said Charter, Recite and Declare the Nature of the Laws of the Forest, and in what Sence they were taken, and used, or how interpreted or construed in Times past, and wherein they do differ from the Common Law of the Kingdom; And that the Kings of England before that Time, and he himself even then, might make a Forest in any Place of the Realm, where They, or he pleased, as well in the Lands and Inheritances of any of their, or his Subjects, as in Their, or his own Demeasne Lands. Which unlimited, and unaccountable Power, claimed by the Kings of England in those Times, by Colour of the Forest Laws, over the Birth-rights and Inheritances of their Subjects, was a mighty and insupportable Grievance to those, whose Lands were so Afforested; Their Pastures and the Profits of their Lands being then devoured by the Kings wild Beasts of his Forests, without any Recompence for the same.

And this Law of Afforesting the Subjects Lands (then daily so increasing) was thought to be a very great and insupportable Oppression, not only to the Nobility and Gentry, but also to the Commonalty of this Kingdom, being all of them debarred from Inclosing, or Improving their own Lands, so Afforested, and forced to let them lie open.

And if any of them did happen to offend against the Forest Laws, Their Punishments were



16 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
often exceeding great for a small Offence, and  
the Forfeitures according to the Kings Pleasure,  
not regarding the Quantity of the Trespas,  
nor according to the Course of the Common-  
Law.

Which rigorous Execution of Forest Laws con-  
tinued during the Life of Henry the second, and  
both the Reigns of Richard the first, and King  
John; every one of which Kings did daily in-  
crease those Oppressions, by making more new  
Forests in the Lands of their Subjects, to their  
great Impoverishment.

And this Mischief was not at all remedied,  
until the making of Charta de Foresta by Henry  
the third, published in the ninth Year of his  
Reign, which was afterwards confirmed, and en-  
larged by Edward the first his Son; whereby it  
is provided, That all Forests that Hen. 3. Rich.  
1. and King John had forested and made of the  
Land, Meadows, Pastures, or Woods of any of  
their Subjects (being not the demesne Lands of  
the Crown) should be disafforested again. For those  
three Kings last mentioned, had (in their Times)  
afforested so much of their Subjects Lands, that  
the greatest part of the Kingdom was then con-  
verted into Forests.



Of the Courts belonging to the Forest, the Judges  
thereof, and the Officers attending the same.

**T**HERE be three principal Courts usually  
kept for Matters of the Forest, viz. The  
Court of Attachments, the Court of Swainmote,  
and the High Court of the Lord Justice in  
Eyre of the Forest, called the Justice-Seat; be-  
ing each of them of a several and different Nature.  
The



The Court of Attachments is the most inferior of them all, for therein the Officers do nothing but receive the Attachments of the Foresters, and inrol them in the Verderors Rolls, that they may be in readines against the Time that the Court of Swainmote is kept; and for that this Court cannot determine any Offence or Trespass, if the Value thereof be above 4d. for all above that Value must be inrolled by the Verderors in their Roll, and sent from thence to the Court of Swainmote to be tryed there, according to the Laws of the Forest. For notwithstanding the greatest Part of all the Presentments do first begin in this Court, yet this Court cannot proceed farther therein, neither is a Presentment in this Court any Conviction against the Offender in those Offences, because he may Traverse the same, until it hath passed the Court of Swainmote, to which all Trespasses presented at the Court of Attachments must necessarily come, before the Offenders can be punished, or stand convicted, as guilty in Law of their Offences.

Next in Degree above the Court of Attachments, is the Court of Swainmote, though much inferior to the Justice Seat of the Forest: For when the Presentments of the Court of Attachments, and the Court of Swainmote have had their Proceedings, according to the Assizes, and Laws of the Forest, yet cannot the Court of Swainmote determine the same or assess Fines for any Offences contained in such Presentments, or give Judgment thereupon (other than to pronounce them convicted) But such Presentments and Convictions must be delivered in to the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, the Court of Justice Seat, on the first Day of Sitting of the said Court, when the  
same



same are called for, according to the Laws and Ordinances of the Forest: The Swainmote is a Court, unto which all the Freeholders within the Forest do owe Suit, and Service.

The next is the most Supreme Court of the Forest, called the Justice Seat, or General Sessions, wherein the Lord Chief Justice, or Lord Justice doth sit; for unto him it only belongs to give Judgment in this Court of all Offences, and to assess Fines, and punish Offenders, This Court being as the Fountain Head, unto which the other Courts of Attachments and Swainmote are but (as it were) two conduit Pipes to convey the Matter and Causes of the Forest, that from thence Judgment may be had, and given thereupon.

Note, By the Charter of the Forest, Chap. 8. The Court of Attachments shall be kept every forty Days throughout the Year, and the Court of Swainmote thrice a Year.

The Officers of the Forest, whose personal Attendance is required at the said Courts, for putting the Forest Laws in Execution, and the Punishment of Offenders, are principally the Verderors, Regardors, Foresters, and the Beadle of the Forest.

1. A Verderor is a Judicial Officer, chosen by Writ in the full County Court of the Shire wherein the Forest is, and sworn to maintain and keep the Assizes of the Forest, and to view, receive, and inroll the Attachments, and Presentments of all manner of Trespases of the Forest relating to Vert and Venison.

His Office is not much unlike to that of a Coroner, especially in this respect, As a Coroner by the Law, is to view the dead Body of any one killed suddenly, or found Dead, and it being unknown how such Person came by his, or her Death)



Death) he ought (upon notice given him) to repair to such a dead Body, and view the same, and thereupon inquire by the Oath of twelve Men of the Neighbourhood where such dead Body shall be found, upon view thereof, and such Evidence and Circumstances as he can come by, how such Party came by his, or her Death, and by what Means, and how, or what was the occasion Thereof; So it is the Duty of a Verderor, by his Office, to look after, and view the Wild Beasts of the Forest, and if any of them be found Slain, Wounded, or Hurt (upon notice given to him Thereof) he is to go unto, and View the Same, and cause an Inquisition to be made by a Jury of twelve Men out of four of the next Towns to the Forest, to know how such Beast was Killed, Wounded, or Hurt, and by whom.

2. The next is a Regardor, whose Office is, by his Oath, To make the Regard of the Forest, in such manner as the same hath been accustomed to be made in Ancient time; And also to view, and inquire of all Offences of the Forest, as well touching Vert, as Venison; and of all Concealments of Offences, or Defaults of Foresters and all other Officers of the Forest, concerning the Execution of their Offices.

Of Regardors there be three sorts viz. One made by the King, by Letters Patents, whereby the said Office is sometimes granted for Life, and sometimes in Fee. 2. Another sort made by the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, or the Writ directed to the Sheriff, which Regardors are to Exercise the said Office during the Kings Pleasure only. 3. There is another sort of Regardors, made pro hac vice tantum, for the present service of the Court of Swainmote, or to serve some other time in the absence of some of the



20 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.  
the Regardors that are sick, or not able otherwise  
to serve at that Time.

3. The next in order is a Forester, who is  
sworn to preserve the Vert and Venison of the  
Kings Forest, and to attend the Wild Beasts  
within his Walk or Jurisdiction, and to At-  
tach Offenders therein, either in Vert or Ve-  
nison, and to present the same at the Court of  
Attachments of the Forest, to the End they may  
be punished according to the Quality and Quan-  
tity of their Offences.

A Forester of the Kings Forest is made ei-  
ther by Grant from the King, by Letters Pa-  
tents, to hold his Office in Fee, paying a certain  
Fee-farm Rent yearly for the same, or else to  
have the same for Life, or durante bene placito;  
and sometimes they Claim to hold the said Office  
by Prescription: And such Foresters have some-  
times Servants under them to execute the said  
Office, in looking after the Forest, and taking  
care of the Deer therein, which have the Appel-  
lation of Foresters, but are called Walkers, or  
Under-keepers.

4. A Beadle; He is an Officer, or Servant  
of the Forest, that doth Warn, or Summon, all  
Persons to appear at the Courts of the Forest,  
He also makes all manner of Proclamations, as  
well within the Courts of the Forest, as without,  
and executes all the Process of the Forest, as Bai-  
liffs of Liberties, or Itinerant of the Sheriff, doth  
in his County execute all manner of Process, whe-  
ther Mean, Judicial, or otherwise, as well within  
Liberties as without.

The Office of the Verderors at the Court of  
Attachments, is, to sit there to see the Attach-  
ment of the Forest, as well of Vert as Venison,  
and receive the same of the Foresters, and others  
that present them there, and then to enter them  
in their own Rolls. The



The Office of the Foresters, or Keepers at this Court, is, To present Offenders, and Offences, or Trespasses, and to bring in Attachments there, that they have made of Offenders, touching Vert and Venison, whom they have attached for committing such Trespasses in the Forest.

This Court of Attachments is kept by the Verderors, and therefore sometimes called the Verderor's Court; and yet at this Court all the Foresters, and other Officers and Ministers of the Forest ought to appear, and give their Attendance. Here Woodwards must present all Offences committed within their Charge, and the Deaths of Wild Beasts of the Forest, to the Chief Forester, or Verderors; but they cannot attach Offenders, or make any Attachment, for that must be left to the Foresters, whose Office it is to perform.

As to the Court of Swainmote, the Verderors are the Chief Judges thereof, although the Chief Warden of the Forest, or his Deputy, doth usually sit there; but it seems, not as a Judicial Officer, for no Judicial Officer may, by the Common Law, make a Deputy. Neither could the Lord Chief Justice of the Forest legally make a Deputy, or appoint one to sit in his Place in the Grand Sessions, or Court of Justice-seat of the Forest, until the Statute of 32 H. 8. cap. 35. did authorize such Lords Chief Justices, to make Deputies to execute their Offices, by Writings or Instruments under their Hands, and sealed with the Seals of their Offices, and not otherwise.

But there is no such power given by any Statute to the Chief Warden of the Forest to make any Deputy to execute his Office: And yet there be commonly two Deputies in every Forest, which are called Lieutenants, that  
is



is to say, The Lieutenant of the Lord Chief Justice or Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, and the Lieutenant of the chief Warden of the Forest.

By the Charter of the Forest, this Court of Swainmote shall be kept thrice in the Year, viz. 1. On the Fifteenth Day before MICHAELMAS, when the Agistors of the Kings Woods do meet together to take the Agistments in the Demeasn Woods of the Crown. 2. About Martinmas, when the Agistors receive the Kings Pawnage; and to these two Courts must come the Kings Foresters, Verderors, and Agistors, by Distress, and no other Officer, or Minister of the Forest. 3. The other Court of Swainmote shall be kept the fifteenth Day before Midsummer Day, when the Agistors meet to fawn the Kings Deer, and at this Court shall come the Kings Foresters and Verderors by Distress, and no other. But now the Law is, that all the Officers of the Forest ought to appear at every Swainmote, not only the Verderors, Regardors, Agistors, Woodwardes, and all other Persons within the Circuit of the Forest, which are Freeholders, but also out of every Town and Village within the Forest, four Men and a Reve, for if any of these make Default, at any Court of Swainmote holden within the Forest, every of them shall be Amerced for his Default and such Amercement Estreated to the Chief Warden of the Forest, to levy the same by Distress.

Note, By the Words, Ministers of the Forest, above-mentioned, are intended the Stewards of the Court of Swainmote, who ought to be Men of Learning, and well skill'd in the Laws; for some Pleas of the Forest are tryed in the Court of Swainmote only, as appears by the Assises



Of the Laws and Privileges of the Foerst. 23  
ses and Customs of the Forest. Chap. 22. Where  
it is said, That if a Man be Attached for cut-  
ting of Boughs within the Forest, That Plea ap-  
pertains to the Court of Swainmote, before the  
Steward there. Anno. 6. Edw. 1.

Next, in Order, we shall treat of the High-  
Court of Justice-Seat, or Grand-Sessions of the Fo-  
rest, and the Lord Chief Justice of the Forest.

The Office of Lord Chief Justice of the Forest,  
is a Place of great Honour and Authority, ere-  
cuted always by some of the chiefest of the Ro-  
yalty, who is of the Kings Privy-Council.  
When he is made Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of  
the Forest by the Kings Special Commission he  
hath, by that means, as great Authority, as any  
Justice of Oyer and Terminer hath to hear and  
determine Matters at Common-Law, if not grea-  
ter: for then he may Punish all Trespasses, and  
Offences of the Forest according to the Laws  
of the same, and may hear and determine all  
Claims touching the Liberties and Franchises  
within the Forest, as to have Parks, Warrens,  
and Vivaries therein, also of them that Claim to  
be quit of Assarts and Purprestures, or of such as  
do Claim Leets, Hundreds, Goods of Felons,  
Fugitives and Outlaws, Felo's de se, Waifs, Est-  
rays, Deodands, and such like Immunities, and  
other Liberties within the Forest, as likewise of  
such Persons that Claim to kill Hares, and o-  
ther Beasts of Chase and Warren, within the Fo-  
rest.

He hath also an Absolute Authority to deter-  
mine all Offences within the Forest, either of  
Vert or Venison; for such Offences shall not be  
determined before any other Justices, except such  
as are appointed by Commission under the Great  
Seal, to aid and assist him in the Execution and  
performance of his Office.

And



And of this there are two Cases in the Year-Book of Hen. 7. The first in the 21st Year of that King, Fol. 22. Where in Trespass de Malefactoribus in Pacis, the Plaintiff declared, That the Defendant did enter into a certain Forest, &c. and the Opinion of the Court, was, That this Action did not lie, except for Offences committed in Parks; for the Statute of Westm. 1. cap. 20. is only intended to redress Injuries done in Parks, and shall be taken strictly: So that the punishment that is given for committing Offences in Forests is punishable by the Statute of Charta de Foresta, and not otherwise, &c.

The other Case is in the same Year, fo. 30. Where, upon an Indictment, for killing a Hart proclaimed, found before the Justices of the Peace, The Indictment was challenged, because it was not set forth therein, in what Place the Proclamation was made, nor in what Place the Hart was killed; for if he was killed out of the Bounds of the Forest, it was no Offence in him that killed him; and Fineux, Lord Chief Justice, said, That this Matter might be pleaded to the Jurisdiction of the Court, because the Justices of the Forest ought to determine the same.

Add to these the purport of the Statute made in 34. E. 1. called Ordinatio Forestæ, That all the Proceeding concerning Offences of the Forest, in any other Place except before the Justices of the Forest, shall be void: And that no other shall have Power, or Authority, to proceed against Offenders in the Forest, other than the Justices of the Forest only.

When the Justices of the Forest have obtained their Commission for holding the Court of Justice Seat of the Forest, they make out their Precept to the Sheriff of the County wherein the Forest lies, and the Justice Seat is kept, commanding



manding him to Summon all the Prelates, Nobility, Knights, Gentlemen, and Freeholders that have Lands within the Bounds of the Forest, and out of every Town and Village four Men and a Reve, and out of every Borough twelve lawful Men; and all Persons that Claim to hold Pleas of the Forest before the Justices; To appear (such a Day, and Place) before the Justice in Eyre of the Forest or his Deputy, to hear and do such Things as appertain to the Pleas of the Forest. And likewise that the said Sheriff do make Proclamation in all Boroughs, and other Towns, Fairs, Markets, and other publick Places throughout his Bailiwick, That all Persons who Claim to have any Liberties, Franchises, or Free-Customs of the Forest, may be there, at the same Time, and Place, to make good their Claims; And that all Persons Attached, since the last Court, touching Vert or Venison, and their Pledges and Mainpernors, who had a Day given them until this Court for their Appearance, be there also to stand to, and abide the Judgment of the Court; and that the Sheriff be there with his Bailiffs, to execute such Matters as appertain to his Office, and certifie the Justice of the Forest concerning the Premises.

Upon this Summons, the Officers of the Forest, and all other Persons that are to appear at this Court, must have a Day of reasonable Warning by the Space of forty Days, at the least, to hold their Sessions in, and they shall hold Pleas of Quo Warranto.

There is also another Summons directed to the Chief Warden of the Forest, to warn all the Foresters, Verderors, Regardors, Woodwardes, and other Ministers of the Forest, to come to the said Court, and bring with them all the Rolls, Writings,



tings and Attachments of the Forest (made since the last Court, or left there undetermined) concerning the Vert and Venison of the Forest, and that the Regardors do likewise come thither, and bring with them all the Regards made and inrolled since the last Court, and that likewise the Agistors do appear there with their Attachments, and Rolls of Agistments, to perform such their Duty concerning the same, as shall be required of them by the Court. Lastly to cause all such Persons to appear at the said Court, as Claim any Liberties, or Franchises within the Forest, to shew by what Warrant they Claim to have the same.

Note, That all Persons, whether they dwell within the Forest, or without, if they be summoned to appear at the Justice Seat of the Forest, in Respect of the Lands within the same, to serve there upon Inquests, ought to appear in proper Person only, and not otherwise.

But all such Persons which are to appear there, in Respect of making their Claims, to have any Liberties or Privileges within the Forest, may appear there either in Person, or by Attorney at their own Elections.

Note, That all the Rolls of such offences, as have passed the Courts of Attachments and Swainmote, are to be sealed up by the Verderors, and kept until the next Court of Justice Seat, and then they are to present the same to the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest.

But if any Officer or Minister of the Forest, that hath the Custody of such Rolls (at such Time, as the Court of Justice Seat is holden) their Heirs, Executors, Assigns, or Tenants of their Lands (in what County soever they be) do not bring in such Rolls the first Day of holding the said Court, there shall issue out  
a Precept



a Precept to the Sheriff of the County, where such Lands do lie, ' Commanding him, That the  
 " Wife and Childzen of such Offender, being first  
 " by him turned out of Doors, he cause to be  
 " seized all the Lands and Tenements of such  
 " Offender in his Bailiwick, so that he be re-  
 " sponsible to the Lord Justice in Eyre of the  
 " Forest, as to the Value of them, for a Year,  
 " unless the Tenants of such Lands come before  
 " the end of the Year, and bring in the said  
 " Rolls.

And such is the Severity of the Laws of the Forest touching this Matter, That if the Rolls of the Forest should happen to be casually lost, yet the Officers by whom they were so lost, their Heirs, Executors, or Tenants must make a Fine with the King for the same.

Or if it happen such Rolls be burnt, or otherwise destroyed by the Common Enemy of the Nation, yet that shall not avail for an Excuse by the Laws of the Forest ( though at Common Law it would be allowable ) but even in this Case the Officer in whose Custody they were, or had the Charge of them by the Direction of the Court, must make this Fine for the same or else his Land shall be seized: And so it is of Agistors, if they fail of their Rolls, or Accounts.

Likewise if the Verderors make default at the Court of Justice Seat, they shall be Amerced for the same, and distrained by their Lands, to bring in their Rolls, Indictments, and other Writings concerning the Forest.

Note, That before any Justice Seat of the Forest can be holden, the Regardors must make their Regard, which is done by the King's Writ, sent by the Lord Justice in Eyre to the Sheriff of that County, where the Forest is, in



which the Court of Justice Seat shall be kept, together with an Abstract of all such Matters as the Regardors shall inquire of. Who, when they have made their Range, and affirmed, at the Courts of Attachments, and Swainmote, such matters, as they shall have found in their Survey, are to present the same, under their Hands and Seals, unto the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at the Court of Justice Seat within the same.

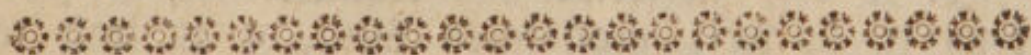
And then the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre, or his Deputy, being set in Court, together with those that are in Commission with him, as his Assistants, after the Commission read, and the Officers of the Forest called over, then the Freeholders of the Forest must be called, and such other Persons as were summoned to appear at that Time, out of which there is then chosen a substantial Jury of the discreetest Men, not under the Number of 18 or exceeding 24; After which Jury is sworn, the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre, or his Deputy, or some other Person skill'd in the Laws of the Forest by his Appointment, shall give in Charge to the Jury the principal Matters they are to inquire of, being a brief Account of the several Offences that have at any Time been committed against the Laws of the Forest; against which there are some that Respect the Court of Justice Seat of the Forest only. as the account of Money received by the Verderors for Dogs kept unexpeditated within the Forest, is to be made before the Justice in Eyre, at the next Court of Justice Seat; The like for punishing Nuisances of the Forest. Also unlawful Hunting in the Forest, shall be punished by Judicial Sentence at the Court of Justice Seat; and so shall Offenders in Purlicus of the Forest, with divers others.

After



After the Jury have brought in their Verdict, and the same is recorded, and that the other Business is over, the Steward shall give the Oath to the Inhabitants of the Forest, of the age of twelve Years, to this Effect, To be true Liegeman unto the King; to do no hurt unto the wild Beasts, or any Thing else belonging to the Forest; not to conceal any Offences committed by others, but to the uttermost of their Power to reveal them unto the Officers of the Forest, or such Persons as ought to see the same redrest.

Then after the ending of the said Court of Justice Seat, or Grand Sessions of the Forest, the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at his return to the Court, Certifies the King what Offences have been committed in the Forest since the last Court before this was holden here; and how the Offenders have been prosecuted for the same; and what Officers of the Forest have faithfully discharged their Trusts as they ought, according to the incumbent Duty of their Offices, and who have been remiss therein, That they may be encouraged, or displaced accordingly.



Of the Limits of the Forest, and the Offences committed therein, and how to distinguish between an Offence committed within the Forest, and within the Regard of the Forest.

**E**VERY Forest is bound with Limits to know the Circuit, or Circumference thereof, which in the old Perambulations are called Marks, Meres, and Boundaries; by a Mark is signified any Thing that hath an Ascent from the Ground upward in Height, as a Hill, Tree, Church, &c. By a Mere of the Forest



is meant the Distance and Place between the Forest and the Soil of any other Person, whereon any Thing doth stand that may be discernable afar off, and conspicuous to the View of the Person authorized to set out the Limits of the Forest, as a dwelling House, a Mill, &c. Lastly, by the Word Boundary, is understood any Thing wherewith the Forest is bounded, that is upon the level, and not higher in View than the Soil of the Forest itself is, as a River, High-way, &c. And these are the Marks, Meres, and Boundaries, spoken of before, whereby a Forest is circumscribed, being irremovable and indelible; in regard they are such Things as be immovable of themselves, or irremovable by others, as Hills, Churches, High-ways, and Rivers be, and yet sometimes for want of such permanent Boundaries, great Trees conspicuously known have been made use for that purpose, though very rarely, and upon cogent necessity: These Boundaries are also indelible, as being preserved by Matter of Record or Prescription.

It is very material and requisite for all Persons to be well acquainted with, or at least to have some competent Knowledge of the Bounds or Limits of the Forest, especially such Gentlemen as live near the same, and the Officers concerned therein; for if one be presented for killing a Wild Beast of the Forest, the Place where the same was done ought punctually to be known, for it might be killed out of the Forest, and then no Offence to the Forest-Laws, except in some special Cases; and therefore the Limits of the Forest ought particularly to be known. So according to the Words of Charta de Foresta of the 9th of Hen. 3. Artic. 2. That Men who dwell out of the Forest shall not come  
before



before the Justices of the Forest by Common Summons; in this Case the Limits of the Forest ought to be known, that it may be distinguished who are dwellers within the Forest, and who without. Likewise by the Statute de Malefactoribus, Anno 21 E. 1. "If any Forester do find  
 " any Trespasser wandering in his Liberty with-  
 " in the Forest, intending to do hurt or damage  
 " therein, and after Hue and Cry made to  
 " him, to stand unto the Peace will not yield  
 " himself, but do fly or resist; in this Case, if  
 " the Forester do kill any such Offender he shall  
 " not be impeached for this Felony." In this Case, it will be absolutely necessary to know the exact Bounds and Limits of the Forest; for in all probability Issue will be taken, Whether the Trespasser was killed within the same, or not; and if within the Limits of the Forest, the Forester may plead the said Statute in Justification, but otherwise it will be Felony in him.

And farther it is to be observed, That all the Meeres and Bonndaries of the Forest, are according to the Assizes of the Forest, Anno 6. Edw: 1. intirely the Kings, and Parcel of the Forest, except in some particular Cases, as where they do consist of such things, as the King hath no interest in, or that are or may be any Succour or Relief to the wild Beasts of the Forest; for if a dwelling House, Hill, or the like, be a Meer, or Mark of the Forest, yet the King shall not have any interest in the same thereby, for the Reason above-mentioned.

But by the Assizes of Pickring, Anno 8. Edw. 3. It was adjudged, That no Person might Fish in any River that is a Boundary or Meer of a Forest, without Warrant, because it is Parcel of the Forest, and the King's, as a Mere of the

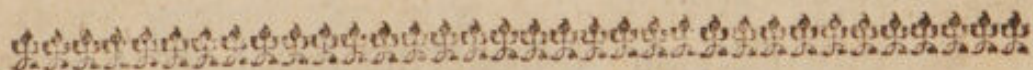


Forest. And therefore the Abbot of Whitby was indicted, at those Assizes, for killing a Hart in the River of Darwent, being the Marches of the Forest, and carrying away the Venison with him; but he made a Fine for the same, and was bound to the good behaviour of the Forest, and so much for the Limits of the Forest, and the Offences committed therein; next of the Difference between an Offence committed within the Forest, and within the Regard of the Forest.

In the Assizes and Customs of the Forest, Anno 6. Edw. 1. Artic. 3. It is said, "If any  
" Person shall be found felling an Oak out of  
" the Demeasn Wood, and within the Regard of  
" the Forest, without the View, or delivery of the  
" Forester, or Verderor, he shall be attached by  
" four Pledges, and by the View of the Verderor  
" the Oak shall be appraised, and the Names of  
" the Pledges shall be written in the Roll of the  
" Foresters and Verderors." Here the Words  
(Within the Regard of the Forest) shall be understood within the Limits of the Forest. But it is quite otherwise in the fifth Article of the same Assizes and customs, where it is said, If any Man shall be found attachable contrary to his Sureties and Pledges (that is to say, if he be bound to the good Behaviour towards the Forest, and after that offends in the like Nature) he shall be distrained by his Chattels found within the Bounds, or Limits of the Forest: By which it appears, that such a Person may have Chattels distrainable within the Bounds and Limits of the Forest, which are nevertheless out of the Regard of the Forest, being peradventure in such Places as are exempted by Charter out of the Burthen and Charge of the Forest, as appears by the Perambulations made



made of the Forests in Edw. the firsts Time, when divers Woods within the Limits and Bounds of the Forest were exempted out of the Regard of the Forest: So that there happens to be sometimes Towns, Parks, and Woods, which lie within the Bounds and Limits of a Forest, which notwithstanding are no Part of such Forest, as Wallwood in Essex formerly was, being within the Forest of Waltham, and yet no Part thereof, nor within the Regard of the same; and so Havering Park is within the Meres and Bounds of the said Forest of Waltham, nevertheless, out of the Regard of the same, and not any Part thereof: But all such Franchises, Lands, or Woods that be any Part of a Forest, are within the Regard of the same, and all such as are within the Meres and Bounds of a Forest, and are no Part thereof, are out of the Regard of the Forest: And this is the meaning of the Distinction to be made of the Woods, Within the Regard of the Forest, within the Limits (or Bounds) of the Forest, and in the Forest.



Of the Time of Fawning for the Deer of the Forest, called the Fence, or Forbidden-month, and how all Persons ought to demean themselves in the Forest during that Time.

**B**y the Charter of the Forest of Henry the third Artic. 8: The third Court of Swainmote is appointed to be kept fifteen Days before Midsummer, at which Time all the Foresters, Verderors, and Agistors should meet together for the quiet and safety of the wild Beasts during



34 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
ing in the Time of their Fawning, which is called the Fence, or Forbidden Month.

This Month consists of thirty Days, viz. fifteen before Midsummer, and fifteen Days after.

During this Month diligent Watch and Ward must be kept in every Bailiwick throughout the Forest, That no Person be suffered to go out of the Kings Highway, lest he should steal, or carry away the young Fawns; Nor shall any Swine be then suffered to remain in the Forest, lest they Destroy the same: Nor shall any Person be suffered to go up and down, or bring into, or drive any Cattle or Beasts through the wast Grounds of the Forest, out of the Highway, lest they disturb the Deer in the Time of their Fawning.

And farther it is to be observed, That during this Month, the Foresters are to give Notice to each House within every Bailiwick in the Forest, to keep in all their Dogs, and not suffer any of them to go abroad, whether they be Mastiffs expeditated, or any other kind of Dogs whatsoever.

For such Persons so wandring about the Forest, at this Time, without special Business, shall be Attached by the Watchmen and Warders, and brought before the Verderors.

Or if any Person shall be found, at this Time, to Hurt or Course any wild Beast within the Forest; or to carry away any young Fawn; or to carry with him, out of the Highway, any Bow, Gun, or Engine to hurt or destroy the Beasts of the Forest, he shall be attached and brought before the Verderors.

Likewise, if any Dogs shall be found running about the Forest, at this Time, to disturb or affright the Deer, they shall Enquire whose they



they are, and bring them unto the Verderors.

So, if any Deer shall be found hurt, or dead within the Forest, at this Time, they shall enquire of the Manner of its Death, and inform the Verderors thereof.

And such is the severity of the Laws of the Forest, That if such Watchmen or Warders, shall endeavour to apprehend all Trespassers, or Offenders in the Forest, to bring them before the Verderors, as aforesaid, but cannot by Reason of Resistance made against them; in such Cases these Officers shall, by the Laws of the Forest, make Hue and Cry after such Offenders till they be taken.

Of keeping Dogs within the Forest, and Expediting the same, and the Forfeiture for keeping them Unexpeditated therein.

**N**O Twithstanding the strictness and severity of the Laws of the Forest, the Inhabitants within the same are allowed to keep such Dogs, as are necessary for the Preservation of their Dwelling Houses, and Goods therein, although some Kinds of Dogs are forbidden to be kept within the Forest, except by some particular Persons.

And therefore Farmers, and substantial Freeholders dwelling within the Forest, may keep Mastiffs for the Defence of their Houses within the same, provided such Mastiffs be expeditated, according to the Laws of the Forest.

The Way of expediting of Mastiffs is done after this Manner, viz. Three Claws of the Fore-foot shall be cut off by the Skin, by setting one of his Fore-feet upon a Piece of Wood



36 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
Wood eight Inches thick, and a Foot-square,  
and with a Mallet, setting a Chissel of two  
Inches broad upon the three Claws of his  
Fore-Foot, and at one Blow cutting them clean  
off.

And this Expeditating (by some called Ham-  
bling, or Lawing of Dogs) ought to be inqui-  
red of by the Regardors of the Forest every third  
Year, and to present such as are not Expedita-  
ted, and by whom kept, and thereupon such  
Dogs are to be Expeditated, and the Owners  
of them Amerced 3 s. for keeping such Dogs so  
unlawed.

But by the Laws of the Forest, if any Mastiff,  
that is Expeditated, be found upon a Deer, the  
Owner of such Mastiff shall be quit of the Fact.  
By which it appears, that the Inhabitants of  
the Forest may keep Mastiffs Expeditated, though  
they should chance to fasten upon the Deer  
therein.

Also, it appears by the Laws of the Forest,  
That he who hath a lawful Claim, by good  
Title, may keep Mastiff, within a Forest unex-  
peditated, and by such like Claim he may keep  
Greyhounds within a Forest; notwithstanding  
Greyhounds and Spaniels are generally forbidden  
to be kept within a Forest, and Mastiffs unexpe-  
ditated are expressly forbidden, yet there is less  
danger in Mastiffs than in Greyhounds, and there  
is no Law to Expeditate the latter, because  
they are forbidden to be kept in a Forest; so that  
no Person can keep any of them there, except  
he that hath a Grant for that purpose from the  
King.

And Note, That it is farther provided by the  
Laws of the Forest, that if a Mastiff that is  
kept within any Forest Unexpeditated, do  
hurt or kill any Wild Beast of the Forest, the  
Owner



Owner of such Mastiff shall be punished for such Offence according to the Quality thereof, besides the Forfeiture of 3 s. for keeping such Mastiff unlawfuld.



Of Venison, its Name, and Signification.

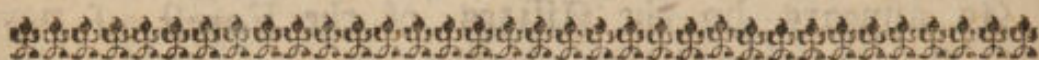
**A**S old Foresters, by the general Term, Beasts of Venary, understand every Beast of Forest, so by the general Word Venison, they mean every Beast of Forest and Chase, as a Word of Art, only proper to those Beasts, and no other.

By the Laws of the Forest, The Foresters and Verderors shall meet together, once every forty Days, throughout the Year, to see the Attachments of the Forest, concerning the Vert, and Venison: So that if any Person hunt in the Forest, and kill a Hare, the Forester may Attach him for that Offence, it being a Trespass in the Venison of the King's Forest. As appears by the Assizes of the Forest of Pickering, where two Persons were indicted for Striking a Hare in her Form, and killing another within the Forest; one of whom was committed to Prison, and made his Fine, and was also bound to his good Behaviour toward the Forest; and the other of them was outlawed. Whereby it appears, that Hares are Venison, and Beasts of the Forest.

This Word Venison, in Latin Venatio, is also often taken in a general Signification, for any wild Beast killed by Hunting, as a Squirrel, wild Goat, &c. though they are neither Beasts of Forest, nor Chase. In the East Countries, People do usually hunt the Bear, and esteem it as excellent Venison; for by the Word Venatio, is generally meant any man-  
uer



ner of wild Beast that is killed, or taken by Hunting; yet, with us, in some Sense, the Word Venison is only taken for the Flesh of the Hart, the Hind, the Buck, and the Doe, and the other Beasts of that kind; for amongst the common People, nothing is thought to be Venison, but the Flesh of Red and Fallow Deer; and the Reason is, because such People do not believe any Thing of Fresh-meats to be Venison, but such as are bak'd, and eaten for Venison, as are the Red and Fallow-Deer. But there is a two-fold Signification of the Word Venison, one in Relation to such Wild Beasts as are accounted Venison, for the pleasantness and delicious Taste of their Flesh, and the other in Respect of the great Delight, Pleasure, and Satisfaction which all Lovers of Game do rather take in Hunting, Chasing, and Killing the wild Beasts, whether of Forest and Chase, or otherwise, than they do in eating them.



Of Hunting and Hawking within the Forest.  
 2. Of the Abuses of Licenses to Hunt therein. 3. The manner of taking Free-Deer yearly within the same. 4. How Trespassers shall be punished for unlawfully Hunting in Forests.

**T**HE King, and all such Persons as have any sufficient Warrant or Authority by Charter or Grant from His Majesty, or His Ancestors, may only Hunt and Hawk within the Forest, and no other: Also all such Persons as have any lawful Claim allowed in Eyre, in respect to any Grant to Hunt, or Hawk within the Forest,



Forest, may use the same accordingly, provided they persue their Authority in the same manner it is granted unto them.

But if any Knight, Esquire, or Gentleman, doth dwell within the Regard of the Forest, and be Lord of the Mannor there, yet he may not Hunt or Hawk therein, except he hath a lawful Claim for so doing allowed him in the Eyre, as aforesaid; because, by the Laws of the Forest, no Person may Hunt or Hawk within any Part of the Forest, that is within the Regard of the Forest though it be within his own Fee, except he hath a sufficient Warrant so to do: And therefore, they must forbear to Hunt or Hawk in their own Grounds, if they be within the Regard of the Forest, because it is a Trespass of the Forest so to do, unless they have good Warrant for the same.

But by the Charter of the Forest, Anno 9 H. 2, cap. 11. Every Arch-Bishop, Bishop, Earl, or Baron, coming to the King by his Commandment, and passing through any of His Majesties Forests, it shall be lawful for any such Prelate, or Peer, to kill one or two of the Kings Deer therein, by the View of the Forester, if he be present, or otherwise to cause a Horn to be blown for him, that he seem not to steal the Kings Deer. And the same they may do in their return Home from the King. By which it appears, That those Prelates and Peers have, by the said Charter, a lawful License to Hunt in the Kings Forests, but yet with this Restriction, That such Prelate, or Nobleman must be sent for by the King. 2. He must be an Arch-Bishop, or Bishop, Earl, or Baron. 3. Such Hunting must be made by the View of the Forester. 4. If the Forester be absent, a Horn must be blown.

Then



Then as to Licenses to Hunt or Hawk in the Kings Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens, These Things ought to be considered. 1. How such Licenses ought to be used. 3. The difference between a License of Profit, and a License of Pleasure, and a License in Law, and a License in Fair.

As to the First, The King being the chief Monarch of this Realm (unto whom the Government, and Regulation of Forests, and such like Places of royal Pastime and Recreation do principally appertain) may himself grant Licenses to Hunt and Hawk in any of his Majesties Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens unto any of his Subjects, according to his Royal Will and Pleasure.

Secondly, Whosoever hath any special Authority derived from his Majesty in that behalf, under the great Seal of England, may in like Manner, grant Licenses, in some Respect, and in some Places, to Hunt, and Hawk in his Majesties Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens; as the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Kings Forest may Grant a License, or give a Warrant to any Nobleman, or Gentleman that hath a Mannor, or Freehold therein; for the first to Hunt, and Hawk in his Mannor, or Lordship, and the other in his Freehold, according to the purport, or intent of such Grant or Warrant.

In like manner, a Subject that is Lord of a Forest may Grant a License to whom he pleaseth to Hunt and Hawk in his Forest. But no Person can Grant any License, or give Warrant to any Man to Hunt and Hawk in the Kings Forests, other than the King himself, or his Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest; or such other Persons as have the like Authority from the King, by some special Grant to do the same. For if any of the Kings Foresters (or other Officers)



Officer should Attempt, or presume to do the same (ex officio) Not only such Forester (or other Officer) but all those who shall Hunt or Hawk with him there, by Colour of such License, or Warrant, would be all Trespassers, and liable to the punishments of the Forest-Laws; forasmuch as it is the Office and Duty of every Forester, or other Officer of the Forest, to preserve, and keep the Kings Deer, for his Majesties Use, and not to kill or destroy them, except he be commanded (by special Warrant) so to do: And therefore, it is not to be reasonably supposed, That they can License, or give Warrant to any Person to Hunt, or kill Deer, or any other Game within their Liberty, or Walk.

Neither can any Forester (or other such Officer) Hawk, or take any Fowls of Warren, as Pheasants and Partridges, within his Walk, in the Forest, because his Office is to preserve, and not destroy them; and therefore he cannot give, or grant any Warrant, or License to another to Hawk, or take any Fowls of Warren within his Walk, or Liberty; for if he do, although he hold his Office by Patent from the King or some other Person as hath Power to grant the same, yet is such act such a Misuse, or abuse of his Authority, that it is a cause of Forfeiture of his Office.

In Licenses to Hunt, or Hawk within a Forest, Chase, Park, or Warren, there is this difference to be considered, whether such License be of Profit, or for Pleasure only. For a License of Profit is, where a Man hath a lawful Warrant to kill and carry away with him the Game that is taken by him, either by Hunting or Hawking in any of those places abovementioned; but a License of Pleasure is only where a Man



hath a Warrant to Hunt, or Hawk in a Forest Chase, &c. but doth not thereby acquire any property in the Game he takes, and so hath not any Authority to carry away the same with him; neither can he that hath only a License of Pleasure, Hunt or Hawk with any more Persons in his Company than himself: but he that hath a License of Profit may Hunt or Hawk with his Friends and Servants in his Company, and carry away with him the Game he hath taken to his own Use.

Then as to the Manner of taking a Fee Deer yearly within the Forest, you ought to observe, That if any Person hath a right or interest to have Fee Deer within a Forest, whether it be by Prescription, as belonging to an Office, or otherwise, he ought to give Notice unto the Forester, where his Warrant is to be served, in convenient Time, and require him to execute the same according to the Tenour and Purport thereof. And if the Forester doth refuse to serve such Warrant, after Notice given unto him to execute the same, Then may the Person that is to have such Fee Deer, enter into the Walk of the Forester so refusing, with his Servants, or Attendants, and there Hunt, kill, and take such Deer, as he is of right to have, and Justifie the same, both as to himself, his Servants, and Attendants, because he hath a License of Profit, whereby he is Authorised so to do. For it is a Maxim in the Law, That where any Person hath a right, or interest to any Thing by the Gift, or Grant of another, or otherwise, but cannot come by the principal Thing, without doing some other Act, which is the necessary Means to acquire the same, in such Case he may lawfully do that other Act which is the necessary means to come by the principal Thing. As if  
one



one sells me all the Fish in his Pond, thereby the property of the Fish is in me; so that I may come upon his Ground with Servants, and Nets to take the Fish out of the Pond, and carry them away; and this I may lawfully Justifie, as well as to my Servants, or those that Assist me in performing the same, as to myself, because that forasmuch as I, having an Interest and Property by Law in the Principal, may Justifie the necessary Circumstances, and means to acquire the same.

And so it was Adjudg'd Mich. 13. H. 7. Where in an Action of Trespass brought against one for hunting in the Plaintiffs Park, The defendant did plead in Justification, That the Plaintiff, as Owner of the said Park, gave a Buck unto one B. Master of this defendant, who came with the said B. by his commandment, unto the said Park. as Servant to the said B. to help him to kill the said Buck; by Virtue of which Command of the said B. the Defendant entred into the said Park, and there killed a Buck, for his Master, as it was lawful for him to do: And this Plea was held by the whole Court to be a good Justification; by which it appears, That where a Person hath an Interest, or Right to have a Fee Deer within a Forest, Chase, or Park, there he may Justifie the Killing and Taking away the same as well as to his Servants, as himself, it being the necessary means conducing to the Acquisition thereof. For otherwise, if the Forester, or Keeper, do refuse to kill and deliver such Fee Deer to the Person who hath a right unto the same, if such Person might not justifie the killing and taking the Fee Deer himself, he would be without Remedy to come by the same, and therefore the Law hath provided, that he who hath such



an interest, or right to have a Fee Deer in a Forest, Chase, or Park, if the Forester or Keeper will not kill it for him, or deliver it unto him according to his Warrant, but refuseth so to do, then may such Person, having such Right, justify the killing and taking the same, by himself and Servants, because it is the only means he hath left him to come by his Right: And this is justifiable as well by the Laws of the Forest, as by the Common Law of the Realm; for the 10th Article of the Assize and of the Forest, saith, "That if any Person shall take a Beast of the Forest in the same without Warrant, his Body shall be Arrested, wheresoever he be found within the Bounds of the Forest. By which it appears, That he which takes a Deer in the Forest, without Warrant, is punishable for the same by the Laws of the Forest, Nevertheless, he that Hunts and kills a Deer, within the Forest, by lawful Warrant, shall not be liable to be punished by the Laws of the Forest; or any other Laws whatsoever, for the Interest or right of such Person, as hath used to have Fee Deer, is a sufficient Warrant in Law to the Forester or Keeper to kill and deliver the same unto such Person, if he will; but if either of those Officers refuseth so to do, then the party himself, with others to assist him, may lawfully do the same.

Nevertheless he that hath such License, or Warrant to Hunt within the Forest, must take heed that he do not abuse the same, for if he do, not only he, but all those that Hunt with him shall be accounted Trespassers from the Beginning in every Thing they do, as if they had no Warrant for doing the same, and shall be punished as Trespassers of the Forest.

And



And therefore every such License or Warrant ought to be strictly considered, by whom it was made, and whether he that made the same had Power to grant such License or Warrant; 2. Unto whom the same was made, and for what Thing, what Time, and what Place. 3. Whether it be only a License of Pleasure, for the Party unto whom it is granted merely to divert himself in the Forest, Chase, or Park; or a License of Profit, whereby the Party obtains a Property in the Thing granted, and hath Liberty to Hunt or Hawk with his Servants, or Attendants, and kill and carry away with him the Game he takes by Virtue of such License: All which Things must be punctually observed and pursued according to the Nature of the License or Warrant, That the Party, to whom the same is granted, may avoid the imputation of being accounted a Trespasser, instead of receiving Benefit thereby.

There is also another Division of Licenses besides those of Pleasure, and Profit, viz. Licenses of Law, and Licenses of Fact, or Deed; the first is by Word of Mouth without writing, or by Prescription, as belonging to some Office within the Forest: And the other is a License reduced into Writing under Hand and Seal, ready to be produced upon any Occasion, where the same is required.

And here it is to be observed, That a License in Law, that is by Word only without Writing, is held to be of as great Validity between Subjects, as any License in Writing whatsoever, but whether it be so between the King and the Subject hath been questioned, because the King doth neither Grant, or take any Thing but by Matter of Record. Nevertheless, by the Opinion of Shelley and Bryan in Easter Term 4. H. 7. The



King may give many Things without Writing, that should be good as to Chatels. And in Michaelmas Term 39 H. 6. The Defendant in Trespass did plead Justification by the King's Commandment by Word of Mouth only, without Writing, and held a good Justification; and therefore inasmuch as Hunting without License is but a Trespass at most, and if a Man may plead the Kings Commandment by Word only in Bar of a Trespass, by the same parity of Reason he may plead the King's License by Word only in Bar of a Trespass. But in the other Case, it is without Dispute, That if a Subject, being Owner of a Forest, Chase, or Park, do License one to Hunt in any of them by Word, without Writing, the same is good in Law.

Then as to the Punishment of Trespassers in Forests, that Hunt therein without any lawful Colour or Warrant for so doing, If any Forester or Keeper shall find or take any such Person or Persons in the Manner, he shall Arrest their Bodies, and carry them to Prison, from whence they shall not be delivered without special Warrant from the King, or his Majesties Justice in Eyre of the Forest, according to the Assize and Customs of the Forest, Anno 6. E. 1. Art. 10. And though the Words there be, If any one shall take a wild Beast of the Forest, yet if any Person be taken Hunting in the Forest, yet he is to be punished by the Law, as if he had killed and taken a wild Beast of the Forest, for in that Case the Will shall be taken for the Deed, as it was adjudged in the Assizes of the Forest of Pickering in the Time of Edw. 3. That if one enters into a Forest with a Bow and Arrows, or with Greyhounds with an intent to offend there, notwithstanding he doth commit no Act, yet he shall be punished as if he had done some Act



Act, for the Reason aforesaid; as in the same Assizes an Abbot was, that lent a Bow and Arrows to one to kill the Kings Deer; for notwithstanding there was no Act done, yet the Abbot was fined and ransomed. And therefore if a Forester or Keeper shall find any Person within the Forest either with Bow and Arrows, or with Greyhounds intending to Offend there, he shall Arrest, and Imprison him, as if he had committed the Fact he intended, but the Body of such Offender shall not be arrested, unless he shall be taken in the Manner, which must be one of these four Ways; viz. Stablestand, Dogdraw, Backbear, or Bloodyhand. The first is, when any Person is found standing in the Forest, with a Bow ready bent to shoot at any Deer, or with his Greyhound in a Lease ready to slip; This the Ancient Foresters call Stablestand. The next is when one hath hurt, or wounded a Deer, or other Beast of the Forest, by shooting at him either by Bow, or Gun, and the Forester finds such Offender drawing after the Beast with a Hound to recover it, This experienced Foresters call Dogdraw. The third is, Where one hath slain a wild Beast in the Forest, and the Foresters discover him, as he is carrying away the same; This they call Backbear. Lastly Bloodyhand is, Where one is found Coursing in the Forest with the Blood of any Deer, or other Beast of the Forest upon him, or is any Way besmeared with such Blood after Coursing, or is otherwise found in the Forest imbrowed with Blood in any suspicious Manner; albeit he be not seen to Hunt or Course there. All these are said to be taken with, or in the Manner; and such Offenders, as are found or taken by the Foresters in any of these Cases shall be arrested by their Bodies, if they can, and be imprison-



ed until they be delivered by the King's special Command, or his Justice in Eyre of the Forest: But they shall be punished at the Court of Justice Seat by Fine, at the Discretion of the Justice in Eyre there, and imprisoned until they have paid the same, and then be bound there to their good Behaviour towards the Forest for ever afterwards: But this punishment cannot be executed in every Point, but only by a judicial Sentence pronounced by the Justice in Eyre of the Forest at his Justice Seat there, in which Case the Party is always first convicted of the Offence, by a Lawful Tryal, according to the Laws of the Forest.

If any take Hawks, or destroy Eyres of Hawks in the King's Woods, it is a Trespass against the Assizes of the Forest, and the Offenders shall make Fine for the same, Itin. Lane. fo. 7.

If any Person shall receive Venison of one that hath unlawfully come by the same, as a Trespasser in the Forest, the Party that so received the same shall be punished, as well as he from whom he had it. And by the Assizes of the Forest, he that stealeth Venison therein, and carries away the same upon his Horse, the Horse shall be forfeited; but if such Malefactor takes the Horse of a Stranger, and carries his stolen Venison away upon the same, if such Stranger be ignorant of the Fact, his Horse shall not be forfeited, Itin. Pick. fo. 3.

And it appears by Hill. 13. H. 7. That if one command another, or divers to commit a Trespass in the King's Forest, Chase, Park, or Warren as to Hunting, or Chasing of Deer, or other Beast, or Fowls, in this Case, he that Commands the other to do such unlawful Act, is as much a Principal in such Trespass as they that do the Fact; for in Trespasses of the



the Forest all are Principals, and there are no Accessaries in such Trespasses, as at Common Law.

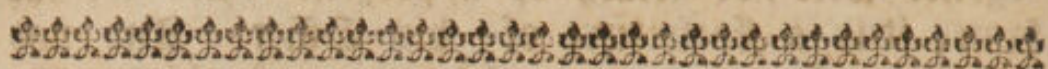
And farther it is to be observed, That if a Forester, Keeper, or other Minister of the Kings Forest, Chase, Park, or Warren, that hath the care and charge of the King's Game, and by his negligence will not attach or apprehend them for the same, it is a Forfeiture of his Office. And not only the Foresters, and Ministers of the Forest, but every other Person, dwelling within the Forest, shall likewise do his uttermost Endeavour to attach, and apprehend such Offenders, and Trespassers in Forests, and if he cannot take them himself, he shall cause Hue and Cry to be made after them, to the end they may be taken thereby, as if they were Felons.

And if upon such Hue and Cry made, the Offenders do still continue in their Offences, or do flee, or defend themselves with Force, and will not keep the Peace, nor yield themselves when required so to do; in such Cases, whoever coming to the Assistance of the Foresters shall chance to kill any such Offender, within the Bounds of the Forest, shall not be Arraigned for the same before the King's Justices, or any other His Ministers of Justice, but shall be acquitted of the same, as if no such act had been done.

And if the Foresters, and those with them, cannot apprehend such Offenders in the Forest, by Reason of their flying out of the same, Then may they follow such Offenders with fresh Pursuit (being still within View, but not otherwise,) out of the Forest, and there Apprehend them; but then they cannot use such Extremity and Force with such Offenders, as they might do, if they were within the Limits of the Forest,



50 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
Forest; and therefore the usual Way is (in Case  
such Offenders cannot be taken without dan-  
ger) for the Foresters to inquire and find out  
their Names, with the Places of their Abode, and  
Present them to the next Swainmote, or Court of  
Attachments, That they may be proceeded against  
according to the Laws of the Forest.



Of the Purlieu, or Pourallee of the Forest, and  
who may Hunt therein, when, how often, how  
far, and in what cases.

**A** Purlieu, or Pourallee, is a Circuit of Ground  
adjoyning unto the Forest, circumscrib'd  
with immoveable Boundaries, known only by  
matter of Record; This Compass of Ground  
was once Forest, and afterwards Disafforested  
by the Perambulations made for the seve-  
ring the New Forests from the Old. This  
Pourallee began at the first after this Manner,  
viz. When King Henry the II. came first to  
be King of England, which was Anno Domini  
1154. He took such great delight in the Forests  
of this Kingdom, That (being not contented  
with those he found here, though many and large)  
he began, within a few Years after his coming to  
the Crown, to enlarge divers Great Forests,  
and to Afforest the Lands of his Subjects,  
that any Way were near adjoyning unto  
those Forests, and so they continued during his  
Reign.

After whose Death, King Rich. 1. Succeed-  
ing him to the Throne, within some short  
Time after his coming to the Crown, began  
to follow the Example of Hen. 2. His Father,  
not only in the Delight and Pleasure he took  
in



in Forests, but also in daily Afforesting the Lands of his Subjects that any Way lay near to his Forests; by means whereof, the Inlarging of Forests did daily increase during his Reign.

After whose Disease, King John his Brother, coming to the Crown, did, in like manner, soon afterwards begin by little and little to follow the Examples of his Father and Brother, in Afforesting the Lands of his Subjects, that lay any way near unto his Forests, so that the greatest Part of the Lands of the Kingdom was become Forest. And thus they continued until the 17th Year of his Reign, at which Time, in regard this Grievance was not particularly injurious unto a small Number, or the meanest Persons, but generally to all Degrees of People, divers Noblemen and Gentlemen, finding a convenient Opportunity, repaired to the King, and besought him to Grant unto them, That they might have all those New Afforestations that were made by King Hen. 2. Rich. 1. and himself disafforested again: All which King John seemed not willing to do, but promised to grant accordingly, and at last consented to subscribe, and Seal to such Articles concerning the Liberties of the Forest, which they then demanded, being for the most Part, in such Sort, as are now contained in the Charter of the Forest of the said King John, dated at Kuningfeme, or Ryme-mead, between Stanes and Windsor, the 15th of June, in the 18th Year of his Reign.

At which Time the said King John gave them Liberty to choose certain Honourable Persons, who should have Authority to see those Things performed which he had then granted. Whereupon they made Choice of divers Noblemen and gentlemen, to the Number of 25, who



were sworn (with others their Assistants) to see the aforesaid Liberties, so granted and confirmed by the King, to be in every point observed. And farther, the King sent his Mandamus to the Sheriffs of every County, to see these Ordinances of his to be diligently observed and kept, and moreover procured the Pope to confirm the same. Notwithstanding all which, before any Disafforestation was made upon this Grant, King John dyed at Newark Castle in Nottinghamshire.

After whose Death, Henry the third, his eldest Son, at the age of 9 Years, succeeded in his Throne, so that by Reason of his Minority nothing was done until the 9th Year of his Reign, at which Time the two Charters were made; and confirmed by the said King Henry the third, called Magna Charta, and Charta de Foresta, and caused to be sent into every County throughout the Kingdom to be published, and proclaimed.

And for the better accomplishing and performing of those Articles of Charta de Foresta, as concerned the Disafforestation of such Woods and Lands as were Afforested by H. 2. R. 1. and King John, The said Henry the Third ordered Inquisitions to be taken by substantial Juries for severing the New Forests from the Old; and thereupon two Commissioners were sent to take those Inquisitions, by Virtue whereof, many great Woods and Lands were not only disafforested, but improved to Arable Land by the Owners thereof. So that now after this Charter thus made and confirmed; some of these New Afforestations were Perambulated, and after such Inquisitions taken, and the certainty known by Matter of Record, which were the Old, and which were the New Forests.

Never-



Nevertheless the greatest Part of the new Afforestations were still remaining to be disafforested during the Life of King Henry the third.

After whose decease, Edward the first, his eldest Son, succeeded him unto the Crown, who being often besought, and petitioned as well by the Nobility, as Commonalty of this Kingdom, to Confirm the aforesaid Liberties, which his Father had granted, was graciously pleased to Confirm the same according to their Request. And now all Things having been granted, performed, and confirmed concerning the two Charters, viz. Magna Charta, and Charta de Foresta, the same were deliberated, signed, sealed, and confirmed, to the Sheriff of London, to be proclaimed, which was accordingly done in St. Paul's Church-yard, in the Presence of a numerous Concourse of People there met together. Whereupon the Lords and Commons soon after began to put the King in Mind of granting Commissions to Persons fitly qualified for the same, that Perambulations might forthwith be made of all new Afforestations, that they might be Disafforested, according to the first and third Articles of Charta de Foresta.

Whereupon three Bishops, three Earls, and three Barons were appointed by the King to take care of, and see those Perambulations performed, who caused them to be made accordingly, and Inquisitions to be taken thereupon, and returned into the Court of Chancery; whereby the King was ascertained, what Woods and Lands were Ancient Forests, and what were newly afforested, and caused all those, that were Ancient Forests, to be Meered, and bounded with irremovable Boundaries,  
to



to be known by Matter of Record for ever. And likewise those Woods and Lands that had been Newly afforested, the King caused to be separated from the Old, and to be returned into Chancery by Marks, Peres, and Bounds to be known, in like Manner, by matter of Record for ever.

By which it appears, how the Purlieus, or Pourallees had their first beginning; for, all such Woods and Lands as were afforested by H. 2. R. 1. or King John, and by Perambulations severed from the Ancient Forests, were, and yet are, called Pourallees, viz. Woods and Lands severed from the Old Forests, and disafforested by Perambulation; Pourallee in French being the same as Perambulatio in Latin.

But, notwithstanding such New Afforestations were disafforested by Perambulation, whereby the same became Pourallee, or Purlieu, yet they were not thereby so disafforested as to every Man, but that they do, in some Sense, continue Forest still, as to some Persons, though disafforested, in some Sort, as to others. For by the Words of Charta de Foresta, if the King had afforested any Woods or Lands of his Subjects, to the Damage of them whose they were, they should be forthwith disafforested again, that is, only as to those Persons whose Woods and Lands they were, who as the proper Owners thereof, might Fell and Cut down their Woods at their own pleasure, without any License from the King, as also convert their Meadows and Pastures into Tillage, or otherwise improve their Grounds to the best advantage. In like Manner, they might Hunt and Chase the wild Beasts of the Forest towards the same, so that they do not Forestal them in their return thither; but yet no other Person



Person could claim such Benefit in the Pourallee but only the proper Owner of the Soil thereof; so that the same remains Forest still, as to all those that have no property in the Lands therein: For the Owners of the Woods and Lands therein may suffer the Pourallee to remain Forest still, if they be so minded, notwithstanding such Disafforestation (as appears by the Statute of 33 Edw. 1. cap. 5.) as some have thought it most expedient for them, because thereby they had the benefit of Common within the Forest, which otherwise, by having their Lands severed from the Forest, by Way of Pourallee, they were excluded from: Which doth prove, That the Woods and the Lands in the Pourallee are disafforested only for the Owners thereof, and not for every one to Hunt and spoil the wild Beasts there at his Pleasure; for if they chance to wander out of the Forest into the Pourallee, yet the King hath a Property in them still against every Man, but the proper Owner of the Ground wherein they are; for such Person hath a special property in them *ratione soli*, but yet so as he may only take them by Hunting, or Chasing with his Greyhounds, or Dogs, without any Forestalling, or Foresetting them in their Course back again towards the Forest; for the King hath always Rangers in the Pourallee to attend such Wild Beasts of the Forest, as come there, to recchase them back into the Forest; which proves, that though the wild Beasts of the Forest do by chance stray into the Pourallee, yet the King hath a Property still in them, or otherwise the Ranger could have no lawful Authority to Recchase them into the Forest.

So it appears by Hill. 13. Hen. 7. fo. 16. pl. 14. That though a Man may prescribe to Chase



56 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
Chase the wild Beasts in my Ground, which are  
my wild Beasts, yet he may not prescribe to  
Chase the King's wild Beasts which are in my  
Grounds, such as are the wild Beasts which  
stray out of the Forest of the King into the  
Pourallee.

In like manner, it is the Opinion of Mr.  
Justice Cocke in Pasch. 7. Hen. 6. fol. 36. pl.  
41. That if a Hart go out of the Kings Fo-  
rest, the Foresters may follow him, and make Pro-  
clamation in the adjacent Towns, that no Man  
presume to Hunt, or slay him, after which it is  
not lawful for any one to molest such Hart;  
whereby it appears, That though such wild Beasts  
be out of the Forest, and in the Pourallee, yet  
nevertheless the King hath still a Property in them,  
which proves, that the Pourallee is in some Sence  
a Forest still, for the King's wild Beasts to have  
their free concourse in, and safe return to the  
Forest, without molestation of any Person, ex-  
cept the Owner of the Grounds in the Pourallee,  
who, when he finds them there, may Rechase  
them towards the Forest, provided he do neither  
Forestal or Forelet them in their return thi-  
ther.

Yet notwithstanding what hath been hitherto  
said of a Forest, and a Purlieu, or Pourallee, there  
is still this farther difference to be observed  
between them, which is, That all the Woods  
and Lands within the Regard of the Forest, are  
absolutely within the Bondage and Charge of  
the Forest, as well in Respect of the Owners  
thereof, as of any other Person; for no Per-  
son may cut down his own Woods, or Im-  
prove his own Lands within the Regard of the  
Forest, without License from the King, or his  
Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest: Neither shall  
any



any Person in any wise Hunt, Chase, or molest the wild Beasts of the Forest in his own Grounds within the Regard of the Forest, without License, or Warrant from the King, or his Chief Justice of the Forest, so to do.

But those, whose Grounds are within the Pourallees, are not Subject to the Bondage of the Forest, in as much as their Lands are without the Regard of the Forest, and therefore may cut down their own Woods, Convert their Meadows and Pastures into Tillage, and otherwise Improve their Estates there to the best Advantage, at their Pleasure, without License or Warrant for so doing; but yet the Woods and Lands in the Pourallees, are not absolutely freed from the Bondage of the Forest, in respect of the wild Beasts having their Haunts therein, when they happen to stray out of the Forest; and therefore as they were once absolutely Forest, so they are still in some Sense, that is to say, conditionally Forest, and not absolutely free.

For, as to such Lands, which neither are, nor ever were either Forest or Pourallee, but always absolutely free, if they adjoyn not too near unto the Limits of the Forest, It is lawful for any Person that is Owner of such Lands, (provided he be qualified by Law to keep Grey-hounds) to Hunt and Chase with his Dogs such wild Beasts as he shall find therein; but he must take heed, that he do not forestal, or forestet them in their return to the Forest.

But who shall be said properly to be a Parlieu-Man, and that may lawfully Hunt in the Pourallee doth next fall in Course under consideration. And therefore you are to know, That, notwithstanding the Pourallee be Forest still, to such Persons, as have not any Lands of Inheritance



heritance therein, yet such as have, according to the Value required by Law, may keep Greyhounds, and when they find the wild Beasts of the Forest within their Grounds in the Pourallee they may chase them towards the Forest; for as Owners of those Grounds they have property in such wild Beast *ratione Soli*, so long as they are in the same; and if they do first make their Course in their own Grounds, within the Pourallee, they may pursue their Chase through every Man's Grounds; but if the wild Beasts do make towards the Forest, they must not Forestal or Foreset them, either with Dogs, Guns, Cross-bows Long-bows, Hays, or other Engine whatsoever, but suffer them to have their free Passage thither: For all such forestalling or foresetting is absolutely forbidden by the Assizes of Woodstock, made in the 30 Year of Henry the second, on pain of the Offenders suffering a Years Imprisonment, and making Fine at the King's Discretion; so that the Pourallee is free (in some respect) for some Sort of Persons to Hunt therein, and who they ought to be shall be next declared.

First, Then you must understand, That he who may lawfully hunt in any Pourallee ought to have Woods or Lands of freehold within the Pourallee, to the yearly Value of 40 s. according to the Statute of 13 Rich. 2. cap. 13. and according to the Statute of 1 Jac. cap. 7. he ought to have Lands of Inheritance of the yearly Value of 10l. or Lands of Freehold of the yearly Value of 30l. or have Goods worth 200l. or be the Son of a Knight, or Baron, or Person of a higher Degree, or Son and Heir apparent of an Esquire. But by a late Act made in the 22 and 23 Year of the Reign



Reign of King Charles the second, cap. 15. No Man may keep Greyhounds within the Pourallee, or elsewhere within England or Wales, other than he that hath Free Warren, or is Lord of a Manor, or is such a Freeholder as is seized in his own Right, or the Right of his Wife, of Lands, Tenements, or Hereditaments of the clear yearly Value of 40l. (over and above all Charges, and Reprises) of some Estate of Inheritance; or of Lands Tenements, or Hereditaments in his own right, or in the Right of his Wife, (for Term of Life, or Lives) of the yearly Value of 80l. (over and above all Charges, and Reprises.) Or that is worth in Goods, or Chattles 400l. For no Person, as the Law is now at this Day, may hunt in his own Pourallee, with Greyhound, or other Dog, that is likely to kill any Beast of Venary or Chase, except he may dispend after the rate last abovementioned, by the Year, of Free Lands within the Pourallee, or otherwise, as is last before declared; and for that Reason the Pourallee is called Purlicieu, or said to be for him that is so qualified, but so that he always first begin his Course in his own Grounds within the Pourallee, from whence it hath the Name of Purlicieu (for the place) by which is meant his own Grounds in particular, but not generally every Place, or every Mans Grounds within the Pourallee, and that by Reason of the Difference (which hath been before observed) between a Pourallee-Man, and one that hath Grounds within the Pourallee: For notwithstanding a Man hath Grounds within the Pourallee, yet if he be not qualified by Law according to the Statutes before-cited, he is no Pourallee-Man; nevertheless if he finds any wild Beasts of the Forest in his own Grounds within the Pourallee, he may chase them there-



out with little Dogs, but not with Greyhounds, or other great Dogs, as appears by the Earl of Arundels Case, in Hill. 43 Edw. 3. fo. 8. pl. 23. But if a Man have no Estate of Inheritance within the Pourallee either in Lands or Woods there, he cannot pretend to any Privilege therein, but is utterly excluded from Hunting or Chasing therein, for to such the Pourallee is absolutely Forest still; It being a privilege only intended for a Pourallee-Man to Hunt and Chase there, in his own Grounds, and not otherwise.

But then, in the next Place ought to be considered, in what Manner a Pourallee-Man may Hunt, and chase the wild Beasts of the Forest, within his own Pourallee, for the understanding of which he ought to know, That when he finds any wild Beasts of the Forests, within his own Grounds, in the Pourallee, he may let slip his Dogs at them, and hunt and chase them towards the Forest, but he must take heed he do not hinder their return to the Forest, lest he incur the penalty of the Statute of Hen. 2. made at Woodstock, as hath been before mentioned. For though he finds such wild Beasts in his own Pourallee, and in Respect thereof hath a Property in them, *ratione soli*, against all Persons but the King; nevertheless such his property is only upon this Condition, That if he can slay them with his Dogs in chase, without forestalling, before they can recover the Forest, then they are absolutely his, but if they once recover the Forest, though they be but within the List of the Forest, before the Dogs fasten upon them, then they are the Kings, or other Owner of the Forest.

But if such Pourallee-Man do first make his Chase in his own Freehold, he may pursue the  
same



same through every Mans Grounds within the Pourallee, provided he enter not into the Forest, which he may not do, unless where he finds the wild Beasts of the Forest in his Pourallee Grounds and lets slip his Dogs at them, and in chasing them towards the Forest, the Dogs fasten upon one of them, before it can get into the Forest, or the Limits thereof, and the wild Beast by force draws the Dogs, as they hang upon him, into the Forest, and being a considerable Space within the same, the Dogs slay the wild Beast; in this Case, by Reason of the first property the Pourallee-Man had in them *ratione Soli*, and likewise by the pursuit, and Possession thereof by his Dogs, before it got into the Forest, he may follow his Chase into the same, and there take, and carry away the Beast, because he was actually possessed thereof by his Dogs (being in the nature of Servants) as of his own proper Goods, before the Beast could recover the Forest.

But it appears by Mich. 12. H. 8. fo. 10. That if a Pourallee-Man begins his Course in another Mans Ground, where the wild Beasts of the Forest are, within the Pourallee, if his Dogs fasten upon a wild Beast, before it can get within the Bounds of the Forest, and the Beast draws the Dogs into the Forest, and is there slain by them, here the Pourallee-Man shall not enter into the Forest, nor take the Beast so killed, because his Course was wrongful from the Beginning, for he could claim no property in the Beast *ratione Soli*, because he began his Chase in another Mans Ground; and therefore though he come not within the Limits of the Forest, yet he shall be deemed a Trespasser there, upon Account of his Dogs entering therein, and killing a wild Beast there, and he having no right or interest



to Chase in the other Mans Grounds where he began his first Course, cannot justifie such Act, as done by a lawful Pourallee-Man, that found the wild Beasts in his own Grounds within the Pourallee; but the Owner of the Grounds where the Chase was first begun, might well have made such Justification.

So, if a Man lets fly his Faulcon at a Pheasant, in his own Wood, he may persue his Flight after the Pheasant, into any other Persons Ground. And notwithstanding his Faulcon kills the Pheasant in the other Persons Ground, yet the Master of the Faulcon shall have the same, and not the Owner of the Ground, where it was killed, for the Reason above given.

In the next Place it is to be understood, That a Pourallee Man must Hunt in his own Pourallee himself, with no more Company than his own Servants, neither may he Appoint, License, or Warrant any other Person, except his Servants in his Presence, to Hunt by his Commandment in his Pourallee; for the Authority that he hath is but a conditional License of Profit, which is strictly annexed to his Person, and cannot be transferred to another: As Mich. 18. Edw. 4. fo. 14. pl. 12. in Ashtons Case, If one grant me License to hunt, and kill a Buck in his Park, and afterwards to dispose of the same, my Servants cannot justifie killing the Buck by my Commandment, because the License goes strictly to me, unto whom it was granted, and to no other Person whatsoever.

Moreover no Pourallee Man may hunt, or slay any rascally Deer, viz. such as are out of Season, which he shall find at any Time in his Pourallee, for such are good for nothing when Dead, and commonly not able to stand Course, or Shift for themselves.

Also,



Also, when a Pourallee Man lets slip his Dogs at the wild Beasts of the Forest in his own Grounds, and his Dogs do still pursue their Course towards the Forest, he must take care, before they enter the same, to recal them back, for otherwise, if they happen to kill that Beast, or any other, in the Forest, he shall be deemed a Trespasser that kills Deer within the Forest; but if he calls back his Dogs before they enter the Forest, he would be excused, though they should happen to kill a Deer therein, provided he enter not into the Forest, nor meddle with the Deer so killed.

Then, as to the Time when, and how often a Pourallee Man may Hunt in his own Pourallee, you are to observe these Rules following.

1. No Man ought to Hunt in the Night, viz. after Sun-setting, and before Sun-rising; for, by the Law, in some Cases, from Sun-rising to Sun-setting is accounted a Day, called dies Solaris; And the Reason why no Man is permitted to Hunt in the Pourallees in the Night-time, is, That the wild Beasts may not be disturbed of the peaceable Feeding and rest they enjoy in the Night-time in the Forest; for 'tis utterly impossible to Hunt in the Pourallees in the Night, without disturbing the wild Beasts that are within the Forest: For though peradventure the Dogs in their Course do not pursue the Deer out of the Pourallees into the Forest, nevertheless the Noise that is commonly made at such Times by the Dogs running at the Deer, and the Terrour of those Deer that are then affrighted out of the Pourallees into the Forest, will in a great measure disquiet, and abundantly terrifie those wild Beasts that are within the Forest. Besides, it is the Nature of those wild Beasts to seek their Food in the Night



Time being a Time of Rest, when no Body is stirring to molest, or disturb them; for all the Day they confine themselves to their Coverts, being afraid of the Poise, which is made by all Sorts of People, that are then abroad about their Business, and occasions, so that then they cannot feed quietly, nor with that liberty and freedom they delight in. And therefore hunting in the Pourallees, or other Places, in the Night-time is expressly forbidden by the 13. Article of the Assizes of Woodstock.

2. No Pourallee-Man may Hunt on the Lords Day, (commonly called Sunday) for that is wholly appropriated to the Service of Almighty God, and by his Laws appointed to be kept holy, and not be prophaned by using or doing any Worldly Business therein. Besides by the Statutes of 1 Car. 1. cap. 1. and 3. Car. 1. cap. 4 Penalties are provided against such Persons as shall use any unlawful Exercise, or Recreation, Sports or Pastimes whatsoever upon the Lords Days; Whereby Hunting, and such like Sports, and Recreations are also forbidden to be used on that Day by the Laws of the Realm.

3. Pourallee-Men are Forbidden by the Laws of the Forest to Hunt in their Pourallee, during all the Time of continuance of the Fawning or Fence Month, which begins fifteen Days before Midsummer, and ends fifteen Days after; for then either the Fawns being very young, or the Does big-bellied are neither able to run, nor stand a Course: And therefore Hunting at that Time, their Dogs peradventure, pursuing their Chase into the Forest, may make great Destruction of the Kings Game therein, and for that Reason this space of Time is called the Forbidden Month, wherein no Man may either hunt in the Forest, or Pourallee.

4. Every



4. Every Pourallee-Man is forbidden, by the Laws of the Forest, to Hunt in his own Grounds within the Pourallee; every Day, or oftner than three Days in any one Week; (Sunday excepted) lest with the Poise, and Terror of their often Hunting in the Pourallees, the wild Beasts of the Forest be disquieted, and put from their Food, and wonted Layer.

5. No Pourallee-Man may hunt in his own Grounds, within the Pourallee, with more Company than his own Servants; for the Laws of the Forest do prohibit Multitudes of People to meet together, only to Hunt, lest they should terrifie and disturb the Kings wild Beasts, that are within the Limits of the Forest. Nevertheless the Privilege every Pourallee-Man hath of hunting in his own Pourallee, being an Interest both of Profit and Pleasure, he may therefore in that respect, lawfully Justifie the Hunting therein both for himself, and for his Servants: For, as hath been said before, He that hath only an Interest, or License of Pleasure, may Justifie for himself, but not for his Servants: But notwithstanding a Pourallee-Man may Justifie to Hunt with his Servants, yet he cannot Justifie to Hunt with every other Person.

6. All the Laws of the Forest, and Charters made concerning the Pourallees do forbid every Man to disturb, or make Course after any Deer, found in his Pourallee, within forty Days, next after the King hath made a General Hunting in the Forest, adjoining thereunto; because then the wild Beasts of the Forest come not into the Pourallees of their own Accord, but as they are forced into the same by the Hunters, with clamours and blowing of Horns, so that they fly thither for refuge, where they are privileged



66 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
biledged to rest in Peace for forty Days, without  
being hunted, chased, or otherwise molested ;  
in which Time it is presumed they will either  
return of themselves unto the Forest, or be rechased  
thither by the Rangers, with their Dogs: And there-  
fore the wild Beasts have that Time of Liberty al-  
lowed them to remain there undisturbed, as ap-  
pears by the Charter granted for the Pourallees of  
the Forest of Windsor in the County of Surrey.

7. No Man shall presume to Hunt within seven  
Miles of the Borders of the Forest, or in his own  
Pourallee, within forty Days next before the King  
hath issued out his Proclamation, declaring his  
Royal Will and Pleasure to make a General Hunt-  
ing in that Forest: because that during all that  
Time, the wild Beasts of the Forest ought to have  
the Liberty and freedom of their Coverts and Thicke-  
rs to enjoy their full repose and quiet therein, un-  
til the King comes to view them, and make choice  
of such, as he shall think fit to Hunt and Chase,  
for his Game.

8. It is not lawful for any Man to Hunt in  
the Pourallee, at such Time as a Forester is serv-  
ing a Warrant within that Part of the Forest,  
that Borders upon such Pourallee ; nor at such  
Time as any Nobleman is Hunting in such Part  
of the Forest ; (if such Pourallee - Man have Notice  
giben him thereof) That the Game in the Forest  
may not be disturbed at such Times.

9. And lastly, no Pourallee - Man, or other  
Person may Hunt or Chase any unseasonable Deer,  
viz. Deer of Antler, in the Winter, or Does,  
and other Winter Deer, in the Summer ; for  
when they are out of Season they are unwhol-  
some, and not fit for the Use of Man. Besides  
(as hath been said before) they are commonly not  
able to stand Course, or shift for themselves, by  
making their Escape into the Forest again: And  
there-



therefore the Laws of the Forest do utterly forbid the Coursing, Hunting, or killing them in the Pourallees, or elsewhere, while they are out of Season.

And these are the Laws and Ordinances of the Pourallees made in the Time of Henry the Second, at Woodstock, which though they seem chiefly to respect disorderly Hunting in the Pourallees, yet they might be more properly called the Laws of the Forest (in as much as they tend chiefly to the Preservation of the wild Beasts of the Forest) if it were not for their coherence and dependance upon the common, and Statute Laws of this Realm, being indeed grounded upon the Reason of the Common-Law.



Of the Officers belonging to the Pourallees, called Rangers.

**F**ORASMUCH as the Pourallees were once, and in some Sense still are, Forest, therefore it was necessary to have Officers there to attend, and take upon them the Charge of the Preservation of the wild Beasts of the Forest, that should happen to make their Escape out of the Forest, and come therein; for otherwise the Laws of the Pourallees could not be executed, and so the Forest would be destroyed by the Pourallee Men in a short Time. For which Reason Rangers were first appointed; who, notwithstanding they are not Officers in the Forest, yet are Officers considerable of, and to the Forest; for all Officers in the Forest have charge of the Vert, and Venison of the Forest, but a Ranger hath (no charge of Vert, but) only charge of Venison.



68 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest  
Venison coming out of the Forest into the Pour-  
allees, his Place of Charge, from whence his Office  
is to Conduct the same back again into the Fo-  
rest.

This Officer is appointed by the King, or  
his Chief Justice in Eyre, and made by Letters  
Patents under the Great Seal, with a Fee com-  
monly of 20, 30, or 40l. or more by the Year,  
payable out of the Exchequer, as also certain Fee  
Deer both red and fallow to be taken annually at  
proper Seasons, out of the Forest.

The Substance of his Oath is this.

To Rechase, and with his Hounds drive back  
the wild Beasts of the Forest, as often as they  
range out of the same into his Pourallee.

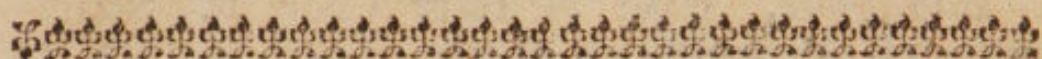
To present all unlawful Hunting, and Hunters,  
of wild Beasts of Venary and Chase, as well  
within the Pourallees as within the Forest.

To present those, and other Offences at the  
next Court of Attachments, or Swainmore, which  
shall first happen.

These Officers, called Rangers, belong only  
unto such Pourallees, as were once the Woods  
and Lands of the Subject, and were afterwards  
disafforested again, and so became Pourallees;  
but there be some Forests in England, that never  
had any enlargement by new Afforestations,  
and therefore have no Pourallees at this Day;  
So that there can be no Rangers belonging  
unto them, because they have no Pourallees.  
For which Reason, it appears by a chase in Pasch.  
Anno 7 H. 6. fo. 36. pl. 14. That in such Forests,  
where there be no Pourallees for the wild Beasts  
to Escape into out of the Forest, nor Rangers  
to rechase them back again into the Forest,  
there



there the Foresters may follow the wild Beasts out of the Forest, and rechase them into the Forest. But where there be Pourallees, and Rangers, there the Foresters cannot do so, unless that such Foresters do follow them with fresh pursuit within their View.



How, and where, Offences in the Pourallees shall be tried, and punished.

**I**n regard all Offences committed within the Pourallees, contrary to the Laws aforesaid, are accounted Trespasses of the Forest, as being injuries done to the wild Beasts of the Forest, therefore the Rangers are bound both by their Oath and Office to look after the same; and to present as well such Offenders, as Offences, at the next Court of Attachments, holden for the Forest, next adjoyning unto the Pourallee wherein the Offence was committed, or else at the next Court of Swainmote, or Justice Seat; which shall first happen to be kept for that Forest. To the intent that such Offenders may be tryed for such their Offences at the Court of Swainmote, before the Verderors, Foresters, Regardors, Agitors, and other Ministers of the Forest, according to the Laws and Ordinances of the Forest.

After which Tryal, and Conviction thereupon, for any the Offences aforesaid, The Offenders so convicted, are to be bound over, with sufficient Sureties, to be of Good Behaviour towards the Forest, till the next Court of Justice Seat to be holden for that Forest, upon which the Pourallee borders, wherein the offence was committed; where they are to be punished at the Discretion of the Lord Chief



Chief Justice, or other Justice in Eyre of the Forest, by Fine or Imprisonment, or both: For no Judgment can be given, or judicial Process awarded in the Court of Swainmote; for that is particularly reserved unto the Lord Chief Justice, or other Justices in Eyre of the Forest.

And Note, That at every Court of Swainmote, all Presentments of the Foresters, for any Offence committed within the Forest, or the Pourallees thereof, are there to be delivered to the Jury, who are Sworn to enquire of the Truth of those Matters; and if they find such Presentments to be true, then the Offenders shall stand convicted thereof in Law, but shall not be admitted to Traverse any such Presentment, because it is contrary to the Assizes of the Forest.

Nevertheless, all Presentments made by the Foresters and Jury, against any Person for an Offence committed in the Forest, or any Pourallee belonging thereunto, before the Lord Chief Justice, or other Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at the Justice Seat or Court of Grand Sessions of the Forest, are traversable by the Assizes of the Forest; as was adjudged by the whole Court, at the Justice-Seat holden at Waltham-Cross in Essex, before the Earl of Bedford, then Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of all the Forests on this side Trent, in July in the 24th Year of the Reign of Queen Elizabeth; Where certain Offences were presented at the said Court of Justice Seat by the Foresters and Jury against divers Offenders, which were all traversed, because they were not first presented at the Court of Swainmote, and found by the Jury there, and convicted, by which means they become Matter of Record, and therefore not Traversable.



Moreover, there is also a Method of Proceeding against Offenders in Forests, and Pourallees by Way of Outlawry, which is after this Manner: If any Person be presented, for any Offence committed within the Forest, or the Pourallees thereof, at either of the Courts of Attachments, or Swainmote, and such Offender do dwell in a Foreign County, out of the Forest, so that he cannot be attached by the Foresters to answer the same, then he shall be outlawed for such his Offence, according to the Proceedings of Outlawries at Common-Law; That is to say, he must be exacted, or called to appear and tender his Body, at five several County Courts, and then when he is quinto exactus, or the fifth Time called to appear, the Coroner of the County where such Proceedings are made, will, for such his Contempt in not appearing, Pronounce him outlaw'd; that is, out of the Protection of the Law, and so such an Offender shall be taken as an outlaw, wheresoever he can be found, and shall forfeit all his Goods and Chattels to the King, and the Profits of his Lands, by Inquisition of the Sheriff, and the Coroners.

Lastly, We shall set down such of the Articles of the Charge given to the Jury, at the Court of Swainmote, as relate to the Offences committed in the Pourallees.

1. You shall Inquire, if all those that owe suit to this Court, be here, and those that be not, you shall present their Names.

2. If there be any, that maketh any great, or small Closes next to the Borders of the Forest, and enlargeth his own Ground, by setting out his Hedges and Ditches, whereby the Forest is streightned.

3. If



3. If any Person hath lately burnt any Heath, Fern, or Ling, within any Place adjoining to the Forest, you shall Present the same.

4. If there be any Person, that hath hunted the King's Deer within seven Miles about the Forest, at any Time within forty Days next after the King's Hunting therein, or forty Days before it was so Hunted, for these Reasons; First, Because the King before his Hunting, or his Commission granted to kill the Deer, might have a sight of them, where they lie at rest in their Haunts; And Secondly, because the Deer, after the King's Hunting, being driven out of the Forest, by the force of the Hounds, and the Poise of Men, and Horns, may afterwards resort to their Haunts in the Forest: If there be any such, you shall let us know, who they are.

5. If any Person hath any great Park, or great Close within three Miles of the Forest, that have Saltaries, or great Gaps, called Deer-Leaps, to receive Deer into them, when they be in Chasing, and when they are in them cannot get out again.

6. If any Person hath slain any of the King's Deer within the Forest, without Warrant, you shall present his Name, and what Deer was so slain, and within whose Walk the same was done.

7. If any Person that had a Warrant for Deer, hath taken more than his Warrant did Mention, how many, what Deer, and of what Season (for a Buck is out of Season in Winter, and a Doe in Summer) and whether he took the Deer comprised in his Warrant, without sight of the Verderors or Foresters, or not.



8. If any Person keeps any Hounds, or Dogs, and Riding, or Going through the Forest, as the High-ways do lie, taketh not up his Dogs, but suffereth them to Chase, and kill the King's Deer, whether the Death of such Deer be within the Forest, or without, you shall present the Name of the Person, and the Deer so killed.

9. If any Person hath taken any Deer with Nets, Cords, Ropes, Double-Pater-Nofters, Buck-falls, or other Engin; and who keeps any fuch Engines within the Forest, or near it, you fhall prefent their Names.

10. If any Person Chase, Course, or set any Net, or Engin, though he kill not, you shall present his Name, and Fact, and where and when the same was done.

II. If any Person come into the Forest, and there kill any Fox, Hare, Cony, or any other Beast, or Fowl of Warren, without Authority, the same is Punishable as a Breach of the King's Free Chale, and therefore you shall let us know the same.

12. If there be any Person that dwelleth about the Borders of the Forest, which keeps any strange Greyhound, and waiteth when the King's Deer are out of the Forest, and Forsetteth such Deer, so that they return home, and by that means are hurt, or slain, you shall Present who he is, and who owns the Greyhound, that they may be punished for the same accordingly.

13. If there be any Person within the Jurisdiction of this Court, that keeps any Hounds, or Greyhounds, and is not qualified so to do by the Laws and Statutes of this Kingdom, who hunteth in the Pourallee of his own authority, you shall Present his Name, the Time



when he so hunted, and what Damage he did to the King in diminishing the Game at such Hunting.

14. If any Pourallee Hunter hunts oftner than thrice in a Week, or before Sun-rising, or after Sun-setting, or with other Company than his own Menial Servants, or on Sundays, or in the Fawning, or Fence-Month, which is fifteen Days before, and fifteen Days after Midsummer.

15. If any Pourallee-Hunter at any Time fore-stall the King's Deer, whether it be with dead Hay, or with Quick; for they ought to let-run at the Tail of the Deer, otherwise it is finable, as if he hunted in the Forest.

16. If any Person hath made any Coppice, or Inclosure of the Pourallee, in hindring the King's Deer from getting into the Forest, or hath impounded the Beasts of any Commoner, out of the County, and not put them in open Pound, in the County, whether it be in the Time of POUNDAGE, or not, you shall give us notice thereof.







# An Abstract

## Of all the *Statute-L A W S*, from *Magna-Charta* to this Time made for the Preservation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, Fishing and Fowling, in Forests, Chases, Parks, Warrens and Fisheries, in E N G- L A N D and W A L E S.

Charters and Ordinances of the Forest.

**A**LL Forests, afforested by H. 2. shall be viewed by lawful Men, and if any Person hath afforested any other Woods but his own Demesne, whereby any is prejudiced they shall be disafforested; saving Common of Herbage, and other Things within the Forest, to such as have been accustomed to enjoy them. Chart. de Foresta, 9 Hen. 3. Cap. 1.

2. None shall come before the Justices of our Forest, by common Summons, which dwell out of the Forest, unless they be impleaded there, or be Sureties for others that are attached for the Forest, cap. 2.

3. All Forests, so converted from Woods by Rich. 1. or King John, shall be disafforested, unless they be our Demesne Woods, cap. 3.



4. All Prelates, Peers, Knights, and other Freeholders, having Woods in Forests, shall enjoy them, as they did at the Coronation of H. 2. acquitted of all Purprestures, Wastes and Assarts made before the 2d Year of the Coronation of H. 3. and they that make them henceforward shall be answerable to the King for the same, cap. 4.

5. Rangers of the Forests shall exercise their Offices, as was used at the Coronation of H. 2. and not otherwise, cap. 5.

6. Lawing of Dogs shall be made in Forests, from 3 Years to 3 Years, by the View and Testimony of lawful Men, and not otherwise, and he that hath not his Dog lawed shall be amerced 3 s. Also an Ox shall be taken for Lawing of Dogs: And it shall be done by the usual Assize, viz. That three Claws of the Forefoot be cut off by the skin: Yet such Lawing shall not be, but where it hath been used from the Coronation of H. 2. cap. 6.

7. No Forester or Bedle shall make Scotall, or gather Garb, Oats, Corn, Lamb or Pig, but by the sight, and upon the Oath of the twelve Rangers, when they shall make their Regard. And there shall be so many Foresters assigned for keeping the Forest, as shall be thought sufficient for the same, cap. 7.

8. There shall be only three Courts of Swainmore kept in the Year, viz. one 15 Days before Michaelmas, another about Martinmas, and the third 15 Days before Midsummer. At the first two of which, none shall appear by Distress, but the Foresters and Verderors, and Gestakers; and at the others, only the Foresters and Verderers. Howbeit the Foresters and Verderers shall meet every 40 Days, to see the Attachments of the Forests, as well of Green Hue, as Hunting:

and



and the Swainmotes shall not be kept but in the Counties, where they have been used to be kept, cap. 8.

9. Every one having a Wood in the Forest, may Agist it, and take his Pawnage there at his pleasure; he may drive his Hogs through the Kings Woods, or elsewhere for that purpose; and if they lie all Night in the Forest, he shall not be questioned for it, cap. 9.

10. If Deer be killed no Man shall lose either Life or Member for it, but shall be fined, if he have any Thing, if not, he shall be imprisoned a Year and a Day, and if he can find good Sureties, shall then be delivered, but if not, he shall abjure the Realm. cap. 10.

11. A Prelate, or Peer of the Realm, being sent for by the King, in coming, and returning may kill a Deer, or two in the Forest through which he passes. Howbeit it must not be done privily, but in the view of the Forester, if present; but if absent, by causing one to blow a Horn for him, cap. 11.

12. Every Freeman may within the Forest, (upon his own Ground) make a Mill, Spring, Marlpit, Dike, or arable Ground, without inclosing such arable, so it be not done to the nuisance of his Neighbours. cap. 12.

13. Every Freeman may have his Eyres of of Hawks, Eagles, or Herons, and also Honey found in his Woods within the Forest. cap. 13.

14. No Chiminage, or Toll shall be taken in Forests but by a Forester in Fee, that farms his Bailiwick, and only of such as buy their Bushes, Timber, Bark, or Coal to sell it again, viz. 2d. for a Cart, and a penny for an Horse, to be taken half yearly, and it shall only be taken where used to be taken, and not elsewhere. Neither shall



78 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

any Chiminage be taken of such as carry Burthens of Bushes, Bark, or Coal, albeit they sell it, unless they take them out of the King's Woods, cap. 14.

15. All Persons outlawed for Trespass in Forests since the Time of H. 2. unto the Coronation of H. 3. shall be released, finding Sureties to offend no more. cap. 15.

16. No Constable, Castellain or Bailiff, shall hold Pleas of Forests for green Hue or Hunting but the Forester shall attach such Pleas, and present them to the Verderors of the Provinces, who shall enrol them, and present them inclosed under their Seals unto the chief Justice of the Forest, when he comes into those Parts to hold Pleas of the Forest, to be determined before him. cap. 16.

17. The King grants these Liberties of the Forest to all Men, saving to all other Persons the Liberties and Free-customs in Forests, Warrens, and other Places, which they have formerly enjoyed. cap. 17.

18. The Lords demanded the imprisonment of Trespassers in their Parks, and Ponds, but it was denied by the King and so deferred. Merton. cap. 11. 20. H. 3.

19. Trespassers in Parks and Ponds shall give treble damages to the Party grieved, suffer three Years Imprisonment, be fined at the Kings Pleasure, and give Surety never to offend in the like Manner again. And if they cannot find Surety, they shall abjure the Realm; or, being Fugitive, shall be outlawed. Westm. 1. cap. 20. 3 E. 1.

20. A Forester, Parker or Warrener, shall not be questioned for killing a Trespasser, who (after the Peace cried unto him) will not yield himself, so it be not done out of some other former malice. Stat. 21. E. 1.



21. Those to whom the King hath granted Purlieu (whereby their Woods are disafforested) shall be quit of the Charge of the Forest, but then they are to have no Common there. Howbeit such as are willing to return their Woods into the Forest, shall enjoy Common, and other Cosements as they did before. *Ordinatio Forestæ.*

33 E. 1 Stat. 5.

22. Presentment of Trespasses, green Hue, and Hunting, in Forest, shall be made at the next Swainmote, by the Foresters within their several Bailiwicks, before the Foresters, Verderers, Regardors, Agistors, and other Ministers of the Forest, and they shall be also enquired of by the Oaths as well of Knights, as other lawful Men not suspected,) of the nearest Parts where the Trespasses were committed: And the Presentments so enquired of shall be solemnly confirmed, and sealed by the Seals of the said Ministers: *Ordinatio de Forestâ,*

34 E. 1. cap. 1.

23. If any Officer die, or be otherwise hindred, that he cannot Present at the Swainmote, the Justice of the Forest, or his Lieutenant, shall put another in his Place, that the Indictment may be made nevertheless by all, in Form aforesaid; also all Officers which are to be placed, shall be put, as it hath been used, except the Verderers, who shall be ordained by Election, or Writ, cap. 2.

24. No Minister of the Forest shall be put upon any Assize, Jury, or Inquest to be taken without the Forest, cap. 3.

25. No Officer of the Forest shall Surcharge the Forest, on pain to be imprisoned by the Justice of the Forest, or his Lieutenant; and he by whom they were placed shall be also punished at the King's Pleasure. At every Swainmote, Enquiry shall be made of Surcharges, Foresters,



80 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest,  
sters, and other Ministers there, and of Oppres-  
sions done to the People, cap. 4.

26. Trespasses committed in Grounds disaffor-  
ested, shall be pardoned, yet so as the Hedges  
and Ditches shall be cast down, and removed:  
saving the King's Arrentations, which shall re-  
main according to the Assize of the Forest: also  
the Wood felled in the Forest shall be carried a-  
way, but that standing, though sold, shall be pre-  
served. cap. 5.

27. The Justice, or his Lieutenant, shall take  
Fines and Amercements of Persons indicted for  
Trespasses committed there, and shall not tarry for  
the Eyre. Commoners restrained from their Com-  
mons, by the Perambulation, shall be restored to  
them again, saving the King's Arrentations, as is  
aforesaid, cap. 6.

28. None shall be taken or imprisoned for  
Vert or Venison, unless he be taken with the Man-  
ner, or else indicted according to the form of the  
Statute 34 E. 1. And then the Warden of the Fo-  
rest shall let him to Mainprize, until the Eyre  
of the Forest, without taking any Thing for his  
Deliverance. And if the Warden will not do so,  
he shall have a Writ out of the Chancery, of old  
ordained for Persons indicted, to be bailed till the  
Eyre. Anno 1 E. 3. Stat. 1. cap. 8.

29. If the Warden, after the Writ served,  
shall not deliver the Person indicted to Main-  
prize, the Plaintiff shall have a Writ out of the  
Chancery, directed to the Sheriff, to attach the  
Warden, to answer his Default before the  
King at a certain Day, and then the Sheriff,  
(the Verderors being called in) shall deliver the  
Person indicted by good Mainprize, in the  
presence of the said Verderors, and shall deliver  
the Names of the Main-pernors to the same  
Verderors



§1 Of the Laws and Privileges of the Forest.

Verderors, to Answer in the Eyre before the Justices. Ibid.

30. If the Chief Warden be thereof attainted, he shall be awarded to pay treble Damages to the Party aggrieved, committed to Prison, and ransomed at the King's Will. ib.

31. The Great Charter, and also that of the Forest are confirmed, Anno 1 E. 3. Stat. 3. cap. 1.

32. The Perambulations of Forests shall continue as they were bounded in the Time of E. 1. and every County shall have a Charter thereof. And where they are not bounded, it shall be now done, and a Charter thereof shall be also made thereof. Ibid.

33. Every Man having Wood within the Forest, may take House-boot, and Hay-boot in his said Wood, without being attached for the same by the Ministers of the Forest, so that it be done by the View of the Foresters, Stat. 1 E. 3. Stat. 2. cap. 2.

34. No Forester, or any other Minister there, shall gather any Victuals, or other Thing, by Colour of his Office, but what is due of old right, Stat. 25 E. 3. Stat. 5. cap. 22.

35. A Jury for the Trial of a Trespass within a Forest shall give up their Verdict where they received their Charge, and shall not by Menace, or otherwise, be constrained to give their Verdict of a Trespass done in Forest, otherwise than their Conscience will clearly inform them, Stat. 7 R. 2, 3.

36. No Officer of the Forest shall Imprison any without due Indictment, or per main ouvre with his Hand at the Work (that is, being taken with the Manner, or Trespassing in the Forest) nor shall constrain any to make Obligation of ransome against his Will, and the Assize of the Forest, on pain to pay the Party  
grieved



grieved double Damages, or to be ransomed at the King's will, Stat. 7 R. 2. 3.

37. If any having Woods in his own Ground within any Forest, Chase, or Purlieu, shall cut or cause the same, (or any part thereof) to be Cut, by the King's License (where such Forest, Chase, or Purlieu are his) or without License (where they belong to others) he may keep them several, and inclosed during seven Years next after their felling. Anno 22 E. 4. cap. 7.

38. Every Justice of the King's Forests, Chases, and Parks, by Writing, under the Seal of his Office, may make as many Deputies as he please, which shall have like Power as the Justice himself hath, Anno 32. H. 8. cap. 35.

39. An Act for the certainty of the Forests and Meers, Limits and Bounds thereof, Anno 16 Car. 1. cap. 16.



### Of Bows, and Guns, and Shooting at Game.

1. **N**ONE shall Shoot with, or keep in his House any Cross-bow, Hand-gun, Hagbut (Harkebut, or Harquebut) or Demihake, unless his Lands be of the Value of 100l. per annum, on pain to forfeit 10l. for every such Offence, Anno 33 H. 8. cap. 6.

2. None shall Shoot with, or have any \* Hand-gun under the length of one Yard, nor Hagbut,

---

\* Note, The Word *Hand-gun* includes a *Dag*, though invented since the Statute, and the Word *Cross-bow*, includes a *Stone-bow*, and a *Hag-but* is a *Hand-gun*, three Quarters of a Yard long. Co. 5. Part 71, 72.



02 Demihake under the Length of three Quarters of a Yard, on pain to forfeit 10l. And it shall be lawful for any Man having Lands of 100l. per annum, to seize any such Gun, or any Crows-bow used or kept contrary to the Form of this Statute, but then he ought to break them within 20 Days after, on pain of 140s. Idem Statut.

3. None shall Travel with a Cross-bow bent, or Gun charged (except in Time of War) or Shoot within a Quarter of a Mile of a City, Borough, or Market-Town (except for the Defence of himself and his House, or at a Dead-Mark) on pain of 10l. Idem Statut.

4. None shall command his Servant to Shoot in any Gun, or Crows bow, (except at a Dead-mark, or in Time of War) on pain of 10l. Idem Statut.

5. The Penalties above-said shall be divided between the King and the Party who is the Prosecutor. Idem Statut.

6. Howbeit the Followers of Lords Spiritual or Temporal, Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, and the Inhabitants of Cities, Boroughs, or Market-Towns, may keep in their Houses, Use, and Shoot (but at a Dead-mark only) with Guns, not under the Length above-said. So may the Owner of a Ship for the defence thereof; and also he that dwells two furlongs distant from a Town, or within five Miles from the Sea-Coast, and this last may shoot at any wild Beast, or Fowl, save only Deer, Heron, Shovelard, Pheasant, Partridge, Wild-Swan, or Wild Elke. Idem Stat.

8. It shall be lawful for any Person to convey the Party offending before the next Justice of the Peace, who, upon the Examination and Proof, shall have power to commit him to Prison.



Prison, there to remain, till he hath satisfied the Penalty, which in this Case, shall be divided between the King and the Party that so takes the Offender. Idem Statut.

9. Every Placart granted by the King, which expresseth not at what Beasts or Fowl the Grantee shall shoot, and where the Grantee entreth not into Recognizance of 30 l. in the Chancery, to Shoot at no other, shall be adjudged void. Idem Statut.

10. Justices of Peace in Sessions, and Stewards of Leets, have Power to hear and determine the said Offences, Idem Stat.

11. When the Conviction is in Sessions, the whole Forfeiture is to be levied to the King's Use. When in a Leet, the one half is the King's, and the other half ought to be divided between the Lord, and the Prosecutor. Idem Stat.

12. Here, if a Jury shall willingly conceal any Thing, the Justices, or Steward have power to Impannel another Jury, by whom, if the first be found guilty of Concealment, they shall forfeit 20 l. a piece, viz. to the King, if it be in Sessions, but if in a Leet, then the one half to the Lord, and the other half to the Prosecutor. Idem Statut.

13. Forfeitures arising by this Act, shall be sued for, viz. by the King, within one Year, and by a common Person within six Months, otherwise they shall be lost, Idem Statut.

14. A Servant, upon Command, may use his Master's Cross-bow or Gun, (not prohibited by this Act) so he Shoot at no Fowl, Deer, or other Game, and may also, by a License in Writing, carry it to any place to be mended, Idem Statut.

15. None under the Degree of a Baron shall Shoot with any Hand-Gun, within any City, or Town;



Town; or Shoot at any Fowl whatsoever, with any Hail-shot, on pain of ten Pound and three Months Imprisonment. Idem Stat.

16. This Act shall not restrain those, who, according to the value of their Land, are Authorized to Shoot by the 33 H. 8. 6. so that they forbear to use any Hail-shot; and all others that presume to Shoot, shall present their own Names, viz (in a Corporation to the Mayor, or Head-Officer, and in the Country to the next Justice of the Peace) on pain of 20 s. and the said Justice, or Head-Officer is to see them recorded at the next Sessions on like pain of 20 s. which Forfeitures are to be divided between the King and the Prosecutor. Idem Stat.



### Of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling and Fishing.

17. **I**f any shall Hunt within Forests, Parks or Warrens in the Hunting-Night-time, or disguised, one of the King's Council, or a Justice of Peace, to whom Information thereof shall be made, shall by his Warrant cause the Offender to be brought before himself, or some other Councelloz, or Justice of the Peace, to be examined, where, if he conceal the Fact, such Hunting shall be deemed Felony; but being confessed, the offence is only Fineable at the next General Sessions. And here a Rescous of the Execution of any such Warrant shall be also deemed Felony. Anno 1 H. 7. cap. 7.

Of





## Of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling and Fishing.

1. **N**One shall take Pheasants or  
 Hawking. Partridges with Engines in ano-  
 Fowling. thers Ground without License, on pain  
 of 10l. to be divided betwixt the  
 Owner of the Ground and the Prosecutor. Anno  
 11 H. 7. cap. 17.

2. None shall take out of the Nest any Eggs of  
 Falcon, Goshawk, Lanner, or Swan on pain of a  
 Year and a Days Imprisonment, and to incur a  
 fine at the King's Pleasure, to be divided betwixt  
 the King and the owner of the Ground, where the  
 Eggs shall be so taken. Idem Statut.

3. None shall bear any Hawk of English breed,  
 called an Eyesse, Goshawk, Tassel, Lanner, Lan-  
 neret, or Falcon, on pain to forfeit the same to the  
 King. Idem Statut.

4. He that brings an Eyesse Hawk from beyond  
 the Sea, shall have a Certificate under the Customers  
 Seal where he Lands, or if out of Scotland, then  
 under the Seal of the Lord Warden, or his Lieu-  
 tenant, testifying that she is a foreign Hawk upon  
 the like pain of forfeiting the Hawk. Idem Statut.

5. None shall take, kill, or scare away any of  
 the Hawks abovesaid from the Coverts where they  
 use to breed, on pain of 10l. to be recovered before  
 Justices of the Peace, and divided betwixt the  
 King and the Prosecutor. Idem Statut.

6. None shall kill or take any Pheasants or Par-  
 tridges with any Net or Engine in the Night-time  
 on pain to forfeit for every Pheasant 20 s. and for  
 every Partridge 10 s. which if the Offender pay  
 not in ten Days, he shall suffer a Months im-  
 prisonment without Bail, and enter into Bond



(for two Years only) with good Sureties before some Justice of Peace, not to offend in the like kind Anno 33 Eliz. cap. 10.

7. The Forfeiture aforesaid shall be recovered in any Court of Record and divided betwixt the Lord of the Mannor and the Prosecutor. But in case the Lord shall dispense with the Offender, the Poor of the Parish are to have his Moiety, to be recover'd by any of the Churchwardens. Idem Statut.

8. None shall Hawk or Hunt with his Spaniels in Standing - Corn, or before it is shocked, (except in his own Ground, or with the Owners consent) on pain to forfeit 40 s. to the Owner of the Ground as abovesaid. Idem Statut.

9. Justices of Assize, Justices of Peace in Sessions and Stewards of Leets, have power to hear and determine these Offences, and one Justice of Peace may examine such an Offender, and bind him over with good Sureties to answer it at the next General Sessions, if the Offence be not before determined at the Assizes, or in a Leet. Idem Statut.

10. This Act shall not restrain Fowlers, which unwillingly take Pheasants or Partridges, and forthwith let them go at large. Idem Statut.

11. Every Person convicted by his own confession, or by two Witnesses upon Oath, before two or more Justices of the Peace, to have killed or taken any Pheasant, Partridge, Pidgeon, Duck, Heron, Hare, or other Game, or to have taken or destroyed the Eggs of Pheasants, Partridges or Swans, shall by the said Justices be committed to Prison without Baile, unless he immediately pay to the Use of the Poor, where the Offence was committed, or he be apprehended, 20 s. for every Fowl, Hare, or Egg, so killed, taken, or destroyed.

And



And after one Months committment shall before two or more Justices of the Peace be bound with two sufficient sureties in 20l a piece, with condition never to offend in the like kind. Anno 1 Jac. cap. 27

12. Every Person convicted, as abovesaid, to keep a Greyhound, Dog, or Net, to kill or take Deer, Hare, Pheasant or Partridge, unless he have inheritance of 10l. per annum, a Lease for Life of 30l. per annum, or be worth 200 l. in goods, or otherwise be the Son of a Knight, or Heir apparent of an Esquire, shall suffer Imprisonment as aforesaid, unless he pay 40s. to the use abovesaid. Idem Statut.

13. None shall sell, or buy to sell again any Deer, Hare, Pheasant or Partridge (except by them brought up, or from beyond Sea) on pain to forfeit for every Deer 40 s. Hare 10s. Pheasant 20s. and Partridge 10 s. to be divided between the Prosecutor, and the Poor of the Parish, where the Offence is committed. Idem Statut.

14. Justices of Assize, and of Peace in Sessions, and two or more out of Sessions have power to hear and determine these Offences. Idem Statut.

15. None shall by any former Law suffer punishment for the same Offences, for which he shall be punished by this Law. Idem Statut.

This Act shall not restrain one licensed in open Sessions to kill Hawks-meat, but then he shall there become bound by Recognisance in 20l. not to kill any of the Game prohibited by this Law, nor to Shoot within 600 paces of an Hearnery, within 100 paces of a Pidgeon-house, or in a Park, Forest, or Chase, whereof his Master is not owner or keeper, and the Clark of the Peace his Fee for such a License is 12d. Idem Statut.



17. Every Person convicted by his own Confession or by two Witnesses upon Oath, before two or more Justices of the Peace, to have hawked at, or destroyed any Pheasant or Partridge betwixt the 1st of July, and the last of August, shall suffer one Months Imprisonment without Bail, unless he forthwith pay, to the Use of the Poor where the Offence was committed, or he apprehended, 40 s. for every Time so Hawking, and 20 s. for every Pheasant or Partridge so destroyed or taken. Anno 7 Jacobi primi cap. 11.

18. He that shall be punished by this Law, shall not be punished again by any other. Idem Statut.

19. It shall be lawful for the Lord of a Manor or one having Inheritance of 40 l. per annum, Freehold of 80 l. per annum, or Goods worth 400 l. or their Servants licenced by them, to take Pheasants or Partridges within their own Grounds or Precincts, so they do it in the Day Time and only betwixt Michaelmas and Christmas. Idem Statut.

20. This Offence shall be prosecuted within 6 Months after it shall be committed. Idem Statut.

21. If any of mean Condition shall be convicted by his own Confession, or by one Witness upon Oath, before two or more Justices of the Peace, to have killed or taken any Pheasant or Partridge, he shall be committed to Prison without Bail, unless he forthwith pay to the use of the Poor 20 s. for every Pheasant or Partridge, so killed or taken, and also become bound before one or more Justices of the Peace in a Recognisance of 20 l. never to Offend in the like kind again. Idem Statut.

22. Every Constable or Headborough with a Warrant from two or more Justices of the Peace, hath power to search the Houses of Persons suspected to



have any setting Dogs or Nets for the taking of Pheasants or Partridges, and the Dogs or Nets there found, to kill or cut in Pieces at Pleasure, as Things forfeited unto the said Officers, Idem Statut.

1. No Lay-man who hath not Lands of 40s. per An: nor Clerk who hath not 10l. Revenue per An, shall have or keep any Greyhound, Hound, Dog, Ferret, Net, or Engine, to destroy Deer, Hares, Conies, or any other Gentleman's Game, on pain of one whole Years imprisonment, which Justices of the Peace shall have power to inflict. Anno 13 R. 2. cap. 13.

2. None shall keep any Deer-hays or Buck-stalls, save in his own Forest or Park, on pain to forfeit for every Month they are so kept 40s. Neither shall any Stalk with any Bush or Beast to any Deer, except in his own Forest or Park on pain of 10l. Anno 19 H. 7. cap. 11.

3. None shall take an old Heron without his own Grounds on pain of 6s. 8d. nor a young Heron on pain of 10s. for which forfeitures every Man that will, may sue by Action of Debt or otherwise. Idem Statut.

4. Any two Justices of Peace in Session may examine the Offenders aforesaid, and commit them to Prison till they have satisfied the said forfeitures whereof the said Justices are to have the 10th Part. Idem Statut.

5. None shall trace, destroy or kill any Hunting. Hare in the Snow; and Justices of Peace in Sessions, and Stewards in Leets have power to enquire of such Offenders, and shall assess upon every such Offender 6s. 8d. which penalty assessed in Sessions shall go to the King, but in a Leet to the Lord thereof Statut. 14, and 15. H. 8. 10.

6. None



6. None shall kill or Chase any Deer or Conies in any Park or inclosed Ground, without the owners License, on pain of three Months Imprisonment, to pay treble Damages to the Party grieved, to be assessed by the Justice, before whom he shall be convicted, and after the said three Months expired, to be bound to the good Behaviour 7 Years, though the Party grieved may release them. Idem Statut.

7. The Justices in Sessions have Power to hear and determine these Offences, and have Power also upon Satisfaction to release the Behaviour, Idem Statut.

8. If any Person not having 40l. per annum, in Lands, or 200 l. in Goods, shall use any Gun or Cross-bow, Ferret, Dog, Net, or other Engine, for the purposes aforesaid, it shall be lawful for any Person worth 100l. per annum, to take such Gun &c. from any such Person, and convert the same to his own use. Idem Statut.

9. This Act shall not extend to any Park or inclosed Ground hereafter to be made or used for Deer or Conies without the King's License. Idem Statut.

10. It shall be in the Election of the Party grieved, whether he will take for Satisfaction 10l. in Money, or treble damages. Statut. 7. Jac. 13.

11. They that kill or take away red or fallow Deer, without consent of the Owner, if convicted by Confession or Oath of one Witness, and prosecuted within 6 Months shall forfeit 20l. to be levied by distress; One moiety whereof to the Owner, and the other to the Informer. And for want of such distress shall be committed to the House of Correction, or the common Goal for one Year, nor discharged till security be given for their good Behaviour for one Year after. Anno 13 Car. 2. cap. 20.



12. None punished by virtue of this Law shall incur the penalty of any other Law for the same offence. Idem Statut.

13. Lords of Mannors or other Royalties, not under the Degree of an Esquire, may depute one or more Game-keepers, who may seize all Guns, Dogs, Bows, &c. and by Warrant from a Justice of Peace, may search the Houses of such Persons so prohibited as shall be suspected to keep such Guns, Dogs, Bows, &c. and seize them for the Lord of the Mannor, or destroy them. Anno 22 and 23 Car. 2. cap. 25.

14. Persons having Estates under 100l. per annum freehold, or 150 l per annum by Lease for 99 Years, &c. and that are not Sons or Heirs of Esquires or other Persons of higher Degree, are declared to be Persons not allowed to keep Guns, Bows, &c. Idem Statut.

15. If any one enter a Coney-warren though not enclosed, and chase and kill any Conies without the owners Consent, he shall Forfeit treble Damages, and be imprisoned three Months, and till he find Sureties for his good Behaviour. Idem Statut.

16. They that kill or take Conies in the Night-time upon the Borders or Warrens, or on other Grounds used for keeping Conies, shall make such recompence as shall be appointed by the Justice before whom convicted, not exceeding 10 s. which shall go to the Poor of the Parish, and in default of Payment, to the House of Correction: They that use Snares, Harepipes, and other Engins, are liable to the same Penalties. Idem Statut.

Fishing. 17. If any Person shall take any Fish without consent of the Owner of the

Water, and be thereof Convict, he shall give such recompence, and in such Time as the Justice shall appoint, not exceeding treble



ble Damages, and pay down presently such Sum as the Justice shall think fit, not exceeding 10 s. In default of payment the same to be levied by distress and sale of Goods, by Warrant of such Justice, and for want of a Distress, the Offender to be committed, not exceeding a Months Time, unless he enter into Bond with one or more Sureties, to the Party injured, not exceeding ten Pounds never to offend in the like Manner. Idem Statut.

18. The Justice before whom such Offender shall be convict, may destroy all the Engines about such Offender, when he shall be apprehended or taken. Idem Statut.

19. Persons aggrieved by any iudgment by Virtue of this Act, may appeal to the next Quarter Sessions, whose Order shall be final. Idem Statut.

20. This Act shall not abridge any Royalty or Prerogative-royal of the King, nor any part of the Forest Laws of this Realm. Idem Statut.

1. None shall take Salmon betwixt the 8th of September, and the middle of November, nor young Salmon with Nets or other Engines at Mill pools, betwixt the midst of April and the 24th of June, on pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the first Offence, for the 2d to suffer a Quarter of a Years imprisonment, and after to have their Punishment encreased according to the Trespass: And in fresh Waters, Overseers of this Statute shall be assigned, and sworn to enquire of the Offenders. West. 2. cap. 17. Anno 13 E. 1.



2. No Fisher shall use any Engine, by which the Fry of Fish may be destroyed, upon the Pains mentioned in the Stat. of Westm. 2. cap. 47.

3. None shall use any Net, or Engine, to destroy the Spawn or Fry of Fish, or take Salmons, or Trouts out of Season, or Pikes shorter than ten Inches, Salmons than 16, Trouts than 8, and Barbles than 12, or shall use any Engine to take Fish other than Angle or Net, or a Tramel of two Inches and an half Mesh, on pain to forfeit 20 s. and the Fish so wrongfully taken with the Net or Engine wrongfully used. Anno 1 Eliz. cap. 17.

4. All Persons having Jurisdiction of Conservancy upon Streams, or Waters, and Lords of Leets, have Power, upon the Oaths of 12 Men, to hear and determin these Offences, and shall have all the Forfeitures which accrue thereupon. Idem Statut.

5. The Steward of the Leet shall give this Statut. in Charge to the Jury on pain of 40 s. to be divided between the Queen and the Informer. Idem.

6. Here, if the Jury wilfully forbear to Present Offences of this kind, the Steward, or Bailiff shall Impannel another Jury to enquire of their Default, which being found, the first Jury shall forfeit 20 s. a piece. Idem.

7. Upon default of Presentment in Leets within one Year, Justices of the Peace in Sessions,  
Justices



Justices of Oyre and Terminer and Justices of Assize in circuits have Power to hear and determine the said Offences. Idem Statut.

8. This Act shall not restrain the taking of Smelts, Loches, Minnows, Bullheads, Gudgeons or Eels, with Nets or Engines formerly used, so that no other Fish be taken therewith. Nor shall extend to abridge any former privilege of conservancy lawfully enjoyed, or Fishing in Tweed, Usk, or Wye, or in waters let to Farm by the Queen, so that the Spawn, or Fry of Fish be not therein wilfully destroyed. Idem Statut.

9. None shall unlawfully break down Fish-pond-heads or Fish there without License of the Owner, or enter into any Chase, Parks, Woods or other Grounds, and there kill and chase the Deer, or take any Hawk or Hawks Eggs, on pain to suffer three Months imprisonment, and to be bound with good Sureties to the good Behaviour for seven Years after. Anno 5. Eliz. cap. 21.

Fishing,  
Hunting,  
Hawking.

10. The Party grieved shall in Sessions, or elsewhere, recover treble damages against the Delinquent, and upon Satisfaction shall have Liberty to procure his release of the Behaviour. Idem Statut.

11. Justices of Oyer and Terminer, Assize, Peace, and Goal delivery in Session, have power to hear and determine those Offences. Idem Statut.

12. None shall erect a Weare or Wears along the Sea-shore, or in any Haven or Creek, or shall willingly

Fishing.

destroy



destroy the Spawn or Fry of Fish on pain of 10l. to be divided between the King and the Prosecutor. Neither shall any Fish in any of the said Places, with any Net of a less Mesh than three Inches and an half betwixt Knot and Knot, (except for the taking of Smoults in Norfolk only) or with a Canvas Net, or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fish may be destroyed, on pain to forfeit the said Net or Engine and 10 s. in Money, to be divided betwixt the Poor of the Parish and the Prosecutor, and to be levied in Corporations by the Head Officers, and in other Places by Distress and Sale of Goods, upon a Warrant of a Justice of Peace, directed unto the Constable, and Churchwardens of the Parish, for that Purpose. Stat. 3. Jac. cap. 12.

13. If any Person after the first of August next shall in the River Severn Fish with, or make use of any Engine or Device, whereby any Salmon, Trout, or Barble, under the length appointed by the Statute of 1 Eliz. shall be taken or killed, or shall Fish with any Net for Salmon, Salmon-mart, Salmon-peal, Pike, Carp, Trout, Barbel, Chub, or Grayling, the Mesh thereof shall be under two Inches and an half Square from Knot to Knot, or above 20 Yards in Length, and two Yards in Breadth, or above 50 Yards in Length, and six Yards in breadth in the Wing of the Net, in the said River from Riplelock-stake to Gloucester-Bridge, or above 50 Yards in Length below Gloucester-Bridge and six Yards in Breadth in the Wing of the Net, or shall Fish with more than one of these Nets at once, or shall use any device for taking the Fry of Eels,

he



he shall forfeit 5l. for every Offence, with the Fish Instruments, &c. and 5l. a Time for watering Hemp or Flax in the said River. Statut. 13 Car. 2. cap. 9.

14. The Justices of the Peace of the Counties of Worcester, Salop and Gloucester, shall be Conservators of the said River, in their respective Countries, and make one, or more Conservators under them, to whom, or to any Constable, &c. upon their own Knowledge or Information of such Offence, shall Issue Warrants to search all suspected Houses, for such unlawful Instruments, and seize them. Idem Stat.

15. None shall be punished for the said Offences but by Information or Indictment before the Justices of the Assize, or General Quarter Sessions. The one Moiety of the Forfeitures are to the Poor, and the other to the Prosecutor, to be levied by Fieri Facias, or cap. ad satisfaciendum. Idem Stat.

16. The Jurisdiction of the Lords of Leets, and all Rights, Titles, &c. of the King and others, in the said River, always saved. Idem Stat.

1. If any Person shall unlawfully Hunt, take in Toyles, kill, or take away any Deer, in any Forest, Chase, Purlieu, Park, or Hunting. other Ground inclosed, or shall be aiding or assisting therein, and be thereof convicted by Confession, one Witness or more, shall forfeit 20l. though no Deer be killed or wounded; and for each wounded, killed or taken, 30l. to be levied by Distress upon his Goods, and



and for want of Distress Imprisonment for a Year without Bail, and to be set in the Pillory for an Hour in the next Market-Town, Anno 3 and 4 W. and M. cap. 10.

2. Every Constable, Headborough, &c. shall have power to search the Houses of suspected Persons, and where any Venison, or Skin of Deer shall be found, to apprehend the Party, and if he do not give a good Account how he came by them, he shall be convicted by the Justice of such offence, and be subject to the forfeitures and Penalties as if thereof convicted. Idem Statut.

3. To prevent flight, or removal of Offenders after Conviction, the Constable, or other Officer, are authorised to detain the Offender in Custody, during such Time (not exceeding two Days) as a Return may be made to the Warrant for the Distress. Idem Statut.

4. All Owners of Deer, and Persons acting under them, may oppose and resist Offenders, and be equally indemnified, as if such Fact had been committed within any Ancient Chase, or Park. Idem Statut.

5. No Certiorari to be allowed for removal of the Proceeding, unless the Party convicted become bound to the Prosecutor in 50l. to pay his full Costs and Damages, to be ascertained upon his Oath. In default whereof, the Justice shall proceed to the Execution of the Conviction. Idem Statut.



6. No Offender punished by this Act, shall be prosecuted upon any other Statute for the same Offence. Idem Statut.

7. Any Person prosecuted for putting this Act in Execution, may plead the general Issue, and give the special Matter in Evidence. Idem Statut.

8. If any Person shall in the Night-time pull down any Pales, or Walls of any Forest, Park, Chase, &c. and be thereof convicted, shall suffer Imprisonment three Months without Bail. Idem Statut.

1. That whereas divers Laws have been made for the Preservation of the Game, which wanting due Execution, the Game of this Kingdom hath been destroyed. It is enacted that all Laws now in force, and every Article not hereby altered, or repealed, shall now be executed under the Penalties therein contained to be levied and disposed of, as the said Laws direct. Anno 4 and 5 W. and M. cap. 7.

Hunting,  
Hawking,  
Fishing,  
Fowling.

2. In case any Hare, Partridge, Pheasant, Fish, Fowl, or other Game shall be found in any Offenders House, the Offender is to be carried before a Justice of Peace of the County, and being convicted shall forfeit any Sum not under 5 s. nor above 20 s. For want of Distress the Offender is to be carryed to the House of Correction for a Month, or some other Space of Time not less than 10 Days. And if any Person not qualified by the Laws, shall keep, or use



use any Bows, Grey-hounds, Setting-dogs, Ferrets, Tumbler, Hays, Snares, &c. he shall be subject to the same Penalties, as the Person who shall be found to have any Hare, Partridge, Pheasant, Fish, Fowl or other Game in his House, as aforesaid. And if any Person charged shall not give sufficient Evidence of his Innocence, he shall be convicted thereof in the same Manner as the Person first charged therewith, and so from Person to Person, till the first Offender be discovered. Idem Statut.

3. All Persons authorized by Lords of Mannors, &c. may within their Royalties, oppose and resist such Offenders in the Night-time, in the same Manner as if such fact had been committed within any antient Chase, Park, or Warren enclosed. Idem Statut.

4. No Person shall keep any Net, Angle, Leap, Pitch, &c. and that owners of Fisheries or their Deputies, may seize and keep all Nets, &c. Also any Person by a Warrant from a Justice of the Peace, may, in the Day Time, search the Houses of Persons suspected, and seize, detain, or destroy them, as prohibited to be kept by Persons unqualified by Law. Idem Statut.

5. This Act shall not abridge any Fisher-man or his Apprentice, lawfully authorized to fish, in navigable Rivers, with lawful Nets. Idem Statut.

6. If any inferior Tradesman, Apprentice or dissolute Person presume to Hunt, Hawk, Fish, or Fowl, he shall be subject to the Penalties of this Act, and be sued for wilful trespass, in coming  
ing

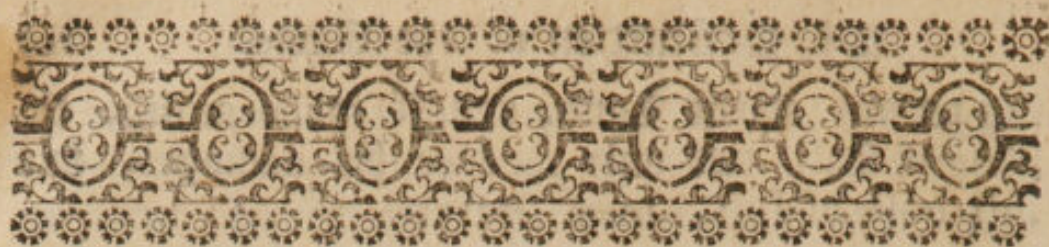


ing on any Mans Land, and if found guilty, the Plaintiff shall not only recover his damages, but full costs of suit. *Idem Statut.*

7. For preserving the red and black Game of Growse or Heathpolts: No Person on any Mountains, Hill, Heaths, Moors, Forests, and Hares or other Waits, shall burn between the 2d of February and 24 of June, any Grig, Ling, Heath, Furze, Goss or Fern, upon pain of being committed to the House of Correction, for 10 Days or a Month, there to be whipt, and kept to hard Labour. *Idem Statut.*








## L A W S relating to the *Game*.



### Modern Statutes for Preservation of the G A M E, &c.

1.  5. Anno c. 14. It is enacted, that if any Higler, Chapman, Carrier, Inn-keeper, Victualler, or Ale-house-keeper, shall have in his, or their Custody, any Hare, Pheasant, Partridge, Heath-game, or Growse, every such Higler, Chapman, &c. (the Game not being sent by some Person qualified to kill the same) shall on Conviction, before some Justice of Peace, forfeit 5 l. for every Hare, Pheasant, &c. Half to the Informer, and Half to the Poor of the Parish, where the Offence is committed; the Penalty is leviable by Distress, and if there be no Distress, the Offender shall be sent to the House of Correction for three Months.

2. The Conviction must be within three Months after the Offence committed. And if a certiorari be allowed, the Party shall be bound in the Sum of 50 l. to the Prosecutors, as a Security to pay them their full costs, within 14 Days after Conviction confirmed, or a Procedendo granted.

3. Any



3. Any Person, who shall kill, sell, or buy any such Hare, Pheasant, &c. and shall discover others that have bought, sold, or had in their Possession, &c. any such, so as to be convicted, and the Discoverer shall be exempted from Penalties, and be entituled to the same Benefit as other Informers.

4. Persons not qualified, keeping Grey-hounds, Lurchers, Setting-Dogs, &c. or Engines to destroy Game, are liable to a Forfeiture of 5 l. one half to the Informer, the other to the Poor; or be sent to the House of Correction for 3 Months.

5. Justices of Peace, and Lords of Mannors may take away any Hare, Pheasant, or other Game, from Higlers, and Persons not qualified to kill the same, and also seize Dogs, Nets, and Engines to their own Use. Lords of Mannors may also by Writing impower Game-keepers to kill Game; but if under Colour of such Power to kill for the Lord's Use, they kill and sell Game without the knowledge of the Lord, they shall be committed to the House of Correction for 3 Months, and be kept to hard Labour.

6. No Person shall cut Ling, Heath, or Brakes, and burn the same to Ashes, or in Order thereunto, upon the Ground in the Forest of Sherwood, or any Waste or Land in the County of Nottingham, without License from the Owner of the Soil, under the penalty of 10 s. Persons buying Fern-Ashes from such are liable to a forfeiture of 10 s. per Peck, one Moiety to the Poor, the other to the Informer; and not paying the Penalties shall be committed for a Month, and kept at hard Labour. Officers of the Forest, &c. may take away Instruments to be used for that purpose.

7. The Stat. 9. Ann. makes the preceding act perpetual; and no Lord of a Mannor is to appoint more than one Game-keeper in one Mannor,  
and



and his Name shall be entred with the Clark of the Peace, who is to give a Certificate thereof; If any Game-keeper, whose Name shall not be thus entred, or who is not otherwise qualified to kill Game, shall kill any Hare, Pheasant, &c. Or if any other Person not being legally qualified, shall sell or expose to Sale any Hare, &c. they shall incur the Penalties 5. Ann. against Higlers, &c.

8. If any Hare, Pheasant, &c. be found in the Shop, House, or Possession of any one not qualified by Law to kill Game, or being entitled to it by some Person qualified, the same shall be adjudged an exposing to Sale.

9. Persons taking, killing, or destroying any Hare, &c. in the Night-time likewise incur the Forfeiture of 5 l. as by 5. Ann.

10. If any Person shall with Hays, or other Nets, drive and take any Wild Duck, Teal, Widgeon, or other Water-fowl, in any Places of Resort for Wild-fowl, between the 1st of July, and the 1st of September, (the molting Season) the Offender being convicted thereof by the Oath of one Witness, before a Justice of Peace, shall forfeit for every Fowl 5 s. one Moiety to the Informer the other to the Poor, to be levied by the Justices Warrant, by Distress; or be committed to the House of Correction, not exceeding one Month, nor less than 14 Days, there to be Whipt, and kept at hard Labour.

Justices may cause Hays and Nets so be seized and destroyed.

1. By 4. and 5. Ann c. 21. made  
Fishing. for the increase and Preservation of  
Salmon in the Counties of Southamp-  
ton, and Wilts, Salmon are not to be taken after  
the 30th of June, till the 11th of November in  
every



every Year. And taking them under Size, &c. incurs a Penalty not under 20 s. nor exceeding 5 l.

2. Justices residing within 5 Miles of the Rivers in Hampshire, or Wiltshire, &c. have power to appoint Overseers of such Rivers and the Fish, &c. to seize and destroy Nets, Engines, &c.

3. Owners and Tenants of Mills in those Counties are to keep open a Hatch of a foot Square in the Stream, where there is no Wheel for the Salmon to pass and repass, from the 1<sup>st</sup> of November, to the 31. of May,

4. The 1. Geo. c. 18. Enacts that no Herring, Cod, Pilchards, Salmon, or Ling, fresh or salted, dried or bloated, nor any Grill, Mackarel, Whiting, &c. or fresh Fish whatsoever, shall be imported or sold in England, which shall be taken by, bought of, or received from Foreigners.

5. Masters of Smacks, &c. in which any Fish shall be imported or brought on Shore contrary to this Act, on Conviction by the Oaths of two Witnesses before one or more Justices of the Peace, shall forfeit 20 l. for every Offence, to be levied by Distress; and for want of Distress the offender shall suffer a Years Imprisonment in the Common Goal. But this shall not extend to prevent the importing or buying any Eels, Stock-fish, Anchovies, Sturgeon, &c.

6. If any Person shall use at Sea, upon the Coast of England, any Drag-net, Sea-net, &c. for catching of any Fish except Herrings, Pilchards, Sprats, &c. which hath a Mesh under three Inches and a half from Knot to Knot, or false or double Bottom, or shall put any Net, of legal Size upon or behind another, in order to destroy the small Fish, he shall forfeit for every Offence 20 l. and the Nets; or be imprisoned twelve Months.

h h h

7. All



7. All Penalties in this Act, except for illegal Nets, shall be distributed one Moiety to the Informer, the other to the Poor of the Parish. Illegal Nets forfeited, shall be publickly burnt.

8. No Person shall bring on Shore in England, sell, or expose to Sale, or Exchange for other Goods, any Fish, which shall not be from the Eyes to the utmost extent of the Tail, of the several Lengths following, viz. every Bret or Turbet 16 Inches, Brill or Pearl, 14 Inches, Codlin 12 Inches, every Whiting 6 Inches, every Bass and Mullet 12 Inches, Sole, Place, or Dab 8 Inches, and every Flounder 7 Inches, on pain of forfeiting the Fish to the Poor of the Parish, and the Sum of 20 s. and in default of Payment, the Offender is to be sent to the House of Correction, and there to be kept at hard Labour, and severely whipped for six Days, or not longer than 14 Days, by Order of Justices. Prosecution on this Act is to be commenced within one Month after the Offence committed.

9. It shall be lawful for any Persons, as well Foreigners as English, to import into and sell in Great Britain, any Quantity of Lobsters, or Turbet, whether of Foreign or British catching.

10. The Clause of the Act 4 and 5. Ann. relating to the catching of Salmon, &c. from the 30th of June, till after the 11th of November, so far as it concerns the Owners of the Fishery in the respective Rivers in that Act mentioned, and to all other Persons entituled to Fish in the same, their Servants, &c. is hereby repealed.

11. Provided, that no such Owners, or their Servants, &c. shall between the first of August, and the 12th of November, in any Year, take, kill, or wilfully hurt any Salmon, &c. by Hawks, Racks, Nets, Angles, or other Devices; or offer to Sale any of the said Fish so taken, under the  
like



like Penalties as are mentioned in the Act 4 and 5. Ann.

12. Persons drawing any Nets, Engines, &c. or doing any other Act whereby the small Fry of Salmon, or any Salmon not 18 Inches long from the Eye to the middle of the Tail shall be taken or killed, in the Rivers Severn, Dee, Wye, Thame, Were, Teas, Ribble, Mersey, Dun, Air, Ouze, Swaile, Calder, Wharf, Eure, Darwent, and Trent; or any of them; or who shall erect any Bank, Dam, Hedge, Stank, or Nets, cross the said Rivers or any Part thereof, whereby the Salmon may be taken, or hindered going up the said Rivers to Spawn; or shall between the last Day of July, and the 12th of November by any Net, Device, &c. take, kill, or wilfully hurt any Salmon of any kind or size whatsoever, in the said Rivers; or shall fish with any other Net than is allowed by 1. Eliz. and 30 Car. 2. And thereof shall be convicted by Confession, Oath of one Witness, &c. shall forfeit 5 l. for every offence, and the Fish taken, Nets, &c. One Moiety to the Informer, the other to the Poor of the Parish, leviable by Distress, &c. And for want of Distress the Offender shall be committed to the House of Correction, and be kept at hard Labour for three Months.

13. No Salmon, less than six Pounds in Weight each Fish, shall be sent to London from any of the Rivers above-mentioned, to Fishmongers, or their Agents; and if any Person shall buy, sell or send a Salmon of less Weight, and thereof shall be convicted; ut Supra, he shall forfeit 5 l. besides the Fish so bought and sold; one Moiety to the Informer, the other to the Poor of the Parish, where the Offence is committed. The Penalty is to be paid on Conviction, or to be levied by Distress and sale of Goods, by a Justices Warrant; and if there be no Distress, the Party offending shall be



sent, to the House of Correction, or the County Goal, there to be kept to hard Labour for the Space of three Months, unless the Forfeiture be paid in the mean Time.

14 No Offender punished by force of this Act shall be prosecuted on, or incur the Penalty of any other Law for the same Offence. And all Persons aggrieved by any Judgment of the Justices of the Peace, may appeal to the Quarter Sessions of the same County, &c. who are impowered to hear and finally determine the same.

15. Nothing in this Act shall extend to any ancient Weirs or Locks on any Rivers, but the Proprietors thereof may repair, rebuild, remove or take down any of them, as they might have done if this Act had not been made.

1. The Statut 3. Geo. c. 11. enacts Hunting. that after the 10th of July 1717. No Lord, or Lady of a Mannor shall appoint any Person to be a Game-keeper, with Power to take or kill any Hare, Pheasant, Partridge, or other Game, unless such Person shall be qualified so to do by the Laws of this Realm, or be truly a Servant to the said Lord or Lady, or be immediately employed to kill the Game for the sole Use of such Lord or Lady: And no Lord, &c. shall authorize any Person not qualified by Law, to keep or use any Grey-hounds, Setting-Dog, Hays, Lurchers, Gun, &c. or any Engine to kill the Game. Any Person not being qualified by the Laws so to do, or not being truly a Servant of any Lord, &c. or not immediately employed to take or kill the Game, for the sole Use of such Lord, &c. who under Pretence of any Deputation, &c. to him granted by any Lord, &c. shall take or kill any Game, or use any Grey-hounds, &c.



&c. being convicted thereof, shall for every offence incur the Penalties inflicted by 5, and 9. Ann.

2. The said Acts of 5, and 9. Ann. And all other Laws for the better Preservation of the Game, and all Things therein contain'd, not altered by this Act, shall remain in Force. This Statute was chiefly intended to prevent Tenants of Estates, &c. killing and destroying of Game.

3. By 5. Geo. 2<sup>d</sup> Certiorari shall Deer-stealing. be allowed to remove any Conviction, or other Proceedings concerning any Matter in the Act 3, and 4. W. and M. made for the more effectual Discovery and Punishment of Deer stealers, unless the Party convicted, before allowance of such Certiorari, and at the same Time that Security is given for Payment of Costs and Damages to the Prosecutor, become bound to the Justice, before whom the Conviction was made, with sufficient Sureties in the Penalty of 60 l. for each offence, with Condition to prosecute such Certiorari with effect, and to pay such Justice the forfeiture due by the Conviction, to be distributed according to the Direction of the Act; or to render the Person convicted to the Justice in a Month after the Conviction shall be confirmed, or a Procedendo granted: And in default, the Justice and all others may proceed to the due Execution of such Conviction, as if no Certiorari had been awarded.

4. After Confirmation of any Conviction on the said Statute by any Superior Court, and deliberating the Rule to the Justice, whereby such Conviction hath been so confirmed, such Justice may proceed, as if a Procedendo had been granted.

5. Every Person convicted by Virtue of the Statut 3, and 4. W. and M. shall before he is discharged out of Custody, become bound to the Person



Person against whom the offence was committed in the sum of 50 l. with Condition for his good-Behaviour, and not to offend in like manner for the future: On refusal to enter into such Bond, he shall be committed to the County Goal, till such Bond be given.

6. If any Keeper, or other Officer of a Forest, &c. where Deer are usually kept, shall be convicted on the said Statute 3, and 4. W. and M. for killing or taking away any Red or Fallow Deer, or being aiding therein, without Consent of the Owner, or Person chiefly intrusted with the Custody of such Forest, &c. he shall forfeit 50 l. for every Deer so killed &c. to be levied by Distress; and for want of Distress he shall suffer three Years Imprisonment without Bail or Main-prize, and be set in the Pillory two Hours on some Market Day, in the Town next the place where the offence was committed.

7. Persons pulling down or destroying, or causing to be pulled down or destroy'd, the Pales or Walls of any Park, &c. where Red or Fallow-Deer shall be kept, and being thereof convicted by Confession, or Oath of one or more Witnesses or Witnesses, before one or more Justices of the County where the Offence is committed, shall be liable to the Penalties and forfeitures inflicted by 3, and 4. W. and M. for killing of Deer.

8. The Statute 5. Geo. c. 28. enacts that if any Person shall enter any Park, Paddock, or other inclosed Ground, where Deer are usually kept, and wilfully wound or kill any Red or Fallow-Deer there, without the consent of the Owner, or Person intrusted with the Custody of such Park, &c. And being indicted for such Offence before any Judge of Goal Delivery, shall be convicted thereof by Verdict, or his own Confession, he shall be trans-



transported to the American Plantation, for 7 Years.

9. But nothing in this Act shall repeal, alter, or make void any former Law made for the punishment of Deer-stealers; and when any Offender shall be punished by Force of this Act, he shall not incur the penalty of any other Law.



## A Grant of a Park.

**G**EORGE by the Grace of God, King of *Great-Britain, France and Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. To all whom these present Letters Patents shall come greeting. Know ye, that we of our special Grace, and meer Motion, have given, and granted, and by these presents, do give, and Grant, for us, and our Heirs, and Successors, unto our well beloved Subject A B. of &c. Esq; the Liberty of one Park for wild Beasts, and also free Warren in all his demesne Lands, of and within his Mannor and Lordship of, &c. in the County of &c. with all privileges, which to such Liberty of Park, and Warren do belong or appertain, to have, hold, and enjoy the said Liberty of Park and Warren, in all the demesne Lands aforesaid, to the said A B, his Heirs and Assigns, so that no Person or Persons shall enter into the said Lands to Hunt in them, or any Part thereof, or presume to take any Thing in them which belongeth to a Park or Warren, without the License and Consent of the said A B. and his Heirs. In Witness whereof we have caused these our Letters to be made Patents. *Witness ourself at Westminster, &c.*





## A Warrant to depute a Person, Keeper of a Park, and Game- keeper of a Mannor.

**T**O all People to whom these presents shall come,  
I A. B. of, &c. Esq; have nominated, authorized, and appointed, and by these presents do nominate, authorize, and appoint, C. D. of, &c. to be Keeper of my Park called, &c. in the County of, &c. to take care of the Preservation of the Deer within the same, and receive all Perquisites which to the Office of a Keeper of a Park belong; and I do also authorize and appoint him, the said C. D. to be my Game-keeper of, and within my Mannor of &c. with full Power and Authority, according to the Direction of the Statutes in that Case made, to kill all Manner of Game for my Use, and to seize from Time to Time all such Guns, Greyhounds, Setting-Dogs, Ferrets, Trammels, Hays, or other Nets, Snares, or Engines, for the taking, killing or destroying of Hares, Pheasants, Partridges, or other Game, as within the said Mannor of &c. and the Precincts thereof, shall be kept or used by any Person or Persons whatsoever, not legally qualified to do the same. And further, to act, and do all, and every Thing, and Things, which belong to the Office of a Game-keeper, pursuant to the Acts of Parliament, during my free Will and Pleasure. Provided always, that the said C. D. before he takes up-  
on



on him his said Office, do enter, or cause to be entred, his Name, and the purport of this Warrant, with the Clerk of the Peace, of the County of &c. aforesaid, according to the Direction of a late Statute. *Given under my Hand and Seal, &c.*

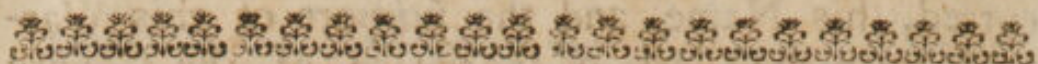


A License to Hunt, Hawk,  
Fish, and Fowl within a Man-  
nor, and take away Guns,  
&c,

**K** NOW all Men by these presents, that I  
A. B. of &c. Esq; Lord of the Mannor of  
&c. in the County of &c. do hereby authorize  
and allow C. D. of &c. Gent. and give him full  
Power and Authority to Hunt, Hawk, Fish, and  
Fowl within the said Mannor of &c. and the  
Demefnes thereof, and places thereto belonging; and  
also from Time to Time, to seize and take the  
Guns, Dogs, Nets, and other Engines, and In-  
struments kept and used by any Persons within  
the said Mannor, and the Liberty thereof, not  
legally qualified to do the same. *In Witness,*  
&c.

A Con-





## A Conviction before a Justice of Peace, for keeping of Guns.

**M** E M O R A N D' quod hoc quinto die Maij, Anno Regni Dm' nostri Georgij &c. quidam A. B. de &c. in com' &c. Venit coram me C. D. Ar' proximo Justiciar' dict' Dom' Regis ad pacem suam in Com' pred' Conservand' & ad tunc & ibid' super sacramentum suum dixit & deposuit quod Eff' nuper de &c. in Com' pred' tali die & Anno &c. apud &c. in Com' pred' Habuit & custodivit quoddam Engin' Torment (voc' a Gun or Fowling-piece) & ad tunc & ibid' in tormento pred' cum pulvere Bombardico & plumbeis pellet' (anglice *Shot*) onerat' illicite & injuste displodebat (anglice, *did Shoot*) contra formam Statut' in hujusmodi casu edit' & provis' eod' E. F. ad tunc non habente in jure suo proprio aut in jure uxoris suæ ad usum ipsius E. F. nec aliqua alia persona sive aliquibus aliis personis habente vel habentibus ad usum ipsius E. F. Terr' Tenement' Feoda Annuitat' seu Offic' ad Annum valorem Cent libr' & quia pred' E. F. existens Attachia- tus & Conduct' coram me prefat' proximo Justiciar' per pred' A. B. pro offens' pred' & Onerat' cum dicta offens' in forma pred' eandem Offensionem non potest dedicere; Ideo consideratum est per me prefat' Justic' quod idem E. F. Forisfaciat & solvat summam decem Libr' juxta formam Statut' pred' cujus quidem summæ Decem libr' medietas solvetur ad usum dict' Dom' Regis & al-  
tera



tera medietas inde solvet præfat' A. B. existen'  
primo conveiator' dicti E. F. coram me pro of-  
fens' pred' juxta formam Statut' pred' & quod i-  
dem E. F. Committatur ad Gaolem Com' pred'  
ibid' remansur' quousque solveret pred' summam  
decem libr' ad usus pred' juxta formam Statut'  
pred' In cujus rei Testimonium, &c.



*F I N I S.*



# The TABLE for *Hunting.*

Being the First PART.

|  |                            |      |
|--|----------------------------|------|
| <b>I</b> Introduction  | Terms of Art               | 1    |
| Some general Names of Hounds and Beagles   |                            | 14   |
| Terms relating to Forests, &c.   |                            | 15   |
| Of the Hound Rache and Sluth-hound   |                            | 22   |
| Of the Blood-hound 23  | Of the Gaze-hound          | 26   |
| Of the Grey hound 27   | Of the Harrier and Terrier | 29   |
| Of the Hound Levyner or Lyemer   |                            | 30   |
| Of the Tumbler ibid.   | Of the Spaniel             | 32.  |
| Of the White Hound 33  | Of the Fallow Hounds       | ibid |
| Of the Dun Hound   |                            | 34   |
| The marks of a good Hound  |                            | 35   |
| The Election of a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps  | ibid.                      |      |
| How to enter young Hounds at the Hart, &c.   |                            | 36   |
| Of Courfing with Grey-hounds   |                            | 38   |
| The Laws of the Leash or Courfing  |                            | 41   |
| The Stiles of Hunting different from the English, both<br>Antique and Foreign              |                            | 43   |
| Of Hart Hunting 47   | The Nature of a Hart       | ib.  |
| Of the Rut of Harts  |                            | 52   |
| Of the time of Harts Mewing  |                            | 54   |
| Of the Coat and Colours of Harts, and their diversities                                    |                            | 55   |
| How to know an old Hart by the Slot, Entries, &c.  |                            | 56   |
| The Names and diversities of Harts-heads according to<br>Hunters Terms                     |                            | 58   |
| How to seek a Hart in his haunts or feeding Places<br>according to the Seasons of the Year |                            | 59   |
| In what Manner the Huntsman shall go drawing in the<br>Springs                             |                            | 60   |
| Directions for Harboursing a Stag  |                            | 61   |
| How to find a Hart lost the Night before   |                            | 62   |
| How to find a Hart in high Woods   | ibid.                      |      |
| How to unharbour a Hart, and cast off the Hounds   |                            | 63   |
| What subtilties are used in hunting a Hart at force  |                            | 64   |
| How to kill a Hart at Bay  |                            | 67   |
|  | Di-                        |      |



## The TABLE for HUNTING.

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>Directions at the death of a Buck or Hart</i>                              | ibid.                       |
| <i>Buck-hunting</i> 69  | <i>Roe-hunting</i> 70       |
| <i>Rain-Deer-hunting</i> 73   | <i>Hare-hunting</i> 74      |
| <i>Of Parks and Warrens</i> 85  | <i>Of Coney-catching</i> 87 |
| <i>Of the Ferret</i> 88.  | <i>Of Fox-hunting</i> 89    |
| <i>Of Badger-hunting</i> 95   | <i>Of Otter-hunting</i> 98  |
| <i>Of the Squirrel</i>  | 102                         |
| <i>Of the Marten or Wild-Cat</i>  | 103                         |
| <i>A short Account of Beasts not hunted in England, and first of the Wolf</i> | 105                         |
| <i>Of Wild-goat-hunting</i>   | 109                         |
| <i>Of Wild-boar-hunting</i> 111   | <i>Of Bear-hunting</i> 115  |
| <i>Of the Beaver</i> 119  | <i>Of the Elk</i> 121       |
| <i>Diseases and Cures of Hounds</i>   | 123                         |
| <i>Diseases and Cures of Spaniels</i>   | 128                         |

## The TABLE for Hawking.

Being the Second PART.

|   |                         |
|---|-------------------------|
| <b>T</b> HE Introduction Page 132   | <i>Terms of Art</i> 135 |
| <i>Of the Haggard Faulcon</i>   | 141                     |
| <i>How to know the Nature and Disposition of several Hawks, and what must be observed from thence</i>       | 147                     |
| <i>Of the Faulcon</i>   | 149                     |
| <i>Of the Manning, Luring, Flights, and Mewing of a Faulcon, with other things belonging to an Ostrager</i> | 151                     |
| <i>Of bathing a Faulcon lately reclaimed; how to make her, and to hate the Check</i>                        | 154                     |
| <i>How to enseat a Faulcon with her Castings and Scow-rings</i>   | 156                     |
| <i>General Instructions for an Ostrager or Faulconer</i>  | 160                     |
| <i>How to hood a Hawk</i>   | 163                     |
| <i>How to make your Hawk know your Voice and her own feeding</i>  | 164                     |
| <i>How to make a Hawk bold and venturous</i>  | ibid                    |
| <i>How to make a Hawk know the Lure</i>   | 165                     |
| <i>How to make a Hawk flying</i>  | ibid.                   |
| <i>A Flight for a Haggard</i>   | 167                     |
|   | How                     |



# The TABLE for HAWKING

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| <i>How to make a Soar-Falcon, or Haggard kill at the very first</i>                                | ib.   |
| <i>Remedy for a Hawks taking stand in a Tree</i>   | 168   |
| <i>How to help a Hawk froward and coy through pride of Grease</i>                                  | ibid. |
| <i>How to make a Hawk hold in her Head, and not mind Check</i>                                     | 169   |
| <i>How to continue and keep a Hawk in her high flight</i>  | ib.   |
| <i>A flight for a Hern</i>   | 171   |
| <i>Of the Haggard-faulcon; why so called, her good shape and properties, &amp;c.</i>               | 173   |
| <i>Of the Barbary-faulcon</i> 175 <i>Of the Gerfaulcon</i>   | ibid. |
| <i>Of the Saker</i>  | 177   |
| <i>Of the Lanner, Lanneret, and Tunisan</i>  | 179   |
| <i>Of the Merlin</i>   | 181   |
| <i>Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, &amp;c. And which is the best Way of Mewing.</i>            | 183   |
| <i>Of the Hobby</i> 185 <i>Of the Goshawk</i>  | 186   |
| <i>How to make the Soar or Haggard Goshawk</i>   | 187   |
| <i>How to make a Goshawk fly to the Partridge</i>  | 188   |
| <i>How to help a Goshawk, that turneth Tail to Tail, and giveth over her Game</i>                  | 190   |
| <i>How to make a Goshawk fly quickly</i>   | ibid. |
| <i>How to fly a Goshawk to the River</i>   | 191   |
| <i>An excellent way to preserve a Goshawk in the time of her flying, especially in hot Weather</i> | 192   |
| <i>How to fly the Wild-Goose or Crane with the Goshawk</i>   | ibid. |
| <i>How to Mew a Goshawk, and draw her out of the Mew, and make her flying</i>                      | ib.   |
| <i>Some general Observations for an Ostrager or Faulconer in keeping and reclaiming a Goshawk</i>  | 194   |
| <i>Of the Sparrow-hawk</i>   | 196   |
| <i>How to make a Sparrow-hawk, whether Eyess, Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard</i>                | 197   |
| <i>How to Mew Sparrow-hawks</i>  | 201   |
| <i>The duty of a Faulconer, with necessary Rules and Observations for him to follow</i>            | 202   |
|  | Of    |



## The TABLE for FOWLING

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <i>Of Diseases and dangerous accidents incident to Hawks and their several Cures</i>                  | 203                                |
| <i>Of Castings and Mewtings, either good or bad according to their several Complexions and Smells</i> | 204                                |
| <i>Of the Cataract</i> 206  | <i>Of the Pantas or Asthma</i> 207 |
| <i>Of Worms</i> 208   | <i>Of the Filanders</i> ibid.      |
| <i>Another approved medicine for Filanders or Worms in Hawks</i> 209                                  | <i>Of Hawks Lice</i> ib.           |
| <i>A safe and easie way to kill Lice in Hawks</i>   | 210                                |
| <i>How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in health, good plight and liking</i>                 | ibid.                              |
| <i>Of the Formica</i>   | 211                                |
| <i>Of the Frownce</i> ib.   | <i>Of the Pip</i> 212              |
| <i>How to remedy that Hawk which endeweth not, nor putteth over as she should do</i>                  | 213                                |
| <i>How to make a Hawk feed eagerly, that hath lost appetite, without bringing her low</i>             | ib.                                |
| <i>How to raise a Hawk that is low and poor</i>   | 214                                |
| <i>How to remedy a Hawk that is slothful and averse to flying</i>                                     | ib.                                |
| <i>Of swollen feet in a Hawk</i>  | 215                                |
| <i>How to scour Hawks before you cast them into the Mew</i>   | ib.                                |

## The TABLE for Fowling.

Being the Third PART.

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| <b>W</b> <i>hat Fowling is, with the nature and diversity of all manner of Fowl</i> | Page 217 |
| <i>Of the Haunts of Fowl</i>  | 219      |
| <i>The readiest way to take great Fowl with Nets</i>                                | 220      |
| <i>How to take small Water-fowl with Nets</i>                                       | 221      |
| <i>How to take small Birds with Bird-lime</i>                                       | 222      |
| <i>How to take great Fowl with Lime-twigs</i>                                       | 224      |
| <i>Of the great and lesser Springies</i>  | 226      |
| <i>Of the Fowling Piece and Stalking-horse</i>                                      | 228      |
| <i>How to take all manner of Land-fowl by Day and night</i>                         | 232      |
| <i>Of Bat-fowling</i>   | 235      |
| <i>Of the Day-net, and how to take Birds therewith</i>                              | ibid     |
| <i>Of</i>   |          |



# The TABLE for FOWLING

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bushes<br>with Lime-twigs                 | 237   |
| How to make the best sort of Bird-lime, and how to use<br>it                         | 239   |
| The best and most experienced way of making U<br>Bird-lime.                          | 241   |
| In what manner Snipes may be taken with Bird-lime                                    | ib.   |
| The manner of taking Felsiares by Water Bird-lime                                    | 242   |
| How to take Pidgeons with Lime-twigs   | 243   |
| How to make Magpies, Crows, and Glead, with<br>Lime-twigs                            | ib.   |
| How to take Rooks, when they pull up Corn by the<br>Roots                            | 244   |
| How to take Birds with Baits, either Land or Water-<br>Fowl                          | ib.   |
| A most excellent and approved way how to take the<br>Hern                            | 246   |
| How to take Pheasants several ways   | 247   |
| The fashion of Pheasant-Nets   | 256   |
| Of driving of Pheasant-powts   | ib.   |
| The season for the using of Nets or Lime   | 252   |
| How to take Partridges several ways  | ib.   |
| Of taking Partridges with Nets   | 254   |
| How to take Partridges with Bird-lime  | 255   |
| How to drive Partridges  | 256   |
| How to take Partridges with a Setting-dog  | ibid. |
| How to take Rails, Quails, Morepots; &c.   | 258   |
| How to elect and train a Setting dog from a Whelp till<br>he comes to Perfection     | 259   |
| How to train a Water-dog, and the use thereof  | 261   |
| How to take, preserve, and keep all manner of Singing-<br>birds                      | 263   |
| Of the Nightingale   | 264   |
| How to make a Net-trap to take him   | 266   |
| Of the Canary-bird   | 269   |
| Of the Black-Bird  | 271   |
| Of the Throstle  | 272   |
| Of the Robin-red-breast  | 274   |
| Of the Wren  | 275   |
| Of the Wood-lark   | 276   |
| Of the Skielark; the several ways to take them, and<br>when taken, how to order them | 279   |
| Of the Linnet  | 281   |
|  | Of    |



# The TABLE for FISHING

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Of the Gold-finch</i> 282<br><i>the Chaffinch</i> 284<br><i>the Redstart</i> 285<br><i>the Green-finch</i> <i>ib.</i> | <i>Christmas-fool, so called in Norfolk</i> 282<br><i>Of the Tit-lark</i> 283<br><i>Of the Starling</i> <i>ibid.</i><br><i>Of the Bull-finch</i> 286<br><i>Of the Hedge-sparrow</i> <i>ib.</i> |
|--|--|

## The TABLE for *Fishing*.

Being the Fourth and last PART.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>T</b> HE Introduction Page 285. <i>An Encomium, or somewhat in praise of Fishermen and Fishing</i> 290<br><i>Fish-ponds to improve, and the Fish therein contained</i> 291<br><i>Carps, to make them grow to an extraordinary bigness in a Pond</i> 293<br><i>General Observations to be understood in the Art of Angling</i> <i>ibid.</i><br><i>Astrological Elections for Angling in general</i> 295<br><i>What Provision is to be made for Angling Tools</i> 296<br><i>A Line after the best manner, how to make</i> 297<br><i>Of the Hook, Flote, and other things worth the observation</i> 298<br><i>Flies Natural and Artificial, and how to use them</i> 299<br><i>Of Ground-angling</i> 303 <i>Of Night-angling</i> 304<br><i>What times are seasonable, and what unseasonable to Angle in</i> 305 <i>Of the Barbel</i> 307<br><i>Of the Bream</i> 308 <i>Of the Bleak</i> 310<br><i>Of the Bull-head or Millers-thumb</i> 311<br><i>Of the Chevin</i> 312 <i>Of the Char</i> 313<br><i>Of the Chub, Cheven, Chavender</i> <i>ibid.</i><br><i>Of the Carp</i> 315 <i>Of Dace or Dare</i> 316<br><i>Of the Eel</i> 317 <i>Of the Flounder</i> 319<br><i>Of the Gudgeon</i> 320 <i>Of the Guinard</i> 321<br><i>Of the Loach</i> 322 <i>Of the Minnow</i> <i>ibid.</i><br><i>Of the Pope or Ruff</i> 323 <i>Of the Pike</i> <i>ibid.</i><br><i>Of the Pearch</i> 326 <i>Of the Rud</i> 328<br><i>Of the Roach</i> 329 <i>Of the Stickleback</i> 331<br><div style="text-align: right; margin-right: 50px;">I i i</div> <div style="text-align: right;">of</div> |  |
|---|--|



## The TABLE for HUNTING.

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| Of the Salmon <i>ibid</i> ,                                     | Of the Tench <i>ibid</i>   |
| Of the Torcoth 336  | Of the Trout 333           |
| Of the Umber or Grayling 338 <i>Fishes Haunt, &amp;c. i.</i>    |                            |
| <i>Experimental Observations and Directions for Angling</i> 340 |                            |
|   | <i>An Angling Song</i> 347 |

## The Table for the *Hunting-Horse*. Being an *Appendix* to the first PART.

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| OF Hunting Horses in general, their excellency, and the necessity and benefit of the Art of Keeping.  | 348 |
| Of Breeding, the choice of a Stallion and Mares, with some general Remarks on Marks and Colours   | 354 |
| Of the Age a Hunter should be of, before he be put to Hunting: Of the Stable, and Groom, and of the Horses first taking up from Grass, in order to his future dieting | 366 |
| How to order the Hunter for the first Fortnight   | 374 |
| Of the second Fortnight's Diet, and of his first Hunting, and what Chases are most proper to Train him  | 386 |
| Of the Horse's third Fortnights keeping, and first thorough Sweating  | 398 |
| Of making a Hunting Match, its advantages, and disadvantages  | 402 |
| Of the ordering the Hunter for a Match or Plate   | 408 |
| Of the means to judge of your Horses state of Body, and of curing all Casualties, that may happen after Matching  | 416 |
| Of riding a hunting Match, or Heats for a Plate, and the advantages belonging to each   | 419 |

## The Table to the *Appendix* of the Hunter.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| A Choice Purge                               | 427 |
| The green Water for Sorrances                | 428 |
| A speedy safe and certain Cure for the Farcy | 429 |
| The Digestive Powder                         | 431 |
|  | The |



## The Table to the Abridgment of Forest Laws

|   |             |                                   |              |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>The Farcy Diet Drink</i>                                     | <i>ibid</i> | <i>A Pectoral Drink</i>           | 432          |
| <i>A Poultis to dissolve a Swelling</i>                         |             |                                   | 433          |
| <i>A Poultis to Mollify or Ripen a Swelling</i>                 |             |                                   | 434          |
| <i>An Eye-Water</i>   | <i>ibid</i> | <i>A Remedy against the Worms</i> | 436          |
| <i>For a Horse bit by a mad Dog</i>                             |             |                                   | <i>ibid.</i> |
| <i>The Blistering Plaister</i>                                  |             |                                   | <i>ibid.</i> |
| <i>The Plaister to be applied after the Blistering Plaister</i> |             |                                   | 437          |
| <i>The Diet-Drink for the bite of a Mad-dog</i>                 |             |                                   | <i>ibid.</i> |

## An Abridgment of *Manwood's* Forest-Laws. And of the Acts of Parliament made since; which relate to Hunting, &c.

|  |            |           |
|--|------------|-----------|
| <b>O</b> F the Forest Laws of Canutus  | Page 1     |           |
| <i>An Abstract of all the Laws made for the Preservation of Game, &amp;c.</i>  | 9          |           |
| <i>Of a Forest, what it is, and whereof it doth consist</i>  | <i>ib.</i> |           |
| <i>Of a Frank Chase, a Park, and a Free-Warren, what they are, and how they differ from each other</i>                   | 11         |           |
| <i>Of the Forest-Laws in general</i>   | 13         |           |
| <i>Of the Courts belonging to the Forest, the Judges thereof, and the Officers attending the same</i>                    | 16         |           |
| <i>Of the Limits of the Forest, and the Offences committed therein</i>   | 29         |           |
| <i>Of the time of Fawning for the Deer of the Forest, &amp;c.</i>  | 33         |           |
| <i>Of keeping Dogs within the Forest, &amp;c.</i>  | 35         |           |
| <i>Of Venison, its Name and Signification</i>  | 37         |           |
| <i>Of Hunting and Hawking within the Forest, &amp;c.</i>   | 38         |           |
| <i>Of the Purlieu, or Pourallee of the Forest, and who may Hunt therein, when, how often, how far, and in what cases</i> | 50         |           |
| <i>Of the Officers belonging to the Pourallees, called Rangers</i>   | 67         |           |
| <i>How, and where, Offences in the Pourallee shall be tried, and punished</i>  | 69         |           |
|  |            | <i>At</i> |



The Table to the Abridgment of Forest Laws.

*An Abstract of all the Statute Laws, from Magna Charta to this time, made for the Preservation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, &c.* 75

*Charters and Ordinances of the Forest* . . . . . ibid.

*Of Bows, and Guns, and shooting at Game* . . . . . 82

*Of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling and Fishing* 85, 86

*A Grant of a Park.* . . . . . 111

*A Warrant to Depute a Person Keeper of a Park, &c.* . . . . . 112

*A License to Hunt, Hawk, &c.* . . . . . 113

*A Conviction before a Justice of Peace for keeping of Guns.* . . . . . 114



F I N I S.







